PIC16(L)F1946/1947 Data Sheet

64-Pin Flash-Based, 8-Bit

CMOS Microcontrollers with

LCD Driver and nanoWatt XLP Technology

Note the following details of the code protection feature on Microchip devices:

- Microchip products meet the specification contained in their particular Microchip Data Sheet.
- Microchip believes that its family of products is one of the most secure families of its kind on the market today, when used in the intended manner and under normal conditions.
- There are dishonest and possibly illegal methods used to breach the code protection feature. All of these methods, to our knowledge, require using the Microchip products in a manner outside the operating specifications contained in Microchip's Data Sheets. Most likely, the person doing so is engaged in theft of intellectual property.
- Microchip is willing to work with the customer who is concerned about the integrity of their code.
- Neither Microchip nor any other semiconductor manufacturer can guarantee the security of their code. Code protection does not mean that we are guaranteeing the product as "unbreakable."

Code protection is constantly evolving. We at Microchip are committed to continuously improving the code protection features of our products. Attempts to break Microchip's code protection feature may be a violation of the Digital Millennium Copyright Act. If such acts allow unauthorized access to your software or other copyrighted work, you may have a right to sue for relief under that Act.

Trademarks

Printed on recycled paper.

ISBN: 978-1-61341-240-4

QUALITY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM
CERTIFIED BY DNV
ISO/TS 16949:2002

Microchip received ISO/TS-16949:2002 certification for its worldwide headquarters, design and wafer fabrication facilities in Chandler and Tempe, Arizona; Gresham, Oregon and design centers in California and India. The Company's quality system processes and procedures are for its PIC® MCUs and dsPIC® DSCs, KEELOQ® code hopping devices, Serial EEPROMs, microperipherals, nonvolatile memory and analog products. In addition, Microchip's quality system for the design and manufacture of development systems is ISO 9001:2000 certified.

64-Pin Flash-Based, 8-Bit CMOS Microcontrollers with LCD Driver and nanoWatt XLP Technology

Devices Included In This Data Sheet:

- PIC16F1946
- PIC16LF1946
- PIC16F1947
- PIC16LF1947

High-Performance RISC CPU:

- Only 49 Instructions to Learn:
  - All single-cycle instructions except branches
- Operating Speed:
  - DC – 32 MHz oscillator/clock input
  - DC – 125 ns instruction cycle
- Up to 16K x 14 Words of Flash Program Memory
- Up to 1024 Bytes of Data Memory (RAM)
- Interrupt Capability with Automatic Context Saving
- 16-Level Deep Hardware Stack
- Direct, Indirect and Relative Addressing modes
- Processor Read Access to Program Memory

Special Microcontroller Features:

- Precision Internal Oscillator:
  - Factory calibrated to ±1%, typical
  - Software selectable frequency range from 32 MHz to 31 kHz
- Power-Saving Sleep mode
- Power-on Reset (POR)
- Power-up Timer (PWRT) and Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST)
- Brown-out Reset (BOR):
  - Selectable between two trip points
  - Disable in Sleep option
- Multiplexed Master Clear with Pull-up/Input Pin
- Programmable Code Protection
- High Endurance Flash/EEPROM cell:
  - 100,000 write Flash endurance
  - 1,000,000 write EEPROM endurance
  - Flash/Data EEPROM retention: > 40 years
- Wide Operating Voltage Range:
  - 1.8V-5.5V (PIC16F1946/47)
  - 1.8V-3.6V (PIC16LF1946/47)

PIC16LF1946/47 Low-Power Features:

- Standby Current:
  - 60 nA @ 1.8V, typical
- Operating Current:
  - 7.0 μA @ 32 kHz, 1.8V, typical (PIC16LF1946/47)
  - 75 μA @ 1 MHz, 1.8V, typical (PIC16LF1946/47)
- Timer1 Oscillator Current:
  - 600 nA @ 32 kHz, 1.8V, typical
- Low-Power Watchdog Timer Current:
  - 500 nA @ 1.8V, typical (PIC16LF1946/47)

Peripheral Features:

- Up to 54 I/O Pins and 1 Input-only pin:
  - High-current source/sink for direct LED drive
  - Individually programmable Interrupt-on-pin change pins
  - Individually programmable weak pull-ups
- Integrated LCD Controller:
  - Up to 184 segments
  - Variable clock input
  - Contrast control
  - Internal voltage reference selections
- Capacitive Sensing (CSM) Module (mTouch™):
  - Up to 16 selectable channels
- A/D Converter:
  - 10-bit resolution and up to 14 channels
  - Selectable 1.024/2.048/4.096V voltage reference
- Timer0: 8-Bit Timer/Counter with 8-Bit Programmable Prescaler
- Enhanced Timer1:
  - Dedicated low-power 32 kHz oscillator driver
  - 16-bit timer/counter with prescaler
  - External Gate Input mode with toggle and single shot modes
  - Interrupt-on-gate completion
- Timer2, 4, 6: 8-Bit Timer/Counter with 8-Bit Period Register, Prescaler and Postscaler
- Two Capture, Compare, PWM Modules (CCP):
  - 16-bit Capture, max. resolution 125 ns
  - 16-bit Compare, max. resolution 125 ns
  - 10-bit PWM, max. frequency 31.25 kHz
- Three Enhanced Capture, Compare, PWM Modules (ECCP):
  - 3 PWM time-base options
  - Auto-shutdown and auto-restart
  - PWM steering
  - Programmable Dead-band Delay

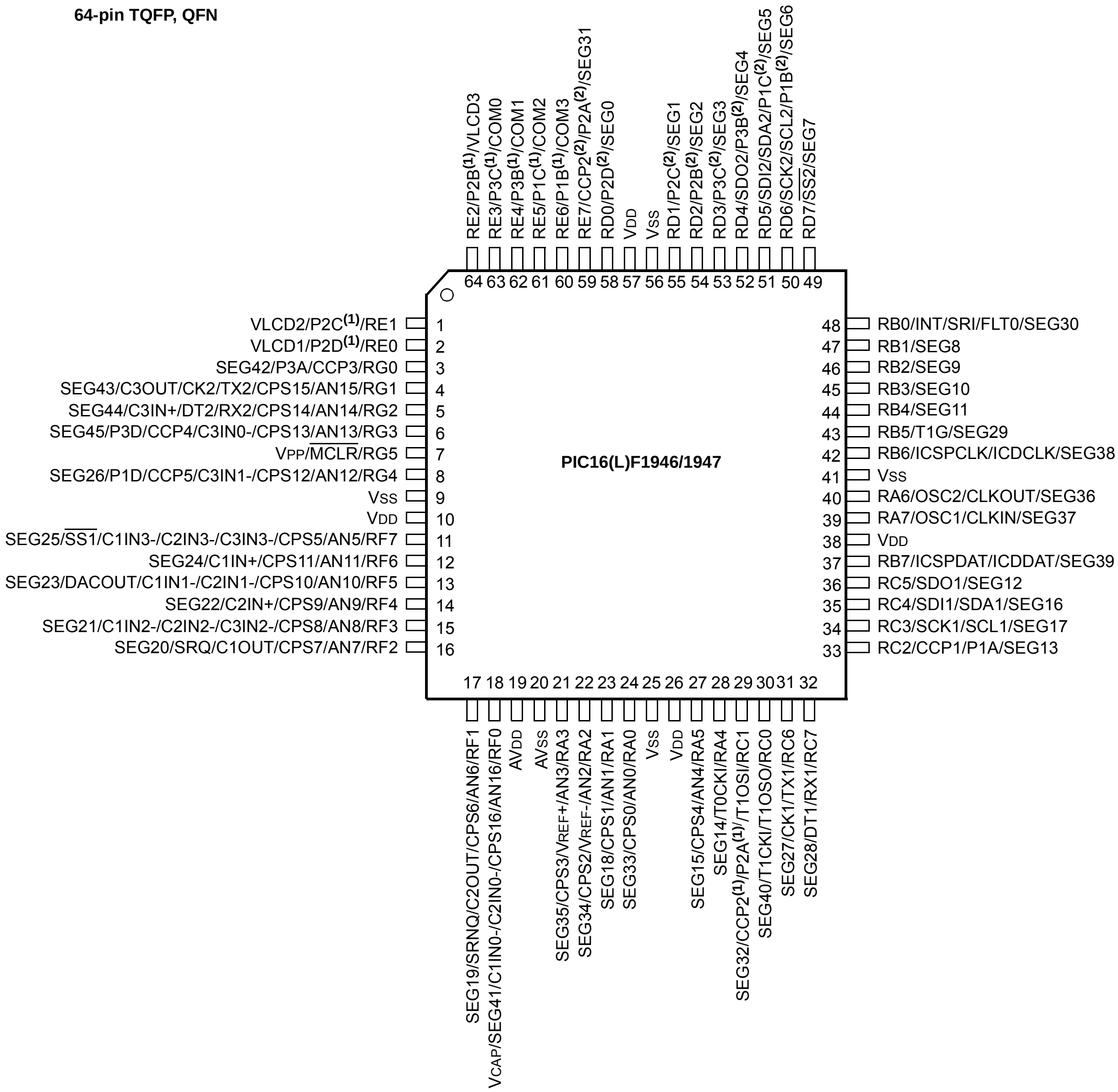
Peripheral Features (Continued):

- Two Master Synchronous Serial Ports (MSSPs) with SPI and I^2C^{TM} with:
  - 7-bit address masking
  - SMBus/PMBus™ compatibility
  - Auto-wake-up on start
- Two Enhanced Universal Synchronous: Asynchronous Receiver Transmitters (EUSARTs)
  - RS-232, RS-485 and LIN compatible
  - Auto-Baud Detect
- SR Latch (555 Timer):
  - Multiple Set/Reset input options
  - Emulates 555 Timer applications
- 2 Comparators:
  - Rail-to-rail inputs/outputs
  - Power mode control
  - Software enable hysteresis
- Voltage Reference Module:
  - Fixed Voltage Reference (FVR) with 1.024V, 2.048V and 4.096V output levels
  - 5-bit rail-to-rail resistive DAC with positive and negative reference selection

PIC16F/LF1946/47 Family Types

Device	Program Memory Flash (words)	Data EEPROM (bytes)	SRAM (bytes)	I/O's	10-bit A/D (ch)	CapSense (ch)	Comparators	Timers 8/16-bit	EUSART	I^2C^{TM}/SPI	ECCP	CCP	LCD
PIC16F1946 PIC16LF1946	8192	256	512	54	17	17	3	4/1	2	2	3	2	184/4
PIC16F1947 PIC16LF1947	16384	256	1024	54	17	17	3	4/1	2	2	3	2	184/4

Pin Diagram – 64-Pin TQFP/QFN (PIC16(L)F1946/1947)



Note 1: Pin location selected by APFCON register setting. Default location.

2: Pin function can be moved using the APFCON register. Alternate location.

3: QFN package orientation is the same. No leads are present on the QFN package.

TABLE 1: 64-PIN SUMMARY(PIC16(L)F1946/1947)

I/O	64-Pin TQFP, QFN	ANSEL	A/D	Reference	Cap Sense	Comparator	SR Latch	Timers	CCP	USART	MSSP	LCD	Interrupt	Pull-up	Basic
RA0	24	Y	AN0	—	CPS0	—	—	—	—	—	—	SEG33	—	—	—
RA1	23	Y	AN1	—	CPS1	—	—	—	—	—	—	SEG18	—	—	—
RA2	22	Y	AN2	VREF-	CPS2	—	—	—	—	—	—	SEG34	—	—	—
RA3	21	Y	AN3	VREF+	CPS3	—	—	—	—	—	—	SEG35	—	—	—
RA4	28	—	—	—	—	—	—	T0CKI	—	—	—	SEG14	—	—	—
RA5	27	Y	AN4	—	CPS4	—	—	—	—	—	—	SEG15	—	—	—
RA6	40	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SEG36	—	—	OSC2/ CLK- OUT
RA7	39	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SEG37	—	—	OSC1/ CLKIN
RB0	48	—	—	—	—	—	SRI	—	FLT0	—	—	SEG30	INT/ IOC	Y	—
RB1	47	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SEG8	IOC	Y	—
RB2	46	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SEG9	IOC	Y	—
RB3	45	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SEG10	IOC	Y	—
RB4	44	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SEG11	IOC	Y	—
RB5	43	—	—	—	—	—	—	T1G	—	—	—	SEG29	IOC	Y	—
RB6	42	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SEG38	IOC	Y	ICSP- CLK/ ICDCLK
RB7	37	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SEG39	IOC	Y	ICSP- DAT/ ICDDAT
RC0	30	—	—	—	—	—	—	T1OSO/ T1CKI	—	—	—	SEG40	—	—	—
RC1	29	—	—	—	—	—	—	T1OSI	CCP2[1]/ P2A[1]	—	—	SEG32	—	—	—
RC2	33	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	CCP1/ P1A	—	—	SEG13	—	—	—
RC3	34	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SCK1/ SCL1	SEG17	—	—	—
RC4	35	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SDI1/ SDA1	SEG16	—	—	—
RC5	36	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SDO1	SEG12	—	—	—
RC6	31	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	TX1/ CK1	—	SEG27	—	—	—
RC7	32	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	RX1/ DT1	—	SEG28	—	—	—
RD0	58	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	P2D[2]	—	—	SEG0	—	—	—
RD1	55	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	P2C[2]	—	—	SEG1	—	—	—
RD2	54	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	P2B[2]	—	—	SEG2	—	—	—
RD3	53	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	P3C[2]	—	—	SEG3	—	—	—
RD4	52	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	P3B[2]	—	SDO2	SEG4	—	—	—
RD5	51	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	P1C[2]	—	SDI2 SDA2	SEG5	—	—	—
RD6	50	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	P1B[2]	—	SCK2/ SCL2	SEG6	—	—	—

Note 1: Pin functions can be moved using the APFCON register(s). Default location.
2: Pin function can be moved using the APFCON register. Alternate location.
3: Weak pull-up always enabled when $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ is enabled, otherwise the pull-up is under user control.
4: See **Section 8.0 "Low Dropout (LDO) Voltage Regulator"**.

TABLE 1: 64-PIN SUMMARY(PIC16(L)F1946/1947) (Continued)

I/O	64-Pin TQFP, QFN	ANSEL	A/D	Reference	Cap Sense	Comparator	SR Latch	Timers	CCP	USART	MSSP	LCD	Interrupt	Pull-up	Basic
RD7	49	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	$\overline{\text{SS2}}$	SEG7	—	—	—
RE0	2	Y	—	—	—	—	—	—	P2D(1)	—		VLCD1	—	—	—
RE1	1	Y	—	—	—	—	—	—	P2C(1)	—	—	VLCD2	—	—	—
RE2	64	Y	—	—	—	—	—	—	P2B(1)	—	—	VLCD3	—	—	—
RE3	63	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	P3C(1)	—	—	COM0	—	—	—
RE4	62	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	P3B(1)	—	—	COM1	—	—	—
RE5	61	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	P1C(1)	—	—	COM2	—	—	—
RE6	60	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	P1B(1)	—	—	COM3	—	—	—
RE7	59	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	CCP2(2)/ P2A(2)	—	—	SEG31	—	—	—
RF0	18	Y	AN16	—	CPS16	C1IN0- C2IN0-	—	—	—	—	—	SEG41	—	—	VCAP(3)
RF1	17	Y	AN6	—	CPS6	C2OUT	SRNQ	—	—	—	—	SEG19	—	—	—
RF2	16	Y	AN7	—	CPS7	C1OUT	SRQ	—	—	—	—	SEG20	—	—	—
RF3	15	Y	AN8		CPS8	C1IN2- C2IN2- C3IN2-	—	—	—	—	—	SEG21	—	—	—
RF4	14	Y	AN9	—	CPS9	C2IN+	—	—	—	—	—	SEG22	—	—	—
RF5	13	Y	AN10	DACOUT	CPS10	C1IN1- C2IN1-	—		—	—	—	SEG23	—	—	—
RF6	12	Y	AN11	—	CPS11	C1IN+	—	—	—	—	—	SEG24	—	—	—
RF7	11	Y	AN5	—	CPS5	C1IN3- C2IN3- C3IN3-	—	—	—	—	$\overline{\text{SS1}}$	SEG25	—	—	—
RG0	3	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	CCP3 P3A	—	—	SEG42	—	—	—
RG1	4	Y	AN15	—	CPS15	C3OUT	—	—	—	TX2/ CK2	—	SEG43	—	—	—
RG2	5	Y	AN14	—	CPS14	C3IN+	—	—	—	RX2/ DT2	—	SEG44	—	—	—
RG3	6	Y	AN13	—	CPS13	C3IN0-	—	—	CCP4 P3D	—	—	SEG45	—	—	—
RG4	8	Y	AN12	—	CPS12	C3IN1-	—	—	CCP5 P1D	—	—	SEG26	—	—	—
RG5	7	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	Y(2)	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$/ VPP
VDD	10 26 38 57	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	VDD
VSS	9 25 41 56	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	VSS
AVDD	19	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	AVDD
AVSS	20	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	AVSS

Note 1: Pin functions can be moved using the APFCON register(s). Default location.

2: Pin function can be moved using the APFCON register. Alternate location.

3: Weak pull-up always enabled when $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ is enabled, otherwise the pull-up is under user control.

4: See **Section 8.0 "Low Dropout (LDO) Voltage Regulator"**.

Table of Contents

Preliminary

TO OUR VALUED CUSTOMERS

It is our intention to provide our valued customers with the best documentation possible to ensure successful use of your Microchip products. To this end, we will continue to improve our publications to better suit your needs. Our publications will be refined and enhanced as new volumes and updates are introduced.

If you have any questions or comments regarding this publication, please contact the Marketing Communications Department via E-mail at **docerrors@microchip.com** or fax the **Reader Response Form** in the back of this data sheet to (480) 792-4150. We welcome your feedback.

Most Current Data Sheet

To obtain the most up-to-date version of this data sheet, please register at our Worldwide Web site at:

http://www.microchip.com

You can determine the version of a data sheet by examining its literature number found on the bottom outside corner of any page. The last character of the literature number is the version number, (e.g., DS30000A is version A of document DS30000).

Errata

An errata sheet, describing minor operational differences from the data sheet and recommended workarounds, may exist for current devices. As device/documentation issues become known to us, we will publish an errata sheet. The errata will specify the revision of silicon and revision of document to which it applies.

To determine if an errata sheet exists for a particular device, please check with one of the following:

- Microchip's Worldwide Web site; **http://www.microchip.com**
- Your local Microchip sales office (see last page)

When contacting a sales office, please specify which device, revision of silicon and data sheet (include literature number) you are using.

Customer Notification System

Register on our web site at **www.microchip.com** to receive the most current information on all of our products.

NOTES:

1.0 DEVICE OVERVIEW

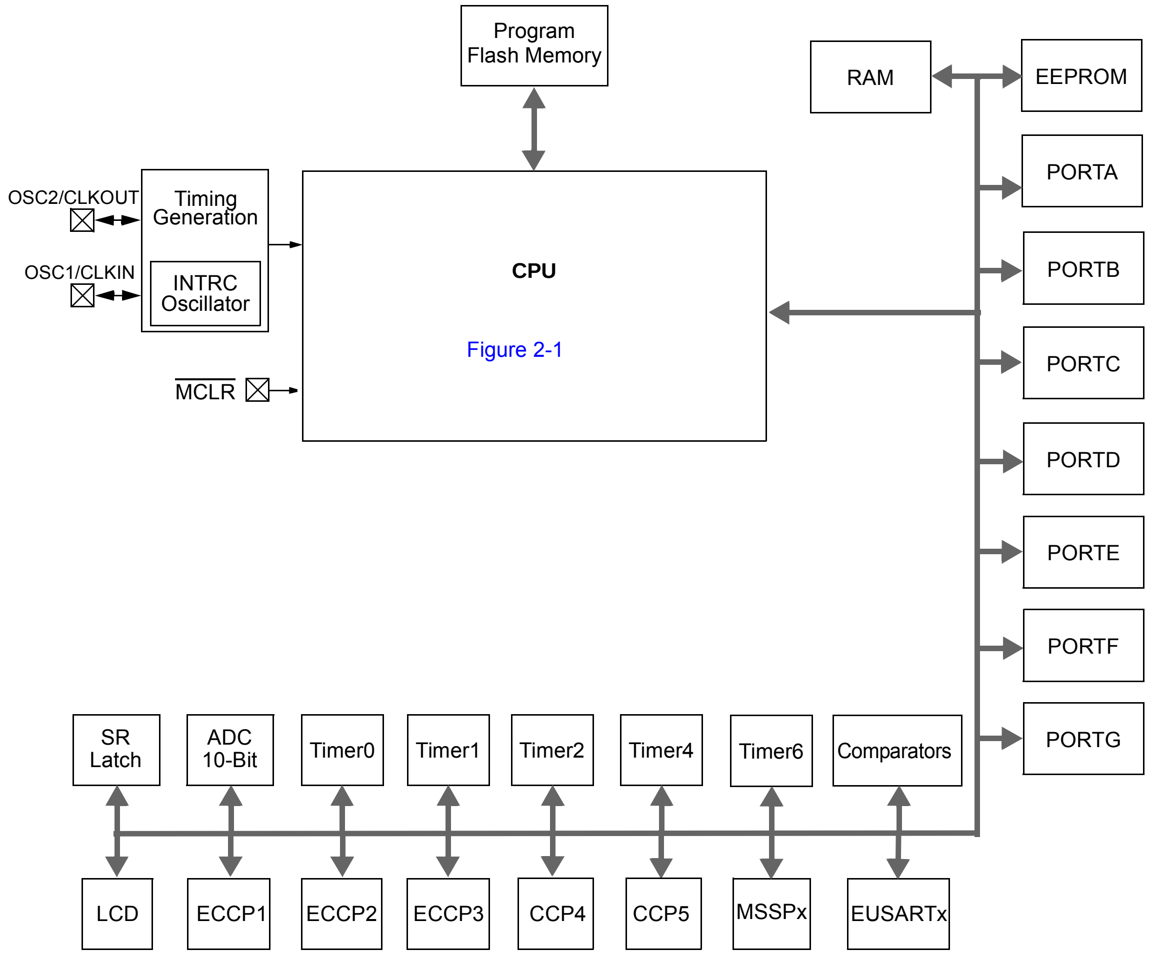
The PIC16(L)F1946/1947 are described within this data sheet. They are available in 64-pin packages. Figure 1-1 shows a block diagram of the PIC16(L)F1946/1947 devices. Table 1-2 shows the pinout descriptions.

Reference Table 1-1 for peripherals available per device.

TABLE 1-1: DEVICE PERIPHERAL SUMMARY

Peripheral		PIC16F1946/47	PIC16LF1946/47
ADC		●	●
Capacitive Sensing (CPS) Module		●	●
Data EEPROM		●	●
Digital-to-Analog Converter (DAC)		●	●
Fixed Voltage Reference (FVR)		●	●
LCD		●	●
SR Latch		●	●
Capture/Compare/PWM Modules			
	ECCP1	●	●
	ECCP2	●	●
	ECCP3	●	●
	CCP4	●	●
	CCP5	●	●
Comparators			
	C1	●	●
	C2	●	●
	C3	●	●
EUSARTS			
	EUSART1	●	●
	EUSART2	●	●
Master Synchronous Serial Ports			
	MSSP1	●	●
	MSSP2	●	●
Timers			
	Timer0	●	●
	Timer1	●	●
	Timer2	●	●
	Timer4	●	●
	Timer6	●	●

FIGURE 1-1: PIC16(L)F1946/1947 BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: See applicable chapters for more information on peripherals.

 Preliminary

TABLE 1-2: PIC16(L)F1946/1947 PINOUT DESCRIPTION

Name	Function	Input Type	Output Type	Description
RA0/AN0/CPS0/SEG33	RA0	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN0	AN	—	A/D Channel 0 input.
	CPS0	AN	—	Capacitive sensing input 0.
	SEG33	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RA1/AN1/CPS1/SEG18	RA1	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN1	AN	—	A/D Channel 1 input.
	CPS1	AN	—	Capacitive sensing input 1.
	SEG18	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RA2/AN2/VREF-/CPS2/SEG34	RA2	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN2	AN	—	A/D Channel 2 input.
	VREF-	AN	—	A/D Negative Voltage Reference input.
	CPS2	AN	—	Capacitive sensing input 2.
	SEG34	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RA3/AN3/VREF+/CPS3/SEG35	RA3	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN3	AN	—	A/D Channel 3 input.
	VREF+	AN	—	A/D Voltage Reference input.
	CPS3	AN	—	Capacitive sensing input 3.
	SEG35	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RA4/T0CKI/SEG14	RA4	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	T0CKI	ST	—	Timer0 clock input.
	SEG14	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RA5/AN4/CPS4/SEG15	RA5	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN4	AN	—	A/D Channel 4 input.
	CPS4	AN	—	Capacitive sensing input 4.
	SEG5	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RA6/OSC2/CLKOUT/SEG36	RA6	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	OSC2	—	XTAL	Crystal/Resonator (LP, XT, HS modes).
	CLKOUT	—	CMOS	FOSC/4 output.
	SEG36	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RA7/OSC1/CLKIN/SEG37	RA7	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	OSC1	XTAL	—	Crystal/Resonator (LP, XT, HS modes).
	CLKIN	CMOS	—	External clock input (EC mode).
	SEG37	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RB0/INT/SRI/FLT0/SEG30	RB0	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	INT	ST	—	External interrupt.
	SRI	—	ST	SR Latch input.
	FLT0	ST	—	ECCP Auto-shutdown Fault input.
	SEG30	—	AN	LCD analog output.
RB1/SEG8	RB1	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	SEG8	—	AN	LCD Analog output.

Legend: AN = Analog input or output; CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output; OD = Open Drain; TTL = TTL compatible input; ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels; I^{2}C™ = Schmitt Trigger input with I^{2}C levels; HV = High Voltage; XTAL = Crystal

Note 1: Pin function is selectable via the APFCON register.

TABLE 1-2: PIC16(L)F1946/1947 PINOUT DESCRIPTION (CONTINUED)

Name	Function	Input Type	Output Type	Description
RB2/SEG9	RB2	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	SEG9	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RB3/SEG10	RB3	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	SEG10	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RB4/SEG11	RB4	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	SEG11	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RB5/T1G/SEG29	RB5	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	T1G	ST	—	Timer1 Gate input.
	SEG29	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RB6/ICSPCLK/ICDCLK/SEG38	RB6	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	ICSPCLK	ST	—	Serial Programming Clock.
	ICDCLK	ST	—	In-Circuit Debug Clock.
	SEG38	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RB7/ICSPDAT/ICDDAT/SEG39	RB7	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O. Individually controlled interrupt-on-change. Individually enabled pull-up.
	ICSPDAT	ST	CMOS	ICSP™ Data I/O.
	ICDDAT	ST	CMOS	In-Circuit Data I/O.
	SEG39	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RC0/T1OSO/T1CKI/SEG40	RC0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	T1OSO	XTAL	XTAL	Timer1 oscillator connection.
	T1CKI	ST	—	Timer1 clock input.
	SEG40	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RC1/T1OSI/P2A(1)/CCP2(1)/SEG32	RC1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	T1OSI	XTAL	XTAL	Timer1 oscillator connection.
	P2A	—	CMOS	PWM output.
	CCP2	ST	CMOS	Capture/Compare/PWM2.
	SEG32	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RC2/CCP1/P1A/SEG13	RC2	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	CCP1	ST	CMOS	Capture/Compare/PWM1.
	P1A	—	CMOS	PWM output.
	SEG13	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RC3/SCK/SCL/SEG17	RC3	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	SCK	ST	CMOS	SPI clock.
	SCL	I^2C	OD	I^2C™ clock.
	SEG17	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RC4/SDI1/SDA1/SEG16	RC4	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	SDI1	ST	—	SPI data input.
	SDA1	I^2C	OD	I^2C™ data input/output.
	SEG16	—	AN	LCD Analog output.

Legend: AN = Analog input or output; CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output; OD = Open Drain; TTL = TTL compatible input; ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels; I^2C™ = Schmitt Trigger input with I^2C levels; HV = High Voltage; XTAL = Crystal

Note 1: Pin function is selectable via the APFCON register.

TABLE 1-2: PIC16(L)F1946/1947 PINOUT DESCRIPTION (CONTINUED)

Name	Function	Input Type	Output Type	Description
RC5/SDO1/SEG12	RC5	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	SDO1	—	CMOS	SPI data output.
	SEG12	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RC6/TX1/CK1/SEG27	RC6	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	TX1	—	CMOS	USART1 asynchronous transmit.
	CK1	ST	CMOS	USART1 synchronous clock.
	SEG27	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RC7/RX1/DT1/SEG28	RC7	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	RX	ST	—	USART1 asynchronous input.
	DT1	ST	CMOS	USART1 synchronous data.
	SEG28	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RD0/P2D(1)/SEG0	RD0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	P2D	—	CMOS	PWM output.
	SEG0	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RD1/P2C(1)/SEG1	RD1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	P2C	—	CMOS	PWM output.
	SEG1	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RD2/P2B(1)/SEG2	RD2	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	P2B	—	CMOS	PWM output.
	SEG2	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RD3/P3C(1)/SEG3	RD3	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	P3C	—	CMOS	PWM output.
	SEG3	—	AN	LCD analog output.
RD4/SDO2/P3B(1)/SEG4	RD4	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	SDO2	—	CMOS	SPI data output.
	P3B	—	CMOS	PWM output.
	SEG4	—	AN	LCD analog output.
RD5/SDI2/SDA2/P1C(1)/SEG5	RD5	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	SDI2	ST	—	SPI data input.
	SDA2	I^2C	OD	I^2C™ data input/output.
	P1C	—	CMOS	PWM output.
	SEG5	—	AN	LCD analog output.
RD6/SCK2/SCL2/P1B(1)/SEG6	RD6	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	SCK2	ST	CMOS	SPI clock.
	SCL2	I^2C	OD	I^2C™ clock.
	P1B	—	CMOS	PWM output.
	SEG6	—	AN	LCD analog output.
RD7/$\overline{SS2}$/SEG7	RD7	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	$\overline{SS2}$	ST	—	Slave Select input.
	SEG7	—	AN	LCD analog output.
RE0/P2D(1)/VLCD1	RE0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	P2D	—	CMOS	PWM output.
	VLCD1	AN	—	LCD analog input.

Legend: AN = Analog input or output; CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output; OD = Open Drain; TTL = TTL compatible input; ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels; I^2C™ = Schmitt Trigger input with I^2C levels; HV = High Voltage; XTAL = Crystal

Note 1: Pin function is selectable via the APFCON register.

TABLE 1-2: PIC16(L)F1946/1947 PINOUT DESCRIPTION (CONTINUED)

Name	Function	Input Type	Output Type	Description
RE1/P2C[1]/VLCD2	RE1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	P2C	—	CMOS	PWM output.
	VLCD2	AN	—	LCD analog input.
RE2/P2B[1]/VLCD3	RE2	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	P2B	—	CMOS	PWM output.
	VLCD3	AN	—	LCD analog input.
RE3/P3C[1]/COM0	RE3	TTL	—	General purpose input.
	P3C	—	CMOS	PWM output.
	COM0	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RE4/P3B[1]/COM1	RE4	TTL	—	General purpose input.
	P3B	—	CMOS	PWM output.
	COM1	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RE5/P1C[1]/COM2	RE5	TTL	—	General purpose input.
	P1C	—	CMOS	PWM output.
	COM2	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RE6/P1B[1]/COM3	RE6	TTL	—	General purpose input.
	P1B	—	CMOS	PWM output.
	COM3	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RE7/CCP2[1]/P2A[1]/SEG31	RE7	TTL	—	General purpose input.
	CCP2	ST	CMOS	Capture/Compare/PWM2.
	P2A	—	CMOS	PWM output.
	SEG31	—	AN	LCD analog output.
RF0/AN16/CPS16/C12IN0-/SEG41/VCAP	RF0	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN16	AN	—	A/D Channel 16 input.
	CPS16	AN	—	Capacitive sensing input 16.
	C1IN0-	AN	—	Comparator C1 negative input.
	C2IN0-	AN	—	Comparator C2 negative input.
	SEG41	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
	VCAP	Power	Power	Filter capacitor for Voltage Regulator.
RF1/AN6/CPS6/C2OUT/SRNQ/SEG19	RF1	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN6	AN	—	A/D Channel 6 input.
	CPS6	AN	—	Capacitive sensing input 6.
	C2OUT	—	CMOS	Comparator C2 output.
	SRNQ	—	CMOS	SR Latch inverting output.
	SEG19	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RF2/AN7/CPS7/C1OUT/SRQ/SEG20	RF2	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN7	AN	—	A/D Channel 7 input.
	CPS7	AN	—	Capacitive sensing input 7.
	C1OUT	—	CMOS	Comparator C1 output.
	SRQ	—	CMOS	SR Latch non-inverting output.
	SEG20	—	AN	LCD Analog output.

Legend: AN = Analog input or output; CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output; OD = Open Drain; TTL = TTL compatible input; ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels; I²C™ = Schmitt Trigger input with I²C levels; HV = High Voltage; XTAL = Crystal

Note 1: Pin function is selectable via the APFCON register.

TABLE 1-2: PIC16(L)F1946/1947 PINOUT DESCRIPTION (CONTINUED)

Name	Function	Input Type	Output Type	Description
RF3/AN8/CPS8/C123IN2-/SEG21	RF3	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN8	AN	—	A/D Channel 8 input.
	CPS8	AN	—	Capacitive sensing input 8.
	C1IN2-	AN	—	Comparator C1 negative input.
	C2IN2-	AN	—	Comparator C2 negative input.
	C3IN2-	AN	—	Comparator C3 negative input.
	SEG21	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RF4/AN9/CPS9/C2IN+/SEG22	RF4	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN9	AN	—	A/D Channel 9 input.
	CPS9	AN	—	Capacitive sensing input 9.
	C2IN+	AN	—	Comparator C2 positive input.
	SEG22	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RF5/AN10/CPS10/C12IN1-/DACOUT/SEG23	RF5	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN10	AN	—	A/D Channel 10 input.
	CPS10	AN	—	Capacitive sensing input 10.
	C1IN1-	AN	—	Comparator C1 negative input.
	C2IN1-	AN	—	Comparator C2 negative input.
	DACOUT	—	AN	Voltage Reference output.
	SEG23	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RF6/AN11/CPS11/C1IN+/SEG24	RF6	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN11	AN	—	A/D Channel 11 input.
	CPS11	AN	—	Capacitive sensing input 11.
	C1IN+	AN	—	Comparator C1 positive input.
	SEG24	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RF7/AN5/CPS5/C123IN3-/$\overline{\text{SS1}}$/SEG25	RF7	TTL	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN5	AN	—	A/D Channel 5 input.
	CPS5	AN	—	Capacitive sensing input 5.
	C1IN3-	AN	—	Comparator C1negative input.
	C2IN3-	AN	—	Comparator C2 negative input.
	C3IN3-	AN	—	Comparator C3 negative input.
	$\overline{\text{SS1}}$	ST	—	Slave Select input.
	SEG25	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RG0/CCP3/P3A/SEG42	RG0	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	CCP3	ST	CMOS	Capture/Compare/PWM3.
	P3A	—	CMOS	PWM output.
	SEG42	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RG1/AN15/CPS15/TX2/CK2/C3OUT/SEG43	RG1	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN15	AN	—	A/D Channel 15 input.
	CPS15	AN	—	Capacitive sensing input 15.
	TX2	—	CMOS	USART2 asynchronous transmit.
	CK2	ST	CMOS	USART2 synchronous clock.
	C3OUT	—	CMOS	Comparator C3 output.
	SEG43	—	AN	LCD Analog output.

Legend: AN = Analog input or output; CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output; OD = Open Drain; TTL = TTL compatible input; ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels; I^2C™ = Schmitt Trigger input with I^2C levels; HV = High Voltage; XTAL = Crystal

Note 1: Pin function is selectable via the APFCON register.

TABLE 1-2: PIC16(L)F1946/1947 PINOUT DESCRIPTION (CONTINUED)

Name	Function	Input Type	Output Type	Description
RG2/AN14/CPS14/RX2/DT2/ C3IN+/SEG44	RG2	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN14	AN	—	A/D Channel 14 input.
	CPS14	AN	—	Capacitive sensing input 14.
	RX2	ST	—	USART2 asynchronous input.
	DT2	ST	CMOS	USART2 synchronous data.
	C3IN+	AN	—	Comparator C3 positive input.
	SEG44	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RG3/AN13/CPS13/C3IN0-/ CCP4/P3D/SEG45	RG3	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN13	AN	—	A/D Channel 13 input.
	CPS13	AN	—	Capacitive sensing input 13.
	C3IN0-	AN	—	Comparator C3 negative input.
	CCP4	ST	CMOS	Capture/Compare/PWM4.
	P3D	—	CMOS	PWM output.
	SEG45	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RG4/AN12/CPS12/C3IN1-/ CCP5/P1D/SEG26	RG4	ST	CMOS	General purpose I/O.
	AN12	AN	—	A/D Channel 12 input.
	CPS12	AN	—	Capacitive sensing input 12.
	C3IN1-	AN	—	Comparator C3 negative input.
	CCP5	ST	CMOS	Capture/Compare/PWM5.
	P1D	—	CMOS	PWM output.
	SEG26	—	AN	LCD Analog output.
RG5/$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$/VPP	RG5	TTL	—	General purpose input.
	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$	ST	—	Master Clear with internal pull-up.
	VPP	HV	—	Programming voltage.
VDD	VDD	Power	—	Positive supply.
VSS	VSS	Power	—	Ground reference.

Legend: AN = Analog input or output; CMOS = CMOS compatible input or output; OD = Open Drain
TTL = TTL compatible input; ST = Schmitt Trigger input with CMOS levels; I^2C™ = Schmitt Trigger input with I^2C levels
HV = High Voltage; XTAL = Crystal

Note 1: Pin function is selectable via the APFCON register.

2.0 ENHANCED MID-RANGE CPU

This family of devices contain an enhanced mid-range 8-bit CPU core. The CPU has 49 instructions. Interrupt capability includes automatic context saving. The hardware stack is 16 levels deep and has Overflow and Underflow Reset capability. Direct, Indirect, and Relative addressing modes are available. Two File Select Registers (FSRs) provide the ability to read program and data memory.

- Automatic Interrupt Context Saving
- 16-level Stack with Overflow and Underflow
- File Select Registers
- Instruction Set

2.1 Automatic Interrupt Context Saving

During interrupts, certain registers are automatically saved in shadow registers and restored when returning from the interrupt. This saves stack space and user code. See **Section 7.5 "Automatic Context Saving"**, for more information.

2.2 16-level Stack with Overflow and Underflow

These devices have an external stack memory 15 bits wide and 16 words deep. A Stack Overflow or Underflow will set the appropriate bit (STKOVF or STKUNF) in the PCON register, and if enabled will cause a software Reset. See section **Section 3.4 "Stack"** for more details.

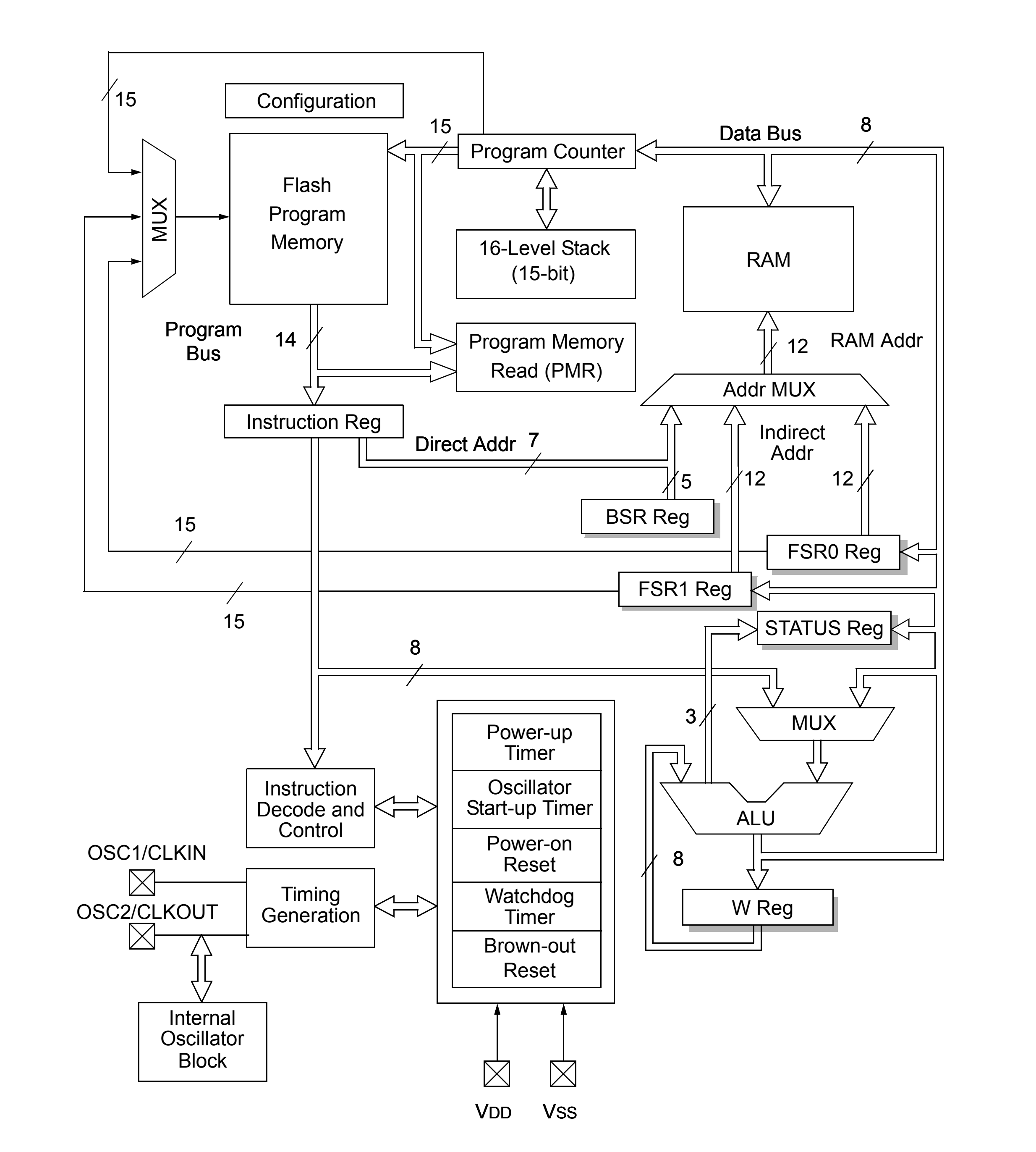
2.3 File Select Registers

There are two 16-bit File Select Registers (FSR). FSRs can access all file registers and program memory, which allows one data pointer for all memory. When an FSR points to program memory, there is 1 additional instruction cycle in instructions using INDF to allow the data to be fetched. General purpose memory can now also be addressed linearly, providing the ability to access contiguous data larger than 80 bytes. There are also new instructions to support the FSRs. See **Section 3.5 "Indirect Addressing"** for more details.

2.4 Instruction Set

There are 49 instructions for the enhanced mid-range CPU to support the features of the CPU. See **Section 29.0 "Instruction Set Summary"** for more details.

FIGURE 2-1: CORE BLOCK DIAGRAM



3.0 MEMORY ORGANIZATION

There are three types of memory in PIC16F/LF1946/47 devices: Data Memory, Program Memory and Data EEPROM Memory[(1)].

- Program Memory
- Data Memory
  - Core Registers
  - Special Function Registers
  - General Purpose RAM
  - Common RAM
  - Device Memory Maps
  - Special Function Registers Summary
- Data EEPROM memory[(1)]

> **Note 1:** The data EEPROM memory and the method to access Flash memory through the EECON registers is described in **Section 11.0 "Data EEPROM and Flash Program Memory Control"**.

The following features are associated with access and control of program memory and data memory:

- PCL and PCLATH
- Stack
- Indirect Addressing

3.1 Program Memory Organization

The enhanced mid-range core has a 15-bit program counter capable of addressing 32K x 14 program memory space. Table 3-1 shows the memory sizes implemented for the PIC16F/LF1946/47 family. Accessing a location above these boundaries will cause a wrap-around within the implemented memory space. The Reset vector is at 0000h and the interrupt vector is at 0004h (see Figures 3-1 and 3-2).

TABLE 3-1: DEVICE SIZES AND ADDRESSES

Device	Program Memory Space (Words)	Last Program Memory Address
PIC16F/LF1946	8,192	1FFFh
PIC16F/LF1947	16,384	3FFFh

FIGURE 3-1: PROGRAM MEMORY MAP AND STACK FOR PIC16F/LF1946

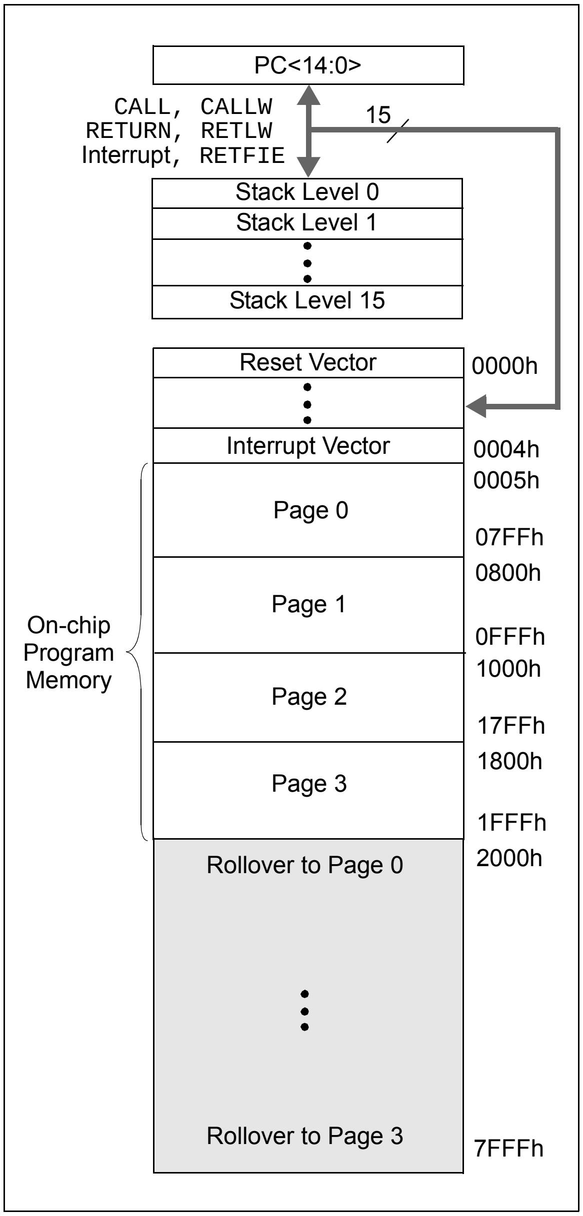
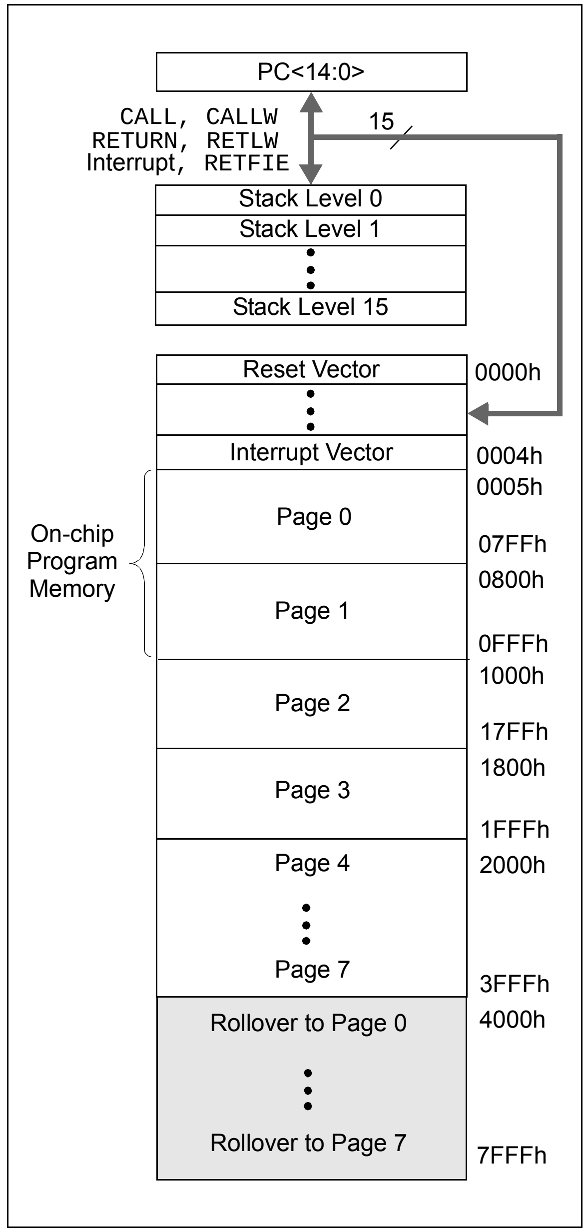


FIGURE 3-2: PROGRAM MEMORY MAP AND STACK FOR PIC16F/LF1947



 Preliminary

3.1.1 READING PROGRAM MEMORY AS DATA

There are two methods of accessing constants in program memory. The first method is to use tables of RETLW instructions. The second method is to set an FSR to point to the program memory.

3.1.1.1 RETLW Instruction

The RETLW instruction can be used to provide access to tables of constants. The recommended way to create such a table is shown in Example 3-1.

EXAMPLE 3-1: RETLW INSTRUCTION

```
constants
    BRW                 ;Add Index in W to
                        ;program counter to
                        ;select data
    RETLW DATA0         ;Index0 data
    RETLW DATA1         ;Index1 data
    RETLW DATA2
    RETLW DATA3


my_function
    ;… LOTS OF CODE…
    MOVLW       DATA_INDEX
    CALL constants
    ;… THE CONSTANT IS IN W
```

The BRW instruction makes this type of table very simple to implement. If your code must remain portable with previous generations of microcontrollers, then the BRW instruction is not available so the older table read method must be used.

3.1.1.2 Indirect Read with FSR

The program memory can be accessed as data by setting bit 7 of the FSRxH register and reading the matching INDFx register. The `MOVIW` instruction will place the lower 8 bits of the addressed word in the W register. Writes to the program memory cannot be performed via the INDF registers. Instructions that access the program memory via the FSR require one extra instruction cycle to complete. Example 3-2 demonstrates accessing the program memory via an FSR.

The HIGH directive will set bit<7> if a label points to a location in program memory.

EXAMPLE 3-2: ACCESSING PROGRAM MEMORY VIA FSR

```
constants
    RETLW DATA0        ;Index0 data
    RETLW DATA1        ;Index1 data
    RETLW DATA2
    RETLW DATA3
my_function
    ;… LOTS OF CODE…
    MOVLW   LOW constants
    MOVWF   FSR1L
    MOVLW   HIGH constants
    MOVWF   FSR1H
    MOVIW 0[FSR1]
;THE PROGRAM MEMORY IS IN W
```

3.2 Data Memory Organization

The data memory is partitioned in 32 memory banks with 128 bytes in a bank. Each bank consists of (Figure 3-3):

- 12 core registers
- 20 Special Function Registers (SFR)
- Up to 80 bytes of General Purpose RAM (GPR)
- 16 bytes of common RAM

The active bank is selected by writing the bank number into the Bank Select Register (BSR). Unimplemented memory will read as '0'. All data memory can be accessed either directly (via instructions that use the file registers) or indirectly via the two File Select Registers (FSR). See **Section 3.5 "Indirect Addressing"** for more information.

3.2.1 CORE REGISTERS

The core registers contain the registers that directly affect the basic operation of the PIC16F/LF1946/47. These registers are listed below:

- INDF0
- INDF1
- PCL
- STATUS
- FSR0 Low
- FSR0 High
- FSR1 Low
- FSR1 High
- BSR
- WREG
- PCLATH
- INTCON

Note:	The core registers are the first 12 addresses of every data memory bank.

3.2.1.1 STATUS Register

The STATUS register, shown in Register 3-1, contains:

- the arithmetic status of the ALU
- the Reset status

The STATUS register can be the destination for any instruction, like any other register. If the STATUS register is the destination for an instruction that affects the Z, DC or C bits, then the write to these three bits is disabled. These bits are set or cleared according to the device logic. Furthermore, the $\overline{\text{TO}}$ and $\overline{\text{PD}}$ bits are not writable. Therefore, the result of an instruction with the STATUS register as destination may be different than intended.

For example, `CLRF STATUS` will clear the upper three bits and set the Z bit. This leaves the STATUS register as ‘`000u u1uu`’ (where u = unchanged).

It is recommended, therefore, that only `BCF`, `BSF`, `SWAPF` and `MOVWF` instructions are used to alter the STATUS register, because these instructions do not affect any Status bits. For other instructions not affecting any Status bits (Refer to **Section 29.0 “Instruction Set Summary”**).

> **Note 1:** The C and DC bits operate as $\overline{\text{Borrow}}$ and $\overline{\text{Digit Borrow}}$ out bits, respectively, in subtraction.

REGISTER 3-1: STATUS: STATUS REGISTER

U-0	U-0	U-0	R-1/q	R-1/q	R/W-0/u	R/W-0/u	R/W-0/u
—	—	—	$\overline{\text{TO}}$	$\overline{\text{PD}}$	Z	DC(1)	C(1)
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	q = Value depends on condition

bit 7-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘`0`’

bit 4 **$\overline{\text{TO}}$:** Time-out bit
`1` = After power-up, `CLRWDT` instruction or `SLEEP` instruction
`0` = A WDT time-out occurred

bit 3 **$\overline{\text{PD}}$:** Power-down bit
`1` = After power-up or by the `CLRWDT` instruction
`0` = By execution of the `SLEEP` instruction

bit 2 **Z:** Zero bit
`1` = The result of an arithmetic or logic operation is zero
`0` = The result of an arithmetic or logic operation is not zero

bit 1 **DC:** Digit Carry/$\overline{\text{Digit Borrow}}$ bit (`ADDWF`, `ADDLW`, `SUBLW`, `SUBWF` instructions)(1)
`1` = A carry-out from the 4th low-order bit of the result occurred
`0` = No carry-out from the 4th low-order bit of the result

bit 0 **C:** Carry/$\overline{\text{Borrow}}$ bit(1) (`ADDWF`, `ADDLW`, `SUBLW`, `SUBWF` instructions)(1)
`1` = A carry-out from the Most Significant bit of the result occurred
`0` = No carry-out from the Most Significant bit of the result occurred

Note 1: For $\overline{\text{Borrow}}$, the polarity is reversed. A subtraction is executed by adding the two’s complement of the second operand. For rotate (`RRF`, `RLF`) instructions, this bit is loaded with either the high-order or low-order bit of the source register.

3.2.2 SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTER

The Special Function Registers are registers used by the application to control the desired operation of peripheral functions in the device. The registers associated with the operation of the peripherals are described in the appropriate peripheral chapter of this data sheet.

3.2.3 GENERAL PURPOSE RAM

There are up to 80 bytes of GPR in each data memory bank.

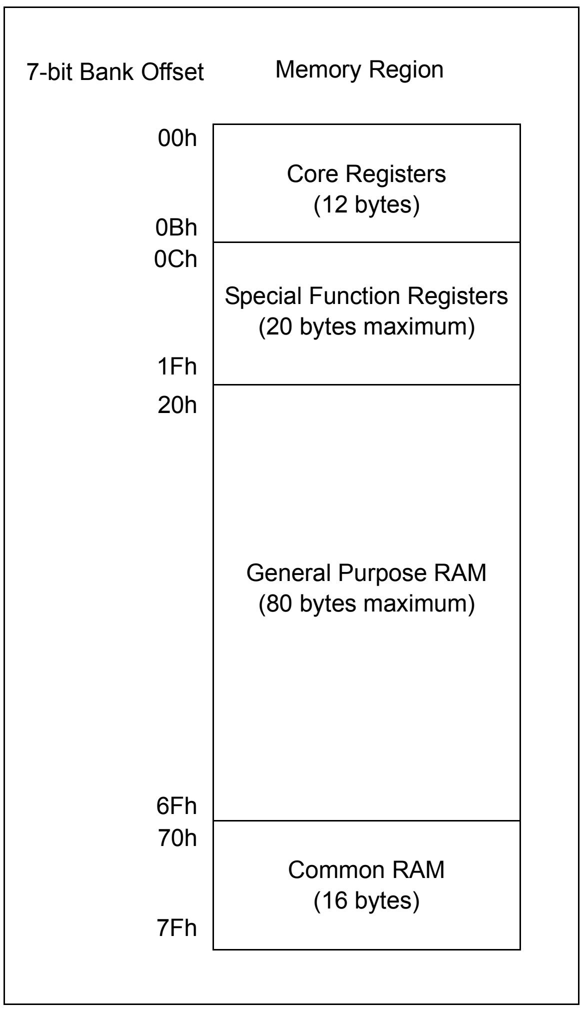
3.2.3.1 Linear Access to GPR

The general purpose RAM can be accessed in a non-banked method via the FSRs. This can simplify access to large memory structures. See **Section 3.5.2 "Linear Data Memory"** for more information.

3.2.4 COMMON RAM

There are 16 bytes of common RAM accessible from all banks.

FIGURE 3-3: BANKED MEMORY PARTITIONING



3.2.5 DEVICE MEMORY MAPS

The memory maps for the device family are as shown in Table 3-2.

TABLE 3-2: MEMORY MAP TABLES

Device	Banks	Table No.
PIC16F/LF1946/47	0-7	Table 3-3
	8-15	Table 3-4, Table 3-7
	16-23	Table 3-5
	23-31	Table 3-6, Table 3-8

TABLE 3-3: PIC16F/LF1946/1947 MEMORY MAP, BANKS 0-7

	BANK 0		BANK 1		BANK 2		BANK 3		BANK 4		BANK 5		BANK 6		BANK 7
000h	INDF0	080h	INDF0	100h	INDF0	180h	INDF0	200h	INDF0	280h	INDF0	300h	INDF0	380h	INDF0
001h	INDF1	081h	INDF1	101h	INDF1	181h	INDF1	201h	INDF1	281h	INDF1	301h	INDF1	381h	INDF1
002h	PCL	082h	PCL	102h	PCL	182h	PCL	202h	PCL	282h	PCL	302h	PCL	382h	PCL
003h	STATUS	083h	STATUS	103h	STATUS	183h	STATUS	203h	STATUS	283h	STATUS	303h	STATUS	383h	STATUS
004h	FSR0L	084h	FSR0L	104h	FSR0L	184h	FSR0L	204h	FSR0L	284h	FSR0L	304h	FSR0L	384h	FSR0L
005h	FSR0H	085h	FSR0H	105h	FSR0H	185h	FSR0H	205h	FSR0H	285h	FSR0H	305h	FSR0H	385h	FSR0H
006h	FSR1L	086h	FSR1L	106h	FSR1L	186h	FSR1L	206h	FSR1L	286h	FSR1L	306h	FSR1L	386h	FSR1L
007h	FSR1H	087h	FSR1H	107h	FSR1H	187h	FSR1H	207h	FSR1H	287h	FSR1H	307h	FSR1H	387h	FSR1H
008h	BSR	088h	BSR	108h	BSR	188h	BSR	208h	BSR	288h	BSR	308h	BSR	388h	BSR
009h	WREG	089h	WREG	109h	WREG	189h	WREG	209h	WREG	289h	WREG	309h	WREG	389h	WREG
00Ah	PCLATH	08Ah	PCLATH	10Ah	PCLATH	18Ah	PCLATH	20Ah	PCLATH	28Ah	PCLATH	30Ah	PCLATH	38Ah	PCLATH
00Bh	INTCON	08Bh	INTCON	10Bh	INTCON	18Bh	INTCON	20Bh	INTCON	28Bh	INTCON	30Bh	INTCON	38Bh	INTCON
00Ch	PORTA	08Ch	TRISA	10Ch	LATA	18Ch	ANSELA	20Ch	—	28Ch	PORTF	30Ch	TRISF	38Ch	LATF
00Dh	PORTB	08Dh	TRISB	10Dh	LATB	18Dh	—	20Dh	WPUB	28Dh	PORTG	30Dh	TRISG	38Dh	LATG
00Eh	PORTC	08Eh	TRISC	10Eh	LATC	18Eh	—	20Eh	—	28Eh	—	30Eh	—	38Eh	—
00Fh	PORTD	08Fh	TRISD	10Fh	LATD	18Fh	—	20Fh	—	28Fh	—	30Fh	—	38Fh	—
010h	PORTE	090h	TRISE	110h	LATE	190h	ANSELE	210h	—	290h	—	310h	—	390h	—
011h	PIR1	091h	PIE1	111h	CM1CON0	191h	EEADRL	211h	SSP1BUF	291h	CCPR1L	311h	CCPR3L	391h	—
012h	PIR2	092h	PIE2	112h	CM1CON1	192h	EEADRH	212h	SSP1ADD	292h	CCPR1H	312h	CCPR3H	392h	—
013h	PIR3	093h	PIE3	113h	CM2CON0	193h	EEDATL	213h	SSP1MSK	293h	CCP1CON	313h	CCP3CON	393h	—
014h	PIR4	094h	PIE4	114h	CM2CON1	194h	EEDATH	214h	SSP1STAT	294h	PWM1CON	314h	PWM3CON	394h	IOCBP
015h	TMR0	095h	OPTION	115h	CMOUT	195h	EECON1	215h	SSP1CON1	295h	CCP1AS	315h	CCP3AS	395h	IOCBN
016h	TMR1L	096h	PCON	116h	BORCON	196h	EECON2	216h	SSP1CON2	296h	PSTR1CON	316h	PSTR3CON	396h	IOCBF
017h	TMR1H	097h	WDTCON	117h	FVRCON	197h	—	217h	SSP1CON3	297h	—	317h	—	397h	—
018h	T1CON	098h	OSCTUNE	118h	DACCON0	198h	—	218h	—	298h	CCPR2L	318h	CCPR4L	398h	—
019h	T1GCON	099h	OSCCON	119h	DACCON1	199h	RC1REG	219h	SSP2BUF	299h	CCPR2H	319h	CCPR4H	399h	—
01Ah	TMR2	09Ah	OSCSTAT	11Ah	SRCON0	19Ah	TX1REG	21Ah	SSP2ADD	29Ah	CCP2CON	31Ah	CCP4CON	39Ah	—
01Bh	PR2	09Bh	ADRESL	11Bh	SRCON1	19Bh	SP1BRGL	21Bh	SSP2MSK	29Bh	PWM2CON	31Bh	—	39Bh	—
01Ch	T2CON	09Ch	ADRESH	11Ch	—	19Ch	SP1BRGH	21Ch	SSP2STAT	29Ch	CCP2AS	31Ch	CCPR5L	39Ch	—
01Dh	—	09Dh	ADCON0	11Dh	APFCON	19Dh	RC1STA	21Dh	SSP2CON1	29Dh	PSTR2CON	31Dh	CCPR5H	39Dh	—
01Eh	CPSCON0	09Eh	ADCON1	11Eh	CM3CON0	19Eh	TX1STA	21Eh	SSP2CON2	29Eh	CCPTMRS0	31Eh	CCP5CON	39Eh	—
01Fh	CPSCON1	09Fh	—	11Fh	CM3CON1	19Fh	BAUD1CON	21Fh	SSP2CON3	29Fh	CCPTMRS1	31Fh	—	39Fh	—
020h–06Fh	General Purpose Register 96 Bytes	0A0h–0EFh	General Purpose Register 80 Bytes	120h–16Fh	General Purpose Register 80 Bytes	1A0h–1EFh	General Purpose Register 80 Bytes	220h–26Fh	General Purpose Register 80 Bytes	2A0h–2EFh	General Purpose Register 80 Bytes	320h–32Fh	General Purpose Register 16 Bytes	3A0h–3EFh	General Purpose Register 80 Bytes[1]
												330h–36Fh	General Purpose Register 64 Bytes[1]		
070h–07Fh		0F0h–0FFh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh	170h–17Fh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh	1F0h–1FFh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh	270h–27Fh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh	2F0h–2FFh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh	370h–37Fh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh	3F0h–3FFh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh

Legend: (shaded) = Unimplemented data memory locations, read as '0'.

Note 1: Not available on PIC16F1946.

TABLE 3-4: PIC16F/LF1946/1947 MEMORY MAP, BANKS 8-15

	BANK 8		BANK 9		BANK 10		BANK 11		BANK 12		BANK 13		BANK 14		BANK 15
400h	INDF0	480h	INDF0	500h	INDF0	580h	INDF0	600h	INDF0	680h	INDF0	700h	INDF0	780h	INDF0
401h	INDF1	481h	INDF1	501h	INDF1	581h	INDF1	601h	INDF1	681h	INDF1	701h	INDF1	781h	INDF1
402h	PCL	482h	PCL	502h	PCL	582h	PCL	602h	PCL	682h	PCL	702h	PCL	782h	PCL
403h	STATUS	483h	STATUS	503h	STATUS	583h	STATUS	603h	STATUS	683h	STATUS	703h	STATUS	783h	STATUS
404h	FSR0L	484h	FSR0L	504h	FSR0L	584h	FSR0L	604h	FSR0L	684h	FSR0L	704h	FSR0L	784h	FSR0L
405h	FSR0H	485h	FSR0H	505h	FSR0H	585h	FSR0H	605h	FSR0H	685h	FSR0H	705h	FSR0H	785h	FSR0H
406h	FSR1L	486h	FSR1L	506h	FSR1L	586h	FSR1L	606h	FSR1L	686h	FSR1L	706h	FSR1L	786h	FSR1L
407h	FSR1H	487h	FSR1H	507h	FSR1H	587h	FSR1H	607h	FSR1H	687h	FSR1H	707h	FSR1H	787h	FSR1H
408h	BSR	488h	BSR	508h	BSR	588h	BSR	608h	BSR	688h	BSR	708h	BSR	788h	BSR
409h	WREG	489h	WREG	509h	WREG	589h	WREG	609h	WREG	689h	WREG	709h	WREG	789h	WREG
40Ah	PCLATH	48Ah	PCLATH	50Ah	PCLATH	58Ah	PCLATH	60Ah	PCLATH	68Ah	PCLATH	70Ah	PCLATH	78Ah	PCLATH
40Bh	INTCON	48Bh	INTCON	50Bh	INTCON	58Bh	INTCON	60Bh	INTCON	68Bh	INTCON	70Bh	INTCON	78Bh	INTCON
40Ch	ANSELF	48Ch	—	50Ch	—	58Ch	—	60Ch	—	68Ch	—	70Ch	—	78Ch	—
40Dh	ANSELG	48Dh	WPUG	50Dh	—	58Dh	—	60Dh	—	68Dh	—	70Dh	—	78Dh	—
40Eh	—	48Eh	—	50Eh	—	58Eh	—	60Eh	—	68Eh	—	70Eh	—	78Eh	—
40Fh	—	48Fh	—	50Fh	—	58Fh	—	60Fh	—	68Fh	—	70Fh	—	78Fh	—
410h	—	490h	—	510h	—	590h	—	610h	—	690h	—	710h	—	790h	—
411h	—	491h	RC2REG	511h	—	591h	—	611h	—	691h	—	711h	—	791h	
412h	—	492h	TX2REG	512h	—	592h	—	612h	—	692h	—	712h	—	792h	
413h	—	493h	SP2BRG	513h	—	593h	—	613h	—	693h	—	713h	—	793h	
414h	—	494h	SP2BRGH	514h	—	594h	—	614h	—	694h	—	714h	—	794h	
415h	TMR4	495h	RC2STA	515h	—	595h	—	615h	—	695h	—	715h	—	795h	
416h	PR4	496h	TX2STA	516h	—	596h	—	616h	—	696h	—	716h	—	796h	
417h	T4CON	497h	BAUDCON2	517h	—	597h	—	617h	—	697h	—	717h	—	797h	
418h	—	498h	—	518h	—	598h	—	618h	—	698h	—	718h	—	798h	
419h	—	499h	—	519h	—	599h	—	619h	—	699h	—	719h	—	799h	
41Ah	—	49Ah	—	51Ah	—	59Ah	—	61Ah	—	69Ah	—	71Ah	—	79Ah	
41Bh	—	49Bh	—	51Bh	—	59Bh	—	61Bh	—	69Bh	—	71Bh	—	79Bh	See Table 3-7
41Ch	TMR6	49Ch	—	51Ch	—	59Ch	—	61Ch	—	69Ch	—	71Ch	—	79Ch	
41Dh	PR6	49Dh	—	51Dh	—	59Dh	—	61Dh	—	69Dh	—	71Dh	—	79Dh	
41Eh	T6CON	49Eh	—	51Eh	—	59Eh	—	61Eh	—	69Eh	—	71Eh	—	79Eh	
41Fh	—	49Fh	—	51Fh	—	59Fh	—	61Fh	—	69Fh	—	71Fh	—	79Fh	
420h 46Fh	General Purpose Register 80 Bytes(1)	4A0h 4EFh	General Purpose Register 80 Bytes(1)	520h 56Fh	General Purpose Register 80 Bytes(1)	5A0h 5EFh	General Purpose Register 80 Bytes(1)	620h 66Fh	General Purpose Register 48 Bytes(1) Unimplemented Read as ‘0’	6A0h 6EFh	Unimplemented Read as ‘0’	720h 76Fh	Unimplemented Read as ‘0’	7A0h 7EFh	
470h 47Fh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh	4F0h 4FFh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh	570h 57Fh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh	5F0h 5FFh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh	670h 67Fh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh	6F0h 6FFh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh	770h 77Fh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh	7F0h 7FFh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh

Legend: (shaded) = Unimplemented data memory locations, read as ‘0’

Note 1: Not available on PIC16F1946.

Preliminary

TABLE 3-5: PIC16F/LF1946/47 MEMORY MAP, BANKS 16-23

	BANK 16		BANK 17		BANK 18		BANK 19		BANK 20		BANK 21		BANK 22		BANK 23
800h	INDF0	880h	INDF0	900h	INDF0	980h	INDF0	A00h	INDF0	A80h	INDF0	B00h	INDF0	B80h	INDF0
801h	INDF1	881h	INDF1	901h	INDF1	981h	INDF1	A01h	INDF1	A81h	INDF1	B01h	INDF1	B81h	INDF1
802h	PCL	882h	PCL	902h	PCL	982h	PCL	A02h	PCL	A82h	PCL	B02h	PCL	B82h	PCL
803h	STATUS	883h	STATUS	903h	STATUS	983h	STATUS	A03h	STATUS	A83h	STATUS	B03h	STATUS	B83h	STATUS
804h	FSR0L	884h	FSR0L	904h	FSR0L	984h	FSR0L	A04h	FSR0L	A84h	FSR0L	B04h	FSR0L	B84h	FSR0L
805h	FSR0H	885h	FSR0H	905h	FSR0H	985h	FSR0H	A05h	FSR0H	A85h	FSR0H	B05h	FSR0H	B85h	FSR0H
806h	FSR1L	886h	FSR1L	906h	FSR1L	986h	FSR1L	A06h	FSR1L	A86h	FSR1L	B06h	FSR1L	B86h	FSR1L
807h	FSR1H	887h	FSR1H	907h	FSR1H	987h	FSR1H	A07h	FSR1H	A87h	FSR1H	B07h	FSR1H	B87h	FSR1H
808h	BSR	888h	BSR	908h	BSR	988h	BSR	A08h	BSR	A88h	BSR	B08h	BSR	B88h	BSR
809h	WREG	889h	WREG	909h	WREG	989h	WREG	A09h	WREG	A89h	WREG	B09h	WREG	B89h	WREG
80Ah	PCLATH	88Ah	PCLATH	90Ah	PCLATH	98Ah	PCLATH	A0Ah	PCLATH	A8Ah	PCLATH	B0Ah	PCLATH	B8Ah	PCLATH
80Bh	INTCON	88Bh	INTCON	90Bh	INTCON	98Bh	INTCON	A0Bh	INTCON	A8Bh	INTCON	B0Bh	INTCON	B8Bh	INTCON
80Ch	—	88Ch	—	90Ch	—	98Ch	—	A0Ch	—	A8Ch	—	B0Ch	—	B8Ch	—
80Dh	—	88Dh	—	90Dh	—	98Dh	—	A0Dh	—	A8Dh	—	B0Dh	—	B8Dh	—
80Eh	—	88Eh	—	90Eh	—	98Eh	—	A0Eh	—	A8Eh	—	B0Eh	—	B8Eh	—
80Fh	—	88Fh	—	90Fh	—	98Fh	—	A0Fh	—	A8Fh	—	B0Fh	—	B8Fh	—
810h	—	890h	—	910h	—	990h	—	A10h	—	A90h	—	B10h	—	B90h	—
811h	—	891h	—	911h	—	991h	—	A11h	—	A91h	—	B11h	—	B91h	—
812h	—	892h	—	912h	—	992h	—	A12h	—	A92h	—	B12h	—	B92h	—
813h	—	893h	—	913h	—	993h	—	A13h	—	A93h	—	B13h	—	B93h	—
814h	—	894h	—	914h	—	994h	—	A14h	—	A94h	—	B14h	—	B94h	—
815h	—	895h	—	915h	—	995h	—	A15h	—	A95h	—	B15h	—	B95h	—
816h	—	896h	—	916h	—	996h	—	A16h	—	A96h	—	B16h	—	B96h	—
817h	—	897h	—	917h	—	997h	—	A17h	—	A97h	—	B17h	—	B97h	—
818h	—	898h	—	918h	—	998h	—	A18h	—	A98h	—	B18h	—	B98h	—
819h	—	899h	—	919h	—	999h	—	A19h	—	A99h	—	B19h	—	B99h	—
81Ah	—	89Ah	—	91Ah	—	99Ah	—	A1Ah	—	A9Ah	—	B1Ah	—	B9Ah	—
81Bh	—	89Bh	—	91Bh	—	99Bh	—	A1Bh	—	A9Bh	—	B1Bh	—	B9Bh	—
81Ch	—	89Ch	—	91Ch	—	99Ch	—	A1Ch	—	A9Ch	—	B1Ch	—	B9Ch	—
81Dh	—	89Dh	—	91Dh	—	99Dh	—	A1Dh	—	A9Dh	—	B1Dh	—	B9Dh	—
81Eh	—	89Eh	—	91Eh	—	99Eh	—	A1Eh	—	A9Eh	—	B1Eh	—	B9Eh	—
81Fh	—	89Fh	—	91Fh	—	99Fh	—	A1Fh	—	A9Fh	—	B1Fh	—	B9Fh	—
820h 86Fh	Unimplemented Read as '0'	8A0h 8EFh	Unimplemented Read as '0'	920h 96Fh	Unimplemented Read as '0'	9A0h 9EFh	Unimplemented Read as '0'	A20h A6Fh	Unimplemented Read as '0'	AA0h AEFh	Unimplemented Read as '0'	B20h B6Fh	Unimplemented Read as '0'	BA0h BEFh	Unimplemented Read as '0'
870h 87Fh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh	8F0h 8FFh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh	970h 97Fh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh	9F0h 9FFh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh	A70h A7Fh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh	AF0h AFFh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh	B70h B7Fh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh	BF0h BFFh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh

Legend: = Unimplemented data memory locations, read as '0'.

Preliminary

TABLE 3-6: PIC16F/LF1946/47 MEMORY MAP, BANKS 24-31

	BANK 24		BANK 25		BANK 26		BANK 27		BANK 28		BANK 29		BANK 30		BANK 31
C00h	INDF0	C80h	INDF0	D00h	INDF0	D80h	INDF0	E00h	INDF0	E80h	INDF0	F00h	INDF0	F80h	INDF0
C01h	INDF1	C81h	INDF1	D01h	INDF1	D81h	INDF1	E01h	INDF1	E81h	INDF1	F01h	INDF1	F81h	INDF1
C02h	PCL	C82h	PCL	D02h	PCL	D82h	PCL	E02h	PCL	E82h	PCL	F02h	PCL	F82h	PCL
C03h	STATUS	C83h	STATUS	D03h	STATUS	D83h	STATUS	E03h	STATUS	E83h	STATUS	F03h	STATUS	F83h	STATUS
C04h	FSR0L	C84h	FSR0L	D04h	FSR0L	D84h	FSR0L	E04h	FSR0L	E84h	FSR0L	F04h	FSR0L	F84h	FSR0L
C05h	FSR0H	C85h	FSR0H	D05h	FSR0H	D85h	FSR0H	E05h	FSR0H	E85h	FSR0H	F05h	FSR0H	F85h	FSR0H
C06h	FSR1L	C86h	FSR1L	D06h	FSR1L	D86h	FSR1L	E06h	FSR1L	E86h	FSR1L	F06h	FSR1L	F86h	FSR1L
C07h	FSR1H	C87h	FSR1H	D07h	FSR1H	D87h	FSR1H	E07h	FSR1H	E87h	FSR1H	F07h	FSR1H	F87h	FSR1H
C08h	BSR	C88h	BSR	D08h	BSR	D88h	BSR	E08h	BSR	E88h	BSR	F08h	BSR	F88h	BSR
C09h	WREG	C89h	WREG	D09h	WREG	D89h	WREG	E09h	WREG	E89h	WREG	F09h	WREG	F89h	WREG
C0Ah	PCLATH	C8Ah	PCLATH	D0Ah	PCLATH	D8Ah	PCLATH	E0Ah	PCLATH	E8Ah	PCLATH	F0Ah	PCLATH	F8Ah	PCLATH
C0Bh	INTCON	C8Bh	INTCON	D0Bh	INTCON	D8Bh	INTCON	E0Bh	INTCON	E8Bh	INTCON	F0Bh	INTCON	F8Bh	INTCON
C0Ch	—	C8Ch	—	D0Ch	—	D8Ch	—	E0Ch	—	E8Ch	—	F0Ch	—	F8Ch	See Table 3-8
C0Dh	—	C8Dh	—	D0Dh	—	D8Dh	—	E0Dh	—	E8Dh	—	F0Dh	—	F8Dh	
C0Eh	—	C8Eh	—	D0Eh	—	D8Eh	—	E0Eh	—	E8Eh	—	F0Eh	—	F8Eh	
C0Fh	—	C8Fh	—	D0Fh	—	D8Fh	—	E0Fh	—	E8Fh	—	F0Fh	—	F8Fh	
C10h	—	C90h	—	D10h	—	D90h	—	E10h	—	E90h	—	F10h	—	F90h	
C11h	—	C91h	—	D11h	—	D91h	—	E11h	—	E91h	—	F11h	—	F91h	
C12h	—	C92h	—	D12h	—	D92h	—	E12h	—	E92h	—	F12h	—	F92h	
C13h	—	C93h	—	D13h	—	D93h	—	E13h	—	E93h	—	F13h	—	F93h	
C14h	—	C94h	—	D14h	—	D94h	—	E14h	—	E94h	—	F14h	—	F94h	
C15h	—	C95h	—	D15h	—	D95h	—	E15h	—	E95h	—	F15h	—	F95h	
C16h	—	C96h	—	D16h	—	D96h	—	E16h	—	E96h	—	F16h	—	F96h	
C17h	—	C97h	—	D17h	—	D97h	—	E17h	—	E97h	—	F17h	—	F97h	
C18h	—	C98h	—	D18h	—	D98h	—	E18h	—	E98h	—	F18h	—	F98h	
C19h	—	C99h	—	D19h	—	D99h	—	E19h	—	E99h	—	F19h	—	F99h	
C1Ah	—	C9Ah	—	D1Ah	—	D9Ah	—	E1Ah	—	E9Ah	—	F1Ah	—	F9Ah	
C1Bh	—	C9Bh	—	D1Bh	—	D9Bh	—	E1Bh	—	E9Bh	—	F1Bh	—	F9Bh	
C1Ch	—	C9Ch	—	D1Ch	—	D9Ch	—	E1Ch	—	E9Ch	—	F1Ch	—	F9Ch	
C1Dh	—	C9Dh	—	D1Dh	—	D9Dh	—	E1Dh	—	E9Dh	—	F1Dh	—	F9Dh	
C1Eh	—	C9Eh	—	D1Eh	—	D9Eh	—	E1Eh	—	E9Eh	—	F1Eh	—	F9Eh	
C1Fh	—	C9Fh	—	D1Fh	—	D9Fh	—	E1Fh	—	E9Fh	—	F1Fh	—	F9Fh	
C20h–C6Fh	Unimplemented Read as '0'	CA0h–CEFh	Unimplemented Read as '0'	D20h–D6Fh	Unimplemented Read as '0'	DA0h–DEFh	Unimplemented Read as '0'	E20h–E6Fh	Unimplemented Read as '0'	EA0h–EEFh	Unimplemented Read as '0'	F20h–F6Fh	Unimplemented Read as '0'	FA0h–FEFh	
C70h–CFFh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh	CF0h–CFFh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh	D70h–D7Fh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh	DF0h–DFFh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh	E70h–E7Fh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh	EF0h–EFFh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh	F70h–F7Fh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh	FF0h–FFFh	Accesses 70h – 7Fh

Legend: ▢ = Unimplemented data memory locations, read as '0'.

TABLE 3-7: PIC16F/LF1946/47 MEMORY MAP, BANK 15

Bank 15	
791h	LCDCON
792h	LCDPS
793h	LCDREF
794h	LCDCST
795h	LCDRL
796h	—
797h	—
798h	LCDSE0
799h	LCDSE1
79Ah	LCDSE2
79Bh	LCDSE3
79Ch	LCDSE4
79Dh	LCDSE5
79Eh	—
79Fh	—
7A0h	LCDDATA0
7A1h	LCDDATA1
7A2h	LCDDATA2
7A3h	LCDDATA3
7A4h	LCDDATA4
7A5h	LCDDATA5
7A6h	LCDDATA6
7A7h	LCDDATA7
7A8h	LCDDATA8
7A9h	LCDDATA9
7AAh	LCDDATA10
7ABh	LCDDATA11
7ACh	LCDDATA12
7ADh	LCDDATA13
7AEh	LCDDATA14
7AFh	LCDDATA15
7B0h	LCDDATA16
7B1h	LCDDATA17
7B2h	LCDDATA18
7B3h	LCDDATA19
7B4h	LCDDATA20
7B5h	LCDDATA21
7B6h	LCDDATA22
7B7h	LCDDATA23
7B8h … 7EFh	Unimplemented Read as '0'

Legend: ░ = Unimplemented data memory locations, read as '0'.

TABLE 3-8: PIC16F/LF1946/47 MEMORY MAP, BANK 31

Bank 31	
F8Ch	—
F8Dh	—
F8Eh	—
F8Fh	—
F90h	—
F91h	—
F92h	—
F93h	—
F94h	—
F95h	—
F96h	—
F97h	—
F98h	—
F99h	—
F9Ah	—
F9Bh	—
F9Ch	—
F9Dh	—
F9Eh	—
F9Fh	—
FA0h	—
FA1h	—
FA2h	—
FA3h	—
FA4h	—
FA5h	—
FA6h	—
FA7h	—
FA8h	—
FA9h	—
FAAh	—
FABh	—
FDFh	—
FC0h	—
FDFh	—
FE0h	—
FE1h	—
FE2h	—
FE3h	—
FE4h	STATUS_SHAD
FE5h	WREG_SHAD
FE6h	BSR_SHAD
FE7h	PCLATH_SHAD
FE8h	FSR0L_SHAD
FE9h	FSR0H_SHAD
FEAh	FSR1L_SHAD
FEBh	FSR1H_SHAD
FECh	—
FEDh	STKPTR
FEEh	TOSL
FEFh	TOSH

Legend: ░ = Unimplemented data memory locations, read as '0'.

3.2.6 SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTERS SUMMARY

The Special Function Register Summary for the device family are as follows:

Device	Bank(s)	Page No.
PIC16(L)F1946/1947	0	33
	1	34
	2	35
	3	36
	4	37
	5	38
	6	39
	7	40
	8	41
	9-14	43
	15	44
	16-30	46
	31	47

TABLE 3-9: SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTER SUMMARY

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
Bank 0											
000h(2)	INDF0	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR0H/FSR0L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
001h(2)	INDF1	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR1H/FSR1L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
002h(2)	PCL	Program Counter (PC) Least Significant Byte								0000 0000	0000 0000
003h(2)	STATUS	—	—	—	$\overline{\text{TO}}$	$\overline{\text{PD}}$	Z	DC	C	---1 1000	---q quuu
004h(2)	FSR0L	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
005h(2)	FSR0H	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
006h(2)	FSR1L	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
007h(2)	FSR1H	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
008h(2)	BSR	—	—	—	BSR<4:0>					---0 0000	---0 0000
009h(2)	WREG	Working Register								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
00Ah(1, 2)	PCLATH	—	Write Buffer for the upper 7 bits of the Program Counter							-000 0000	-000 0000
00Bh(2)	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
00Ch	PORTA	PORTA Data Latch when written: PORTA pins when read								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
00Dh	PORTB	PORTB Data Latch when written: PORTB pins when read								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
00Eh	PORTC	PORTC Data Latch when written: PORTC pins when read								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
00Fh	PORTD	PORTD Data Latch when written: PORTD pins when read								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
010h	PORTE	PORTE Data Latch when written: PORTE pins when read								xxxx xxxx	xxxx uuuu
011h	PIR1	TMR1GIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
012h	PIR2	OSFIF	C2IF	C1IF	EEIF	BCLIF	LCDIF	C3IF	CCP2IF	0000 0000	0000 0000
013h	PIR3	—	CCP5IF	CCP4IF	CCP3IF	TMR6IF	—	TMR4IF	—	-000 0-0-	-000 0-0-
014h	PIR4	—	—	RC2IF	TX2IF	—	—	BCL2IF	SSP2IF	--00 --00	--00 --00
015h	TMR0	Timer0 Module Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
016h	TMR1L	Holding Register for the Least Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
017h	TMR1H	Holding Register for the Most Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
018h	T1CON	TMR1CS<1:0>		T1CKPS<1:0>		T1OSCEN	$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$	—	TMR1ON	0000 00-0	uuuu uu-u
019h	T1GCON	TMR1GE	T1GPOL	T1GTM	T1GSPM	T1GGO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$	T1GVAL	T1GSS<1:0>		0000 0x00	uuuu uxuu
01Ah	TMR2	Timer 2 Module Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
01Bh	PR2	Timer 2 Period Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
01Ch	T2CON	—	T2OUTPS<3:0>				TMR2ON	T2CKPS<1:0>		-000 0000	-000 0000
01Dh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
01Eh	CPSCON0	CPSON	CPSRM	—	—	CPSRNG1	CPSRNG0	CPSOUT	T0XCS	00-- 0000	00-- 0000
01Fh	CPSCON1	—	—	—	CPSCH<4:0>					---0 0000	---0 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, q = value depends on condition, - = unimplemented, read as '0', r = reserved. Shaded locations are unimplemented, read as '0'.

Note 1: The upper byte of the program counter is not directly accessible. PCLATH is a holding register for the PC<14:8>, whose contents are transferred to the upper byte of the program counter.

2: These registers can be addressed from any bank.

TABLE 3-9: SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTER SUMMARY (CONTINUED)

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
Bank 1											
080h(2)	INDF0	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR0H/FSR0L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
081h(2)	INDF1	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR1H/FSR1L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
082h(2)	PCL	Program Counter (PC) Least Significant Byte								0000 0000	0000 0000
083h(2)	STATUS	—	—	—	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	Z	DC	C	---1 1000	---q quuu
084h(2)	FSR0L	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
085h(2)	FSR0H	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
086h(2)	FSR1L	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
087h(2)	FSR1H	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
088h(2)	BSR	—	—	—	BSR<4:0>					---0 0000	---0 0000
089h(2)	WREG	Working Register								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
08Ah(1, 2)	PCLATH	—	Write Buffer for the upper 7 bits of the Program Counter							-000 0000	-000 0000
08Bh(2)	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
08Ch	TRISA	PORTA Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
08Dh	TRISB	PORTB Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
08Eh	TRISC	PORTC Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
08Fh	TRISD	PORTD Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
090h	TRISE	PORTE Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
091h	PIE1	TMR1GIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
092h	PIE2	OSFIE	C2IE	C1IE	EEIE	BCLIE	LCDIE	C3IE	CCP2IE	0000 0000	0000 0000
093h	PIE3	—	CCP5IE	CCP4IE	CCP3IE	TMR6IE	—	TMR4IE	—	-000 0-0-	-000 0-0-
094h	PIE4	—	—	RC2IE	TX2IE	—	—	BCL2IE	SSP2IE	--00 --00	--00 --00
095h	OPTION_REG	$\overline{WPUEN}$	INTEDG	T0CS	T0SE	PSA	PS<2:0>			1111 1111	1111 1111
096h	PCON	STKOVF	STKUNF	—	—	$\overline{RMCLR}$	$\overline{RI}$	$\overline{POR}$	$\overline{BOR}$	00-- 11qq	qq-- qquu
097h	WDTCON	—	—	WDTPS<4:0>					SWDTEN	--01 0110	--01 0110
098h	OSCTUNE	—	—	TUN<5:0>						--00 0000	--00 0000
099h	OSCCON	SPLLEN	IRCF<3:0>				—	SCS<1:0>		0011 1-00	0011 1-00
09Ah	OSCSTAT	T1OSCR	PLLR	OSTS	HFIOFR	HFIOFL	MFIOFR	LFIOFR	HFIOFS	00q0 0q0-	qqqq qq0-
09Bh	ADRESL	A/D Result Register Low								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
09Ch	ADRESH	A/D Result Register High								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
09Dh	ADCON0	—	CHS<4:0>					GO/$\overline{DONE}$	ADON	-000 0000	-000 0000
09Eh	ADCON1	ADFM	ADCS<2:0>			—	ADNREF	ADPREF1	ADPREF0	0000 -000	0000 -000
09Fh	—	Unimplemented								—	—

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, q = value depends on condition, - = unimplemented, read as '0', r = reserved. Shaded locations are unimplemented, read as '0'.

Note 1: The upper byte of the program counter is not directly accessible. PCLATH is a holding register for the PC<14:8>, whose contents are transferred to the upper byte of the program counter.

2: These registers can be addressed from any bank.

TABLE 3-9: SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTER SUMMARY (CONTINUED)

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
Bank 2											
100h(2)	INDF0	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR0H/FSR0L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
101h(2)	INDF1	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR1H/FSR1L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
102h(2)	PCL	Program Counter (PC) Least Significant Byte								0000 0000	0000 0000
103h(2)	STATUS	—	—	—	$\overline{\text{TO}}$	$\overline{\text{PD}}$	Z	DC	C	---1 1000	---q quuu
104h(2)	FSR0L	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
105h(2)	FSR0H	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
106h(2)	FSR1L	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
107h(2)	FSR1H	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
108h(2)	BSR	—	—	—	BSR<4:0>					---0 0000	---0 0000
109h(2)	WREG	Working Register								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
10Ah(1, 2)	PCLATH	—	Write Buffer for the upper 7 bits of the Program Counter							-000 0000	-000 0000
10Bh(2)	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
10Ch	LATA	PORTA Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
10Dh	LATB	PORTB Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
10Eh	LATC	PORTC Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
10Fh	LATD	PORTD Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
110h	LATE	PORTE Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
111h	CM1CON0	C1ON	C1OUT	C1OE	C1POL	—	C1SP	C1HYS	C1SYNC	0000 -100	0000 -100
112h	CM1CON1	C1INTP	C1INTN	C1PCH1	C1PCH0	—	—	C1NCH<1:0>		0000 --00	0000 --00
113h	CM2CON0	C2ON	C2OUT	C2OE	C2POL	—	C2SP	C2HYS	C2SYNC	0000 -100	0000 -100
114h	CM2CON1	C2INTP	C2INTN	C2PCH1	C2PCH0	—	—	C2NCH<1:0>		0000 --00	0000 --00
115h	CMOUT	—	—	—	—	—	MC3OUT	MC2OUT	MC1OUT	---- -000	---- -000
116h	BORCON	SBOREN	—	—	—	—	—	—	BORRDY	1--- ---q	u--- ---u
117h	FVRCON	FVREN	FVRRDY	TSEN	TSRNG	CDAFVR1	CDAFVR0	ADFVR<1:0>		0q00 0000	0q00 0000
118h	DACCON0	DACEN	DACLPS	DACOE	—	DACPSS<1:0>		—	DACNSS	000- 00-0	000- 00-0
119h	DACCON1	—	—	—	DACR<4:0>					---0 0000	---0 0000
11Ah	SRCON0	SRLEN	SRCLK2	SRCLK1	SRCLK0	SRQEN	SRNQEN	SRPS	SRPR	0000 0000	0000 0000
11Bh	SRCON1	SRSPE	SRSCKE	SRSC2E	SRSC1E	SRRPE	SRRCKE	SRRC2E	SRRC1E	0000 0000	0000 0000
11Ch	—	Unimplemented								—	—
11Dh	APFCON	P3CSEL	P3BSEL	P2DSEL	P2CSEL	P2BSEL	CCP2SEL	P1CSEL	P1BSEL	0000 0000	0000 0000
11Eh	CM3CON0	C3ON	C3OUT	C3OE	C3POL	—	C3SP	C3HYS	C3SYNC	0000 -100	0000 -100
11Fh	CM3CON1	C3INTP	C3INTN	C3PCH1	C3PCH0	—	—	C3NCH<1:0>		0000 --00	0000 --00

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, q = value depends on condition, - = unimplemented, read as '0', r = reserved. Shaded locations are unimplemented, read as '0'.

Note 1: The upper byte of the program counter is not directly accessible. PCLATH is a holding register for the PC<14:8>, whose contents are transferred to the upper byte of the program counter.

2: These registers can be addressed from any bank.

TABLE 3-9: SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTER SUMMARY (CONTINUED)

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
Bank 3											
180h(2)	INDF0	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR0H/FSR0L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
181h(2)	INDF1	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR1H/FSR1L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
182h(2)	PCL	Program Counter (PC) Least Significant Byte								0000 0000	0000 0000
183h(2)	STATUS	—	—	—	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	Z	DC	C	---1 1000	---q quuu
184h(2)	FSR0L	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
185h(2)	FSR0H	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
186h(2)	FSR1L	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
187h(2)	FSR1H	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
188h(2)	BSR	—	—	—	BSR<4:0>					---0 0000	---0 0000
189h(2)	WREG	Working Register								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
18Ah(1, 2)	PCLATH	—	Write Buffer for the upper 7 bits of the Program Counter							-000 0000	-000 0000
18Bh(2)	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
18Ch	ANSELA	—	—	ANSA5	—	ANSA3	ANSA2	ANSA1	ANSA0	--1- 1111	--1- 1111
18Dh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
18Eh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
18Fh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
190h	ANSELE	—	—	—	—	—	ANSE2	ANSE1	ANSE0	---- -111	---- -111
191h	EEADRL	EEPROM / Program Memory Address Register Low Byte								0000 0000	0000 0000
192h	EEADRH	—	EEPROM / Program Memory Address Register High Byte							-000 0000	-000 0000
193h	EEDATL	EEPROM / Program Memory Read Data Register Low Byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
194h	EEDATH	—	—	EEPROM / Program Memory Read Data Register High Byte						--xx xxxx	--uu uuuu
195h	EECON1	EEPGD	CFGS	LWLO	FREE	WRERR	WREN	WR	RD	0000 x000	0000 q000
196h	EECON2	EEPROM control register 2								0000 0000	0000 0000
197h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
198h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
199h	RCREG	USART Receive Data Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
19Ah	TXREG	USART Transmit Data Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
19Bh	SP1BRGL	EUSART1 Baud Rate Generator, Low Byte								0000 0000	0000 0000
19Ch	SP1BRGH	EUSART1 Baud Rate Generator, High Byte								0000 0000	0000 0000
19Dh	RCSTA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 000x	0000 000x
19Eh	TXSTA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 0010	0000 0010
19Fh	BAUD1CON	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	01-0 0-00	01-0 0-00

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, q = value depends on condition, - = unimplemented, read as ‘0’, r = reserved.
Shaded locations are unimplemented, read as ‘0’.

Note 1: The upper byte of the program counter is not directly accessible. PCLATH is a holding register for the PC<14:8>, whose contents are transferred to the upper byte of the program counter.

2: These registers can be addressed from any bank.

TABLE 3-9: SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTER SUMMARY (CONTINUED)

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
Bank 4											
200h[(2)]	INDF0	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR0H/FSR0L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
201h[(2)]	INDF1	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR1H/FSR1L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
202h[(2)]	PCL	Program Counter (PC) Least Significant Byte								0000 0000	0000 0000
203h[(2)]	STATUS	—	—	—	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	Z	DC	C	---1 1000	---q quuu
204h[(2)]	FSR0L	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
205h[(2)]	FSR0H	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
206h[(2)]	FSR1L	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
207h[(2)]	FSR1H	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
208h[(2)]	BSR	—	—	—	BSR<4:0>					---0 0000	---0 0000
209h[(2)]	WREG	Working Register								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
20Ah[(1, 2)]	PCLATH	—	Write Buffer for the upper 7 bits of the Program Counter							-000 0000	-000 0000
20Bh[(2)]	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
20Ch	—	Unimplemented								—	—
20Dh	WPUB	WPUB7	WPUB6	WPUB5	WPUB4	WPUB3	WPUB2	WPUB1	WPUB0	1111 1111	1111 1111
20Eh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
20Fh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
210h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
211h	SSP1BUF	Synchronous Serial Port Receive Buffer/Transmit Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
212h	SSP1ADD	ADD<7:0>								0000 0000	0000 0000
213h	SSP1MSK	MSK<7:0>								1111 1111	1111 1111
214h	SSP1STAT	SMP	CKE	D/$\overline{A}$	P	S	R/$\overline{W}$	UA	BF	0000 0000	0000 0000
215h	SSP1CON1	WCOL	SSPOV	SSPEN	CKP	SSPM<3:0>				0000 0000	0000 0000
216h	SSP1CON2	GCEN	ACKSTAT	ACKDT	ACKEN	RCEN	PEN	RSEN	SEN	0000 0000	0000 0000
217h	SSP1CON3	ACKTIM	PCIE	SCIE	BOEN	SDAHT	SBCDE	AHEN	DHEN	0000 0000	0000 0000
218h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
219h	SSP2BUF	Synchronous Serial Port Receive Buffer/Transmit Register								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
21Ah	SSP2ADD	ADD<7:0>								0000 0000	0000 0000
21Bh	SSP2MSK	MSK<7:0>								1111 1111	1111 1111
21Ch	SSP2STAT	SMP	CKE	D/$\overline{A}$	P	S	R/$\overline{W}$	UA	BF	0000 0000	0000 0000
21Dh	SSP2CON1	WCOL	SSPOV	SSPEN	CKP	SSPM<3:0>				0000 0000	0000 0000
21Eh	SSP2CON2	GCEN	ACKSTAT	ACKDT	ACKEN	RCEN	PEN	RSEN	SEN	0000 0000	0000 0000
21Fh	SSP2CON3	ACKTIM	PCIE	SCIE	BOEN	SDAHT	SBCDE	AHEN	DHEN	0000 0000	0000 0000

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, q = value depends on condition, - = unimplemented, read as '0', r = reserved. Shaded locations are unimplemented, read as '0'.

Note 1: The upper byte of the program counter is not directly accessible. PCLATH is a holding register for the PC<14:8>, whose contents are transferred to the upper byte of the program counter.

2: These registers can be addressed from any bank.

TABLE 3-9: SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTER SUMMARY (CONTINUED)

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
Bank 5											
280h(2)	INDF0	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR0H/FSR0L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
281h(2)	INDF1	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR1H/FSR1L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
282h(2)	PCL	Program Counter (PC) Least Significant Byte								0000 0000	0000 0000
283h(2)	STATUS	—	—	—	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	Z	DC	C	---1 1000	---q quuu
284h(2)	FSR0L	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
285h(2)	FSR0H	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
286h(2)	FSR1L	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
287h(2)	FSR1H	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
288h(2)	BSR	—	—	—	BSR<4:0>					---0 0000	---0 0000
289h(2)	WREG	Working Register								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
28Ah(1, 2)	PCLATH	—	Write Buffer for the upper 7 bits of the Program Counter							-000 0000	-000 0000
28Bh(2)	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
28Ch	PORTF	PORTF Data Latch when written: PORTF pins when read								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
28Dh	PORTG	—	—	RG5	RG4	RG3	RG2	RG1	RG0	--xx xxxx	--uu uuuu
28Eh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
28Fh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
290h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
291h	CCPR1L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 1 (LSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
292h	CCPR1H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 1 (MSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
293h	CCP1CON	P1M<1:0>		DC1B<1:0>		CCP1M<3:0>				0000 0000	0000 0000
294h	PWM1CON	P1RSEN	P1DC<6:0>							0000 0000	0000 0000
295h	CCP1AS	CCP1ASE	CCP1AS<2:0>			PSS1AC<1:0>		PSS1BD<1:0>		0000 0000	0000 0000
296h	PSTR1CON	—	—	—	STR1SYNC	STR1D	STR1C	STR1B	STR1A	---0 0001	---0 0001
297h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
298h	CCPR2L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 2 (LSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
299h	CCPR2H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 2 (MSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
29Ah	CCP2CON	P2M<1:0>		DC2B<1:0>		CCP2M<3:0>				0000 0000	0000 0000
29Bh	PWM2CON	P2RSEN	P2DC<6:0>							0000 0000	0000 0000
29Ch	CCP2AS	CCP2ASE	CCP2AS<2:0>			PSS2AC<1:0>		PSS2BD<1:0>		0000 0000	0000 0000
29Dh	PSTR2CON	—	—	—	STR2SYNC	STR2D	STR2C	STR2B	STR2A	---0 0001	---0 0001
29Eh	CCPTMRS0	C4TSEL1	C4TSEL0	C3TSEL1	C3TSEL0	C2TSEL1	C2TSEL0	C1TSEL1	C1TSEL0	0000 0000	0000 0000
29Fh	CCPTMRS1	—	—	—	—	—	—	C5TSEL<1:0>		---- --00	---- --00

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, q = value depends on condition, - = unimplemented, read as '0', r = reserved. Shaded locations are unimplemented, read as '0'.

Note 1: The upper byte of the program counter is not directly accessible. PCLATH is a holding register for the PC<14:8>, whose contents are transferred to the upper byte of the program counter.

2: These registers can be addressed from any bank.

TABLE 3-9: SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTER SUMMARY (CONTINUED)

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
Bank 6											
300h(2)	INDF0	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR0H/FSR0L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
301h(2)	INDF1	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR1H/FSR1L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
302h(2)	PCL	Program Counter (PC) Least Significant Byte								0000 0000	0000 0000
303h(2)	STATUS	—	—	—	$\overline{\text{TO}}$	$\overline{\text{PD}}$	Z	DC	C	---1 1000	---q quuu
304h(2)	FSR0L	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
305h(2)	FSR0H	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
306h(2)	FSR1L	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
307h(2)	FSR1H	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
308h(2)	BSR	—	—	—	BSR<4:0>					---0 0000	---0 0000
309h(2)	WREG	Working Register								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
30Ah(1, 2)	PCLATH	—	Write Buffer for the upper 7 bits of the Program Counter							-000 0000	-000 0000
30Bh(2)	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
30Ch	TRISF	PORTF Data Direction Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
30Dh	TRISG	—	—	TRISG5	TRISG4	TRISG3	TRISG2	TRISG1	TRISG0	--11 1111	--11 1111
30Eh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
30Fh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
310h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
311h	CCPR3L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 3 (LSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
312h	CCPR3H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 3 (MSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
313h	CCP3CON	P3M<1:0>		DC3B<1:0>		CCP3M<1:0>				0000 0000	0000 0000
314h	PWM3CON	P3RSEN	P3DC<6:0>							0000 0000	0000 0000
315h	CCP3AS	CCP3ASE	CCP3AS<2:0>			PSS3AC<1:0>		PSS3BD<1:0>		0000 0000	0000 0000
316h	PSTR3CON	—	—	—	STR3SYNC	STR3D	STR3C	STR3B	STR3A	---0 0001	---0 0001
317h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
318h	CCPR4L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 4 (LSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
319h	CCPR4H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 4 (MSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
31Ah	CCP4CON	—	—	DC4B<1:0>		CCP4M<3:0>				--00 0000	--00 0000
31Bh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
31Ch	CCPR5L	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 5 (LSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
31Dh	CCPR5H	Capture/Compare/PWM Register 5 (MSB)								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
31Eh	CCP5CON	—	—	DC5B<1:0>		CCP5M<3:0>				--00 0000	--00 0000
31Fh	—	Unimplemented								—	—

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, q = value depends on condition, - = unimplemented, read as '0', r = reserved. Shaded locations are unimplemented, read as '0'.

Note 1: The upper byte of the program counter is not directly accessible. PCLATH is a holding register for the PC<14:8>, whose contents are transferred to the upper byte of the program counter.

2: These registers can be addressed from any bank.

TABLE 3-9: SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTER SUMMARY (CONTINUED)

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
Bank 7											
380h(2)	INDF0	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR0H/FSR0L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
381h(2)	INDF1	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR1H/FSR1L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
382h(2)	PCL	Program Counter (PC) Least Significant Byte								0000 0000	0000 0000
383h(2)	STATUS	—	—	—	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	Z	DC	C	---1 1000	---q quuu
384h(2)	FSR0L	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
385h(2)	FSR0H	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
386h(2)	FSR1L	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
387h(2)	FSR1H	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
388h(2)	BSR	—	—	—	BSR<4:0>					---0 0000	---0 0000
389h(2)	WREG	Working Register								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
38Ah(1, 2)	PCLATH	—	Write Buffer for the upper 7 bits of the Program Counter							-000 0000	-000 0000
38Bh(2)	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
38Ch	LATF	PORTF Data Latch								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
38Dh	LATG	—	—	LATG5	LATG4	LATG3	LATG2	LATG1	LATG0	--xx xxxx	--uu uuuu
38Eh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
38Fh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
390h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
391h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
392h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
393h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
394h	IOCBP	IOCBP7	IOCBP6	IOCBP5	IOCBP4	IOCBP3	IOCBP2	IOCBP1	IOCBP0	0000 0000	0000 0000
395h	IOCBN	IOCBN7	IOCBN6	IOCBN5	IOCBN4	IOCBN3	IOCBN2	IOCBN1	IOCBN0	0000 0000	0000 0000
396h	IOCBF	IOCBF7	IOCBF6	IOCBF5	IOCBF4	IOCBF3	IOCBF2	IOCBF1	IOCBF0	0000 0000	0000 0000
397h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
398h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
399h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
39Ah	—	Unimplemented								—	—
39Bh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
39Ch	—	Unimplemented								—	—
39Dh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
39Eh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
39Fh	—	Unimplemented								—	—

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, q = value depends on condition, - = unimplemented, read as ‘0’, r = reserved. Shaded locations are unimplemented, read as ‘0’.

Note 1: The upper byte of the program counter is not directly accessible. PCLATH is a holding register for the PC<14:8>, whose contents are transferred to the upper byte of the program counter.

2: These registers can be addressed from any bank.

TABLE 3-9: SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTER SUMMARY (CONTINUED)

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
Bank 8											
400h(2)	INDF0	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR0H/FSR0L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
401h(2)	INDF1	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR1H/FSR1L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
402h(2)	PCL	Program Counter (PC) Least Significant Byte								0000 0000	0000 0000
403h(2)	STATUS	—	—	—	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	Z	DC	C	---1 1000	---q quuu
404h(2)	FSR0L	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
405h(2)	FSR0H	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
406h(2)	FSR1L	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
407h(2)	FSR1H	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
408h(2)	BSR	—	—	—	BSR<4:0>					---0 0000	---0 0000
409h(2)	WREG	Working Register								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
40Ah(1, 2)	PCLATH	—	Write Buffer for the upper 7 bits of the Program Counter							-000 0000	-000 0000
40Bh(2)	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
40Ch	ANSELF	ANSELF7	ANSELF6	ANSELF5	ANSELF4	ANSELF3	ANSELF2	ANSELF1	ANSELF0	1111 1111	1111 1111
40Dh	ANSELG	—	—	—	ANSELG4	ANSELG3	ANSELG2	ANSELG1	—	---1 111-	---1 111-
40Eh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
40Fh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
410h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
411h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
412h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
413h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
414h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
415h	TMR4	Timer 4 Module Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
416h	PR4	Timer 4 Period Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
417h	T4CON	—	T4OUTPS<3:0>				TMR4ON	T4CKPS<1:0>		-000 0000	-000 0000
418h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
419h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
41Ah	—	Unimplemented								—	—
41Bh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
41Ch	TMR6	Timer 6 Module Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
41Dh	PR6	Timer 6 Period Register								1111 1111	1111 1111
41Eh	T6CON	—	T6OUTPS<3:0>				TMR6ON	T6CKPS<1:0>		-000 0000	-000 0000
41Fh	—	Unimplemented								—	—

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, q = value depends on condition, - = unimplemented, read as '0', r = reserved.
Shaded locations are unimplemented, read as '0'.

Note 1: The upper byte of the program counter is not directly accessible. PCLATH is a holding register for the PC<14:8>, whose contents are transferred to the upper byte of the program counter.

2: These registers can be addressed from any bank.

TABLE 3-9: SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTER SUMMARY (CONTINUED)

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
Bank 9											
480h(2)	INDF0	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR0H/FSR0L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
481h(2)	INDF1	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR1H/FSR1L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
482h(2)	PCL	Program Counter (PC) Least Significant Byte								0000 0000	0000 0000
483h(2)	STATUS	—	—	—	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	Z	DC	C	---1 1000	---q quuu
404h(2)	FSR0L	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
485h(2)	FSR0H	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
486h(2)	FSR1L	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
487h(2)	FSR1H	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
488h(2)	BSR	—	—	—	BSR<4:0>					---0 0000	---0 0000
489h(2)	WREG	Working Register								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
48Ah(1, 2)	PCLATH	—	Write Buffer for the upper 7 bits of the Program Counter							-000 0000	-000 0000
48Bh(2)	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
48Ch	—	Unimplemented								—	—
48Dh	WPUG	—	—	WPUG5	—	—	—	—	—	--1- ----	--1- ----
48Eh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
48Fh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
490h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
491h	RC2REG	USART Receive Data Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
492h	TX2REG	USART Transmit Data Register								0000 0000	0000 0000
493h	SP2BRGL	EUSART2 Baud Rate Generator, Low Byte								0000 0000	0000 0000
494h	SP2BRGH	EUSART2 Baud Rate Generator, High Byte								0000 0000	0000 0000
495h	RC2STA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	0000 000x	0000 000x
496h	TX2STA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	0000 0010	0000 0010
497h	BAUDCON2	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	01-0 0-00	01-0 0-00
498h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
499h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
49Ah	—	Unimplemented								—	—
49Bh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
49Ch	—	Unimplemented								—	—
49Dh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
49Eh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
49Fh	—	Unimplemented								—	—

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, q = value depends on condition, - = unimplemented, read as '0', r = reserved. Shaded locations are unimplemented, read as '0'.

Note 1: The upper byte of the program counter is not directly accessible. PCLATH is a holding register for the PC<14:8>, whose contents are transferred to the upper byte of the program counter.

2: These registers can be addressed from any bank.

TABLE 3-9: SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTER SUMMARY (CONTINUED)

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
Banks 10-14											
x00h/ x80h(2)	INDF0	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR0H/FSR0L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
x00h/ x81h(2)	INDF1	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR1H/FSR1L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
x02h/ x82h(2)	PCL	Program Counter (PC) Least Significant Byte								0000 0000	0000 0000
x03h/ x83h(2)	STATUS	—	—	—	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	Z	DC	C	---1 1000	---q quuu
x04h/ x84h(2)	FSR0L	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
x05h/ x85h(2)	FSR0H	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
x06h/ x86h(2)	FSR1L	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
x07h/ x87h(2)	FSR1H	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
x08h/ x88h(2)	BSR	—	—	—	BSR<4:0>					---0 0000	---0 0000
x09h/ x89h(2)	WREG	Working Register								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
x0Ah/ x8Ah(1),(2)	PCLATH	—	Write Buffer for the upper 7 bits of the Program Counter							-000 0000	-000 0000
x0Bh/ x8Bh(2)	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
x0Ch/ x8Ch — x1Fh/ x9Fh	—	Unimplemented								—	—

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, q = value depends on condition, - = unimplemented, read as '0', r = reserved. Shaded locations are unimplemented, read as '0'.

Note 1: The upper byte of the program counter is not directly accessible. PCLATH is a holding register for the PC<14:8>, whose contents are transferred to the upper byte of the program counter.

2: These registers can be addressed from any bank.

TABLE 3-9: SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTER SUMMARY (CONTINUED)

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
Bank 15											
780h(2)	INDF0	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR0H/FSR0L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
781h(2)	INDF1	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR1H/FSR1L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
782h(2)	PCL	Program Counter (PC) Least Significant Byte								0000 0000	0000 0000
783h(2)	STATUS	—	—	—	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	Z	DC	C	---1 1000	---q quuu
784h(2)	FSR0L	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
785h(2)	FSR0H	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
786h(2)	FSR1L	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
787h(2)	FSR1H	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
788h(2)	BSR	—	—	—	BSR<4:0>					---0 0000	---0 0000
789h(2)	WREG	Working Register								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
78Ah(1, 2)	PCLATH	—	Write Buffer for the upper 7 bits of the Program Counter							-000 0000	-000 0000
78Bh(2)	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
78Ch	—	Unimplemented								—	—
78Dh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
78Eh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
78Fh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
790h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
791h	LCDCON	LCDEN	SLPEN	WERR	—	CS<1:0>		LMUX<1:0>		000- 0011	000- 0011
792h	LCDPS	WFT	BIASMD	LCDA	WA	LP<3:0>				0000 0000	0000 0000
793h	LCDREF	LCDIRE	LCDIRS	LCDIRI	—	VLCD3PE	VLCD2PE	VLCD1PE	—	000- 000-	000- 000-
794h	LCDCST	—	—	—	—	—	LCDCST<2:0>			---- -000	---- -000
795h	LCDRL	LRLAP<1:0>		LRLBP<1:0>		—	LRLAT<2:0>			0000 -000	0000 -000
796h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
797h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
798h	LCDSE0	SE<7:0>								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
799h	LCDSE1	SE<15:8>								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
79Ah	LCDSE2	SE<23:16>								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
79Bh	LCDSE3	SE<31:24>								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
79Ch	LCDSE4	SE<39:32>								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
79Dh	LCDSE5	—	—	SE<45:40>						--00 0000	--uu uuuu
79Eh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
79Fh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
7A0h	LCDDATA0	SEG7 COM0	SEG6 COM0	SEG5 COM0	SEG4 COM0	SEG3 COM0	SEG2 COM0	SEG1 COM0	SEG0 COM0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
7A1h	LCDDATA1	SEG15 COM0	SEG14 COM0	SEG13 COM0	SEG12 COM0	SEG11 COM0	SEG10 COM0	SEG9 COM0	SEG8 COM0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
7A2h	LCDDATA2	SEG23 COM0	SEG22 COM0	SEG21 COM0	SEG20 COM0	SEG19 COM0	SEG18 COM0	SEG17 COM0	SEG16 COM0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
7A3h	LCDDATA3	SEG7 COM1	SEG6 COM1	SEG5 COM1	SEG4 COM1	SEG3 COM1	SEG2 COM1	SEG1 COM1	SEG0 COM1	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
7A4h	LCDDATA4	SEG15 COM1	SEG14 COM1	SEG13 COM1	SEG12 COM1	SEG11 COM1	SEG10 COM1	SEG9 COM1	SEG8 COM1	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
7A5h	LCDDATA5	SEG23 COM1	SEG22 COM1	SEG21 COM1	SEG20 COM1	SEG19 COM1	SEG18 COM1	SEG17 COM1	SEG16 COM1	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, q = value depends on condition, - = unimplemented, read as '0', r = reserved.
Shaded locations are unimplemented, read as '0'.

Note 1: The upper byte of the program counter is not directly accessible. PCLATH is a holding register for the PC<14:8>, whose contents are transferred to the upper byte of the program counter.

2: These registers can be addressed from any bank.

TABLE 3-9: SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTER SUMMARY (CONTINUED)

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
Bank 15 (Continued)											
7A6h	LCDDATA6	SEG7 COM2	SEG6 COM2	SEG5 COM2	SEG4 COM2	SEG3 COM2	SEG2 COM2	SEG1 COM2	SEG0 COM2	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
7A7h	LCDDATA7	SEG15 COM2	SEG14 COM2	SEG13 COM2	SEG12 COM2	SEG11 COM2	SEG10 COM2	SEG9 COM2	SEG8 COM2	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
7A8h	LCDDATA8	SEG23 COM2	SEG22 COM2	SEG21 COM2	SEG20 COM2	SEG19 COM2	SEG18 COM2	SEG17 COM2	SEG16 COM2	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
7A9h	LCDDATA9	SEG7 COM3	SEG6 COM3	SEG5 COM3	SEG4 COM3	SEG3 COM3	SEG2 COM3	SEG1 COM3	SEG0 COM3	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
7AAh	LCDDATA10	SEG15 COM3	SEG14 COM3	SEG13 COM3	SEG12 COM3	SEG11 COM3	SEG10 COM3	SEG9 COM3	SEG8 COM3	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
7ABh	LCDDATA11	SEG23 COM3	SEG22 COM3	SEG21 COM3	SEG20 COM3	SEG19 COM3	SEG18 COM3	SEG17 COM3	SEG16 COM3	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
7ACh	LCDDATA12	SEG31 COM0	SEG30 COM0	SEG29 COM0	SEG28 COM0	SEG27 COM0	SEG26 COM0	SEG25 COM0	SEG24 COM0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
7ADh	LCDDATA13	SEG39 COM0	SEG38 COM0	SEG37 COM0	SEG36 COM0	SEG35 COM0	SEG34 COM0	SEG33 COM0	SEG32 COM0	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
7AEh	LCDDATA14	—	—	SEG45 COM0	SEG44 COM0	SEG43 COM0	SEG42 COM0	SEG41 COM0	SEG40 COM0	--xx xxxx	--uu uuuu
7AFh	LCDDATA15	SEG31 COM1	SEG30 COM1	SEG29 COM1	SEG28 COM1	SEG27 COM1	SEG26 COM1	SEG25 COM1	SEG24 COM1	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
7B0h	LCDDATA16	SEG39 COM1	SEG38 COM1	SEG37 COM1	SEG36 COM1	SEG35 COM1	SEG34 COM1	SEG33 COM1	SEG32 COM1	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
7B1h	LCDDATA17	—	—	SEG45 COM1	SEG44 COM1	SEG43 COM1	SEG42 COM1	SEG41 COM1	SEG40 COM1	--xx xxxx	--uu uuuu
7B2h	LCDDATA18	SEG31 COM2	SEG30 COM2	SEG29 COM2	SEG28 COM2	SEG27 COM2	SEG26 COM2	SEG25 COM2	SEG24 COM2	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
7B3h	LCDDATA19	SEG39 COM2	SEG38 COM2	SEG37 COM2	SEG36 COM2	SEG35 COM2	SEG34 COM2	SEG33 COM2	SEG32 COM2	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
7B4h	LCDDATA20	—	—	SEG45 COM2	SEG44 COM2	SEG43 COM2	SEG42 COM2	SEG41 COM2	SEG40 COM2	--xx xxxx	--uu uuuu
7B5h	LCDDATA21	SEG31 COM3	SEG30 COM3	SEG29 COM3	SEG28 COM3	SEG27 COM3	SEG26 COM3	SEG25 COM3	SEG24 COM3	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
7B6h	LCDDATA22	SEG39 COM3	SEG38 COM3	SEG37 COM3	SEG36 COM3	SEG35 COM3	SEG34 COM3	SEG33 COM3	SEG32 COM3	xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
7B7h	LCDDATA23	—	—	SEG45 COM3	SEG44 COM3	SEG43 COM3	SEG42 COM3	SEG41 COM3	SEG40 COM3	--xx xxxx	--uu uuuu
7B8h — 7EFh	—	Unimplemented								—	—

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, q = value depends on condition, - = unimplemented, read as '0', r = reserved. Shaded locations are unimplemented, read as '0'.

Note 1: The upper byte of the program counter is not directly accessible. PCLATH is a holding register for the PC<14:8>, whose contents are transferred to the upper byte of the program counter.

2: These registers can be addressed from any bank.

TABLE 3-9: SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTER SUMMARY (CONTINUED)

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
Banks 16-30											
x00h/ x80h(2)	INDF0	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR0H/FSR0L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
x00h/ x81h(2)	INDF1	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR1H/FSR1L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
x02h/ x82h(2)	PCL	Program Counter (PC) Least Significant Byte								0000 0000	0000 0000
x03h/ x83h(2)	STATUS	—	—	—	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	Z	DC	C	---1 1000	---q quuu
x04h/ x84h(2)	FSR0L	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
x05h/ x85h(2)	FSR0H	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
x06h/ x86h(2)	FSR1L	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
x07h/ x87h(2)	FSR1H	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
x08h/ x88h(2)	BSR	—	—	—	BSR<4:0>					---0 0000	---0 0000
x09h/ x89h(2)	WREG	Working Register								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
x0Ah/ x8Ah(1),(2)	PCLATH	—	Write Buffer for the upper 7 bits of the Program Counter							-000 0000	-000 0000
x0Bh/ x8Bh(2)	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
x0Ch/ x8Ch — x1Fh/ x9Fh	—	Unimplemented								—	—

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, q = value depends on condition, - = unimplemented, read as '0', r = reserved. Shaded locations are unimplemented, read as '0'.

Note 1: The upper byte of the program counter is not directly accessible. PCLATH is a holding register for the PC<14:8>, whose contents are transferred to the upper byte of the program counter.

2: These registers can be addressed from any bank.

TABLE 3-9: SPECIAL FUNCTION REGISTER SUMMARY (CONTINUED)

Address	Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Value on POR, BOR	Value on all other Resets
Bank 31											
F80h(2)	INDF0	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR0H/FSR0L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
F81h(2)	INDF1	Addressing this location uses contents of FSR1H/FSR1L to address data memory (not a physical register)								xxxx xxxx	xxxx xxxx
F82h(2)	PCL	Program Counter (PC) Least Significant Byte								0000 0000	0000 0000
F83h(2)	STATUS	—	—	—	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	Z	DC	C	---1 1000	---q quuu
F84h(2)	FSR0L	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
F85h(2)	FSR0H	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
F86h(2)	FSR1L	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 Low Pointer								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
F87h(2)	FSR1H	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 High Pointer								0000 0000	0000 0000
F88h(2)	BSR	—	—	—	BSR<4:0>					---0 0000	---0 0000
F89h(2)	WREG	Working Register								0000 0000	uuuu uuuu
F8Ah(1),(2)	PCLATH	—	Write Buffer for the upper 7 bits of the Program Counter							-000 0000	-000 0000
F8Bh(2)	INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	0000 000x	0000 000u
F8Ch — FE3h	—	Unimplemented								—	—
FE4h	STATUS_ SHAD						Z	DC	C	---- -xxx	---- -uuu
FE5h	WREG_ SHAD	Working Register Normal (Non-ICD) Shadow								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
FE6h	BSR_ SHAD				Bank Select Register Normal (Non-ICD) Shadow					---x xxxx	---u uuuu
FE7h	PCLATH_ SHAD		Program Counter Latch High Register Normal (Non-ICD) Shadow							-xxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
FE8h	FSR0L_ SHAD	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 Low Pointer Normal (Non-ICD) Shadow								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
FE9h	FSR0H_ SHAD	Indirect Data Memory Address 0 High Pointer Normal (Non-ICD) Shadow								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
FEAh	FSR1L_ SHAD	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 Low Pointer Normal (Non-ICD) Shadow								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
FEBh	FSR1H_ SHAD	Indirect Data Memory Address 1 High Pointer Normal (Non-ICD) Shadow								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
FECh	—	Unimplemented								—	—
FEDh	STKPTR	—	—	—	Current Stack pointer					---1 1111	---1 1111
FEEh	TOSL	Top of Stack Low byte								xxxx xxxx	uuuu uuuu
FEFh	TOSH	—	Top of Stack High byte							-xxx xxxx	-uuu uuuu

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, q = value depends on condition, - = unimplemented, read as '0', r = reserved. Shaded locations are unimplemented, read as '0'.

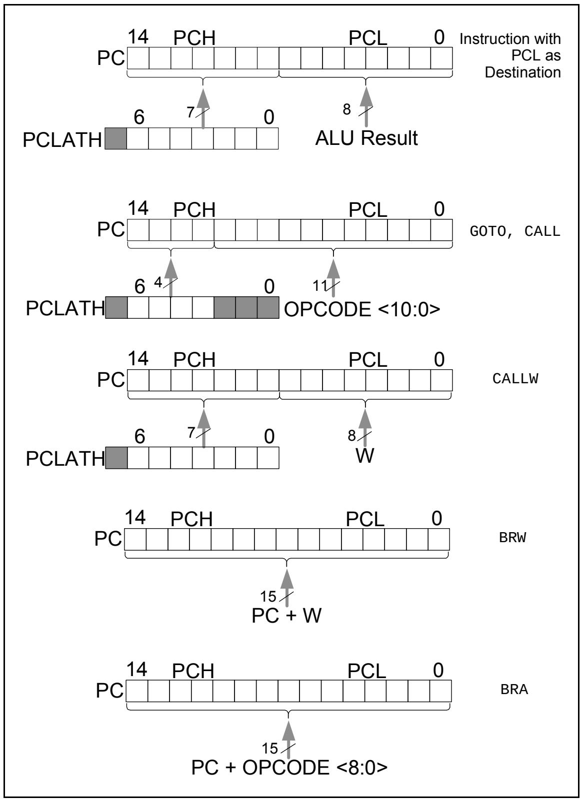
Note 1: The upper byte of the program counter is not directly accessible. PCLATH is a holding register for the PC<14:8>, whose contents are transferred to the upper byte of the program counter.

2: These registers can be addressed from any bank.

3.3 PCL and PCLATH

The Program Counter (PC) is 15 bits wide. The low byte comes from the PCL register, which is a readable and writable register. The high byte (PC<14:8>) is not directly readable or writable and comes from PCLATH. On any Reset, the PC is cleared. Figure 3-4 shows the five situations for the loading of the PC.

FIGURE 3-4: LOADING OF PC IN DIFFERENT SITUATIONS



3.3.1 MODIFYING PCL

Executing any instruction with the PCL register as the destination simultaneously causes the Program Counter PC<14:8> bits (PCH) to be replaced by the contents of the PCLATH register. This allows the entire contents of the program counter to be changed by writing the desired upper 7 bits to the PCLATH register. When the lower 8 bits are written to the PCL register, all 15 bits of the program counter will change to the values contained in the PCLATH register and those being written to the PCL register.

3.3.2 COMPUTED `GOTO`

A computed `GOTO` is accomplished by adding an offset to the program counter (`ADDWF PCL`). When performing a table read using a computed `GOTO` method, care should be exercised if the table location crosses a PCL memory boundary (each 256-byte block). Refer to the Application Note AN556, *"Implementing a Table Read"* (DS00556).

3.3.3 COMPUTED FUNCTION CALLS

A computed function `CALL` allows programs to maintain tables of functions and provide another way to execute state machines or look-up tables. When performing a table read using a computed function `CALL`, care should be exercised if the table location crosses a PCL memory boundary (each 256-byte block).

If using the `CALL` instruction, the PCH<2:0> and PCL registers are loaded with the operand of the `CALL` instruction. PCH<6:3> is loaded with PCLATH<6:3>.

The `CALLW` instruction enables computed calls by combining PCLATH and W to form the destination address. A computed `CALLW` is accomplished by loading the W register with the desired address and executing `CALLW`. The PCL register is loaded with the value of W and PCH is loaded with PCLATH.

3.3.4 BRANCHING

The branching instructions add an offset to the PC. This allows relocatable code and code that crosses page boundaries. There are two forms of branching, `BRW` and `BRA`. The PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction in both cases. When using either branching instruction, a PCL memory boundary may be crossed.

If using `BRW`, load the W register with the desired unsigned address and execute `BRW`. The entire PC will be loaded with the address PC + 1 + W.

If using `BRA`, the entire PC will be loaded with PC + 1 +, the signed value of the operand of the `BRA` instruction.

3.4 Stack

All devices have a 16-level x 15-bit wide hardware stack (refer to Figures 3-3 and 3-4). The stack space is not part of either program or data space. The PC is PUSHed onto the stack when `CALL` or `CALLW` instructions are executed or an interrupt causes a branch. The stack is POPed in the event of a `RETURN`, `RETLW` or a `RETFIE` instruction execution. PCLATH is not affected by a PUSH or POP operation.

The stack operates as a circular buffer if the STVREN bit is programmed to '`0`' (Configuration Word 2). This means that after the stack has been PUSHed sixteen times, the seventeenth PUSH overwrites the value that was stored from the first PUSH. The eighteenth PUSH overwrites the second PUSH (and so on). The STKOVF and STKUNF flag bits will be set on an Overflow/Underflow, regardless of whether the Reset is enabled.

> **Note 1:** There are no instructions/mnemonics called PUSH or POP. These are actions that occur from the execution of the `CALL`, `CALLW`, `RETURN`, `RETLW` and `RETFIE` instructions or the vectoring to an interrupt address.

3.4.1 ACCESSING THE STACK

The stack is available through the TOSH, TOSL and STKPTR registers. STKPTR is the current value of the Stack Pointer. TOSH:TOSL register pair points to the TOP of the stack. Both registers are read/writable. TOS is split into TOSH and TOSL due to the 15-bit size of the PC. To access the stack, adjust the value of STKPTR, which will position TOSH:TOSL, then read/write to TOSH:TOSL. STKPTR is 5 bits to allow detection of overflow and underflow.

> **Note:** Care should be taken when modifying the STKPTR while interrupts are enabled.

During normal program operation, `CALL`, `CALLW` and Interrupts will increment STKPTR while `RETLW`, `RETURN`, and `RETFIE` will decrement STKPTR. At any time STKPTR can be inspected to see how much stack is left. The STKPTR always points at the currently used place on the stack. Therefore, a `CALL` or `CALLW` will increment the STKPTR and then write the PC, and a return will unload the PC and then decrement the STKPTR.

Reference Figure through Figure for examples of accessing the stack.

FIGURE 3-5: ACCESSING THE STACK EXAMPLE 1

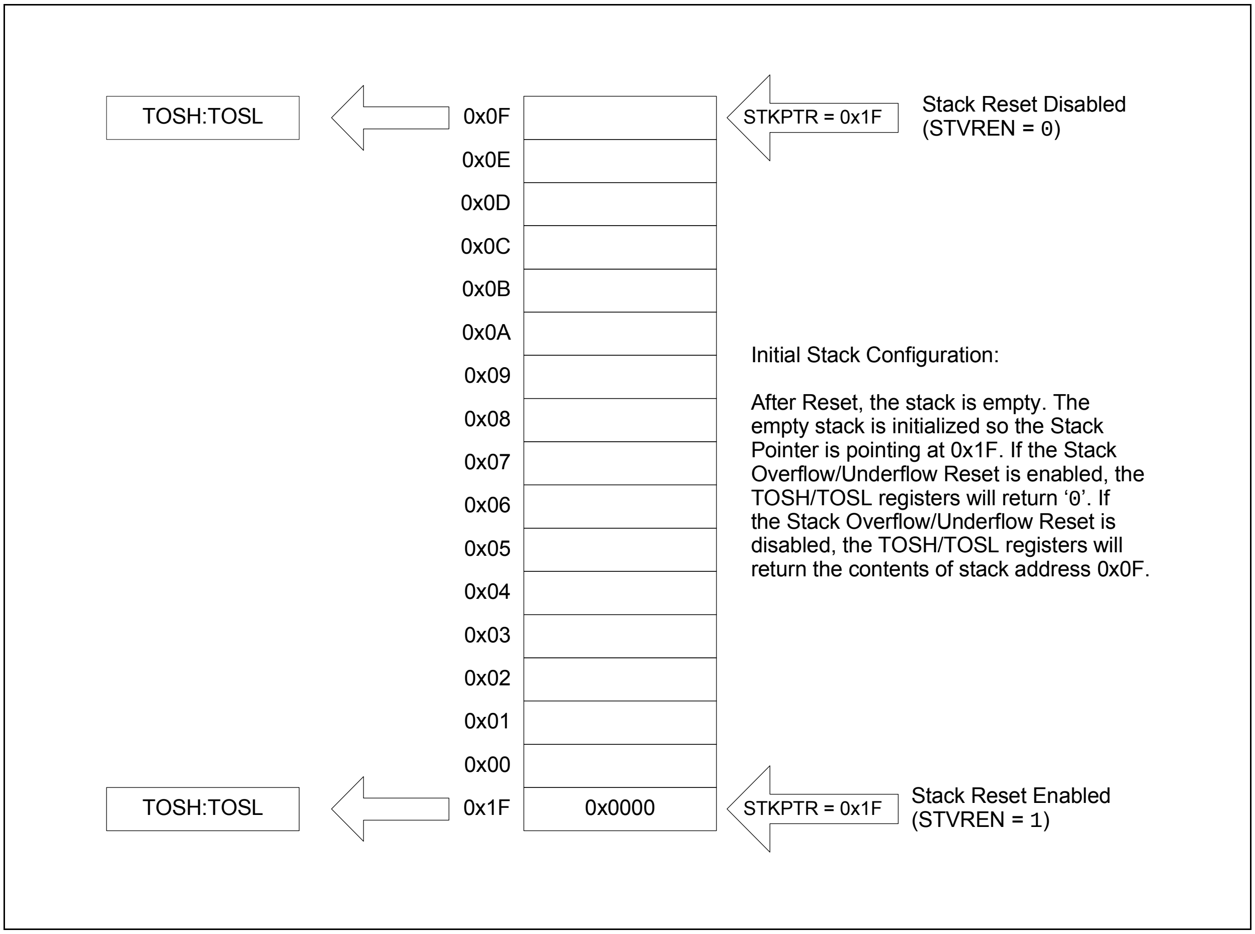


FIGURE 3-6: ACCESSING THE STACK EXAMPLE 2

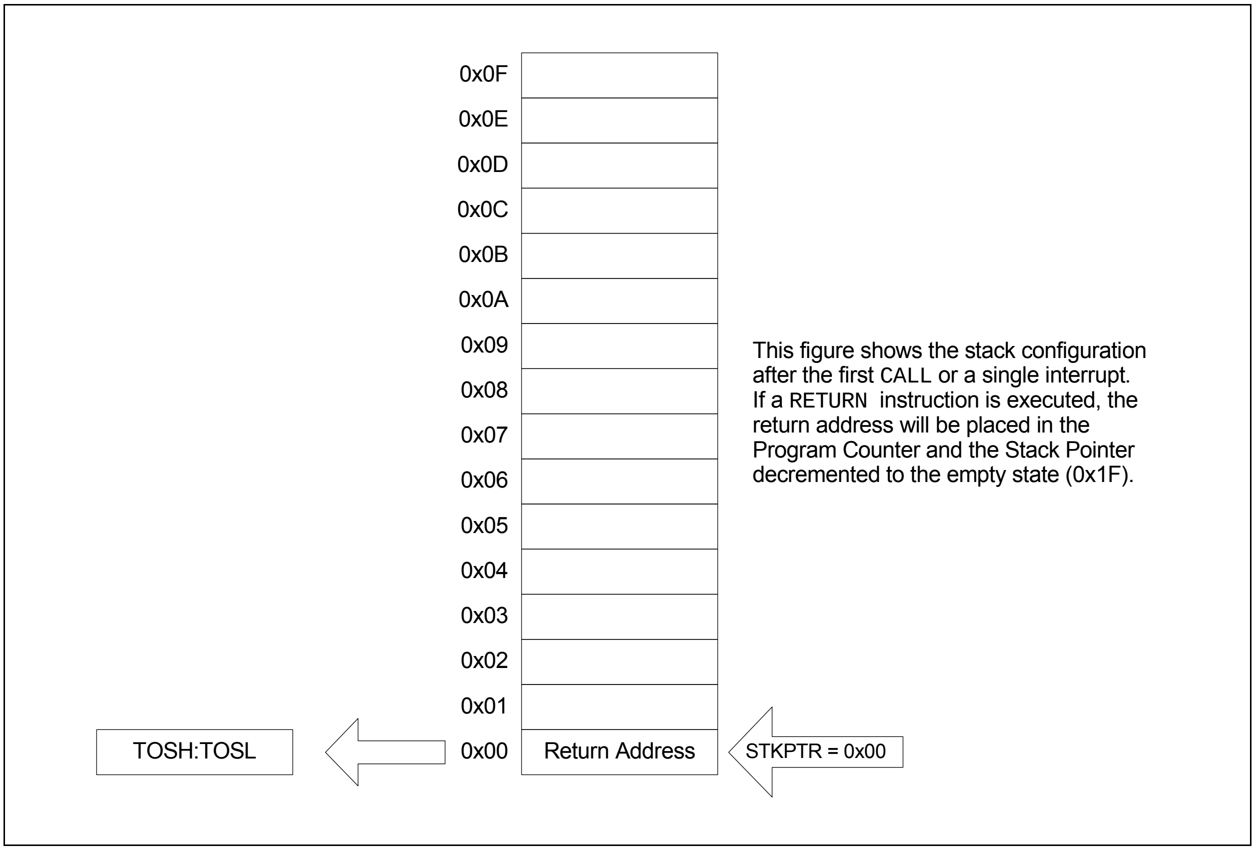


FIGURE 3-7: ACCESSING THE STACK EXAMPLE 3

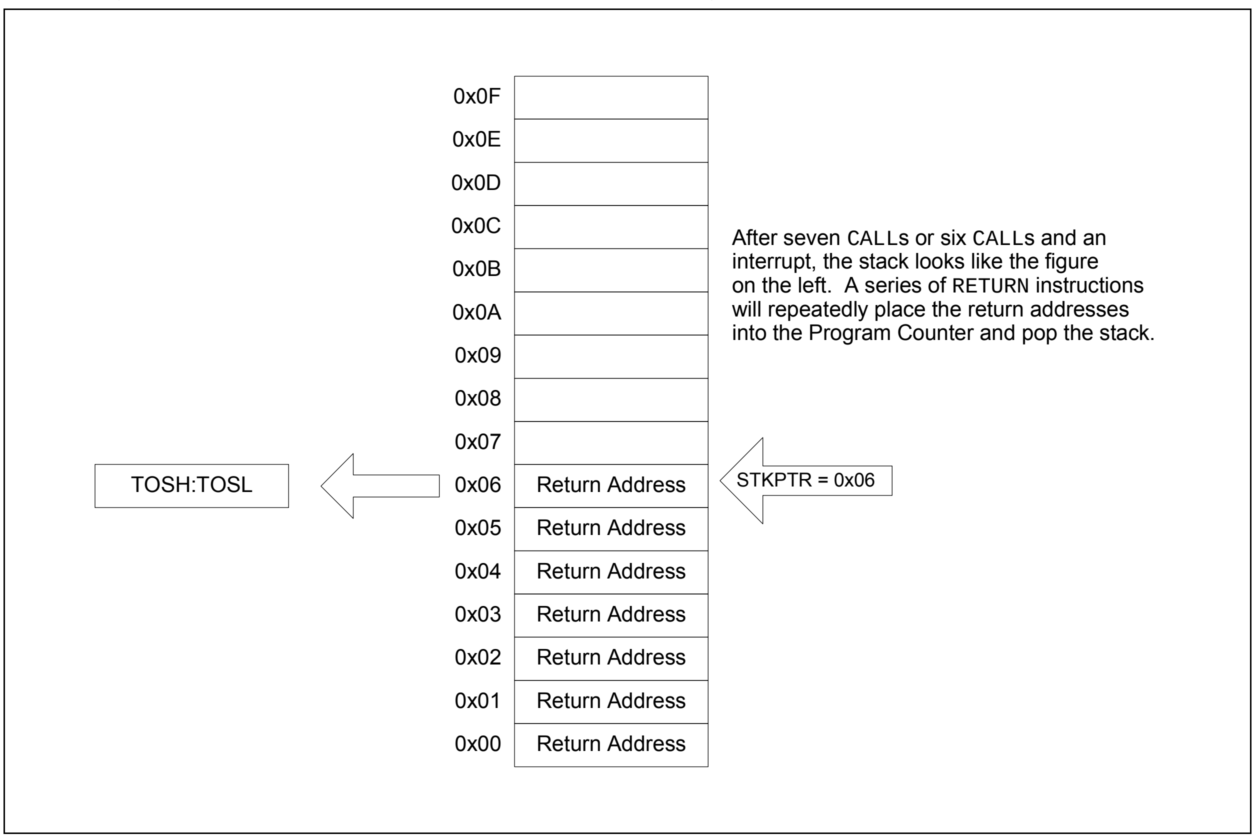
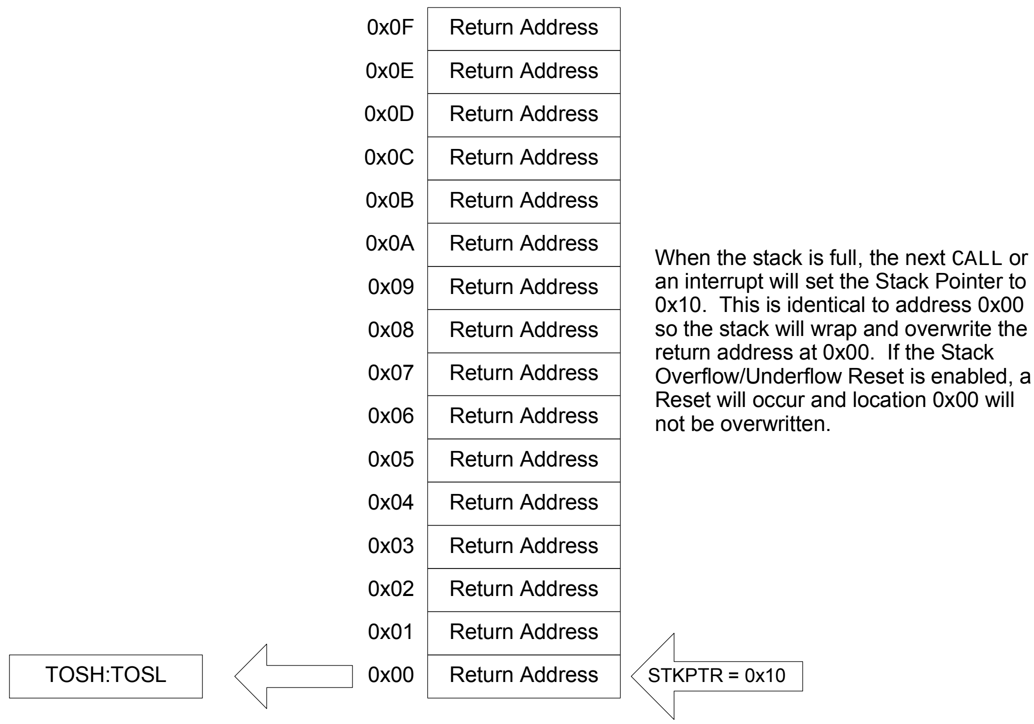


FIGURE 3-8: ACCESSING THE STACK EXAMPLE 4



3.4.2 OVERFLOW/UNDERFLOW RESET

If the STVREN bit in Configuration Word 2 is programmed to '1', the device will be reset if the stack is PUSHed beyond the sixteenth level or POPed beyond the first level, setting the appropriate bits (STKOVF or STKUNF, respectively) in the PCON register.

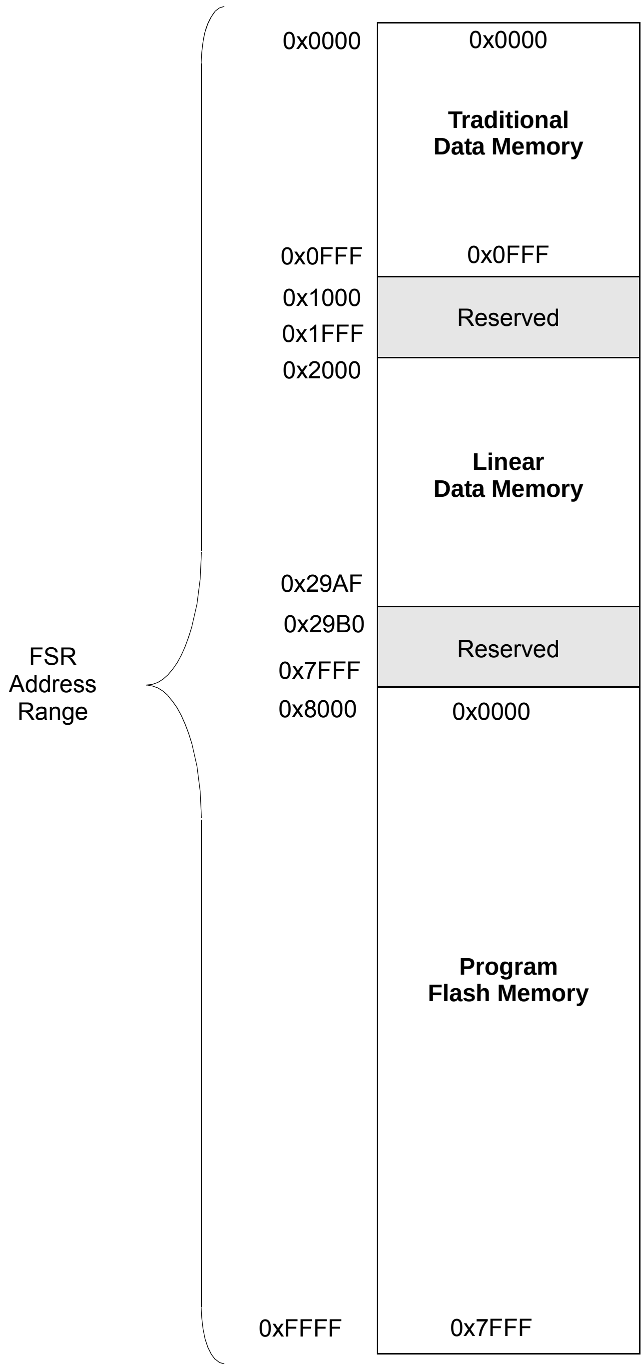
3.5 Indirect Addressing

The INDFn registers are not physical registers. Any instruction that accesses an INDFn register actually accesses the register at the address specified by the File Select Registers (FSR). If the FSRn address specifies one of the two INDFn registers, the read will return '0' and the write will not occur (though Status bits may be affected). The FSRn register value is created by the pair FSRnH and FSRnL.

The FSR registers form a 16-bit address that allows an addressing space with 65536 locations. These locations are divided into three memory regions:

- Traditional Data Memory
- Linear Data Memory
- Program Flash Memory

FIGURE 3-9: INDIRECT ADDRESSING

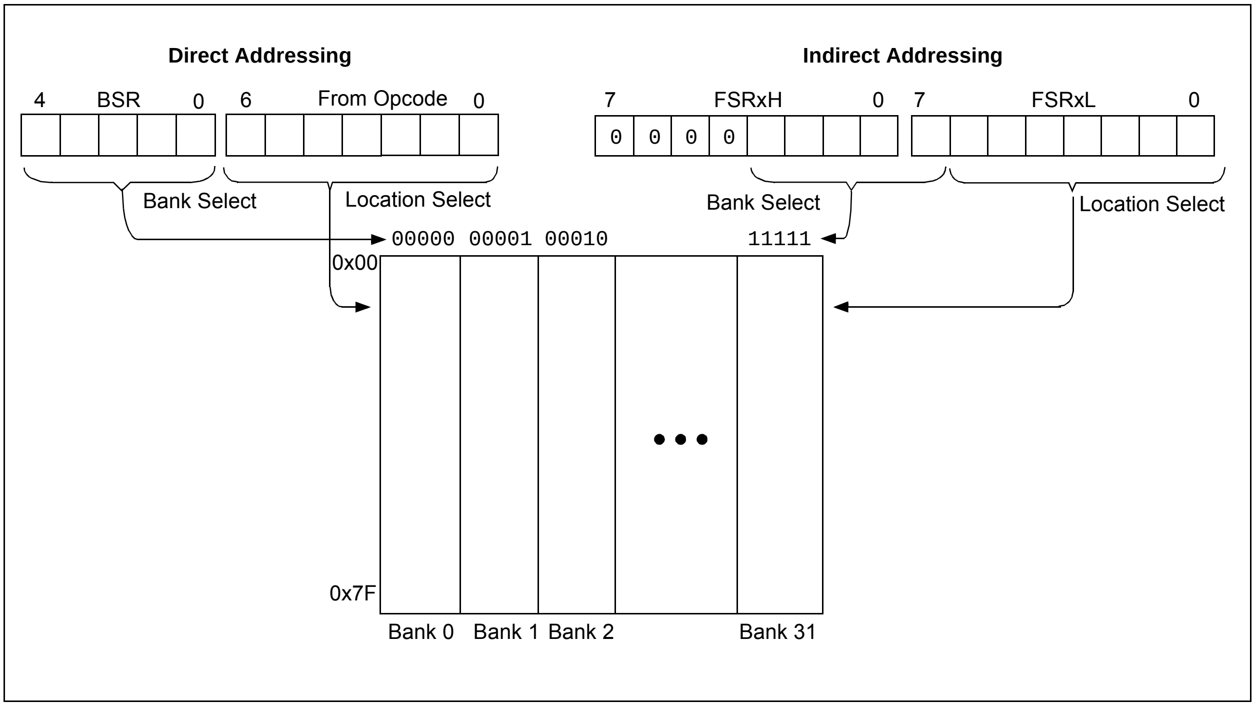


Note: Not all memory regions are completely implemented. Consult device memory tables for memory limits.

3.5.1 TRADITIONAL DATA MEMORY

The traditional data memory is a region from FSR address 0x000 to FSR address 0xFFF. The addresses correspond to the absolute addresses of all SFR, GPR and common registers.

FIGURE 3-10: TRADITIONAL DATA MEMORY MAP



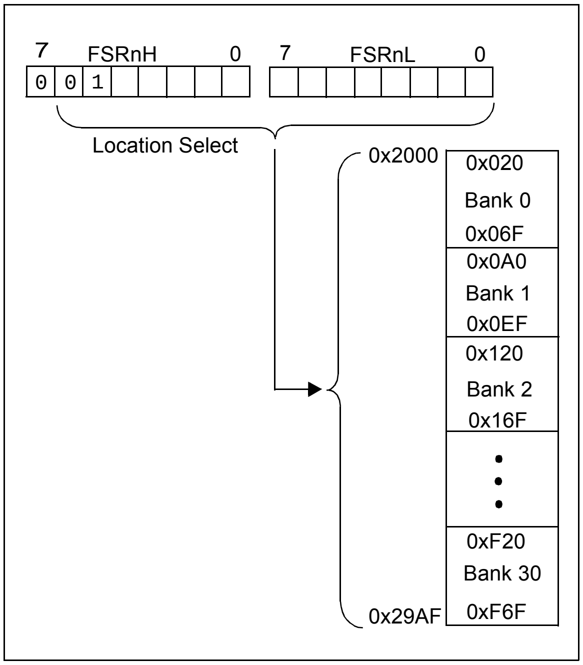
3.5.2 LINEAR DATA MEMORY

The linear data memory is the region from FSR address 0x2000 to FSR address 0x29AF. This region is a virtual region that points back to the 80-byte blocks of GPR memory in all the banks.

Unimplemented memory reads as 0x00. Use of the linear data memory region allows buffers to be larger than 80 bytes because incrementing the FSR beyond one bank will go directly to the GPR memory of the next bank.

The 16 bytes of common memory are not included in the linear data memory region.

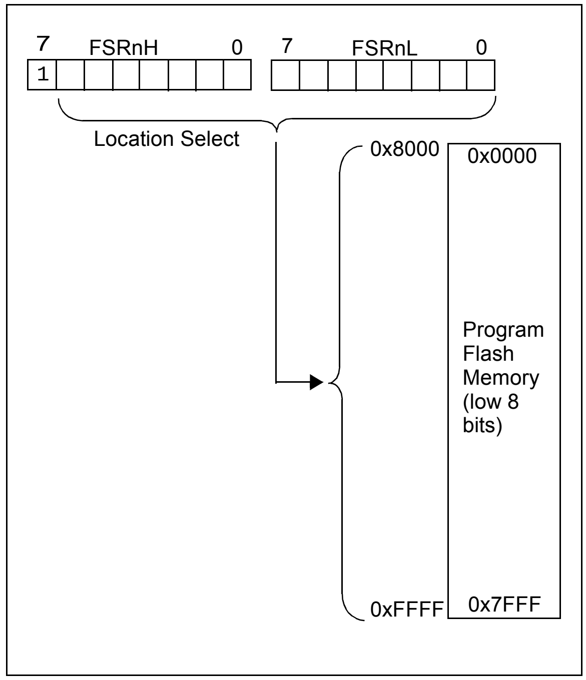
FIGURE 3-11: LINEAR DATA MEMORY MAP



3.5.3 PROGRAM FLASH MEMORY

To make constant data access easier, the entire program Flash memory is mapped to the upper half of the FSR address space. When the MSB of FSRnH is set, the lower 15 bits are the address in program memory which will be accessed through INDF. Only the lower 8 bits of each memory location is accessible via INDF. Writing to the program Flash memory cannot be accomplished via the FSR/INDF interface. All instructions that access program Flash memory via the FSR/INDF interface will require one additional instruction cycle to complete.

FIGURE 3-12: PROGRAM FLASH MEMORY MAP



4.0 DEVICE CONFIGURATION

Device Configuration consists of Configuration Word 1 and Configuration Word 2 registers, Code Protection and Device ID.

4.1 Configuration Words

There are several Configuration Word bits that allow different oscillator and memory protection options. These are implemented as Configuration Word 1 at 8007h and Configuration Word 2 at 8008h.

Note:	The $\overline{\text{DEBUG}}$ bit in Configuration Word 2 is managed automatically by device development tools including debuggers and programmers. For normal device operation, this bit should be maintained as a '1'.

4.2 Configuration Word Registers

REGISTER 4-1: CONFIGURATION WORD 1

R/P-1/1	R/P-1/1	R/P-1/1	R/P-1/1	R/P-1/1	R/P-1/1	R/P-1/1
FCMEN	IESO	$\overline{\text{CLKOUTEN}}$	BOREN1	BOREN0	$\overline{\text{CPD}}$	$\overline{\text{CP}}$
bit 13						bit 7

R/P-1/1	R/P-1/1	R/P-1/1	R/P-1/1	R/P-1/1	R/P-1/1	R/P-1/1
MCLRE	$\overline{\text{PWRTE}}$	WDTE1	WDTE0	FOSC2	FOSC1	FOSC0
bit 6						bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘1’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	P = Programmable bit

bit 13 **FCMEN:** Fail-Safe Clock Monitor Enable bit
1 = Fail-Safe Clock Monitor is enabled
0 = Fail-Safe Clock Monitor is disabled

bit 12 **IESO:** Internal External Switchover bit
1 = Internal/External Switchover mode is enabled
0 = Internal/External Switchover mode is disabled

bit 11 **$\overline{\text{CLKOUTEN}}$:** Clock Out Enable bit
1 = CLKOUT function is disabled. I/O or oscillator function on RA6/CLKOUT
0 = CLKOUT function is enabled on RA6/CLKOUT

bit 10-9 **BOREN<1:0>:** Brown-out Reset Enable bits(1)
11 = BOR enabled
10 = BOR enabled during operation and disabled in Sleep
01 = BOR controlled by SBOREN bit of the BORCON register
00 = BOR disabled

bit 8 **$\overline{\text{CPD}}$:** Data Code Protection bit(2)
1 = Data memory code protection is disabled
0 = Data memory code protection is enabled

bit 7 **$\overline{\text{CP}}$:** Code Protection bit(3)
1 = Program memory code protection is disabled
0 = Program memory code protection is enabled

bit 6 **MCLRE:** RE3/$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$/VPP Pin Function Select bit
If LVP bit = 1:
This bit is ignored.
If LVP bit = 0:
1 = RE3/$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$/VPP pin function is $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$; Weak pull-up enabled.
0 = RE3/$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$/VPP pin function is digital input; $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ internally disabled; Weak pull-up under control of WPUE3 bit.

bit 5 **$\overline{\text{PWRTE}}$:** Power-up Timer Enable bit(1)
1 = PWRT disabled
0 = PWRT enabled

bit 4-3 **WDTE<1:0>:** Watchdog Timer Enable bit
11 = WDT enabled
10 = WDT enabled while running and disabled in Sleep
01 = WDT controlled by the SWDTEN bit in the WDTCON register
00 = WDT disabled

Note 1: Enabling Brown-out Reset does not automatically enable Power-up Timer.
2: The entire data EEPROM will be erased when the code protection is turned off during an erase.
3: The entire program memory will be erased when the code protection is turned off.

REGISTER 4-1: CONFIGURATION WORD 1 (CONTINUED)

bit 2-0 **FOSC<2:0>:** Oscillator Selection bits
`111` = ECH: External Clock, High-Power mode: CLKIN on RA7/OSC1/CLKIN
`110` = ECM: External Clock, Medium-Power mode: CLKIN on RA7/OSC1/CLKIN
`101` = ECL: External Clock, Low-Power mode: CLKIN on RA7/OSC1/CLKIN
`100` = INTOSC oscillator: I/O function on RA7/OSC1/CLKIN
`011` = EXTRC oscillator: RC function on RA7/OSC1/CLKIN
`010` = HS oscillator: High-speed crystal/resonator on RA6/OSC2/CLKOUT pin and RA7/OSC1/CLKIN
`001` = XT oscillator: Crystal/resonator on RA6/OSC2/CLKOUT pin and RA7/OSC1/CLKIN
`000` = LP oscillator: Low-power crystal on RA6/OSC2/CLKOUT pin and RA7/OSC1/CLKIN

Note 1: Enabling Brown-out Reset does not automatically enable Power-up Timer.
2: The entire data EEPROM will be erased when the code protection is turned off during an erase.
3: The entire program memory will be erased when the code protection is turned off.

REGISTER 4-2: CONFIGURATION WORD 2

R/P-1/1	R/P-1/1	U-1	R/P-1/1	R/P-1/1	R/P-1/1	U-1
LVP	$\overline{\text{DEBUG}}$[(2)]	—	BORV	STVREN	PLLEN	—
bit 13						bit 7

U-1	U-1	R/P-1/1	U-1	U-1	R/P-1/1	R/P-1/1
—	—	VCAPEN	—	—	WRT1	WRT0
bit 6						bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	P = Programmable bit

bit 13 **LVP:** Low-Voltage Programming Enable bit[(1)]
1 = Low-voltage programming enabled
0 = High-voltage on $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$/VPP must be used for programming

bit 12 **$\overline{\text{DEBUG}}$:** In-Circuit Debugger Mode bit
1 = In-Circuit Debugger disabled, RB6/ICSPCLK and RB7/ICSPDAT are general purpose I/O pins
0 = In-Circuit Debugger enabled, RB6/ICSPCLK and RB7/ICSPDAT are dedicated to the debugger

bit 11 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘1’

bit 10 **BORV:** Brown-out Reset Voltage Selection bit
1 = Brown-out Reset voltage set to 1.9V
0 = Brown-out Reset voltage set to 2.5V

bit 9 **STVREN:** Stack Overflow/Underflow Reset Enable bit
1 = Stack Overflow or Underflow will cause a Reset
0 = Stack Overflow or Underflow will not cause a Reset

bit 8 **PLLEN:** PLL Enable bit
1 = 4xPLL enabled
0 = 4xPLL disabled

bit 7-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘1’

bit 4 **VCAPEN>:** Voltage Regulator Capacitor Enable bits
0 = VCAP functionality is enabled on RF0
1 = No capacitor on VCAP pin

bit 2-3 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘1’

bit 1-0 **WRT<1:0>:** Flash Memory Self-Write Protection bits
8 kW Flash memory (PIC16F/LF1946 only):
11 = Write protection off
10 = 000h to 1FFh write-protected, 200h to 1FFFh may be modified by EECON control
01 = 000h to FFFh write-protected, 1000h to 1FFFh may be modified by EECON control
00 = 000h to 1FFFh write-protected, no addresses may be modified by EECON control
16 kW Flash memory (PIC16F/LF1947):
11 = Write protection off
10 = 000h to 1FFh write-protected, 200h to 3FFFh may be modified by EECON control
01 = 000h to 1FFFh write-protected, 2000h to 3FFFh may be modified by EECON control
00 = 000h to 3FFFh write-protected, no addresses may be modified by EECON control

Note 1: The LVP bit cannot be programmed to ‘0’ when Programming mode is entered via LVP.
2: The $\overline{\text{DEBUG}}$ bit in Configuration Word is managed automatically by device development tools including debuggers and programmers. For normal device operation, this bit should be maintained as a '1'.

4.3 Code Protection

Code protection allows the device to be protected from unauthorized access. Program memory protection and data EEPROM protection are controlled independently. Internal access to the program memory and data EEPROM are unaffected by any code protection setting.

4.3.1 PROGRAM MEMORY PROTECTION

The entire program memory space is protected from external reads and writes by the $\overline{\text{CP}}$ bit in Configuration Word 1. When $\overline{\text{CP}}$ = 0, external reads and writes of program memory are inhibited and a read will return all '0's. The CPU can continue to read program memory, regardless of the protection bit settings. Writing the program memory is dependent upon the write protection setting. See **Section 4.4 "Write Protection"** for more information.

4.3.2 DATA EEPROM PROTECTION

The entire data EEPROM is protected from external reads and writes by the $\overline{\text{CPD}}$ bit. When $\overline{\text{CPD}}$ = 0, external reads and writes of data EEPROM are inhibited. The CPU can continue to read and write data EEPROM regardless of the protection bit settings.

4.4 Write Protection

Write protection allows the device to be protected from unintended self-writes. Applications, such as bootloader software, can be protected while allowing other regions of the program memory to be modified.

The WRT<1:0> bits in Configuration Word 2 define the size of the program memory block that is protected.

4.5 User ID

Four memory locations (8000h-8003h) are designated as ID locations where the user can store checksum or other code identification numbers. These locations are readable and writable during normal execution. See **Section 4.6 "Device ID and Revision ID"** for more information on accessing these memory locations. For more information on checksum calculation, see the "*PIC16F193X/LF193X/PIC16F194X/LF194X Memory Programming Specification*" (DS41397).

4.6 Device ID and Revision ID

The memory location 8006h is where the Device ID and Revision ID are stored. The upper nine bits hold the Device ID. The lower five bits hold the Revision ID. See **Section 11.5 "User ID, Device ID and Configuration Word Access"** for more information on accessing these memory locations.

Development tools, such as device programmers and debuggers, may be used to read the Device ID and Revision ID.

REGISTER 4-3: DEVICEID: DEVICE ID REGISTER(1)

R	R	R	R	R	R	R
DEV8	DEV7	DEV6	DEV5	DEV4	DEV3	DEV2
bit 13						bit 7

R	R	R	R	R	R	R
DEV1	DEV0	REV4	REV3	REV2	REV1	REV0
bit 6						bit 0

Legend:		U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	'0' = Bit is cleared
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	x = Bit is unknown

bit 13-5	**DEV<8:0>:** Device ID bits `100011001` = PIC16F1946 `100011010` = PIC16F1947 `100011011` = PIC16LF1946 `100011100` = PIC16LF1947
bit 4-0	**REV<4:0>:** Revision ID bits These bits are used to identify the revision.

Note 1: This location cannot be written.

5.0 OSCILLATOR MODULE (WITH FAIL-SAFE CLOCK MONITOR)

5.1 Overview

The oscillator module has a wide variety of clock sources and selection features that allow it to be used in a wide range of applications while maximizing performance and minimizing power consumption. Figure 5-1 illustrates a block diagram of the oscillator module.

Clock sources can be supplied from external oscillators, quartz crystal resonators, ceramic resonators and Resistor-Capacitor (RC) circuits. In addition, the system clock source can be supplied from one of two internal oscillators and PLL circuits, with a choice of speeds selectable via software. Additional clock features include:

- Selectable system clock source between external or internal sources via software.
- Two-Speed Start-up mode, which minimizes latency between external oscillator start-up and code execution.
- Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (FSCM) designed to detect a failure of the external clock source (LP, XT, HS, EC or RC modes) and switch automatically to the internal oscillator.
- Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) ensures stability of crystal oscillator sources

The oscillator module can be configured in one of eight clock modes.

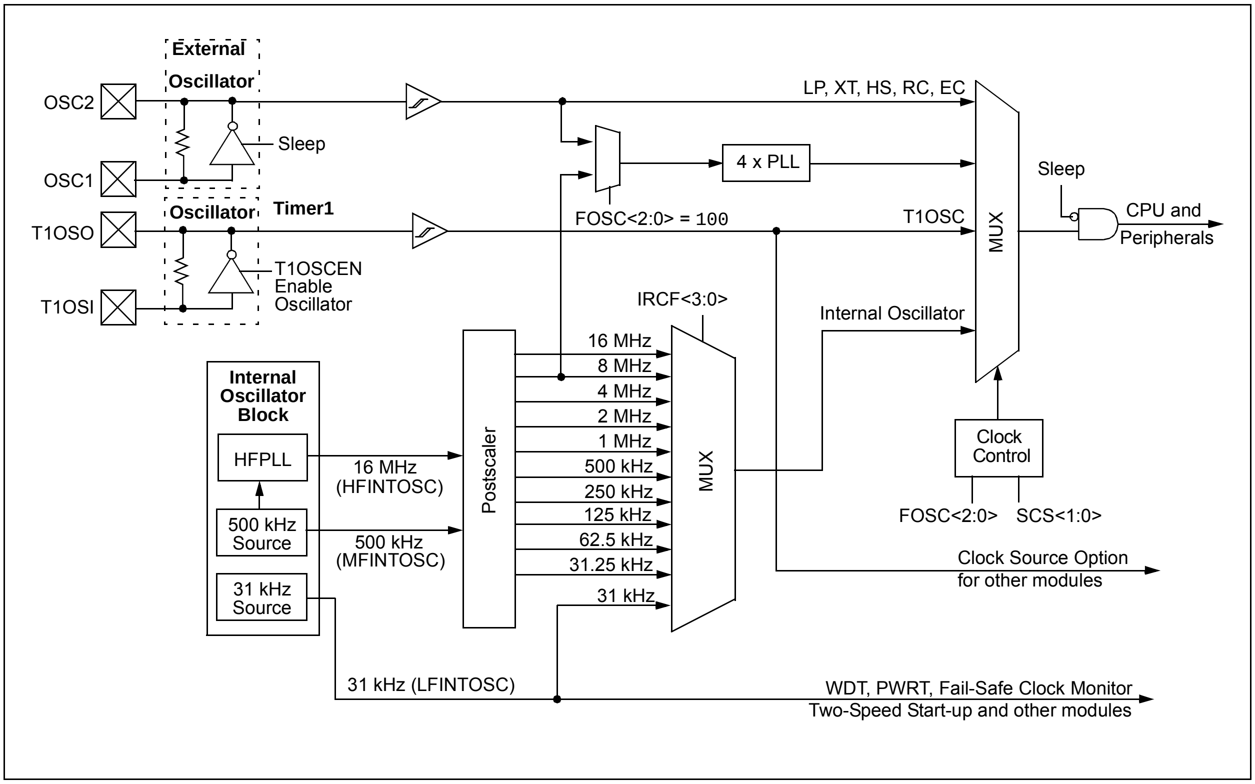
1. ECL – External Clock Low Power mode (0 MHz to 0.5 MHz)
2. ECM – External Clock Medium Power mode (0.5 MHz to 4 MHz)
3. ECH – External Clock High Power mode (4 MHz to 32 MHz)
4. LP – 32 kHz Low-Power Crystal mode.
5. XT – Medium Gain Crystal or Ceramic Resonator Oscillator mode (up to 4 MHz)
6. HS – High Gain Crystal or Ceramic Resonator mode (4 MHz to 20 MHz)
7. RC – External Resistor-Capacitor (RC).
8. INTOSC – Internal oscillator (31 kHz to 32 MHz).

Clock Source modes are selected by the FOSC<2:0> bits in the Configuration Word 1. The FOSC bits determine the type of oscillator that will be used when the device is first powered.

The EC clock mode relies on an external logic level signal as the device clock source. The LP, XT, and HS clock modes require an external crystal or resonator to be connected to the device. Each mode is optimized for a different frequency range. The RC clock mode requires an external resistor and capacitor to set the oscillator frequency.

The INTOSC internal oscillator block produces low, medium, and high frequency clock sources, designated LFINTOSC, MFINTOSC, and HFINTOSC. (see Internal Oscillator Block, Figure 5-1). A wide selection of device clock frequencies may be derived from these three clock sources.

FIGURE 5-1: SIMPLIFIED PIC® MCU CLOCK SOURCE BLOCK DIAGRAM



 Preliminary

5.2 Clock Source Types

Clock sources can be classified as external or internal.

External clock sources rely on external circuitry for the clock source to function. Examples are: oscillator modules (EC mode), quartz crystal resonators or ceramic resonators (LP, XT and HS modes) and Resistor-Capacitor (RC) mode circuits.

Internal clock sources are contained internally within the oscillator module. The internal oscillator block has two internal oscillators and a dedicated phase-locked-loop (HFPLL) that are used to generate three internal system clock sources: the 16 MHz High-Frequency Internal Oscillator (HFINTOSC), 500 kHz (MFINTOSC) and the 31 kHz Low-Frequency Internal Oscillator (LFINTOSC).

The system clock can be selected between external or internal clock sources via the System Clock Select (SCS) bits in the OSCCON register. See **Section 5.3 "Clock Switching"** for additional information.

5.2.1 EXTERNAL CLOCK SOURCES

An external clock source can be used as the device system clock by performing one of the following actions:

- Program the FOSC<2:0> bits in the Configuration Word 1 to select an external clock source that will be used as the default system clock upon a device Reset.
- Write the SCS<1:0> bits in the OSCCON register to switch the system clock source to:
  - Timer1 Oscillator during run-time, or
  - An external clock source determined by the value of the FOSC bits.

See **Section 5.3 "Clock Switching"**for more information.

5.2.1.1 EC Mode

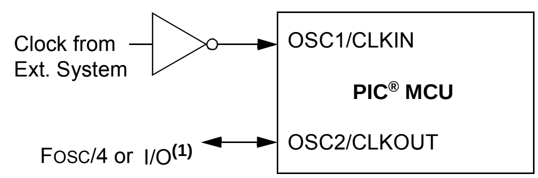
The External Clock (EC) mode allows an externally generated logic level signal to be the system clock source. When operating in this mode, an external clock source is connected to the OSC1 input. OSC2/CLKOUT is available for general purpose I/O or CLKOUT. Figure 5-2 shows the pin connections for EC mode.

EC mode has 3 power modes to select from through Configuration Word 1:

- High-power, 4-32 MHz (FOSC = `111`)
- Medium power, 0.5-4 MHz (FOSC = `110`)
- Low-power, 0-0.5 MHz (FOSC = `101`)

The Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) is disabled when EC mode is selected. Therefore, there is no delay in operation after a Power-on Reset (POR) or wake-up from Sleep. Because the PIC® MCU design is fully static, stopping the external clock input will have the effect of halting the device while leaving all data intact. Upon restarting the external clock, the device will resume operation as if no time had elapsed.

FIGURE 5-2: EXTERNAL CLOCK (EC) MODE OPERATION



Note 1: Output depends upon $\overline{\text{CLKOUTEN}}$ bit of the Configuration Word 1.

5.2.1.2 LP, XT, HS Modes

The LP, XT and HS modes support the use of quartz crystal resonators or ceramic resonators connected to OSC1 and OSC2 (Figure 5-3). The three modes select a low, medium or high gain setting of the internal inverter-amplifier to support various resonator types and speed.

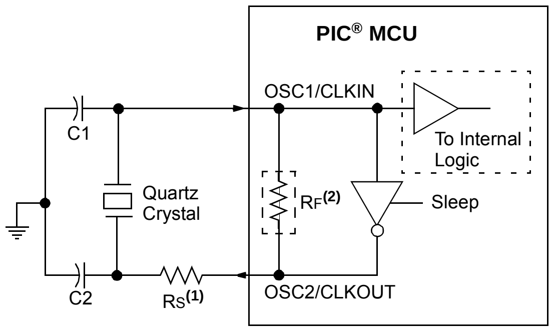
LP Oscillator mode selects the lowest gain setting of the internal inverter-amplifier. LP mode current consumption is the least of the three modes. This mode is designed to drive only 32.768 kHz tuning-fork type crystals (watch crystals).

XT Oscillator mode selects the intermediate gain setting of the internal inverter-amplifier. XT mode current consumption is the medium of the three modes. This mode is best suited to drive resonators with a medium drive level specification.

HS Oscillator mode selects the highest gain setting of the internal inverter-amplifier. HS mode current consumption is the highest of the three modes. This mode is best suited for resonators that require a high drive setting.

Figure 5-3 and Figure 5-4 show typical circuits for quartz crystal and ceramic resonators, respectively.

FIGURE 5-3: QUARTZ CRYSTAL OPERATION (LP, XT OR HS MODE)



Note 1: A series resistor (RS) may be required for quartz crystals with low drive level.

2: The value of RF varies with the Oscillator mode selected (typically between 2 MΩ to 10 MΩ).

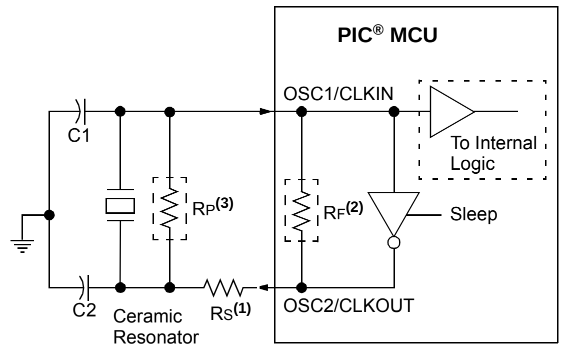
Note 1: Quartz crystal characteristics vary according to type, package and manufacturer. The user should consult the manufacturer data sheets for specifications and recommended application.

2: Always verify oscillator performance over the VDD and temperature range that is expected for the application.

3: For oscillator design assistance, reference the following Microchip Applications Notes:

- AN826, "*Crystal Oscillator Basics and Crystal Selection for rfPIC® and PIC® Devices*" (DS00826)
- AN849, "*Basic PIC® Oscillator Design*" (DS00849)
- AN943, "*Practical PIC® Oscillator Analysis and Design*" (DS00943)
- AN949, "*Making Your Oscillator Work*" (DS00949)

FIGURE 5-4: CERAMIC RESONATOR OPERATION (XT OR HS MODE)



Note 1: A series resistor (RS) may be required for ceramic resonators with low drive level.

2: The value of RF varies with the Oscillator mode selected (typically between 2 MΩ to 10 MΩ).

3: An additional parallel feedback resistor (RP) may be required for proper ceramic resonator operation.

5.2.1.3 Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST)

If the oscillator module is configured for LP, XT or HS modes, the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) counts 1024 oscillations from OSC1. This occurs following a Power-on Reset (POR) and when the Power-up Timer (PWRT) has expired (if configured), or a wake-up from Sleep. During this time, the program counter does not increment and program execution is suspended. The OST ensures that the oscillator circuit, using a quartz crystal resonator or ceramic resonator, has started and is providing a stable system clock to the oscillator module.

In order to minimize latency between external oscillator start-up and code execution, the Two-Speed Clock Start-up mode can be selected (see **Section 5.4 "Two-Speed Clock Start-up Mode"**).

5.2.1.4 4X PLL

The oscillator module contains a 4X PLL that can be used with both external and internal clock sources to provide a system clock source. The input frequency for the 4X PLL must fall within specifications. See the PLL Clock Timing Specifications in **Section 30.0 "Electrical Specifications"**.

The 4X PLL may be enabled for use by one of two methods:

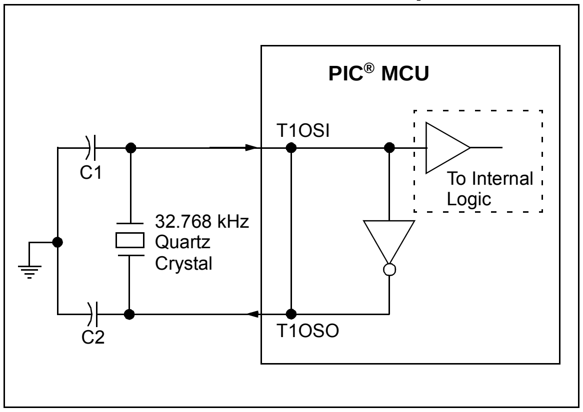
1. Program the PLLEN bit in Configuration Word 2 to a '1'.
2. Write the SPLLEN bit in the OSCCON register to a '1'. If the PLLEN bit in Configuration Word 2 is programmed to a '1', then the value of SPLLEN is ignored.

5.2.1.5 TIMER1 Oscillator

The Timer1 Oscillator is a separate crystal oscillator that is associated with the Timer1 peripheral. It is optimized for timekeeping operations with a 32.768 kHz crystal connected between the T1OSO and T1OSI device pins.

The Timer1 Oscillator can be used as an alternate system clock source and can be selected during run-time using clock switching. Refer to **Section 5.3 "Clock Switching"** for more information.

FIGURE 5-5: QUARTZ CRYSTAL OPERATION (TIMER1 OSCILLATOR)



Note 1: Quartz crystal characteristics vary according to type, package and manufacturer. The user should consult the manufacturer data sheets for specifications and recommended application.

2: Always verify oscillator performance over the VDD and temperature range that is expected for the application.

3: For oscillator design assistance, reference the following Microchip Applications Notes:

- AN826, "*Crystal Oscillator Basics and Crystal Selection for rfPIC® and PIC® Devices*" (DS00826)
- AN849, "*Basic PIC® Oscillator Design*" (DS00849)
- AN943, "*Practical PIC® Oscillator Analysis and Design*" (DS00943)
- AN949, "*Making Your Oscillator Work*" (DS00949)
- TB097, "*Interfacing a Micro Crystal MS1V-T1K 32.768 kHz Tuning Fork Crystal to a PIC16F690/SS*" (DS91097)
- AN1288, "*Design Practices for Low-Power External Oscillators*" (DS01288)

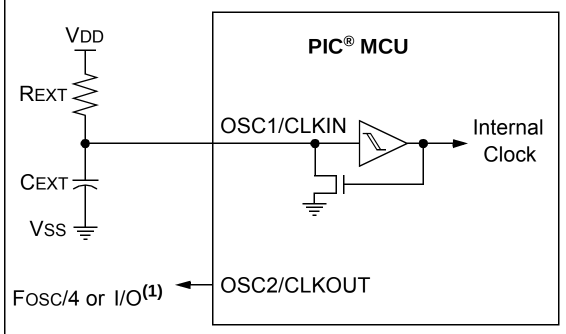
5.2.1.6 External RC Mode

The external Resistor-Capacitor (RC) modes support the use of an external RC circuit. This allows the designer maximum flexibility in frequency choice while keeping costs to a minimum when clock accuracy is not required.

The RC circuit connects to OSC1. OSC2/CLKOUT is available for general purpose I/O or CLKOUT. The function of the OSC2/CLKOUT pin is determined by the state of the $\overline{\text{CLKOUTEN}}$ bit in Configuration Word 1.

Figure 5-6 shows the external RC mode connections.

FIGURE 5-6: EXTERNAL RC MODES



Recommended values: 10 kΩ ≤ REXT ≤ 100 kΩ, <3V
3 kΩ ≤ REXT ≤ 100 kΩ, 3-5V
CEXT > 20 pF, 2-5V

Note 1: Output depends upon $\overline{\text{CLKOUTEN}}$ bit of the Configuration Word 1.

The RC oscillator frequency is a function of the supply voltage, the resistor (REXT) and capacitor (CEXT) values and the operating temperature. Other factors affecting the oscillator frequency are:

- threshold voltage variation
- component tolerances
- packaging variations in capacitance

The user also needs to take into account variation due to tolerance of external RC components used.

5.2.2 INTERNAL CLOCK SOURCES

The device may be configured to use the internal oscillator block as the system clock by performing one of the following actions:

- Program the FOSC<2:0> bits in Configuration Word 1 to select the INTOSC clock source, which will be used as the default system clock upon a device Reset.
- Write the SCS<1:0> bits in the OSCCON register to switch the system clock source to the internal oscillator during run-time. See **Section 5.3 "Clock Switching"**for more information.

In **INTOSC** mode, OSC1/CLKIN is available for general purpose I/O. OSC2/CLKOUT is available for general purpose I/O or CLKOUT.

The function of the OSC2/CLKOUT pin is determined by the state of the $\overline{\text{CLKOUTEN}}$ bit in Configuration Word 1.

The internal oscillator block has two independent oscillators and a dedicated Phase-Locked Loop, HFPLL that can produce one of three internal system clock sources.

1. The **HFINTOSC** (High-Frequency Internal Oscillator) is factory calibrated and operates at 16 MHz. The HFINTOSC source is generated from the 500 kHz MFINTOSC source and the dedicated Phase-Locked Loop, HFPLL. The frequency of the HFINTOSC can be user-adjusted via software using the OSCTUNE register (Register 5-3).
2. The **MFINTOSC** (Medium-Frequency Internal Oscillator) is factory calibrated and operates at 500 kHz. The frequency of the MFINTOSC can be user-adjusted via software using the OSCTUNE register (Register 5-3).
3. The **LFINTOSC** (Low-Frequency Internal Oscillator) is uncalibrated and operates at 31 kHz.

5.2.2.1 HFINTOSC

The High-Frequency Internal Oscillator (HFINTOSC) is a factory calibrated 16 MHz internal clock source. The frequency of the HFINTOSC can be altered via software using the OSCTUNE register (Register 5-3).

The output of the HFINTOSC connects to a postscaler and multiplexer (see Figure 5-1). One of nine frequencies derived from the HFINTOSC can be selected via software using the IRCF<3:0> bits of the OSCCON register. See **Section 5.2.2.7 "Internal Oscillator Clock Switch Timing"** for more information.

The HFINTOSC is enabled by:

- Configure the IRCF<3:0> bits of the OSCCON register for the desired HF frequency, and
- FOSC<2:0> = `100`, or
- Set the System Clock Source (SCS) bits of the OSCCON register to '`1x`'.

The High Frequency Internal Oscillator Ready bit (HFIOFR) of the OSCSTAT register indicates when the HFINTOSC is running and can be utilized.

The High Frequency Internal Oscillator Status Locked bit (HFIOFL) of the OSCSTAT register indicates when the HFINTOSC is running within 2% of its final value.

The High Frequency Internal Oscillator Status Stable bit (HFIOFS) of the OSCSTAT register indicates when the HFINTOSC is running within 0.5% of its final value.

5.2.2.2 MFINTOSC

The Medium-Frequency Internal Oscillator (MFINTOSC) is a factory calibrated 500 kHz internal clock source. The frequency of the MFINTOSC can be altered via software using the OSCTUNE register (Register 5-3).

The output of the MFINTOSC connects to a postscaler and multiplexer (see Figure 5-1). One of nine frequencies derived from the MFINTOSC can be selected via software using the IRCF<3:0> bits of the OSCCON register. See **Section 5.2.2.7 "Internal Oscillator Clock Switch Timing"** for more information.

The MFINTOSC is enabled by:

- Configure the IRCF<3:0> bits of the OSCCON register for the desired HF frequency, and
- FOSC<2:0> = `100`, or
- Set the System Clock Source (SCS) bits of the OSCCON register to '`1x`'

The Medium Frequency Internal Oscillator Ready bit (MFIOFR) of the OSCSTAT register indicates when the MFINTOSC is running and can be utilized.

5.2.2.3 Internal Oscillator Frequency Adjustment

The 500 kHz internal oscillator is factory calibrated. This internal oscillator can be adjusted in software by writing to the OSCTUNE register (Register 5-3). Since the HFINTOSC and MFINTOSC clock sources are derived from the 500 kHz internal oscillator a change in the OSCTUNE register value will apply to both.

The default value of the OSCTUNE register is '0'. The value is a 6-bit two's complement number. A value of 1Fh will provide an adjustment to the maximum frequency. A value of 20h will provide an adjustment to the minimum frequency.

When the OSCTUNE register is modified, the oscillator frequency will begin shifting to the new frequency. Code execution continues during this shift. There is no indication that the shift has occurred.

OSCTUNE does not affect the LFINTOSC frequency. Operation of features that depend on the LFINTOSC clock source frequency, such as the Power-up Timer (PWRT), Watchdog Timer (WDT), Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (FSCM) and peripherals, are *not* affected by the change in frequency.

5.2.2.4 LFINTOSC

The Low-Frequency Internal Oscillator (LFINTOSC) is an uncalibrated 31 kHz internal clock source.

The output of the LFINTOSC connects to a postscaler and multiplexer (see Figure 5-1). Select 31 kHz, via software, using the IRCF<3:0> bits of the OSCCON register. See **Section 5.2.2.7 "Internal Oscillator Clock Switch Timing"** for more information. The LFINTOSC is also the frequency for the Power-up Timer (PWRT), Watchdog Timer (WDT) and Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (FSCM).

The LFINTOSC is enabled by selecting 31 kHz (IRCF<3:0> bits of the OSCCON register = `000`) as the system clock source (SCS bits of the OSCCON register = `1x`), or when any of the following are enabled:

- Configure the IRCF<3:0> bits of the OSCCON register for the desired LF frequency, and
- FOSC<2:0> = `100`, or
- Set the System Clock Source (SCS) bits of the OSCCON register to '`1x`'

Peripherals that use the LFINTOSC are:

- Power-up Timer (PWRT)
- Watchdog Timer (WDT)
- Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (FSCM)

The Low Frequency Internal Oscillator Ready bit (LFIOFR) of the OSCSTAT register indicates when the LFINTOSC is running and can be utilized.

5.2.2.5 Internal Oscillator Frequency Selection

The system clock speed can be selected via software using the Internal Oscillator Frequency Select bits IRCF<3:0> of the OSCCON register.

The output of the 16 MHz HFINTOSC and 31 kHz LFINTOSC connects to a postscaler and multiplexer (see Figure 5-1). The Internal Oscillator Frequency Select bits IRCF<3:0> of the OSCCON register select the frequency output of the internal oscillators. One of the following frequencies can be selected via software:

- 32 MHz (requires 4X PLL)
- 16 MHz
- 8 MHz
- 4 MHz
- 2 MHz
- 1 MHz
- 500 kHz (Default after Reset)
- 250 kHz
- 125 kHz
- 62.5 kHz
- 31.25 kHz
- 31 kHz (LFINTOSC)

Note:	Following any Reset, the IRCF<3:0> bits of the OSCCON register are set to '`0111`' and the frequency selection is set to 500 kHz. The user can modify the IRCF bits to select a different frequency.

The IRCF<3:0> bits of the OSCCON register allow duplicate selections for some frequencies. These duplicate choices can offer system design trade-offs. Lower power consumption can be obtained when changing oscillator sources for a given frequency. Faster transition times can be obtained between frequency changes that use the same oscillator source.

5.2.2.6 32 MHz Internal Oscillator Frequency Selection

The Internal Oscillator Block can be used with the 4X PLL associated with the External Oscillator Block to produce a 32 MHz internal system clock source. The following settings are required to use the 32 MHz internal clock source:

- The FOSC bits in Configuration Word 1 must be set to use the INTOSC source as the device system clock (FOSC<2:0> = `100`).
- The SCS bits in the OSCCON register must be cleared to use the clock determined by FOSC<2:0> in Configuration Word 1 (SCS<1:0> = `00`).
- The IRCF bits in the OSCCON register must be set to the 8 MHz HFINTOSC set to use (IRCF<3:0> = `1110`).
- The SPLLEN bit in the OSCCON register must be set to enable the 4xPLL, or the PLLEN bit of the Configuration Word 2 must be programmed to a ‘`1`’.

Note:	When using the PLLEN bit of the Configuration Word 2, the 4xPLL cannot be disabled by software and the 8 MHz HFINTOSC option will no longer be available.

The 4xPLL is not available for use with the internal oscillator when the SCS bits of the OSCCON register are set to ‘`1x`’. The SCS bits must be set to ‘`00`’ to use the 4xPLL with the internal oscillator.

5.2.2.7 Internal Oscillator Clock Switch Timing

When switching between the HFINTOSC, MFINTOSC and the LFINTOSC, the new oscillator may already be shut down to save power (see Figure 5-7). If this is the case, there is a delay after the IRCF<3:0> bits of the OSCCON register are modified before the frequency selection takes place. The OSCSTAT register will reflect the current active status of the HFINTOSC, MFINTOSC and LFINTOSC oscillators. The sequence of a frequency selection is as follows:

1. IRCF<3:0> bits of the OSCCON register are modified.
2. If the new clock is shut down, a clock start-up delay is started.
3. Clock switch circuitry waits for a falling edge of the current clock.
4. The current clock is held low and the clock switch circuitry waits for a rising edge in the new clock.
5. The new clock is now active.
6. The OSCSTAT register is updated as required.
7. Clock switch is complete.

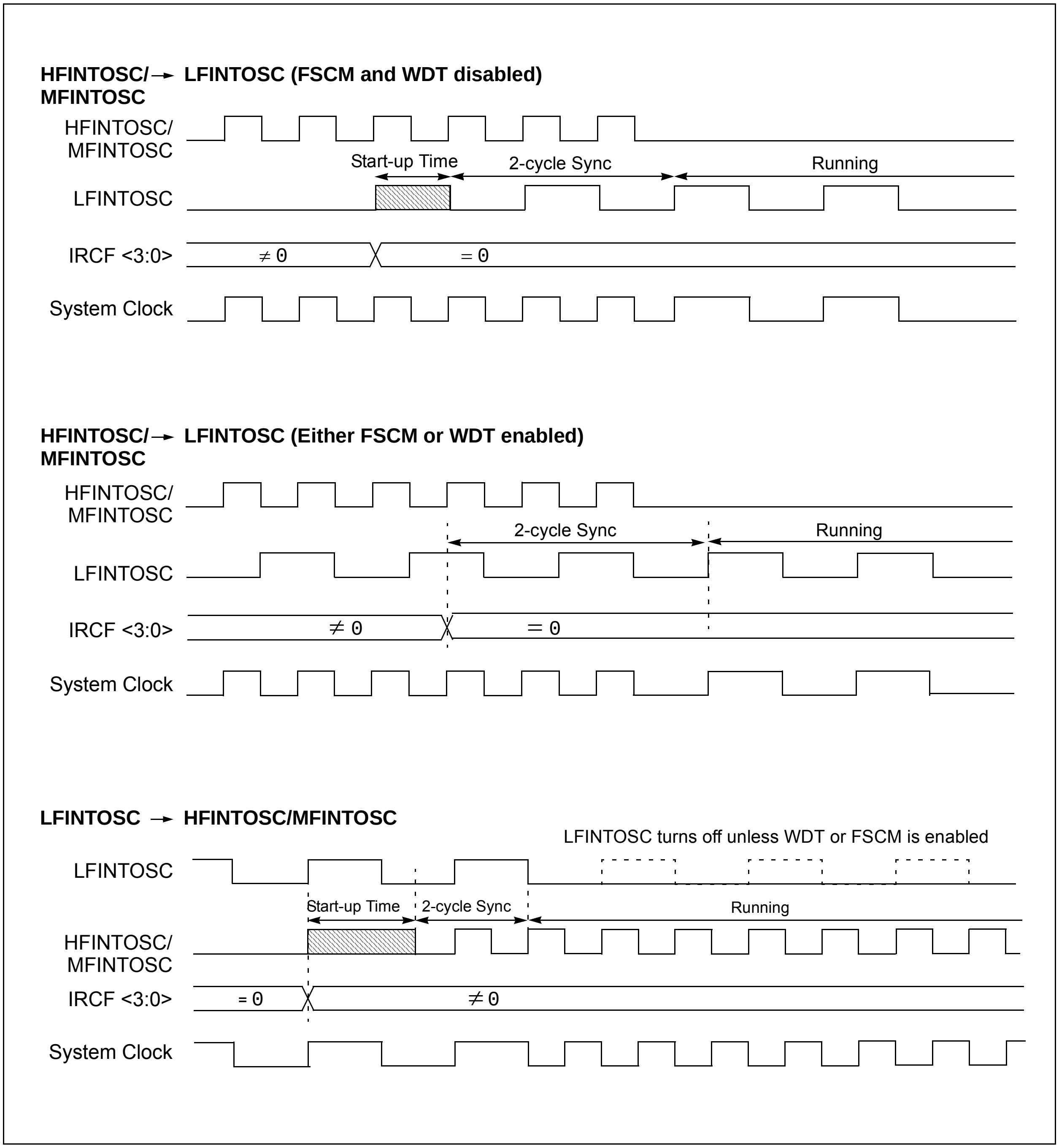
See Figure 5-7 for more details.

If the internal oscillator speed is switched between two clocks of the same source, there is no start-up delay before the new frequency is selected. Clock switching time delays are shown in Table 5-1.

Start-up delay specifications are located in the oscillator tables of **Section 30.0 “Electrical Specifications”**

 Preliminary

FIGURE 5-7: INTERNAL OSCILLATOR SWITCH TIMING



5.3 Clock Switching

The system clock source can be switched between external and internal clock sources via software using the System Clock Select (SCS) bits of the OSCCON register. The following clock sources can be selected using the SCS bits:

- Default system oscillator determined by FOSC bits in Configuration Word 1
- Timer1 32 kHz crystal oscillator
- Internal Oscillator Block (INTOSC)

5.3.1 SYSTEM CLOCK SELECT (SCS) BITS

The System Clock Select (SCS) bits of the OSCCON register selects the system clock source that is used for the CPU and peripherals.

- When the SCS bits of the OSCCON register = `00`, the system clock source is determined by value of the FOSC<2:0> bits in the Configuration Word 1.
- When the SCS bits of the OSCCON register = `01`, the system clock source is the Timer1 oscillator.
- When the SCS bits of the OSCCON register = `1x`, the system clock source is chosen by the internal oscillator frequency selected by the IRCF<3:0> bits of the OSCCON register. After a Reset, the SCS bits of the OSCCON register are always cleared.

Note:	Any automatic clock switch, which may occur from Two-Speed Start-up or Fail-Safe Clock Monitor, does not update the SCS bits of the OSCCON register. The user can monitor the OSTS bit of the OSCSTAT register to determine the current system clock source.

When switching between clock sources, a delay is required to allow the new clock to stabilize. These oscillator delays are shown in Table 5-1.

5.3.2 OSCILLATOR START-UP TIME-OUT STATUS (OSTS) BIT

The Oscillator Start-up Time-out Status (OSTS) bit of the OSCSTAT register indicates whether the system clock is running from the external clock source, as defined by the FOSC<2:0> bits in the Configuration Word 1, or from the internal clock source. In particular, OSTS indicates that the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) has timed out for LP, XT or HS modes. The OST does not reflect the status of the Timer1 Oscillator.

5.3.3 TIMER1 OSCILLATOR

The Timer1 Oscillator is a separate crystal oscillator associated with the Timer1 peripheral. It is optimized for timekeeping operations with a 32.768 kHz crystal connected between the T1OSO and T1OSI device pins.

The Timer1 oscillator is enabled using the T1OSCEN control bit in the T1CON register. See **Section 21.0 "Timer1 Module with Gate Control"** for more information about the Timer1 peripheral.

5.3.4 TIMER1 OSCILLATOR READY (T1OSCR) BIT

The user must ensure that the Timer1 Oscillator is ready to be used before it is selected as a system clock source. The Timer1 Oscillator Ready (T1OSCR) bit of the OSCSTAT register indicates whether the Timer1 oscillator is ready to be used. After the T1OSCR bit is set, the SCS bits can be configured to select the Timer1 oscillator.

5.4 Two-Speed Clock Start-up Mode

Two-Speed Start-up mode provides additional power savings by minimizing the latency between external oscillator start-up and code execution. In applications that make heavy use of the Sleep mode, Two-Speed Start-up will remove the external oscillator start-up time from the time spent awake and can reduce the overall power consumption of the device. This mode allows the application to wake-up from Sleep, perform a few instructions using the INTOSC internal oscillator block as the clock source and go back to Sleep without waiting for the external oscillator to become stable.

Two-Speed Start-up provides benefits when the oscillator module is configured for LP, XT, or HS modes. The Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) is enabled for these modes and must count 1024 oscillations before the oscillator can be used as the system clock source.

If the oscillator module is configured for any mode other than LP, XT or HS mode, then Two-Speed Start-up is disabled. This is because the external clock oscillator does not require any stabilization time after POR or an exit from Sleep.

If the OST count reaches 1024 before the device enters Sleep mode, the OSTS bit of the OSCSTAT register is set and program execution switches to the external oscillator. However, the system may never operate from the external oscillator if the time spent awake is very short.

Note:	Executing a `SLEEP` instruction will abort the oscillator start-up time and will cause the OSTS bit of the OSCSTAT register to remain clear.

5.4.1 TWO-SPEED START-UP MODE CONFIGURATION

Two-Speed Start-up mode is configured by the following settings:

- IESO (of the Configuration Word 1) = `1`; Internal/External Switchover bit (Two-Speed Start-up mode enabled).
- SCS (of the OSCCON register) = `00`.
- FOSC<2:0> bits in the Configuration Word 1 configured for LP, XT or HS mode.

Two-Speed Start-up mode is entered after:

- Power-on Reset (POR) and, if enabled, after Power-up Timer (PWRT) has expired, or
- Wake-up from Sleep.

TABLE 5-1: OSCILLATOR SWITCHING DELAYS

Switch From	Switch To	Frequency	Oscillator Delay
Sleep/POR	LFINTOSC(1) MFINTOSC(1) HFINTOSC(1)	31 kHz 31.25 kHz-500 kHz 31.25 kHz-16 MHz	Oscillator Warm-up Delay (T_{WARM})
Sleep/POR	EC, RC(1)	DC – 32 MHz	2 cycles
LFINTOSC	EC, RC(1)	DC – 32 MHz	1 cycle of each
Sleep/POR	Timer1 Oscillator LP, XT, HS(1)	32 kHz-20 MHz	1024 Clock Cycles (OST)
Any clock source	MFINTOSC(1) HFINTOSC(1)	31.25 kHz-500 kHz 31.25 kHz-16 MHz	2 μs (approx.)
Any clock source	LFINTOSC(1)	31 kHz	1 cycle of each
Any clock source	Timer1 Oscillator	32 kHz	1024 Clock Cycles (OST)
PLL inactive	PLL active	16-32 MHz	2 ms (approx.)

Note 1: PLL inactive.

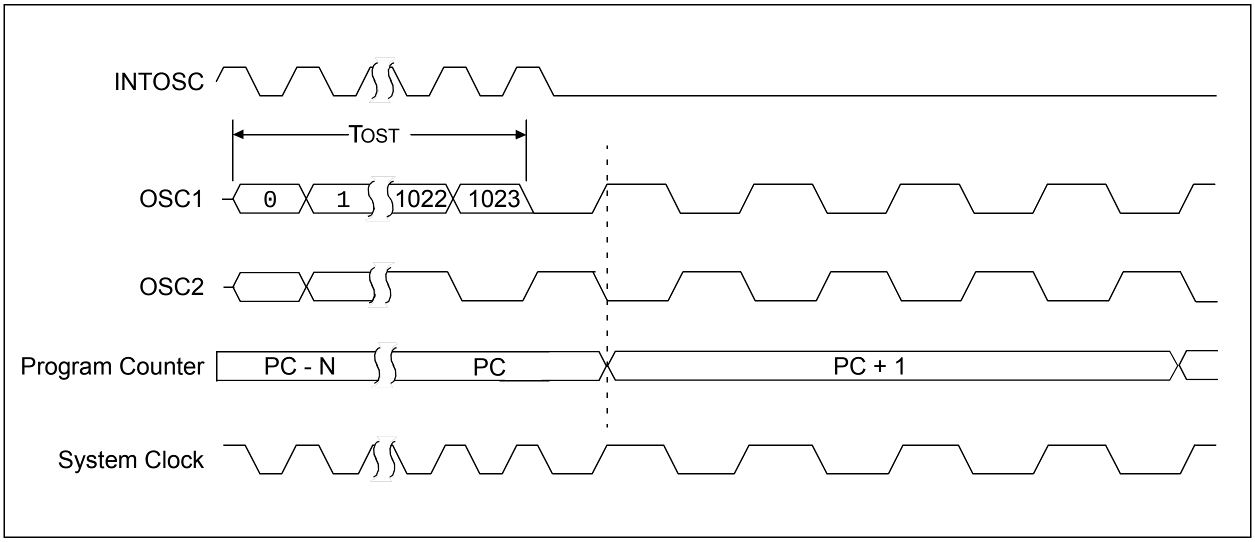
5.4.2 TWO-SPEED START-UP SEQUENCE

1. Wake-up from Power-on Reset or Sleep.
2. Instructions begin execution by the internal oscillator at the frequency set in the IRCF<3:0> bits of the OSCCON register.
3. OST enabled to count 1024 clock cycles.
4. OST timed out, wait for falling edge of the internal oscillator.
5. OSTS is set.
6. System clock held low until the next falling edge of new clock (LP, XT or HS mode).
7. System clock is switched to external clock source.

5.4.3 CHECKING TWO-SPEED CLOCK STATUS

Checking the state of the OSTS bit of the OSCSTAT register will confirm if the microcontroller is running from the external clock source, as defined by the FOSC<2:0> bits in the Configuration Word 1, or the internal oscillator.

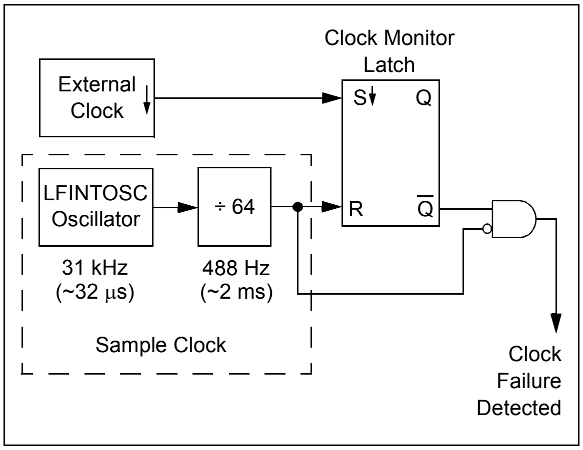
FIGURE 5-8: TWO-SPEED START-UP



5.5 Fail-Safe Clock Monitor

The Fail-Safe Clock Monitor (FSCM) allows the device to continue operating should the external oscillator fail. The FSCM can detect oscillator failure any time after the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) has expired. The FSCM is enabled by setting the FCMEN bit in the Configuration Word 1. The FSCM is applicable to all external Oscillator modes (LP, XT, HS, EC, Timer1 Oscillator and RC).

FIGURE 5-9: FSCM BLOCK DIAGRAM



5.5.1 FAIL-SAFE DETECTION

The FSCM module detects a failed oscillator by comparing the external oscillator to the FSCM sample clock. The sample clock is generated by dividing the LFINTOSC by 64. See Figure 5-9. Inside the fail detector block is a latch. The external clock sets the latch on each falling edge of the external clock. The sample clock clears the latch on each rising edge of the sample clock. A failure is detected when an entire half-cycle of the sample clock elapses before the external clock goes low.

5.5.2 FAIL-SAFE OPERATION

When the external clock fails, the FSCM switches the device clock to an internal clock source and sets the bit flag OSFIF of the PIR2 register. Setting this flag will generate an interrupt if the OSFIE bit of the PIE2 register is also set. The device firmware can then take steps to mitigate the problems that may arise from a failed clock. The system clock will continue to be sourced from the internal clock source until the device firmware successfully restarts the external oscillator and switches back to external operation.

The internal clock source chosen by the FSCM is determined by the IRCF<3:0> bits of the OSCCON register. This allows the internal oscillator to be configured before a failure occurs.

5.5.3 FAIL-SAFE CONDITION CLEARING

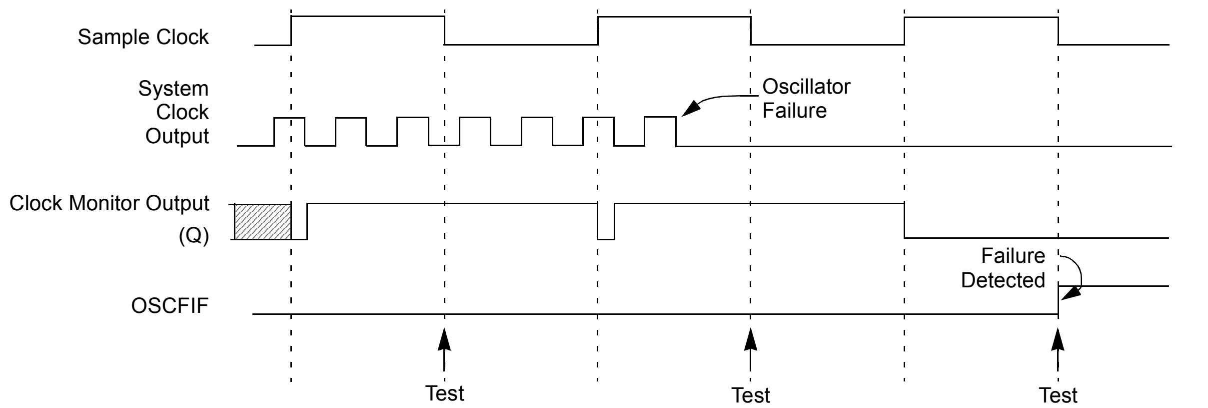
The Fail-Safe condition is cleared after a Reset, executing a SLEEP instruction or changing the SCS bits of the OSCCON register. When the SCS bits are changed, the OST is restarted. While the OST is running, the device continues to operate from the INTOSC selected in OSCCON. When the OST times out, the Fail-Safe condition is cleared and the device will be operating from the external clock source. The Fail-Safe condition must be cleared before the OSFIF flag can be cleared.

5.5.4 RESET OR WAKE-UP FROM SLEEP

The FSCM is designed to detect an oscillator failure after the Oscillator Start-up Timer (OST) has expired. The OST is used after waking up from Sleep and after any type of Reset. The OST is not used with the EC or RC Clock modes so that the FSCM will be active as soon as the Reset or wake-up has completed. When the FSCM is enabled, the Two-Speed Start-up is also enabled. Therefore, the device will always be executing code while the OST is operating.

Note:	Due to the wide range of oscillator start-up times, the Fail-Safe circuit is not active during oscillator start-up (i.e., after exiting Reset or Sleep). After an appropriate amount of time, the user should check the Status bits in the OSCSTAT register to verify the oscillator start-up and that the system clock switchover has successfully completed.

FIGURE 5-10: FSCM TIMING DIAGRAM



Note: The system clock is normally at a much higher frequency than the sample clock. The relative frequencies in this example have been chosen for clarity.

5.6 Oscillator Control Registers

REGISTER 5-1: OSCCON: OSCILLATOR CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	U-0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
SPLLEN	IRCF<3:0>				—	SCS<1:0>	
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7 **SPLLEN:** Software PLL Enable bit
If PLLEN in Configuration Word 1 = `1`:
SPLLEN bit is ignored. 4x PLL is always enabled (subject to oscillator requirements)
If PLLEN in Configuration Word 1 = `0`:
1 = 4x PLL Is enabled
0 = 4x PLL is disabled

bit 6-3 **IRCF<3:0>:** Internal Oscillator Frequency Select bits
`000x` = 31 kHz LF
`0010` = 31.25 kHz MF
`0011` = 31.25 kHz HF(1)
`0100` = 62.5 kHz MF
`0101` = 125 kHz MF
`0110` = 250 kHz MF
`0111` = 500 kHz MF (default upon Reset)
`1000` = 125 kHz HF(1)
`1001` = 250 kHz HF(1)
`1010` = 500 kHz HF(1)
`1011` = 1 MHz HF
`1100` = 2 MHz HF
`1101` = 4 MHz HF
`1110` = 8 MHz or 32 MHz HF(see **Section 5.2.2.1 “HFINTOSC”**)
`1111` = 16 MHz HF

bit 2 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘`0`’

bit 1-0 **SCS<1:0>:** System Clock Select bits
`1x` = Internal oscillator block
`01` = Timer1 oscillator
`00` = Clock determined by FOSC<2:0> in Configuration Word 1.

Note 1: Duplicate frequency derived from HFINTOSC.

REGISTER 5-2: OSCSTAT: OSCILLATOR STATUS REGISTER

R-1/q	R-0/q	R-q/q	R-0/q	R-0/q	R-q/q	R-0/0	R-0/q
T1OSCR	PLLR	OSTS	HFIOFR	HFIOFL	MFIOFR	LFIOFR	HFIOFS
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	q = Conditional

bit 7 **T1OSCR:** Timer1 Oscillator Ready bit
If T1OSCEN = 1:
1 = Timer1 oscillator is ready
0 = Timer1 oscillator is not ready
If T1OSCEN = 0:
1 = Timer1 clock source is always ready

bit 6 **PLLR** 4x PLL Ready bit
1 = 4x PLL is ready
0 = 4x PLL is not ready

bit 5 **OSTS:** Oscillator Start-up Time-out Status bit
1 = Running from the clock defined by the FOSC<2:0> bits of the Configuration Word 1
0 = Running from an internal oscillator

bit 4 **HFIOFR:** High Frequency Internal Oscillator Ready bit
1 = HFINTOSC is ready
0 = HFINTOSC is not ready

bit 3 **HFIOFL:** High Frequency Internal Oscillator Locked bit
1 = HFINTOSC is at least 2% accurate
0 = HFINTOSC is not 2% accurate

bit 2 **MFIOFR:** Medium Frequency Internal Oscillator Ready bit
1 = MFINTOSC is ready
0 = MFINTOSC is not ready

bit 1 **LFIOFR:** Low Frequency Internal Oscillator Ready bit
1 = LFINTOSC is ready
0 = LFINTOSC is not ready

bit 0 **HFIOFS:** High Frequency Internal Oscillator Stable bit
1 = HFINTOSC is at least 0.5% accurate
0 = HFINTOSC is not 0.5% accurate

REGISTER 5-3: OSCTUNE: OSCILLATOR TUNING REGISTER

U-0	U-0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
—	—	TUN<5:0>					
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 5-0 **TUN<4:0>:** Frequency Tuning bits
`011111` = Maximum frequency
`011110` =
•
•
•
`000001` =
`000000` = Oscillator module is running at the factory-calibrated frequency.
`111111` =
•
•
•
`100000` = Minimum frequency

TABLE 5-2: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH CLOCK SOURCES

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
OSCCON	SPLLEN	IRCF<3:0>				—	SCS<1:0>		75
OSCSTAT	T1OSCR	PLLR	OSTS	HFIOFR	HFIOFL	MFIOFR	LFIOFR	HFIOFS	76
OSCTUNE	—	—	TUN<5:0>						77
PIE2	OSFIE	C2IE	C1IE	EEIE	BCLIE	LCDIE	C3IE	CCP2IE(1)	95
PIR2	OSFIF	C2IF	C1IF	EEIF	BCLIF	LCDIF	C3IF	CCP2IF(1)	99
T1CON	TMR1CS<1:0>		T1CKPS<1:0>		T1OSCEN	$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$	—	TMR1ON	205

Legend: — = unimplemented location, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by clock sources.
Note 1: PIC16F1947 only.

TABLE 5-3: SUMMARY OF CONFIGURATION WORD WITH CLOCK SOURCES

Name	Bits	Bit -/7	Bit -/6	Bit 13/5	Bit 12/4	Bit 11/3	Bit 10/2	Bit 9/1	Bit 8/0	Register on Page
CONFIG1	13:8	—	—	FCMEN	IESO	$\overline{\text{CLKOUTEN}}$	BOREN<1:0>		$\overline{\text{CPD}}$	56
	7:0	$\overline{\text{CP}}$	MCLRE	$\overline{\text{PWRTE}}$	WDTE<1:0>		FOSC<2:0>			
CONFIG2	13:8	—	—	LVP	$\overline{\text{DEBUG}}$	—	BORV	STVREN	PLLEN	58
	7:0	—	—	—	VCAPEN	—	—	WRT<1:0>		

Legend: — = unimplemented location, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by clock sources.
Note 1: PIC16F1946/47 only.

NOTES:

6.0 RESETS

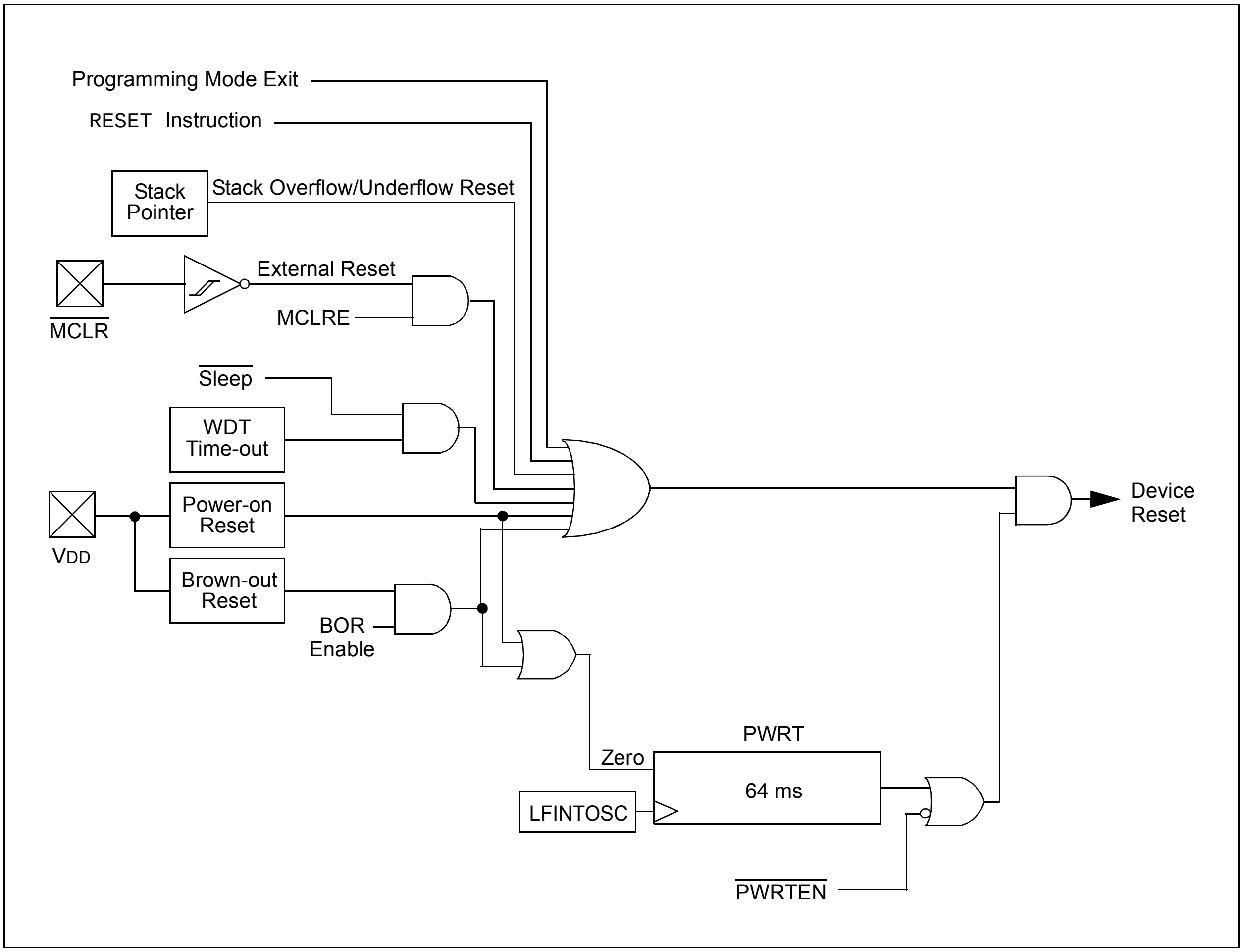
There are multiple ways to reset this device:

- Power-on Reset (POR)
- Brown-out Reset (BOR)
- $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset
- WDT Reset
- RESET instruction
- Stack Overflow
- Stack Underflow
- Programming mode exit

To allow VDD to stabilize, an optional power-up timer can be enabled to extend the Reset time after a BOR or POR event.

A simplified block diagram of the On-Chip Reset Circuit is shown in Figure 6-1.

FIGURE 6-1: SIMPLIFIED BLOCK DIAGRAM OF ON-CHIP RESET CIRCUIT



6.1 Power-on Reset (POR)

The POR circuit holds the device in Reset until VDD has reached an acceptable level for minimum operation. Slow rising VDD, fast operating speeds or analog performance may require greater than minimum VDD. The PWRT, BOR or $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ features can be used to extend the start-up period until all device operation conditions have been met.

6.1.1 POWER-UP TIMER (PWRT)

The Power-up Timer provides a nominal 64 ms time-out on POR or Brown-out Reset.

The device is held in Reset as long as PWRT is active. The PWRT delay allows additional time for the VDD to rise to an acceptable level. The Power-up Timer is enabled by clearing the $\overline{\text{PWRTE}}$ bit in Configuration Word 1.

The Power-up Timer starts after the release of the POR and BOR.

For additional information, refer to Application Note AN607, *"Power-up Trouble Shooting"* (DS00607).

6.2 Brown-Out Reset (BOR)

The BOR circuit holds the device in Reset when VDD reaches a selectable minimum level. Between the POR and BOR, complete voltage range coverage for execution protection can be implemented.

The Brown-out Reset module has four operating modes controlled by the BOREN<1:0> bits in Configuration Word 1. The four operating modes are:

- BOR is always on
- BOR is off when in Sleep
- BOR is controlled by software
- BOR is always off

Refer to Table 6-1 for more information.

The Brown-out Reset voltage level is selectable by configuring the BORV bit in Configuration Word 2.

A VDD noise rejection filter prevents the BOR from triggering on small events. If VDD falls below VBOR for a duration greater than parameter TBORDC, the device will reset. See Figure 6-3 for more information.

TABLE 6-1: BOR OPERATING MODES

BOREN Config bits	SBOREN	Device Mode	BOR Mode	Device Operation upon release of POR	Device Operation upon wake-up from Sleep
BOR_ON (`11`)	X	X	Active	Waits for BOR ready[(1)]	
BOR_NSLEEP (`10`)	X	Awake	Active	Waits for BOR ready	
BOR_NSLEEP (`10`)	X	Sleep	Disabled		
BOR_SBOREN (`01`)	`1`	X	Active	Begins immediately	
BOR_SBOREN (`01`)	`0`	X	Disabled	Begins immediately	
BOR_OFF (`00`)	X	X	Disabled	Begins immediately	

Note 1: Even though this case specifically waits for the BOR, the BOR is already operating, so there is no delay in start-up.

6.2.1 BOR IS ALWAYS ON

When the BOREN bits of Configuration Word 1 are set to '`11`', the BOR is always on. The device start-up will be delayed until the BOR is ready and VDD is higher than the BOR threshold.

BOR protection is active during Sleep. The BOR does not delay wake-up from Sleep.

6.2.2 BOR IS OFF IN SLEEP

When the BOREN bits of Configuration Word 1 are set to '`10`', the BOR is on, except in Sleep. The device start-up will be delayed until the BOR is ready and VDD is higher than the BOR threshold.

BOR protection is not active during Sleep. The device wake-up will be delayed until the BOR is ready.

6.2.3 BOR CONTROLLED BY SOFTWARE

When the BOREN bits of Configuration Word 1 are set to '`01`', the BOR is controlled by the SBOREN bit of the BORCON register. The device start-up is not delayed by the BOR ready condition or the VDD level.

BOR protection begins as soon as the BOR circuit is ready. The status of the BOR circuit is reflected in the BORRDY bit of the BORCON register.

BOR protection is unchanged by Sleep.

FIGURE 6-2: BROWN-OUT READY

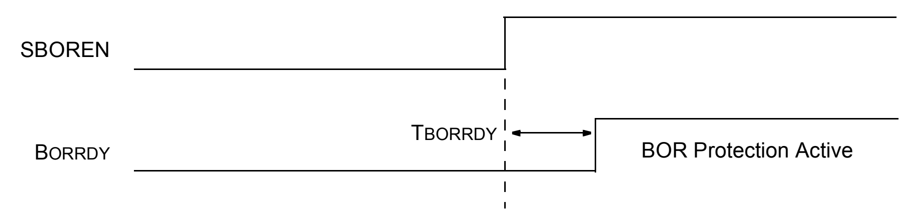
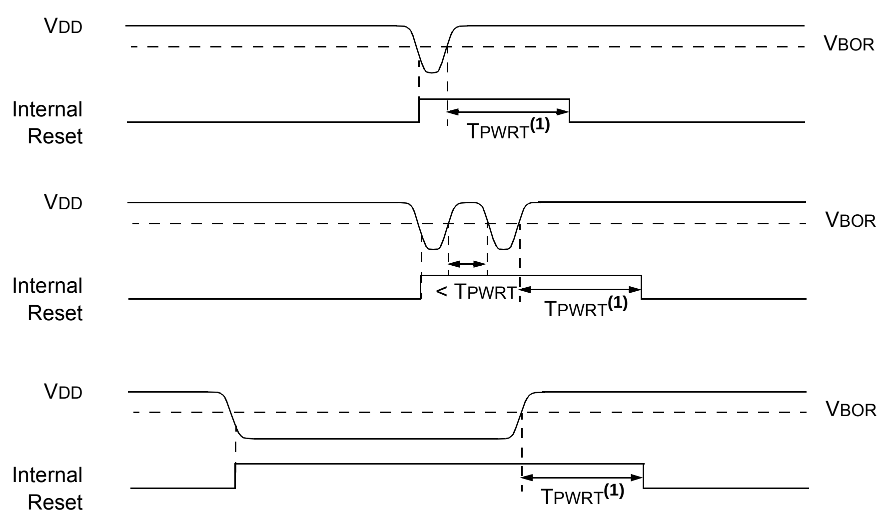


FIGURE 6-3: BROWN-OUT SITUATIONS



Note 1: TPWRT delay only if $\overline{\text{PWRTE}}$ bit is programmed to '0'.

REGISTER 6-1: BORCON: BROWN-OUT RESET CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-1/u	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R-q/u
SBOREN	—	—	—	—	—	—	BORRDY
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	q = Value depends on condition

bit 7 **SBOREN:** Software Brown-out Reset Enable bit
<u>If BOREN <1:0> in Configuration Word 1 ≠ 01</u>:
SBOREN is read/write, but has no effect on the BOR.
<u>If BOREN <1:0> in Configuration Word 1 = 01</u>:
1 = BOR Enabled
0 = BOR Disabled

bit 6-1 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 0 **BORRDY:** Brown-out Reset Circuit Ready Status bit
1 = The Brown-out Reset circuit is active
0 = The Brown-out Reset circuit is inactive

6.3 $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$

The $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ is an optional external input that can reset the device. The $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ function is controlled by the MCLRE bit of Configuration Word 1 and the LVP bit of Configuration Word 2 (Table 6-2).

TABLE 6-2: $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ CONFIGURATION

MCLRE	LVP	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$
`0`	`0`	Disabled
`1`	`0`	Enabled
`x`	`1`	Enabled

6.3.1 $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ ENABLED

When $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ is enabled and the pin is held low, the device is held in Reset. The $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ pin is connected to V_{DD} through an internal weak pull-up.

The device has a noise filter in the $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset path. The filter will detect and ignore small pulses.

Note:	A Reset does not drive the $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ pin low.

6.3.2 $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ DISABLED

When $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ is disabled, the pin functions as a general purpose input and the internal weak pull-up is under software control. See **Section 12.6 "PORTE Registers"** for more information.

6.4 Watchdog Timer (WDT) Reset

The Watchdog Timer generates a Reset if the firmware does not issue a `CLRWDT` instruction within the time-out period. The $\overline{\text{TO}}$ and $\overline{\text{PD}}$ bits in the STATUS register are changed to indicate the WDT Reset. See **Section 10.0 "Watchdog Timer"** for more information.

6.5 RESET Instruction

A `RESET` instruction will cause a device Reset. The $\overline{\text{RI}}$ bit in the PCON register will be set to '`0`'. See Table 6-4 for default conditions after a `RESET` instruction has occurred.

6.6 Stack Overflow/Underflow Reset

The device can reset when the Stack Overflows or Underflows. The STKOVF or STKUNF bits of the PCON register indicate the Reset condition. These Resets are enabled by setting the STVREN bit in Configuration Word 2. See **Section 3.4.2 "Overflow/Underflow Reset"** for more information.

6.7 Programming Mode Exit

Upon exit of Programming mode, the device will behave as if a POR had just occurred.

6.8 Power-Up Timer

The Power-up Timer optionally delays device execution after a BOR or POR event. This timer is typically used to allow V_{DD} to stabilize before allowing the device to start running.

The Power-up Timer is controlled by the $\overline{\text{PWRTE}}$ bit of Configuration Word 1.

6.9 Start-up Sequence

Upon the release of a POR or BOR, the following must occur before the device will begin executing:

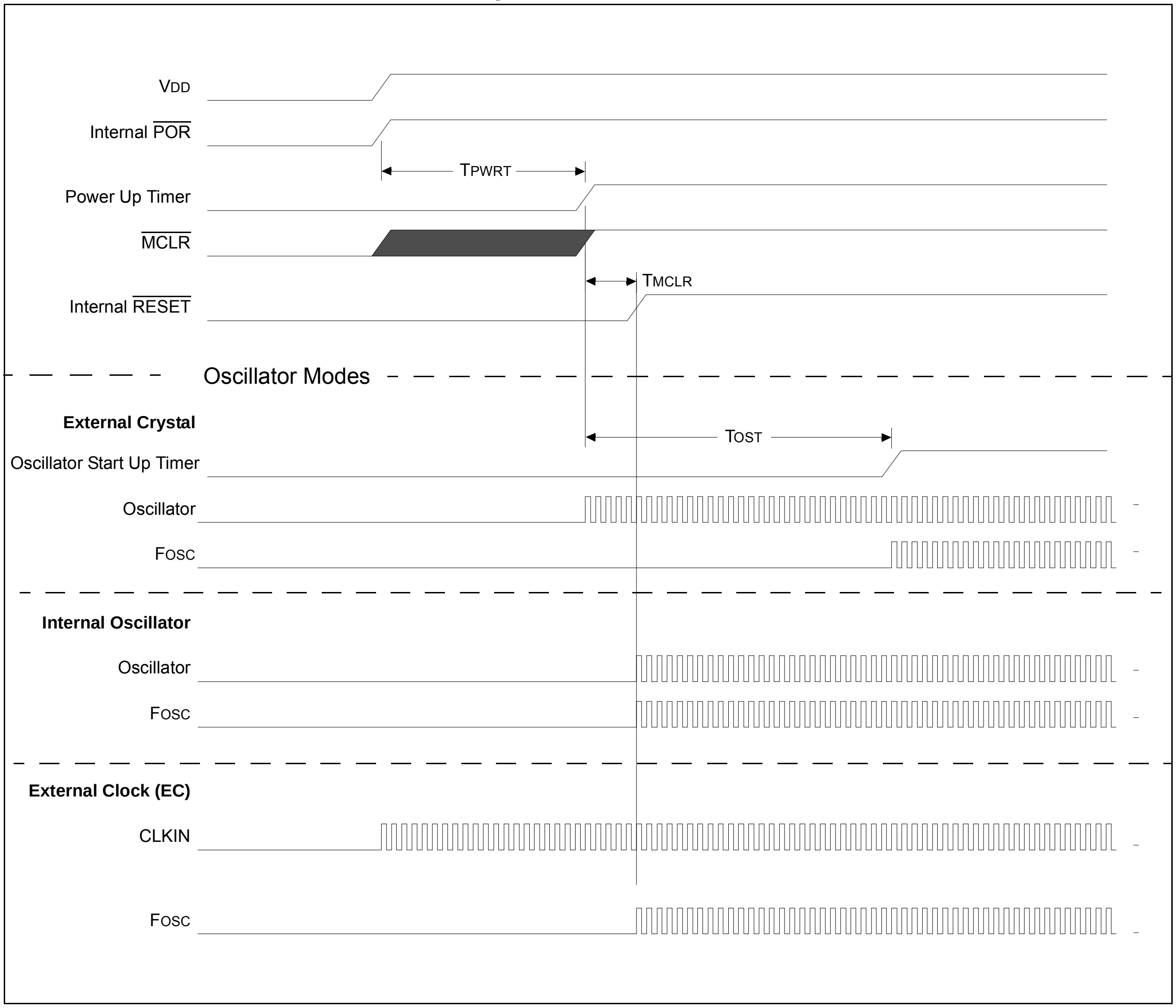
1. Power-up Timer runs to completion (if enabled).
2. Oscillator start-up timer runs to completion (if required for oscillator source).
3. $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ must be released (if enabled).

The total time-out will vary based on oscillator configuration and Power-up Timer configuration. See **Section 5.0 "Oscillator Module (With Fail-Safe Clock Monitor)"** for more information.

The Power-up Timer and oscillator start-up timer run independently of $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset. If $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ is kept low long enough, the Power-up Timer and oscillator start-up timer will expire. Upon bringing $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ high, the device will begin execution immediately (see Figure 6-4). This is useful for testing purposes or to synchronize more than one device operating in parallel.

 Preliminary

FIGURE 6-4: RESET START-UP SEQUENCE



6.10 Determining the Cause of a Reset

Upon any Reset, multiple bits in the STATUS and PCON register are updated to indicate the cause of the Reset. Table 6-3 and Table 6-4 show the Reset conditions of these registers.

TABLE 6-3: RESET STATUS BITS AND THEIR SIGNIFICANCE

STKOVF	STKUNF	$\overline{\text{RMCLR}}$	$\overline{\text{RI}}$	$\overline{\text{POR}}$	$\overline{\text{BOR}}$	$\overline{\text{TO}}$	$\overline{\text{PD}}$	Condition
0	0	1	1	0	x	1	1	Power-on Reset
0	0	1	1	0	x	0	x	Illegal, $\overline{\text{TO}}$ is set on $\overline{\text{POR}}$
0	0	1	1	0	x	x	0	Illegal, $\overline{\text{PD}}$ is set on $\overline{\text{POR}}$
0	0	1	1	u	0	1	1	Brown-out Reset
u	u	u	u	u	u	0	u	WDT Reset
u	u	u	u	u	u	0	0	WDT Wake-up from Sleep
u	u	u	u	u	u	1	0	Interrupt Wake-up from Sleep
u	u	0	u	u	u	u	u	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset during normal operation
u	u	0	u	u	u	1	0	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset during Sleep
u	u	u	0	u	u	u	u	RESET Instruction Executed
1	u	u	u	u	u	u	u	Stack Overflow Reset (STVREN = 1)
u	1	u	u	u	u	u	u	Stack Underflow Reset (STVREN = 1)

TABLE 6-4: RESET CONDITION FOR SPECIAL REGISTERS(2)

Condition	Program Counter	STATUS Register	PCON Register
Power-on Reset	0000h	---1 1000	00-- 110x
$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset during normal operation	0000h	---u uuuu	uu-- 0uuu
$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset during Sleep	0000h	---1 0uuu	uu-- 0uuu
WDT Reset	0000h	---0 uuuu	uu-- uuuu
WDT Wake-up from Sleep	PC + 1	---0 0uuu	uu-- uuuu
Brown-out Reset	0000h	---1 1uuu	00-- 11u0
Interrupt Wake-up from Sleep	PC + 1(1)	---1 0uuu	uu-- uuuu
RESET Instruction Executed	0000h	---u uuuu	uu-- u0uu
Stack Overflow Reset (STVREN = 1)	0000h	---u uuuu	1u-- uuuu
Stack Underflow Reset (STVREN = 1)	0000h	---u uuuu	u1-- uuuu

Legend: u = unchanged, x = unknown, - = unimplemented bit, reads as '0'.

Note 1: When the wake-up is due to an interrupt and Global Enable bit (GIE) is set, the return address is pushed on the stack and PC is loaded with the interrupt vector (0004h) after execution of PC + 1.

2: If a Status bit is not implemented, that bit will be read as '0'.

6.11 Power Control (PCON) Register

The Power Control (PCON) register contains flag bits to differentiate between a:

- Power-on Reset ($\overline{\text{POR}}$)
- Brown-out Reset ($\overline{\text{BOR}}$)
- Reset Instruction Reset ($\overline{\text{RI}}$)
- Stack Overflow Reset (STKOVF)
- Stack Underflow Reset (STKUNF)
- $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset ($\overline{\text{RMCLR}}$)

The PCON register bits are shown in Register 6-2.

REGISTER 6-2: PCON: POWER CONTROL REGISTER

R/W/HS-0/q	R/W/HS-0/q	U-0	U-0	R/W/HC-1/q	R/W/HC-1/q	R/W/HC-q/u	R/W/HC-q/u
STKOVF	STKUNF	—	—	$\overline{\text{RMCLR}}$	$\overline{\text{RI}}$	$\overline{\text{POR}}$	$\overline{\text{BOR}}$
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
HC = Bit is cleared by hardware		HS = Bit is set by hardware
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-m/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	q = Value depends on condition

bit 7	**STKOVF:** Stack Overflow Flag bit 1 = A Stack Overflow occurred 0 = A Stack Overflow has not occurred or set to '0' by firmware
bit 6	**STKUNF:** Stack Underflow Flag bit 1 = A Stack Underflow occurred 0 = A Stack Underflow has not occurred or set to '0' by firmware
bit 5-4	**Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
bit 3	**$\overline{\text{RMCLR}}$:** $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset Flag bit 1 = A $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset has not occurred or set to '1' by firmware 0 = A $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset has occurred (set to '0' in hardware when a $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset occurs)
bit 2	**$\overline{\text{RI}}$:** RESET Instruction Flag bit 1 = A RESET instruction has not been executed or set to '1' by firmware 0 = A RESET instruction has been executed (set to '0' in hardware upon executing a RESET instruction)
bit 1	**$\overline{\text{POR}}$:** Power-on Reset Status bit 1 = No Power-on Reset occurred 0 = A Power-on Reset occurred (must be set in software after a Power-on Reset occurs)
bit 0	**$\overline{\text{BOR}}$:** Brown-out Reset Status bit 1 = No Brown-out Reset occurred 0 = A Brown-out Reset occurred (must be set in software after a Power-on Reset or Brown-out Reset occurs)

TABLE 6-5: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH RESETS

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
BORCON	SBOREN	—	—	—	—	—	—	BORRDY	81
PCON	STKOVF	STKUNF	—	—	$\overline{\text{RMCLR}}$	$\overline{\text{RI}}$	$\overline{\text{POR}}$	$\overline{\text{BOR}}$	85
STATUS	—	—	—	$\overline{\text{TO}}$	$\overline{\text{PD}}$	Z	DC	C	25
WDTCON	—	—	WDTPS<4:0>					SWDTEN	109

Legend: — = unimplemented location, read as ‘0’. Shaded cells are not used by Resets.

Note 1: Other (non Power-up) Resets include $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset and Watchdog Timer Reset during normal operation.

7.0 INTERRUPTS

The interrupt feature allows certain events to preempt normal program flow. Firmware is used to determine the source of the interrupt and act accordingly. Some interrupts can be configured to wake the MCU from Sleep mode.

This chapter contains the following information for Interrupts:

- Operation
- Interrupt Latency
- Interrupts During Sleep
- INT Pin
- Automatic Context Saving

Many peripherals produce Interrupts. Refer to the corresponding chapters for details.

A block diagram of the interrupt logic is shown in Figure 7-1 and Figure 7-2.

FIGURE 7-1: INTERRUPT LOGIC

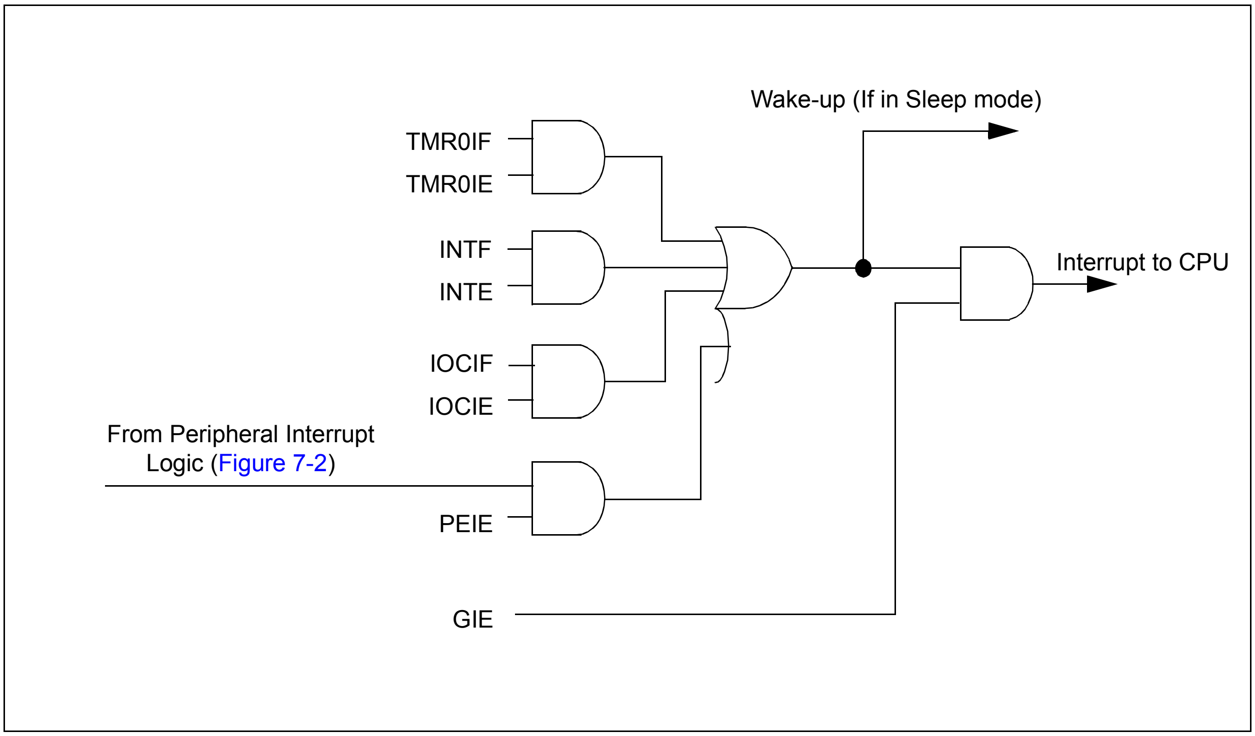
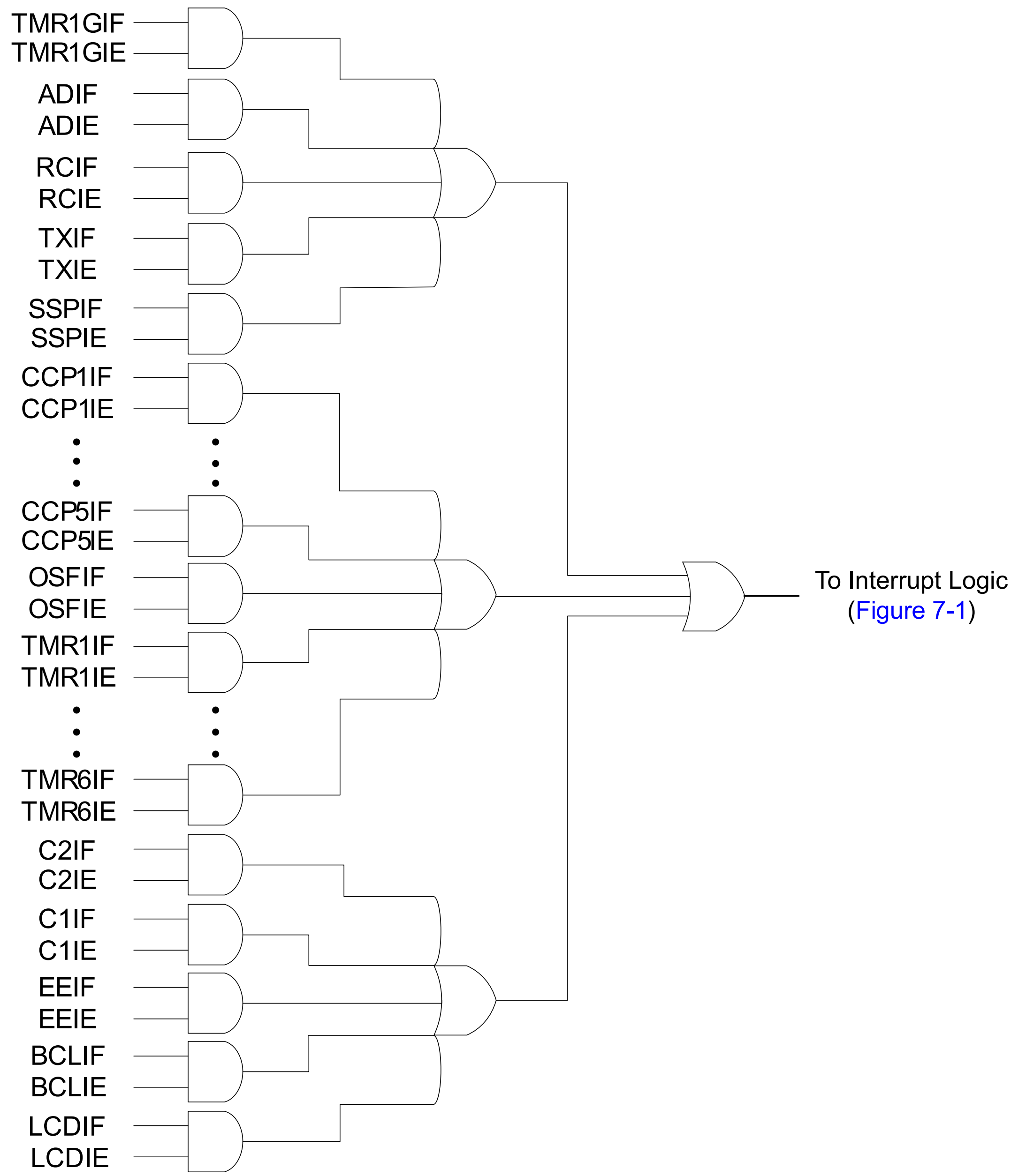


FIGURE 7-2: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT LOGIC



 Preliminary

7.1 Operation

Interrupts are disabled upon any device Reset. They are enabled by setting the following bits:

- GIE bit of the INTCON register
- Interrupt Enable bit(s) for the specific interrupt event(s)
- PEIE bit of the INTCON register (if the Interrupt Enable bit of the interrupt event is contained in the PIE1, PIE2, PIE3 and PIE4 registers)

The INTCON, PIR1, PIR2, PIR3 and PIR4 registers record individual interrupts via interrupt flag bits. Interrupt flag bits will be set, regardless of the status of the GIE, PEIE and individual interrupt enable bits.

The following events happen when an interrupt event occurs while the GIE bit is set:

- Current prefetched instruction is flushed
- GIE bit is cleared
- Current Program Counter (PC) is pushed onto the stack
- Critical registers are automatically saved to the shadow registers (See **"Section 7.5 "Automatic Context Saving"."**)
- PC is loaded with the interrupt vector 0004h

The firmware within the Interrupt Service Routine (ISR) should determine the source of the interrupt by polling the interrupt flag bits. The interrupt flag bits must be cleared before exiting the ISR to avoid repeated interrupts. Because the GIE bit is cleared, any interrupt that occurs while executing the ISR will be recorded through its interrupt flag, but will not cause the processor to redirect to the interrupt vector.

The `RETFIE` instruction exits the ISR by popping the previous address from the stack, restoring the saved context from the shadow registers and setting the GIE bit.

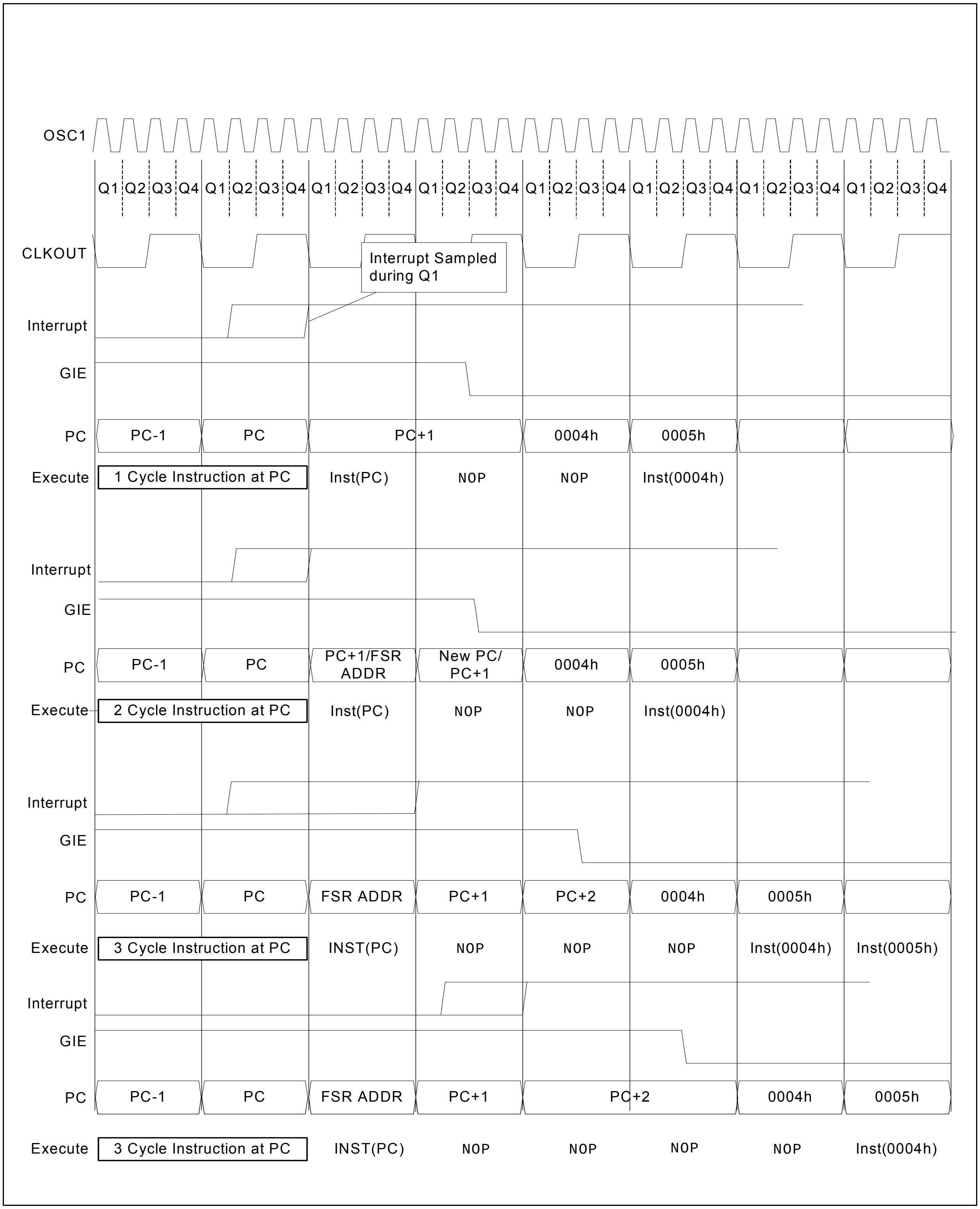
For additional information on a specific interrupt's operation, refer to its peripheral chapter.

Note 1:	Individual interrupt flag bits are set, regardless of the state of any other enable bits.
2:	All interrupts will be ignored while the GIE bit is cleared. Any interrupt occurring while the GIE bit is clear will be serviced when the GIE bit is set again.

7.2 Interrupt Latency

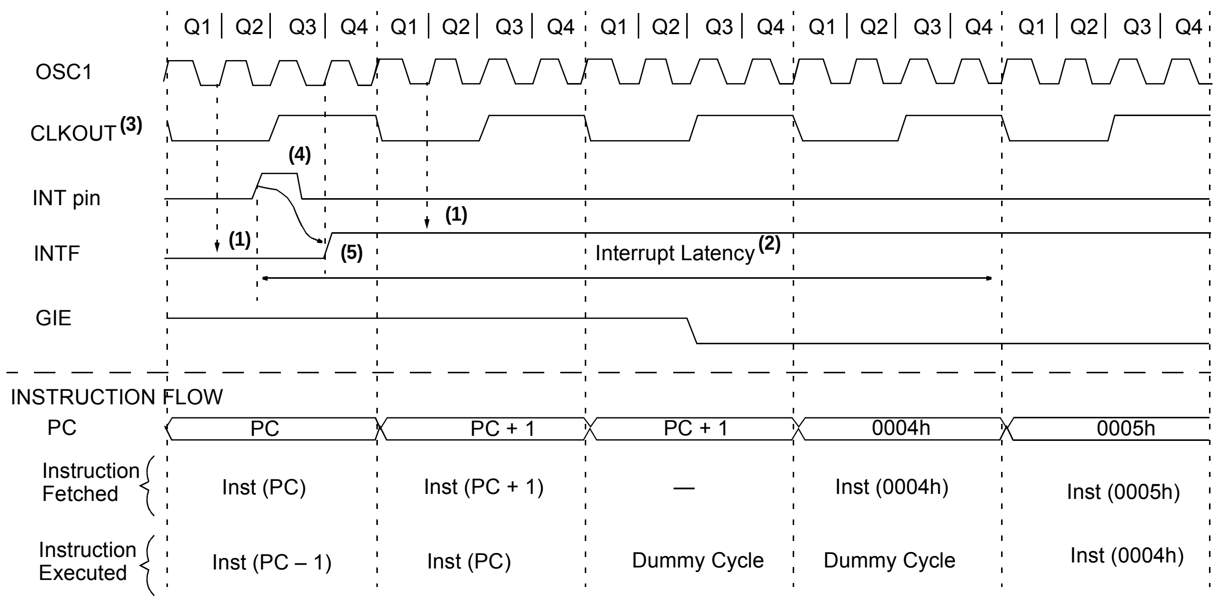
Interrupt latency is defined as the time from when the interrupt event occurs to the time code execution at the interrupt vector begins. The latency for synchronous interrupts is 3 or 4 instruction cycles. For asynchronous interrupts, the latency is 3 to 5 instruction cycles, depending on when the interrupt occurs. See Figure 7-3 and Figure 7-4 for more details.

FIGURE 7-3: INTERRUPT LATENCY



 Preliminary

FIGURE 7-4: INT PIN INTERRUPT TIMING



Note 1: INTF flag is sampled here (every Q1).

2: Asynchronous interrupt latency = 3-5 TCY. Synchronous latency = 3-4 TCY, where TCY = instruction cycle time. Latency is the same whether Inst (PC) is a single cycle or a 2-cycle instruction.

3: CLKOUT not available in all Oscillator modes.

4: For minimum width of INT pulse, refer to AC specifications in **Section 30.0 “Electrical Specifications”**.

5: INTF is enabled to be set any time during the Q4-Q1 cycles.

7.3 Interrupts During Sleep

Some interrupts can be used to wake from Sleep. To wake from Sleep, the peripheral must be able to operate without the system clock. The interrupt source must have the appropriate Interrupt Enable bit(s) set prior to entering Sleep.

On waking from Sleep, if the GIE bit is also set, the processor will branch to the interrupt vector. Otherwise, the processor will continue executing instructions after the `SLEEP` instruction. The instruction directly after the `SLEEP` instruction will always be executed before branching to the ISR. Refer to the **Section 9.0 "Power-Down Mode (Sleep)"**for more details.

7.4 INT Pin

The INT pin can be used to generate an asynchronous edge-triggered interrupt. This interrupt is enabled by setting the INTE bit of the INTCON register. The INTEDG bit of the OPTION register determines on which edge the interrupt will occur. When the INTEDG bit is set, the rising edge will cause the interrupt. When the INTEDG bit is clear, the falling edge will cause the interrupt. The INTF bit of the INTCON register will be set when a valid edge appears on the INT pin. If the GIE and INTE bits are also set, the processor will redirect program execution to the interrupt vector.

7.5 Automatic Context Saving

Upon entering an interrupt, the return PC address is saved on the stack. Additionally, the following registers are automatically saved in the Shadow registers:

- W register
- STATUS register (except for $\overline{\text{TO}}$ and $\overline{\text{PD}}$)
- BSR register
- FSR registers
- PCLATH register

Upon exiting the Interrupt Service Routine, these registers are automatically restored. Any modifications to these registers during the ISR will be lost. If modifications to any of these registers are desired, the corresponding Shadow register should be modified and the value will be restored when exiting the ISR. The Shadow registers are available in Bank 31 and are readable and writable. Depending on the user's application, other registers may also need to be saved.

7.5.1 INTCON REGISTER

The INTCON register is a readable and writable register, which contains the various enable and flag bits for TMR0 register overflow, interrupt-on-change and external INT pin interrupts.

Note:	Interrupt flag bits are set when an interrupt condition occurs, regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the Global Enable bit, GIE, of the INTCON register. User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are clear prior to enabling an interrupt.

REGISTER 7-1: INTCON: INTERRUPT CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R-0/0
GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7 **GIE:** Global Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables all active interrupts
0 = Disables all interrupts

bit 6 **PEIE:** Peripheral Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables all active peripheral interrupts
0 = Disables all peripheral interrupts

bit 5 **TMR0IE:** Timer0 Overflow Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the Timer0 interrupt
0 = Disables the Timer0 interrupt

bit 4 **INTE:** INT External Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the INT external interrupt
0 = Disables the INT external interrupt

bit 3 **IOCIE:** Interrupt-on-Change Enable bit
1 = Enables the interrupt-on-change
0 = Disables the interrupt-on-change

bit 2 **TMR0IF:** Timer0 Overflow Interrupt Flag bit
1 = TMR0 register has overflowed
0 = TMR0 register did not overflow

bit 1 **INTF:** INT External Interrupt Flag bit
1 = The INT external interrupt occurred
0 = The INT external interrupt did not occur

bit 0 **IOCIF:** Interrupt-on-Change Interrupt Flag bit
1 = When at least one of the interrupt-on-change pins changed state
0 = None of the interrupt-on-change pins have changed state

Note 1: The IOCIF Flag bit is read-only and cleared when all the Interrupt-on-Change flags in the IOCBF register have been cleared by software.

7.5.2 PIE1 REGISTER

The PIE1 register contains the interrupt enable bits, as shown in Register 7-2.

> **Note:** Bit PEIE of the INTCON register must be set to enable any peripheral interrupt.

REGISTER 7-2: PIE1: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTER 1

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
TMR1GIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7 **TMR1GIE:** Timer1 Gate Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the Timer1 Gate Acquisition interrupt
0 = Disables the Timer1 Gate Acquisition interrupt

bit 6 **ADIE:** A/D Converter (ADC) Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the ADC interrupt
0 = Disables the ADC interrupt

bit 5 **RCIE:** USART1 Receive Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the USART1 receive interrupt
0 = Disables the USART1 receive interrupt

bit 4 **TXIE:** USART1 Transmit Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the USART1 transmit interrupt
0 = Disables the USART1 transmit interrupt

bit 3 **SSPIE:** Synchronous Serial Port (MSSP1) Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the MSSP1 interrupt
0 = Disables the MSSP1 interrupt

bit 2 **CCP1IE:** CCP1 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the CCP1 interrupt
0 = Disables the CCP1 interrupt

bit 1 **TMR2IE:** TMR2 to PR2 Match Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the Timer2 to PR2 match interrupt
0 = Disables the Timer2 to PR2 match interrupt

bit 0 **TMR1IE:** Timer1 Overflow Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the Timer1 overflow interrupt
0 = Disables the Timer1 overflow interrupt

7.5.3 PIE2 REGISTER

The PIE2 register contains the interrupt enable bits, as shown in Register 7-3.

Note:	Bit PEIE of the INTCON register must be set to enable any peripheral interrupt.

REGISTER 7-3: PIE2: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTER 2

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
OSFIE	C2IE	C1IE	EEIE	BCLIE	LCDIE	C3IE	CCP2IE
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7 **OSFIE:** Oscillator Fail Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the Oscillator Fail interrupt
0 = Disables the Oscillator Fail interrupt

bit 6 **C2IE:** Comparator C2 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the Comparator C2 interrupt
0 = Disables the Comparator C2 interrupt

bit 5 **C1IE:** Comparator C1 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the Comparator C1 interrupt
0 = Disables the Comparator C1 interrupt

bit 4 **EEIE:** EEPROM Write Completion Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the EEPROM Write Completion interrupt
0 = Disables the EEPROM Write Completion interrupt

bit 3 **BCLIE:** MSSP1 Bus Collision Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the MSSP1 Bus Collision Interrupt
0 = Disables the MSSP1 Bus Collision Interrupt

bit 2 **LCDIE:** LCD Module Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the LCD module interrupt
0 = Disables the LCD module interrupt

bit 1 **C3IE:** Comparator C3 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the Comparator C3 interrupt
0 = Disables the Comparator C3 interrupt

bit 0 **CCP2IE:** CCP2 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the CCP2 interrupt
0 = Disables the CCP2 interrupt

7.5.4 PIE3 REGISTER

The PIE3 register contains the interrupt enable bits, as shown in Register 7-4.

Note:	Bit PEIE of the INTCON register must be set to enable any peripheral interrupt.

REGISTER 7-4: PIE3: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTER 3

U-0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	U-0	R/W-0/0	U-0
—	CCP5IE	CCP4IE	CCP3IE	TMR6IE	—	TMR4IE	—
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 6 **CCP5IE:** CCP5 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the CCP5 interrupt
0 = Disables the CCP5 interrupt

bit 5 **CCP4IE:** CCP4 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the CCP4 interrupt
0 = Disables the CCP4 interrupt

bit 4 **CCP3IE:** CCP3 Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the CCP3 interrupt
0 = Disables the CCP3 interrupt

bit 3 **TMR6IE:** TMR6 to PR6 Match Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the TMR6 to PR6 Match interrupt
0 = Disables the TMR6 to PR6 Match interrupt

bit 2 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 1 **TMR4IE:** TMR4 to PR4 Match Interrupt Enable bit
1 = Enables the TMR4 to PR4 Match interrupt
0 = Disables the TMR4 to PR4 Match interrupt

bit 0 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

7.5.5 PIE4 REGISTER

The PIE4 register contains the interrupt enable bits, as shown in Register 7-5.

Note:	Bit PEIE of the INTCON register must be set to enable any peripheral interrupt.

REGISTER 7-5: PIE4: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT ENABLE REGISTER 4

U-0	U-0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
—	—	RC2IE	TX2IE	—	—	BCL2IE	SSP2IE
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-6	**Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
bit 5	**RC2IE:** USART2 Receive Interrupt Enable bit 1 = Enables the USART2 receive interrupt 0 = Disables the USART2 receive interrupt
bit 4	**TX2IE:** USART2 Transmit Interrupt Enable bit 1 = Enables the USART2 transmit interrupt 0 = Disables the USART2 transmit interrupt
bit 3-2	**Unimplemented:** Read as '0'
bit 1	**BCL2IE:** MSSP2 Bus Collision Interrupt Enable bit 1 = Enables the MSSP2 Bus Collision Interrupt 0 = Disables the MSSP2 Bus Collision Interrupt
bit 0	**SSP2IE:** Synchronous Serial Port (MSSP2) Interrupt Enable bit 1 = Enables the MSSP2 interrupt 0 = Disables the MSSP2 interrupt

7.5.6 PIR1 REGISTER

The PIR1 register contains the interrupt flag bits, as shown in Register 7-6.

Note: Interrupt flag bits are set when an interrupt condition occurs, regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the Global Enable bit, GIE, of the INTCON register. User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are clear prior to enabling an interrupt.

REGISTER 7-6: PIR1: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REQUEST REGISTER 1

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R-0/0	R-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
TMR1GIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7 **TMR1GIF:** Timer1 Gate Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Interrupt is pending
0 = Interrupt is not pending

bit 6 **ADIF:** A/D Converter Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Interrupt is pending
0 = Interrupt is not pending

bit 5 **RCIF:** USART1 Receive Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Interrupt is pending
0 = Interrupt is not pending

bit 4 **TXIF:** USART1 Transmit Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Interrupt is pending
0 = Interrupt is not pending

bit 3 **SSPIF:** Synchronous Serial Port (MSSP1) Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Interrupt is pending
0 = Interrupt is not pending

bit 2 **CCP1IF:** CCP1 Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Interrupt is pending
0 = Interrupt is not pending

bit 1 **TMR2IF:** Timer2 to PR2 Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Interrupt is pending
0 = Interrupt is not pending

bit 0 **TMR1IF:** Timer1 Overflow Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Interrupt is pending
0 = Interrupt is not pending

7.5.7 PIR2 REGISTER

The PIR2 register contains the interrupt flag bits, as shown in Register 7-7.

> **Note:** Interrupt flag bits are set when an interrupt condition occurs, regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the Global Enable bit, GIE, of the INTCON register. User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are clear prior to enabling an interrupt.

REGISTER 7-7: PIR2: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REQUEST REGISTER 2

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	U-0	R/W-0/0
OSFIF	C2IF	C1IF	EEIF	BCLIF	LCDIF	—	CCP2IF
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7 **OSFIF:** Oscillator Fail Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Interrupt is pending
0 = Interrupt is not pending

bit 6 **C2IF:** Comparator C2 Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Interrupt is pending
0 = Interrupt is not pending

bit 5 **C1IF:** Comparator C1 Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Interrupt is pending
0 = Interrupt is not pending

bit 4 **EEIF:** EEPROM Write Completion Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Interrupt is pending
0 = Interrupt is not pending

bit 3 **BCLIF:** MSSP1 Bus Collision Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Interrupt is pending
0 = Interrupt is not pending

bit 2 **LCDIF:** LCD Module Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Interrupt is pending
0 = Interrupt is not pending

bit 1 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 0 **CCP2IF:** CCP2 Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Interrupt is pending
0 = Interrupt is not pending

7.5.8 PIR3 REGISTER

The PIR3 register contains the interrupt flag bits, as shown in Register 7-8.

Note: Interrupt flag bits are set when an interrupt condition occurs, regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the Global Enable bit, GIE, of the INTCON register. User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are clear prior to enabling an interrupt.

REGISTER 7-8: PIR3: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REQUEST REGISTER 3

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
—	CCP5IF	CCP4IF	CCP3IF	TMR6IF	—	TMR4IF	—
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 6 **CCP5IF:** CCP5 Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Interrupt is pending
0 = Interrupt is not pending

bit 5 **CCP4IF:** CCP4 Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Interrupt is pending
0 = Interrupt is not pending

bit 4 **CCP3IF:** CCP3 Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Interrupt is pending
0 = Interrupt is not pending

bit 3 **TMR6IF:** TMR6 to PR6 Match Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Interrupt is pending
0 = Interrupt is not pending

bit 2 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 1 **TMR4IF:** TMR4 to PR4 Match Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Interrupt is pending
0 = Interrupt is not pending

bit 0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

7.5.9 PIR4 REGISTER

The PIR4 register contains the interrupt flag bits, as shown in Register 7-9.

Note: Interrupt flag bits are set when an interrupt condition occurs, regardless of the state of its corresponding enable bit or the Global Enable bit, GIE, of the INTCON register. User software should ensure the appropriate interrupt flag bits are clear prior to enabling an interrupt.

REGISTER 7-9: PIR4: PERIPHERAL INTERRUPT REQUEST REGISTER 4

U-0	U-0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
—	—	RC2IF	TX2IF	—	—	BCL2IF	SSP2IF
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 5 **RC2IF:** USART2 Receive Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Interrupt is pending
0 = Interrupt is not pending

bit 4 **TX2IF:** USART2 Transmit Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Interrupt is pending
0 = Interrupt is not pending

bit 3-2 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 1 **BCL2IF:** MSSP2 Bus Collision Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Interrupt is pending
0 = Interrupt is not pending

bit 0 **SSP2IF:** Synchronous Serial Port (MSSP2) Interrupt Flag bit
1 = Interrupt is pending
0 = Interrupt is not pending

TABLE 7-1: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH INTERRUPTS

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	93
OPTION_REG	$\overline{\text{WPUEN}}$	INTEDG	T0CS	T0SE	PSA	PS<2:0>			195
PIE1	TMR1GIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	94
PIE2	OSFIE	C2IE	C1IE	EEIE	BCLIE	LCDIE	C3IE	CCP2IE	95
PIE3	—	CCP5IE	CCP4IE	CCP3IE	TMR6IE	—	TMR4IE	—	96
PIE4	—	—	RC2IE	TX2IE	—	—	BCL2IE	SSP2IE	97
PIR1	TMR1GIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	98
PIR2	OSFIF	C2IF	C1IF	EEIF	BCLIF	LCDIF	C3IF	CCP2IF	99
PIR3	—	CCP5IF	CCP4IF	CCP3IF	TMR6IF	—	TMR4IF	—	100
PIR4	—	—	RC2IF	TX2IF	—	—	BCL2IF	SSP2IF	101

Legend: — = unimplemented location, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by Interrupts.

8.0 LOW DROPOUT (LDO) VOLTAGE REGULATOR

The PIC16F1946/47 has an internal Low Dropout Regulator (LDO) which provides operation above 3.6V. The LDO regulates a voltage for the internal device logic while permitting the VDD and I/O pins to operate at a higher voltage. There is no user enable/disable control available for the LDO, it is always active. The PIC16LF1946/47 operates at a maximum VDD of 3.6V and does not incorporate an LDO.

A device I/O pin may be configured as the LDO voltage output, identified as the VCAP pin. Although not required, an external low-ESR capacitor may be connected to the VCAP pin for additional regulator stability.

The VCAPEN bit of Configuration Word 2 determines which pin is assigned as the VCAP pin. Refer to Table 8-1.

On power-up, the external capacitor will load the LDO voltage regulator. To prevent erroneous operation, the device is held in Reset while a constant current source charges the external capacitor. After the cap is fully charged, the device is released from Reset. For more information on recommended capacitor values and the constant current rate, refer to the LDO Regulator Characteristics Table in **Section 30.0 "Electrical Specifications"**.

TABLE 8-1: VCAPEN<1:0> SELECT BITS

VCAPEN<1:0>	Pin
`00`	RF0
`11`	No Vcap

TABLE 8-2: SUMMARY OF CONFIGURATION WORD WITH LDO

Name	Bits	Bit -/7	Bit -/6	Bit 13/5	Bit 12/4	Bit 11/3	Bit 10/2	Bit 9/1	Bit 8/0	Register on Page
CONFIG2	13:8	—	—	LVP	$\overline{\text{DEBUG}}$	—	BORV	STVREN	PLLEN	58
	7:0	—	—	—	VCAPEN	—	—	WRT1	WRT0	

Legend: — = unimplemented locations read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by LDO.

NOTES:

9.0 POWER-DOWN MODE (SLEEP)

The Power-Down mode is entered by executing a SLEEP instruction.

Upon entering Sleep mode, the following conditions exist:

1. WDT will be cleared but keeps running, if enabled for operation during Sleep.
2. $\overline{\text{PD}}$ bit of the STATUS register is cleared.
3. $\overline{\text{TO}}$ bit of the STATUS register is set.
4. CPU clock is disabled.
5. 31 kHz LFINTOSC is unaffected and peripherals that operate from it may continue operation in Sleep.
6. Timer1 oscillator is unaffected and peripherals that operate from it may continue operation in Sleep.
7. ADC is unaffected, if the dedicated FRC clock is selected.
8. Capacitive Sensing oscillator is unaffected.
9. I/O ports maintain the status they had before SLEEP was executed (driving high, low or high-impedance).
10. Resets other than WDT are not affected by Sleep mode.

Refer to individual chapters for more details on peripheral operation during Sleep.

To minimize current consumption, the following conditions should be considered:

- I/O pins should not be floating
- External circuitry sinking current from I/O pins
- Internal circuitry sourcing current from I/O pins
- Current draw from pins with internal weak pull-ups
- Modules using 31 kHz LFINTOSC
- Modules using Timer1 oscillator

I/O pins that are high-impedance inputs should be pulled to V_{DD} or V_{SS} externally to avoid switching currents caused by floating inputs.

Examples of internal circuitry that might be sourcing current include modules such as the DAC and FVR modules. See **Section 17.0 "Digital-to-Analog Converter (DAC) Module"** and **Section 14.0 "Fixed Voltage Reference (FVR)"** for more information on these modules.

9.1 Wake-up from Sleep

The device can wake-up from Sleep through one of the following events:

1. External Reset input on $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ pin, if enabled
2. BOR Reset, if enabled
3. POR Reset
4. Watchdog Timer, if enabled
5. Any external interrupt
6. Interrupts by peripherals capable of running during Sleep (see individual peripheral for more information)

The first three events will cause a device Reset. The last three events are considered a continuation of program execution. To determine whether a device Reset or wake-up event occurred, refer to **Section 6.10 "Determining the Cause of a Reset"**.

When the SLEEP instruction is being executed, the next instruction (PC + 1) is prefetched. For the device to wake-up through an interrupt event, the corresponding interrupt enable bit must be enabled. Wake-up will occur regardless of the state of the GIE bit. If the GIE bit is disabled, the device continues execution at the instruction after the SLEEP instruction. If the GIE bit is enabled, the device executes the instruction after the SLEEP instruction, the device will call the Interrupt Service Routine. In cases where the execution of the instruction following SLEEP is not desirable, the user should have a NOP after the SLEEP instruction.

The WDT is cleared when the device wakes up from Sleep, regardless of the source of wake-up.

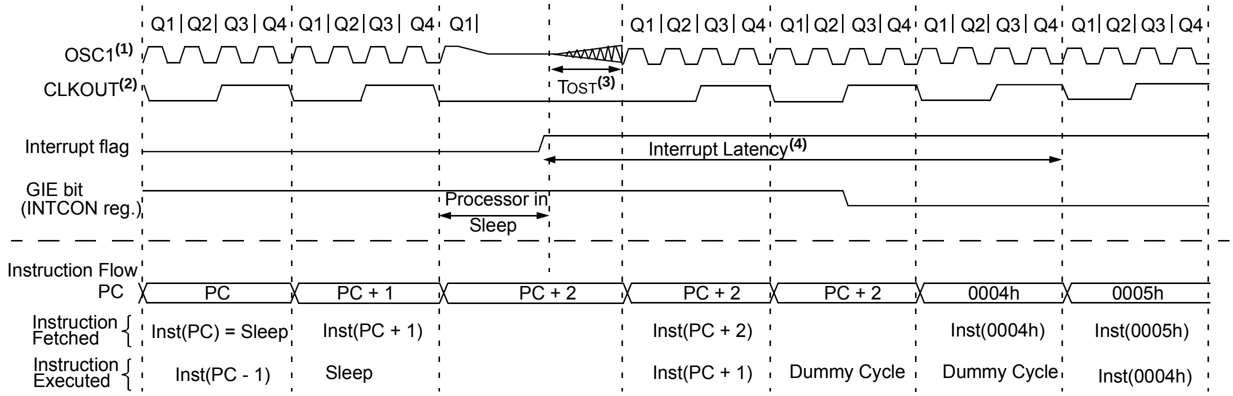
9.1.1 WAKE-UP USING INTERRUPTS

When global interrupts are disabled (GIE cleared) and any interrupt source has both its interrupt enable bit and interrupt flag bit set, one of the following will occur:

- If the interrupt occurs **before** the execution of a `SLEEP` instruction
  - `SLEEP` instruction will execute as a `NOP`.
  - WDT and WDT prescaler will not be cleared
  - $\overline{TO}$ bit of the STATUS register will not be set
  - $\overline{PD}$ bit of the STATUS register will not be cleared.
- If the interrupt occurs **during or after** the execution of a `SLEEP` instruction
  - `SLEEP` instruction will be completely executed
  - Device will immediately wake-up from Sleep
  - WDT and WDT prescaler will be cleared
  - $\overline{TO}$ bit of the STATUS register will be set
  - $\overline{PD}$ bit of the STATUS register will be cleared.

Even if the flag bits were checked before executing a `SLEEP` instruction, it may be possible for flag bits to become set before the `SLEEP` instruction completes. To determine whether a `SLEEP` instruction executed, test the $\overline{PD}$ bit. If the $\overline{PD}$ bit is set, the `SLEEP` instruction was executed as a `NOP`.

FIGURE 9-1: WAKE-UP FROM SLEEP THROUGH INTERRUPT



Note 1: XT, HS or LP Oscillator mode assumed.
2: CLKOUT is not available in XT, HS or LP Oscillator modes, but shown here for timing reference.
3: TOST = 1024 TOSC (drawing not to scale). This delay applies only to XT, HS or LP Oscillator modes.
4: GIE = `1` assumed. In this case after wake-up, the processor calls the ISR at 0004h. If GIE = `0`, execution will continue in-line.

TABLE 9-1: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH POWER-DOWN MODE

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	93
IOCBF	IOCBF7	IOCBF6	IOCBF5	IOCBF4	IOCBF3	IOCBF2	IOCBF1	IOCBF0	153
IOCBN	IOCBN7	IOCBN6	IOCBN5	IOCBN4	IOCBN3	IOCBN2	IOCBN1	IOCBN0	153
IOCBP	IOCBP7	IOCBP6	IOCBP5	IOCBP4	IOCBP3	IOCBP2	IOCBP1	IOCBP0	152
PIE1	TMR1GIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	94
PIE2	OSFIE	C2IE	C1IE	EEIE	BCLIE	LCDIE	C3IE	CCP2IE	95
PIE3	—	CCP5IE	CCP4IE	CCP3IE	TMR6IE	—	TMR4IE	—	96
PIE4	—	—	RC2IE	TX2IE	—	—	BCL2IE	SSP2IE	97
PIR1	TMR1GIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	98
PIR2	OSFIF	C2IF	C1IF	EEIF	BCLIF	LCDIF	C3IF	CCP2IF	99
PIR3	—	CCP5IF	CCP4IF	CCP3IF	TMR6IF	—	TMR4IF	—	100
PIR4	—	—	RC2IF	TX2IF	—	—	BCL2IF	SSP2IF	101
STATUS	—	—	—	$\overline{TO}$	$\overline{PD}$	Z	DC	C	25
WDTCON	—	—	WDTPS<4:0>					SWDTEN	109

Legend: — = unimplemented location, read as '`0`'. Shaded cells are not used in Power-down mode.

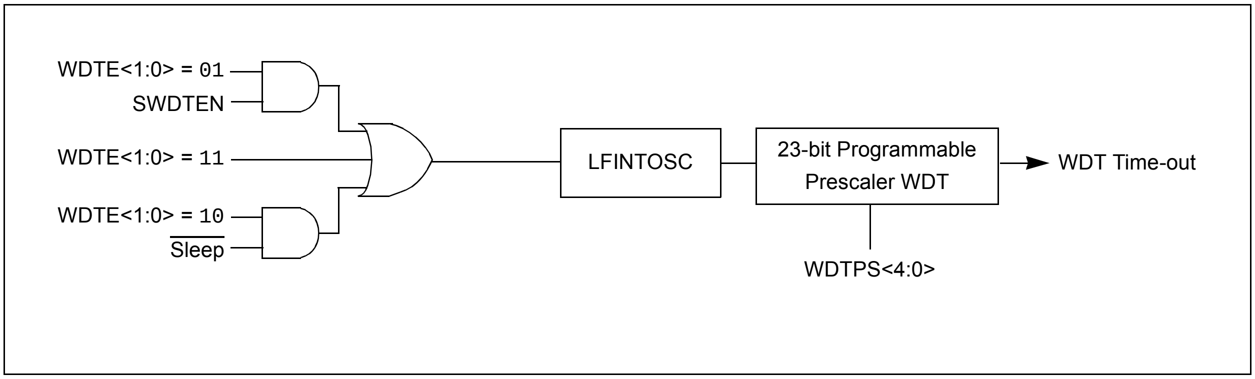
10.0 WATCHDOG TIMER

The Watchdog Timer is a system timer that generates a Reset if the firmware does not issue a CLRWDT instruction within the time-out period. The Watchdog Timer is typically used to recover the system from unexpected events.

The WDT has the following features:

- Independent clock source
- Multiple operating modes
  - WDT is always on
  - WDT is off when in Sleep
  - WDT is controlled by software
  - WDT is always off
- Configurable time-out period is from 1 ms to 256 seconds (typical)
- Multiple Reset conditions
- Operation during Sleep

FIGURE 10-1: WATCHDOG TIMER BLOCK DIAGRAM



10.1 Independent Clock Source

The WDT derives its time base from the 31 kHz LFINTOSC internal oscillator.

10.2 WDT Operating Modes

The Watchdog Timer module has four operating modes controlled by the WDTE<1:0> bits in Configuration Word 1. See Table 10-1.

10.2.1 WDT IS ALWAYS ON

When the WDTE bits of Configuration Word 1 are set to '11', the WDT is always on.

WDT protection is active during Sleep.

10.2.2 WDT IS OFF IN SLEEP

When the WDTE bits of Configuration Word 1 are set to '10', the WDT is on, except in Sleep.

WDT protection is not active during Sleep.

10.2.3 WDT CONTROLLED BY SOFTWARE

When the WDTE bits of Configuration Word 1 are set to '01', the WDT is controlled by the SWDTEN bit of the WDTCON register.

WDT protection is unchanged by Sleep. See Table 10-1 for more details.

TABLE 10-1: WDT OPERATING MODES

WDTE Config bits	SWDTEN	Device Mode	WDT Mode
WDT_ON (11)	X	X	Active
WDT_NSLEEP (10)	X	Awake	Active
WDT_NSLEEP (10)	X	Sleep	Disabled
WDT_SWDTEN (01)	1	X	Active
WDT_SWDTEN (01)	0	X	Disabled
WDT_OFF (00)	X	X	Disabled

10.3 Time-Out Period

The WDTPS bits of the WDTCON register set the time-out period from 1 ms to 256 seconds. After a Reset, the default time-out period is 2 seconds.

10.4 Clearing the WDT

The WDT is cleared when any of the following conditions occur:

- Any Reset
- `CLRWDT` instruction is executed
- Device enters Sleep
- Device wakes up from Sleep
- Oscillator fail event
- WDT is disabled
- Oscillator Start-up TImer (OST) is running

See Table 10-2 for more information.

10.5 Operation During Sleep

When the device enters Sleep, the WDT is cleared. If the WDT is enabled during Sleep, the WDT resumes counting.

When the device exits Sleep, the WDT is cleared again. The WDT remains clear until the OST, if enabled, completes. See **Section 5.0 "Oscillator Module (With Fail-Safe Clock Monitor)"** for more information on the OST.

When a WDT time-out occurs while the device is in Sleep, no Reset is generated. Instead, the device wakes up and resumes operation. The $\overline{TO}$ and $\overline{PD}$ bits in the STATUS register are changed to indicate the event. See **Section 3.0 "Memory Organization"** and STATUS register (**Register 3-1**) for more information.

TABLE 10-2: WDT CLEARING CONDITIONS

Conditions	WDT
WDTE<1:0> = 00	Cleared
WDTE<1:0> = 01 and SWDTEN = 0	Cleared
WDTE<1:0> = 10 and enter Sleep	Cleared
CLRWDT Command	Cleared
Oscillator Fail Detected	Cleared
Exit Sleep + System Clock = T1OSC, EXTRC, INTOSC, EXTCLK	Cleared
Exit Sleep + System Clock = XT, HS, LP	Cleared until the end of OST
Change INTOSC divider (IRCF bits)	Unaffected

REGISTER 10-1: WDTCON: WATCHDOG TIMER CONTROL REGISTER

U-0	U-0	R/W-0/0	R/W-1/1	R/W-0/0	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-0/0
—	—	WDTPS<4:0>					SWDTEN
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-m/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 5-1 **WDTPS<4:0>:** Watchdog Timer Period Select bits

Bit Value = Prescale Rate

00000 = 1:32 (Interval 1 ms typ)
00001 = 1:64 (Interval 2 ms typ)
00010 = 1:128 (Interval 4 ms typ)
00011 = 1:256 (Interval 8 ms typ)
00100 = 1:512 (Interval 16 ms typ)
00101 = 1:1024 (Interval 32 ms typ)
00110 = 1:2048 (Interval 64 ms typ)
00111 = 1:4096 (Interval 128 ms typ)
01000 = 1:8192 (Interval 256 ms typ)
01001 = 1:16384 (Interval 512 ms typ)
01010 = 1:32768 (Interval 1s typ)
01011 = 1:65536 (Interval 2s typ) (Reset value)
01100 = 1:131072 (2^{17}) (Interval 4s typ)
01101 = 1:262144 (2^{18}) (Interval 8s typ)
01110 = 1:524288 (2^{19}) (Interval 16s typ)
01111 = 1:1048576 (2^{20}) (Interval 32s typ)
10000 = 1:2097152 (2^{21}) (Interval 64s typ)
10001 = 1:4194304 (2^{22}) (Interval 128s typ)
10010 = 1:8388608 (2^{23}) (Interval 256s typ)

10011 = Reserved. Results in minimum interval (1:32)
•
•
•
11111 = Reserved. Results in minimum interval (1:32)

bit 0 **SWDTEN:** Software Enable/Disable for Watchdog Timer bit

If WDTE<1:0> = 00:
This bit is ignored.
If WDTE<1:0> = 01:
1 = WDT is turned on
0 = WDT is turned off
If WDTE<1:0> = 1x:
This bit is ignored.

NOTES:

11.0 DATA EEPROM AND FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY CONTROL

The Data EEPROM and Flash program memory are readable and writable during normal operation (full V_{DD} range). These memories are not directly mapped in the register file space. Instead, they are indirectly addressed through the Special Function Registers (SFRs). There are six SFRs used to access these memories:

- EECON1
- EECON2
- EEDATL
- EEDATH
- EEADRL
- EEADRH

When interfacing the data memory block, EEDATL holds the 8-bit data for read/write, and EEADRL holds the address of the EEDATL location being accessed. These devices have 256 bytes of data EEPROM with an address range from 0h to 0FFh.

When accessing the program memory block, the EEDATH:EEDATL register pair forms a 2-byte word that holds the 14-bit data for read/write, and the EEADRL and EEADRH registers form a 2-byte word that holds the 15-bit address of the program memory location being read.

The EEPROM data memory allows byte read and write. An EEPROM byte write automatically erases the location and writes the new data (erase before write).

The write time is controlled by an on-chip timer. The write/erase voltages are generated by an on-chip charge pump rated to operate over the voltage range of the device for byte or word operations.

Depending on the setting of the Flash Program Memory Self Write Enable bits WRT<1:0> of the Configuration Word 2, the device may or may not be able to write certain blocks of the program memory. However, reads from the program memory are always allowed.

When the device is code-protected, the device programmer can no longer access data or program memory. When code-protected, the CPU may continue to read and write the data EEPROM memory and Flash program memory.

11.1 EEADRL and EEADRH Registers

The EEADRH:EEADRL register pair can address up to a maximum of 256 bytes of data EEPROM or up to a maximum of 32K words of program memory.

When selecting a program address value, the MSB of the address is written to the EEADRH register and the LSB is written to the EEADRL register. When selecting a EEPROM address value, only the LSB of the address is written to the EEADRL register.

11.1.1 EECON1 AND EECON2 REGISTERS

EECON1 is the control register for EE memory accesses.

Control bit EEPGD determines if the access will be a program or data memory access. When clear, any subsequent operations will operate on the EEPROM memory. When set, any subsequent operations will operate on the program memory. On Reset, EEPROM is selected by default.

Control bits RD and WR initiate read and write, respectively. These bits cannot be cleared, only set, in software. They are cleared in hardware at completion of the read or write operation. The inability to clear the WR bit in software prevents the accidental, premature termination of a write operation.

The WREN bit, when set, will allow a write operation to occur. On power-up, the WREN bit is clear. The WRERR bit is set when a write operation is interrupted by a Reset during normal operation. In these situations, following Reset, the user can check the WRERR bit and execute the appropriate error handling routine.

Interrupt flag bit EEIF of the PIR2 register is set when write is complete. It must be cleared in the software.

Reading EECON2 will read all '0's. The EECON2 register is used exclusively in the data EEPROM write sequence. To enable writes, a specific pattern must be written to EECON2.

11.2 Using the Data EEPROM

The data EEPROM is a high-endurance, byte addressable array that has been optimized for the storage of frequently changing information (e.g., program variables or other data that are updated often). When variables in one section change frequently, while variables in another section do not change, it is possible to exceed the total number of write cycles to the EEPROM without exceeding the total number of write cycles to a single byte. Refer to **Section 30.0 "Electrical Specifications"**. If this is the case, then a refresh of the array must be performed. For this reason, variables that change infrequently (such as constants, IDs, calibration, etc.) should be stored in Flash program memory.

11.2.1 READING THE DATA EEPROM MEMORY

To read a data memory location, the user must write the address to the EEADRL register, clear the EEPGD and CFGS control bits of the EECON1 register, and then set control bit RD. The data is available at the very next cycle, in the EEDATL register; therefore, it can be read in the next instruction. EEDATL will hold this value until another read or until it is written to by the user (during a write operation).

EXAMPLE 11-1: DATA EEPROM READ

```
BANKSEL EEADRL        ;
MOVLW   DATA_EE_ADDR ;
MOVWF   EEADRL        ;Data Memory
                      ;Address to read
BCF     EECON1, CFGS ;Deselect Config space
BCF     EECON1, EEPGD;Point to DATA memory
BSF     EECON1, RD   ;EE Read
MOVF    EEDATL, W    ;W = EEDATL
```

Note:	Data EEPROM can be read regardless of the setting of the $\overline{\text{CPD}}$ bit.

11.2.2 WRITING TO THE DATA EEPROM MEMORY

To write an EEPROM data location, the user must first write the address to the EEADRL register and the data to the EEDATL register. Then the user must follow a specific sequence to initiate the write for each byte.

The write will not initiate if the above sequence is not followed exactly (write 55h to EECON2, write AAh to EECON2, then set the WR bit) for each byte. Interrupts should be disabled during this code segment.

Additionally, the WREN bit in EECON1 must be set to enable write. This mechanism prevents accidental writes to data EEPROM due to errant (unexpected) code execution (i.e., lost programs). The user should keep the WREN bit clear at all times, except when updating EEPROM. The WREN bit is not cleared by hardware.

After a write sequence has been initiated, clearing the WREN bit will not affect this write cycle. The WR bit will be inhibited from being set unless the WREN bit is set.

At the completion of the write cycle, the WR bit is cleared in hardware and the EE Write Complete Interrupt Flag bit (EEIF) is set. The user can either enable this interrupt or poll this bit. EEIF must be cleared by software.

11.2.3 PROTECTION AGAINST SPURIOUS WRITE

There are conditions when the user may not want to write to the data EEPROM memory. To protect against spurious EEPROM writes, various mechanisms have been built-in. On power-up, WREN is cleared. Also, the Power-up Timer (64 ms duration) prevents EEPROM write.

The write initiate sequence and the WREN bit together help prevent an accidental write during:

- Brown-out
- Power Glitch
- Software Malfunction

11.2.4 DATA EEPROM OPERATION DURING CODE-PROTECT

Data memory can be code-protected by programming the $\overline{\text{CPD}}$ bit in the Configuration Word 1 (Register 4-1) to '0'.

When the data memory is code-protected, only the CPU is able to read and write data to the data EEPROM. It is recommended to code-protect the program memory when code-protecting data memory. This prevents anyone from replacing your program with a program that will access the contents of the data EEPROM.

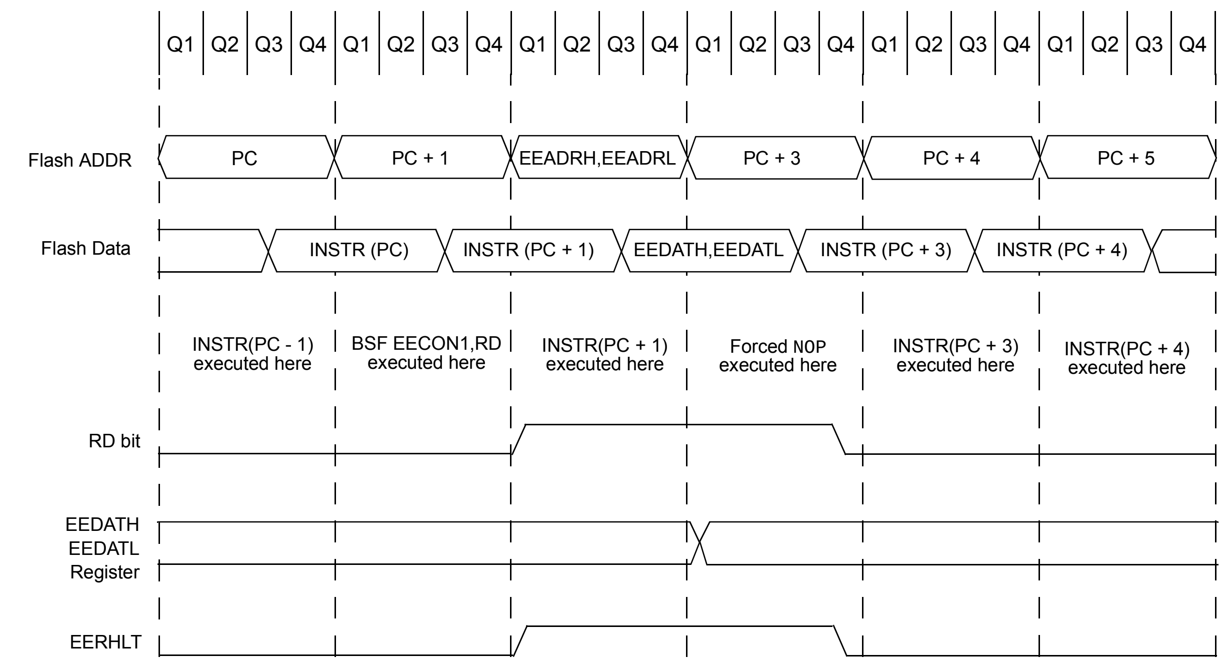
EXAMPLE 11-2: DATA EEPROM WRITE

```
        BANKSEL EEADRL          ;
        MOVLW   DATA_EE_ADDR    ;
        MOVWF   EEADRL          ;Data Memory Address to write
        MOVLW   DATA_EE_DATA    ;
        MOVWF   EEDATL          ;Data Memory Value to write
        BCF     EECON1, CFGS    ;Deselect Configuration space
        BCF     EECON1, EEPGD   ;Point to DATA memory
        BSF     EECON1, WREN    ;Enable writes

        BCF     INTCON, GIE     ;Disable INTs.
        MOVLW   55h             ;
        MOVWF   EECON2          ;Write 55h
        MOVLW   0AAh            ;
        MOVWF   EECON2          ;Write AAh
        BSF     EECON1, WR      ;Set WR bit to begin write
        BSF     INTCON, GIE     ;Enable Interrupts
        BCF     EECON1, WREN    ;Disable writes
        BTFSC   EECON1, WR      ;Wait for write to complete
        GOTO    $-2             ;Done
```

Required Sequence

FIGURE 11-1: FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY READ CYCLE EXECUTION



11.3 Flash Program Memory Overview

It is important to understand the Flash program memory structure for erase and programming operations. Flash Program memory is arranged in rows. A row consists of a fixed number of 14-bit program memory words. A row is the minimum block size that can be erased by user software.

Flash program memory may only be written or erased if the destination address is in a segment of memory that is not write-protected, as defined in bits WRT<1:0> of Configuration Word 2.

After a row has been erased, the user can reprogram all or a portion of this row. Data to be written into the program memory row is written to 14-bit wide data write latches. These write latches are not directly accessible to the user, but may be loaded via sequential writes to the EEDATH:EEDATL register pair.

> **Note:** If the user wants to modify only a portion of a previously programmed row, then the contents of the entire row must be read and saved in RAM prior to the erase.

The number of data write latches may not be equivalent to the number of row locations. During programming, user software may need to fill the set of write latches and initiate a programming operation multiple times in order to fully reprogram an erased row. For example, a device with a row size of 32 words and eight write latches will need to load the write latches with data and initiate a programming operation four times.

The size of a program memory row and the number of program memory write latches may vary by device. See Table 11-1 for details.

11.3.1 READING THE FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY

To read a program memory location, the user must:

1. Write the Least and Most Significant address bits to the EEADRH:EEADRL register pair.
2. Clear the CFGS bit of the EECON1 register.
3. Set the EEPGD control bit of the EECON1 register.
4. Then, set control bit RD of the EECON1 register.

Once the read control bit is set, the program memory Flash controller will use the second instruction cycle to read the data. This causes the second instruction immediately following the "`BSF EECON1,RD`" instruction to be ignored. The data is available in the very next cycle, in the EEDATH:EEDATL register pair; therefore, it can be read as two bytes in the following instructions.

EEDATH:EEDATL register pair will hold this value until another read or until it is written to by the user.

> **Note 1:** The two instructions following a program memory read are required to be `NOP`s. This prevents the user from executing a two-cycle instruction on the next instruction after the RD bit is set.
>
> **2:** Flash program memory can be read regardless of the setting of the $\overline{\text{CP}}$ bit.

TABLE 11-1: FLASH MEMORY ORGANIZATION BY DEVICE

Device	Erase Block (Row) Size/Boundary	Number of Write Latches/Boundary
PIC16F/LF1946/47	32 words, EEADRL<4:0> = 00000	8 words, EEADRL<2:0> = 000

EXAMPLE 11-3: FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY READ

```
* This code block will read 1 word of program
* memory at the memory address:
   PROG_ADDR_HI: PROG_ADDR_LO
*  data will be returned in the variables;
*  PROG_DATA_HI, PROG_DATA_LO

   BANKSEL  EEADRL           ; Select Bank for EEPROM registers
   MOVLW    PROG_ADDR_LO     ;
   MOVWF    EEADRL           ; Store LSB of address
   MOVLW    PROG_ADDR_HI     ;
   MOVWL    EEADRH           ; Store MSB of address

   BCF      EECON1,CFGS      ; Do not select Configuration Space
   BSF      EECON1,EEPGD     ; Select Program Memory
   BCF      INTCON,GIE       ; Disable interrupts
   BSF      EECON1,RD        ; Initiate read
   NOP                       ; Executed (Figure 11-1)
   NOP                       ; Ignored (Figure 11-1)
   BSF      INTCON,GIE       ; Restore interrupts

   MOVF     EEDATL,W         ; Get LSB of word
   MOVWF    PROG_DATA_LO     ; Store in user location
   MOVF     EEDATH,W         ; Get MSB of word
   MOVWF    PROG_DATA_HI     ; Store in user location
```

11.3.2 ERASING FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY

While executing code, program memory can only be erased by rows. To erase a row:

1. Load the EEADRH:EEADRL register pair with the address of new row to be erased.
2. Clear the CFGS bit of the EECON1 register.
3. Set the EEPGD, FREE, and WREN bits of the EECON1 register.
4. Write 55h, then AAh, to EECON2 (Flash programming unlock sequence).
5. Set control bit WR of the EECON1 register to begin the erase operation.
6. Poll the FREE bit in the EECON1 register to determine when the row erase has completed.

See Example 11-4.

After the "`BSF EECON1,WR`" instruction, the processor requires two cycles to set up the erase operation. The user must place two `NOP` instructions after the WR bit is set. The processor will halt internal operations for the typical 2 ms erase time. This is not Sleep mode as the clocks and peripherals will continue to run. After the erase cycle, the processor will resume operation with the third instruction after the EECON1 write instruction.

11.3.3 WRITING TO FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY

Program memory is programmed using the following steps:

1. Load the starting address of the word(s) to be programmed.
2. Load the write latches with data.
3. Initiate a programming operation.
4. Repeat steps 1 through 3 until all data is written.

Before writing to program memory, the word(s) to be written must be erased or previously unwritten. Program memory can only be erased one row at a time. No automatic erase occurs upon the initiation of the write.

Program memory can be written one or more words at a time. The maximum number of words written at one time is equal to the number of write latches. See Figure 11-2 (block writes to program memory with 16 write latches) for more details. The write latches are aligned to the address boundary defined by EEADRL as shown in Table 11-1. Write operations do not cross these boundaries. At the completion of a program memory write operation, the write latches are reset to contain 0x3FFF.

The following steps should be completed to load the write latches and program a block of program memory. These steps are divided into two parts. First, all write latches are loaded with data except for the last program memory location. Then, the last write latch is loaded and the programming sequence is initiated. A special unlock sequence is required to load a write latch with data or initiate a Flash programming operation. This unlock sequence should not be interrupted.

1. Set the EEPGD and WREN bits of the EECON1 register.
2. Clear the CFGS bit of the EECON1 register.
3. Set the LWLO bit of the EECON1 register. When the LWLO bit of the EECON1 register is '`1`', the write sequence will only load the write latches and will not initiate the write to Flash program memory.
4. Load the EEADRH:EEADRL register pair with the address of the location to be written.
5. Load the EEDATH:EEDATL register pair with the program memory data to be written.
6. Write 55h, then AAh, to EECON2, then set the WR bit of the EECON1 register (Flash programming unlock sequence). The write latch is now loaded.
7. Increment the EEADRH:EEADRL register pair to point to the next location.
8. Repeat steps 5 through 7 until all but the last write latch has been loaded.
9. Clear the LWLO bit of the EECON1 register. When the LWLO bit of the EECON1 register is '`0`', the write sequence will initiate the write to Flash program memory.
10. Load the EEDATH:EEDATL register pair with the program memory data to be written.
11. Write 55h, then AAh, to EECON2, then set the WR bit of the EECON1 register (Flash programming unlock sequence). The entire latch block is now written to Flash program memory.

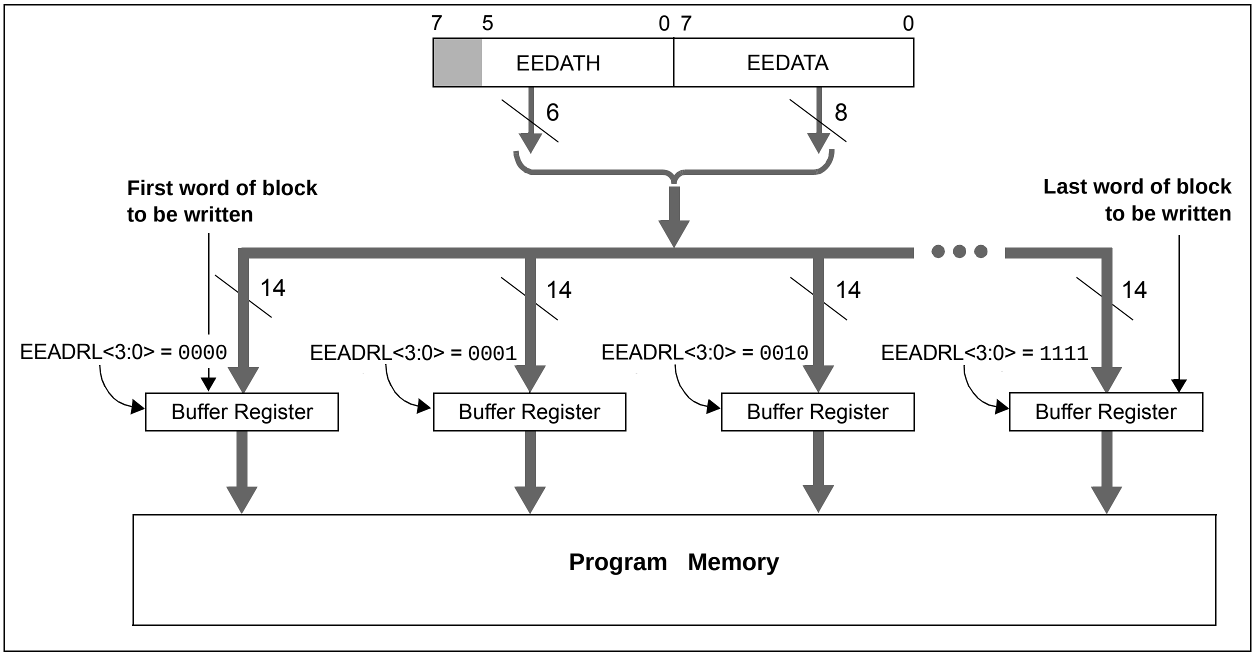
It is not necessary to load the entire write latch block with user program data. However, the entire write latch block will be written to program memory.

An example of the complete write sequence for eight words is shown in Example 11-5. The initial address is loaded into the EEADRH:EEADRL register pair; the eight words of data are loaded using indirect addressing.

Note:	The code sequence provided in Example 11-5 must be repeated multiple times to fully program an erased program memory row.

After the "`BSF EECON1,WR`" instruction, the processor requires two cycles to set up the write operation. The user must place two `NOP` instructions after the WR bit is set. The processor will halt internal operations for the typical 2 ms, only during the cycle in which the write takes place (i.e., the last word of the block write). This is not Sleep mode as the clocks and peripherals will continue to run. The processor does not stall when LWLO = 1, loading the write latches. After the write cycle, the processor will resume operation with the third instruction after the EECON1 write instruction.

FIGURE 11-2: BLOCK WRITES TO FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY WITH 16 WRITE LATCHES



EXAMPLE 11-4: ERASING ONE ROW OF PROGRAM MEMORY

```
; This row erase routine assumes the following:
; 1. A valid address within the erase block is loaded in ADDRH:ADDRL
; 2. ADDRH and ADDRL are located in shared data memory 0x70 - 0x7F


        BCF         INTCON,GIE      ; Disable ints so required sequences will execute properly
        BANKSEL     EEADRL
        MOVF        ADDRL,W         ; Load lower 8 bits of erase address boundary
        MOVWF       EEADRL
        MOVF        ADDRH,W         ; Load upper 6 bits of erase address boundary
        MOVWF       EEADRH
        BSF         EECON1,EEPGD    ; Point to program memory
        BCF         EECON1,CFGS     ; Not configuration space
        BSF         EECON1,FREE     ; Specify an erase operation
        BSF         EECON1,WREN     ; Enable writes

        MOVLW       55h             ; Start of required sequence to initiate erase
        MOVWF       EECON2          ; Write 55h
        MOVLW       0AAh            ;
        MOVWF       EECON2          ; Write AAh
        BSF         EECON1,WR       ; Set WR bit to begin erase
        NOP                         ; Any instructions here are ignored as processor
                                    ; halts to begin erase sequence
        NOP                         ; Processor will stop here and wait for erase complete.

                                    ; after erase processor continues with 3rd instruction

        BCF         EECON1,WREN     ; Disable writes
        BSF         INTCON,GIE      ; Enable interrupts
```

Required Sequence

 Preliminary

EXAMPLE 11-5: WRITING TO FLASH PROGRAM MEMORY

```
; This write routine assumes the following:
; 1. The 16 bytes of data are loaded, starting at the address in DATA_ADDR
; 2. Each word of data to be written is made up of two adjacent bytes in DATA_ADDR,
;    stored in little endian format
; 3. A valid starting address (the least significant bits = 000) is loaded in ADDRH:ADDRL
; 4. ADDRH and ADDRL are located in shared data memory 0x70 - 0x7F
;
        BCF         INTCON,GIE      ; Disable ints so required sequences will execute properly
        BANKSEL     EEADRH          ; Bank 3
        MOVF        ADDRH,W         ; Load initial address
        MOVWF       EEADRH          ;
        MOVF        ADDRL,W         ;
        MOVWF       EEADRL          ;
        MOVLW       LOW DATA_ADDR   ; Load initial data address
        MOVWF       FSR0L           ;
        MOVLW       HIGH DATA_ADDR  ; Load initial data address
        MOVWF       FSR0H           ;
        BSF         EECON1,EEPGD    ; Point to program memory
        BCF         EECON1,CFGS     ; Not configuration space
        BSF         EECON1,WREN     ; Enable writes
        BSF         EECON1,LWLO     ; Only Load Write Latches
LOOP
        MOVIW       FSR0++          ; Load first data byte into lower
        MOVWF       EEDATL          ;
        MOVIW       FSR0++          ; Load second data byte into upper
        MOVWF       EEDATH          ;

        MOVF        EEADRL,W        ; Check if lower bits of address are '000'
        XORLW       0x07            ; Check if we're on the last of 8 addresses
        ANDLW       0x07            ;
        BTFSC       STATUS,Z        ; Exit if last of eight words,
        GOTO        START_WRITE     ;
```

Required Sequence

```
        MOVLW       55h             ; Start of required write sequence:
        MOVWF       EECON2          ; Write 55h
        MOVLW       0AAh            ;
        MOVWF       EECON2          ; Write AAh
        BSF         EECON1,WR       ; Set WR bit to begin write
        NOP                         ; Any instructions here are ignored as processor
                                    ; halts to begin write sequence
        NOP                         ; Processor will stop here and wait for write to complete.

                                    ; After write processor continues with 3rd instruction.

        INCF        EEADRL,F        ; Still loading latches Increment address
        GOTO        LOOP            ; Write next latches

START_WRITE
        BCF         EECON1,LWLO     ; No more loading latches - Actually start Flash program
                                    ; memory write
```

Required Sequence

```
        MOVLW       55h             ; Start of required write sequence:
        MOVWF       EECON2          ; Write 55h
        MOVLW       0AAh            ;
        MOVWF       EECON2          ; Write AAh
        BSF         EECON1,WR       ; Set WR bit to begin write
        NOP                         ; Any instructions here are ignored as processor
                                    ; halts to begin write sequence
        NOP                         ; Processor will stop here and wait for write complete.

                                    ; after write processor continues with 3rd instruction
        BCF         EECON1,WREN     ; Disable writes
        BSF         INTCON,GIE      ; Enable interrupts
```

11.4 Modifying Flash Program Memory

When modifying existing data in a program memory row, and data within that row must be preserved, it must first be read and saved in a RAM image. Program memory is modified using the following steps:

1. Load the starting address of the row to be modified.
2. Read the existing data from the row into a RAM image.
3. Modify the RAM image to contain the new data to be written into program memory.
4. Load the starting address of the row to be rewritten.
5. Erase the program memory row.
6. Load the write latches with data from the RAM image.
7. Initiate a programming operation.
8. Repeat steps 6 and 7 as many times as required to reprogram the erased row.

11.5 User ID, Device ID and Configuration Word Access

Instead of accessing program memory or EEPROM data memory, the User ID's, Device ID/Revision ID and Configuration Words can be accessed when CFGS = 1 in the EECON1 register. This is the region that would be pointed to by PC<15> = 1, but not all addresses are accessible. Different access may exist for reads and writes. Refer to Table 11-2.

When read access is initiated on an address outside the parameters listed in Table 11-2, the EEDATH:EEDATL register pair is cleared.

TABLE 11-2: USER ID, DEVICE ID AND CONFIGURATION WORD ACCESS (CFGS = 1)

Address	Function	Read Access	Write Access
8000h-8003h	User IDs	Yes	Yes
8006h	Device ID/Revision ID	Yes	No
8007h-8008h	Configuration Words 1 and 2	Yes	No

EXAMPLE 11-3: CONFIGURATION WORD AND DEVICE ID ACCESS

```
* This code block will read 1 word of program memory at the memory address:
*   PROG_ADDR_LO (must be 00h-08h) data will be returned in the variables;
*   PROG_DATA_HI, PROG_DATA_LO

    BANKSEL  EEADRL          ; Select correct Bank
    MOVLW    PROG_ADDR_LO    ;
    MOVWF    EEADRL          ; Store LSB of address
    CLRF     EEADRH          ; Clear MSB of address

    BSF      EECON1,CFGS     ; Select Configuration Space
    BCF      INTCON,GIE      ; Disable interrupts
    BSF      EECON1,RD       ; Initiate read
    NOP                      ; Executed (See Figure 11-1)
    NOP                      ; Ignored (See Figure 11-1)
    BSF      INTCON,GIE      ; Restore interrupts

    MOVF     EEDATL,W        ; Get LSB of word
    MOVWF    PROG_DATA_LO    ; Store in user location
    MOVF     EEDATH,W        ; Get MSB of word
    MOVWF    PROG_DATA_HI    ; Store in user location
```


11.6 Write Verify

Depending on the application, good programming practice may dictate that the value written to the data EEPROM or program memory should be verified (see Example 11-6) to the desired value to be written. Example 11-6 shows how to verify a write to EEPROM.

EXAMPLE 11-6: EEPROM WRITE VERIFY

```
BANKSEL EEDATL      ;
MOVF    EEDATL, W   ;EEDATL not changed
                    ;from previous write
BSF     EECON1, RD  ;YES, Read the
                    ;value written
XORWF   EEDATL, W   ;
BTFSS   STATUS, Z   ;Is data the same
GOTO    WRITE_ERR   ;No, handle error
:                   ;Yes, continue
```

11.7 EEPROM Control Registers

REGISTER 11-1: EEDATL: EEPROM DATA REGISTER

R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u
EEDAT<7:0>							
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **EEDAT<7:0>**: Read/write value for EEPROM data byte or Least Significant bits of program memory

REGISTER 11-2: EEDATH: EEPROM DATA HIGH BYTE REGISTER

U-0	U-0	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u
—	—	EEDAT<13:8>					
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 5-0 **EEDAT<13:8>**: Read/write value for Most Significant bits of program memory

REGISTER 11-3: EEADRL: EEPROM ADDRESS REGISTER

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
EEADR<7:0>							
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **EEADR<7:0>**: Specifies the Least Significant bits for program memory address or EEPROM address

REGISTER 11-4: EEADRH: EEPROM ADDRESS HIGH BYTE REGISTER

U-1	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
—	EEADR<14:8>						
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘1’

bit 6-0 **EEADR<14:8>**: Specifies the Most Significant bits for program memory address or EEPROM address

REGISTER 11-5: EECON1: EEPROM CONTROL 1 REGISTER

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W/HC-0/0	R/W-x/q	R/W-0/0	R/S/HC-0/0	R/S/HC-0/0
EEPGD	CFGS	LWLO	FREE	WRERR	WREN	WR	RD
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
S = Bit can only be set	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	HC = Bit is cleared by hardware

bit 7 **EEPGD:** Flash Program/Data EEPROM Memory Select bit
1 = Accesses program space Flash memory
0 = Accesses data EEPROM memory

bit 6 **CFGS:** Flash Program/Data EEPROM or Configuration Select bit
1 = Accesses Configuration, User ID and Device ID Registers
0 = Accesses Flash Program or data EEPROM Memory

bit 5 **LWLO:** Load Write Latches Only bit
If CFGS = 1 (Configuration space) **OR** CFGS = 0 and EEPGD = 1 (program Flash):
1 = The next WR command does not initiate a write; only the program memory latches are updated.
0 = The next WR command writes a value from EEDATH:EEDATL into program memory latches and initiates a write of all the data stored in the program memory latches.

If CFGS = 0 and EEPGD = 0: (Accessing data EEPROM)
LWLO is ignored. The next WR command initiates a write to the data EEPROM.

bit 4 **FREE:** Program Flash Erase Enable bit
If CFGS = 1 (Configuration space) **OR** CFGS = 0 and EEPGD = 1 (program Flash):
1 = Performs an erase operation on the next WR command (cleared by hardware after completion of erase).
0 = Performs a write operation on the next WR command.

If EEPGD = 0 and CFGS = 0: (Accessing data EEPROM)
FREE is ignored. The next WR command will initiate both a erase cycle and a write cycle.

REGISTER 11-5: EECON1: EEPROM CONTROL 1 REGISTER (CONTINUED)

bit 3 **WRERR:** EEPROM Error Flag bit
1 = Condition indicates an improper program or erase sequence attempt or termination (bit is set automatically on any set attempt (write '1') of the WR bit).
0 = The program or erase operation completed normally.

bit 2 **WREN:** Program/Erase Enable bit
1 = Allows program/erase cycles
0 = Inhibits programming/erasing of program Flash and data EEPROM

bit 1 **WR:** Write Control bit
1 = Initiates a program Flash or data EEPROM program/erase operation.
The operation is self-timed and the bit is cleared by hardware once operation is complete.
The WR bit can only be set (not cleared) in software.
0 = Program/erase operation to the Flash or data EEPROM is complete and inactive.

bit 0 **RD:** Read Control bit
1 = Initiates an program Flash or data EEPROM read. Read takes one cycle. RD is cleared in hardware. The RD bit can only be set (not cleared) in software.
0 = Does not initiate a program Flash or data EEPROM data read.

REGISTER 11-6: EECON2: EEPROM CONTROL 2 REGISTER

W-0/0	W-0/0	W-0/0	W-0/0	W-0/0	W-0/0	W-0/0	W-0/0
EEPROM Control Register 2							
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
S = Bit can only be set	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **Data EEPROM Unlock Pattern bits**
To unlock writes, a 55h must be written first, followed by an AAh, before setting the WR bit of the EECON1 register. The value written to this register is used to unlock the writes. There are specific timing requirements on these writes. Refer to **Section 11.2.2 "Writing to the Data EEPROM Memory"** for more information.

TABLE 11-3: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH DATA EEPROM

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
EECON1	EEPGD	CFGS	LWLO	FREE	WRERR	WREN	WR	RD	123
EECON2	EEPROM Control Register 2 (not a physical register)								111*
EEADRL	EEADRL<7:0>								122
EEADRH	—	EEADRH<6:0>							123
EEDATL	EEDATL<7:0>								122
EEDATH	—	—	EEDATH<5:0>						122
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	93
PIE2	OSFIE	C2IE	C1IE	EEIE	BCLIE	LCDIE	C3IE	CCP2IE	95
PIR2	OSFIF	C2IF	C1IF	EEIF	BCLIF	LCDIF	C3IF	CCP2IF	99

Legend: — = unimplemented location, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by Data EEPROM module.
* Page provides register information.

12.0 I/O PORTS

Depending on the device selected and peripherals enabled, there are up to five ports available. In general, when a peripheral is enabled, that pin may not be used as a general purpose I/O pin.

Each port has three registers for its operation. These registers are:

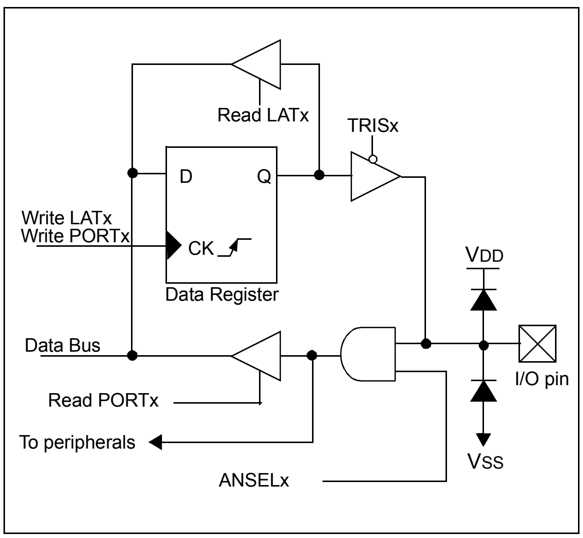
- TRISx registers (data direction register)
- PORTx registers (reads the levels on the pins of the device)
- LATx registers (output latch)

The Data Latch (LATx registers) is useful for read-modify-write operations on the value that the I/O pins are driving.

A write operation to the LATx register has the same affect as a write to the corresponding PORTx register. A read of the LATx register reads of the values held in the I/O PORT latches, while a read of the PORTx register reads the actual I/O pin value.

Ports with analog functions also have an ANSELx register which can disable the digital input and save power. A simplified model of a generic I/O port, without the interfaces to other peripherals, is shown in Figure 12-1.

FIGURE 12-1: GENERIC I/O PORT OPERATION



12.1 Alternate Pin Function

The Alternate Pin Function Control (APFCON) register is used to steer specific peripheral input and output functions between different pins. The APFCON register is shown in Register 12-1. For this device family, the following functions can be moved between different pins.

- CCP3/P3C output
- CCP3/P3B output
- CCP2/P2D output
- CCP2/P2C output
- CCP2/P2B output
- CCP2/P2A output
- CCP1/P1C output
- CCP1/P1B output

These bits have no effect on the values of any TRIS register. PORT and TRIS overrides will be routed to the correct pin. The unselected pin will be unaffected.

REGISTER 12-1: APFCON: ALTERNATE PIN FUNCTION CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
P3CSEL	P3BSEL	P2DSEL	P2CSEL	P2BSEL	CCP2SEL	P1CSEL	P1BSEL
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7 **P3CSEL:** CCP3 PWM C Output Pin Selection bit
`0` = P3C function is on RE3/P3C/COM0
`1` = P3C function is on RD3/P3C/SEG3

bit 6 **P3BSEL:** CCP3 PWM B Output Pin Selection bit
`0` = P3B function is on RE4/P3B/COM1
`1` = P3B function is on RD4/P3B/SEG4

bit 5 **P2DSEL:** CCP2 PWM D Output Pin Selection bit
`0` = P2D function is on RE0/P2D/VLCD1
`1` = P2D function is on RD0/P2D/SEG0

bit 4 **P2CSEL:** CCP2 PWM C Output Pin Selection bit
`0` = P2C function is on RE1/P2C/VLCD2
`1` = P2C function is on RD1/P2C/SEG1

bit 3 **P2BSEL:** CCP2 PWM B Output Pin Selection bit
`0` = P2B function is on RE2/P2B/VLCD3
`1` = P2B function is on RD2/P2B/SEG2

bit 2 **CCP2SEL:** CCP2 Input/Output Pin Selection bit
`0` = CCP2/P2A function is on RC1/CCP2/P2A/T1OSI/SEG32
`1` = CCP2/P2A function is on RE7/CCP2/P2A/SEG31

bit 1 **P1CSEL:** CCP1 PWM C Output Pin Selection bit
`0` = P1C function is on RE5/P1C/COM2
`1` = P1C function is on RD5/P1C/SEG5

bit 0 **P1BSEL:** CCP1 PWM B Output Pin Selection bit
`0` = P1B function is on RE6/P1B/COM3
`1` = P1B function is on RD6/P1B/SEG6

12.2 PORTA Registers

PORTA is a 8-bit wide, bidirectional port. The corresponding data direction register is TRISA (Register 12-3). Setting a TRISA bit (= 1) will make the corresponding PORTA pin an input (i.e., disable the output driver). Clearing a TRISA bit (= 0) will make the corresponding PORTA pin an output (i.e., enables output driver and puts the contents of the output latch on the selected pin). Example 12-1 shows how to initialize PORTA.

Reading the PORTA register (Register 12-2) reads the status of the pins, whereas writing to it will write to the PORT latch. All write operations are read-modify-write operations. Therefore, a write to a port implies that the port pins are read, this value is modified and then written to the PORT data latch (LATA).

The TRISA register (Register 12-3) controls the PORTA pin output drivers, even when they are being used as analog inputs. The user should ensure the bits in the TRISA register are maintained set when using them as analog inputs. I/O pins configured as analog input always read '0'.

12.2.1 ANSELA REGISTER

The ANSELA register (Register 12-5) is used to configure the Input mode of an I/O pin to analog. Setting the appropriate ANSELA bit high will cause all digital reads on the pin to be read as '0' and allow analog functions on the pin to operate correctly.

The state of the ANSELA bits has no affect on digital output functions. A pin with TRIS clear and ANSEL set will still operate as a digital output, but the Input mode will be analog. This can cause unexpected behavior when executing read-modify-write instructions on the affected port.

Note:	The ANSELA register must be initialized to configure an analog channel as a digital input. Pins configured as analog inputs will read '0'.

EXAMPLE 12-1: INITIALIZING PORTA

```
BANKSEL  PORTA       ;
CLRF     PORTA       ;Init PORTA
BANKSEL  LATA        ;Data Latch
CLRF     LATA        ;
BANKSEL  ANSELA      ;
CLRF     ANSELA      ;digital I/O
BANKSEL  TRISA       ;
MOVLW    B'11110000' ;Set RA<7:4> as inputs
MOVWF    TRISA       ;and set RA<3:0> as
                     ;outputs
```

12.2.2 PORTA FUNCTIONS AND OUTPUT PRIORITIES

Each PORTA pin is multiplexed with other functions. The pins, their combined functions and their output priorities are briefly described here. For additional information, refer to the appropriate section in this data sheet.

When multiple outputs are enabled, the actual pin control goes to the peripheral with the lowest number in the following lists.

Analog input functions, such as ADC, comparator and CapSense inputs, are not shown in the priority lists. These inputs are active when the I/O pin is set for Analog mode using the ANSELx registers. Digital output functions may control the pin when it is in Analog mode with the priority shown below.

<u>RA0</u>
1. AN0 (ADC)
2. SEG33 (LCD)
3. CPS0 (CSM)

<u>RA1</u>
1. SEG18
2. CPS1 (CSM)

<u>RA2</u>
1. SEG34 (LCD)
2. VREF- (DAC)
3. AN2 (ADC)
4. CPS2 (CSM)

<u>RA3</u>
1. VREF+ (DAC)
2. SEG35 (LCD)
3. AN3 (ADC)
4. CPS3 (CSM)

<u>RA4</u>
1. SEG14 (LCD)
2. T0CKI (TMR0)

<u>RA5</u>
1. AN4 (ADC)
2. SEG15 (LCD)
3. CPS4 (CSM)

<u>RA6</u>
1. OSC2 (enabled by Configuration Word)
2. CLKOUT (enabled by Configuration Word)
3. SEG36 (LCD)

<u>RA7</u>
1. OSC1/CLKIN (enabled by Configuration Word)
2. SEG37 (LCD)

REGISTER 12-2: PORTA: PORTA REGISTER

R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u
RA7	RA6	RA5	RA4	RA3	RA2	RA1	RA0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **RA<7:0>**: PORTA I/O Value bits(1)
`1` = Port pin is $\geq V_{IH}$
`0` = Port pin is $\leq V_{IL}$

Note 1: Writes to PORTA are actually written to corresponding LATA register. Reads from PORTA register is return of actual I/O pin values.

REGISTER 12-3: TRISA: PORTA TRI-STATE REGISTER

R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1
TRISA7	TRISA6	TRISA5	TRISA4	TRISA3	TRISA2	TRISA1	TRISA0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **TRISA<7:0>:** PORTA Tri-State Control bit
`1` = PORTA pin configured as an input (tri-stated)
`0` = PORTA pin configured as an output

REGISTER 12-4: LATA: PORTA DATA LATCH REGISTER

R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u
LATA7	LATA6	LATA5	LATA4	LATA3	LATA2	LATA1	LATA0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **LATA<7:0>**: PORTA Output Latch Value bits(1)

Note 1: Writes to PORTA are actually written to corresponding LATA register. Reads from PORTA register is return of actual I/O pin values.

REGISTER 12-5: ANSELA: PORTA ANALOG SELECT REGISTER

U-0	U-0	R/W-1/1	U-0	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1
—	—	ANSA5	—	ANSA3	ANSA2	ANSA1	ANSA0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-6 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 5 **ANSA5**: Analog Select between Analog or Digital Function on pins RA<5>, respectively
0 = Digital I/O. Pin is assigned to port or digital special function.
1 = Analog input. Pin is assigned as analog input(1). Digital input buffer disabled.

bit 4 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 3-0 **ANSA<3:0>**: Analog Select between Analog or Digital Function on pins RA<3:0>, respectively
0 = Digital I/O. Pin is assigned to port or digital special function.
1 = Analog input. Pin is assigned as analog input(1). Digital input buffer disabled.

Note 1: When setting a pin to an analog input, the corresponding TRIS bit must be set to Input mode in order to allow external control of the voltage on the pin.

TABLE 12-1: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTA

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
ADCON0	—	CHS<4:0>					GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$	ADON	166
ADCON1	ADFM	ADCS<2:0>			—	—	ADPREF<1:0>		167
ANSELA	—	—	ANSA5	—	ANSA3	ANSA2	ANSA1	ANSA0	129
CPSCON0	CPSON	CPSRM	—	—	CPSRNG1	CPSRNG0	CPSOUT	T0XCS	332
CPSCON1	—	—	—	CPSCH<4:0>					333
DACCON0	DACEN	DACLPS	DACOE	---	DACPSS<1:0>		---	DACNSS	176
LATA	LATA7	LATA6	LATA5	LATA4	LATA3	LATA2	LATA1	LATA0	128
LCDSE1	SE15	SE14	SE13	SE12	SE11	SE10	SE9	SE8	341
LCDSE2	SE23	SE22	SE21	SE20	SE19	SE18	SE17	SE16	341
LCDSE4	SE39	SE38	SE37	SE36	SE35	SE34	SE33	SE32	341
OPTION_REG	$\overline{\text{WPUEN}}$	INTEDG	TMR0CS	TMR0SE	PSA	PS<2:0>			195
PORTA	RA7	RA6	RA5	RA4	RA3	RA2	RA1	RA0	128
TRISA	TRISA7	TRISA6	TRISA5	TRISA4	TRISA3	TRISA2	TRISA1	TRISA0	128

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, – = unimplemented locations read as ‘0’. Shaded cells are not used by PORTA.

TABLE 12-2: SUMMARY OF CONFIGURATION WORD WITH PORTA

Name	Bits	Bit -/7	Bit -/6	Bit 13/5	Bit 12/4	Bit 11/3	Bit 10/2	Bit 9/1	Bit 8/0	Register on Page
CONFIG1	13:8	—	—	FCMEN	IESO	$\overline{\text{CLKOUTEN}}$	BOREN<1:0>		$\overline{\text{CPD}}$	56
	7:0	$\overline{\text{CP}}$	MCLRE	$\overline{\text{PWRTE}}$	WDTE<1:0>		FOSC<2:0>			

Legend: — = unimplemented location, read as ‘0’. Shaded cells are not used by PORTA.

12.3 PORTB Registers

PORTB is an 8-bit wide, bidirectional port. The corresponding data direction register is TRISB (Register 12-7). Setting a TRISB bit (= `1`) will make the corresponding PORTB pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a High-Impedance mode). Clearing a TRISB bit (= `0`) will make the corresponding PORTB pin an output (i.e., enable the output driver and put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin). Example 12-2 shows how to initialize PORTB.

Reading the PORTB register (Register 12-6) reads the status of the pins, whereas writing to it will write to the PORT latch. All write operations are read-modify-write operations. Therefore, a write to a port implies that the port pins are read, this value is modified and then written to the PORT data latch (LATB).

The TRISB register (Register 12-7) controls the PORTB pin output drivers, even when they are being used as analog inputs. The user should ensure the bits in the TRISB register are maintained set when using them as analog inputs. I/O pins configured as analog input always read '`0`'.

12.3.1 WEAK PULL-UPS

Each of the PORTB pins has an individually configurable internal weak pull-up. Control bits WPUB<7:0> enable or disable each pull-up (see Register 12-9). Each weak pull-up is automatically turned off when the port pin is configured as an output. All pull-ups are disabled on a Power-on Reset by the WPUEN bit of the OPTION register.

12.3.2 INTERRUPT-ON-CHANGE

All of the PORTB pins are individually configurable as an interrupt-on-change pin. Control bits IOCB<7:0> enable or disable the interrupt function for each pin. The interrupt-on-change feature is disabled on a Power-on Reset. Reference **Section 13.0 "Interrupt-On-Change"** for more information.

EXAMPLE 12-2: INITIALIZING PORTB

```
BANKSEL  PORTDB;
CLRF     PORTB        ;Init PORTD
BANKSEL  LATDB        ;Data Latch
CLRF     LATB         ;
BANKSEL  TRISD        ;
MOVLW    B'11110000'  ;Set RD<7:4> as inputs
MOVWF    TRISD        ;and set RD<3:0> as
                      ;outputs
```

12.3.3 PORTB FUNCTIONS AND OUTPUT PRIORITIES

Each PORTB pin is multiplexed with other functions. The pins, their combined functions and their output priorities are briefly described here. For additional information, refer to the appropriate section in this data sheet.

When multiple outputs are enabled, the actual pin control goes to the peripheral with the lowest number in the following lists.

Analog input and some digital input functions are not included in the list below. These input functions can remain active when the pin is configured as an output. Certain digital input functions, such as the EUSART RX signal, override other port functions and are included in the priority list.

RB0

1. SEG30 (LCD)
2. FLT0 (CCP)
3. SRI (SR Latch)
4. INT

RB1

1. SEG8 (LCD)

RB2

1. SEG9 (LCD)

RB3

1. SEG10 (LCD)

RB4

1. SEG11 (LCD)

RB5

1. SEG29 (LCD)
2. T1G (TMR1)

RB6

1. ICSPCLK (Programming)
2. ICDCLK (enabled by Configuration Word)
3. SEG38 (LCD)

RB7

1. ICSPDAT (Programming)
2. ICDDAT (enabled by Configuration Word)
3. SEG39 (LCD)

REGISTER 12-6: PORTB: PORTB REGISTER

R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u
RB7	RB6	RB5	RB4	RB3	RB2	RB1	RB0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **RB<7:0>**: PORTB I/O Pin bit
`1` = Port pin is $\geq$ VIH
`0` = Port pin is $\leq$ VIL

REGISTER 12-7: TRISB: PORTB TRI-STATE REGISTER

R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1
TRISB7	TRISB6	TRISB5	TRISB4	TRISB3	TRISB2	TRISB1	TRISB0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **TRISB<7:0>:** PORTB Tri-State Control bit
`1` = PORTB pin configured as an input (tri-stated)
`0` = PORTB pin configured as an output

REGISTER 12-8: LATB: PORTB DATA LATCH REGISTER

R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u
LATB7	LATB6	LATB5	LATB4	LATB3	LATB2	LATB1	LATB0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **LATB<7:0>**: PORTB Output Latch Value bits(1)

Note 1: Writes to PORTB are actually written to corresponding LATB register. Reads from PORTB register is return of actual I/O pin values.

REGISTER 12-9: WPUB: WEAK PULL-UP PORTB REGISTER

R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1
WPUB7	WPUB6	WPUB5	WPUB4	WPUB3	WPUB2	WPUB1	WPUB0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **WPUB<7:0>**: Weak Pull-up Register bits
1 = Pull-up enabled
0 = Pull-up disabled

Note 1: Global $\overline{\text{WPUEN}}$ bit of the OPTION register must be cleared for individual pull-ups to be enabled.
2: The weak pull-up device is automatically disabled if the pin is in configured as an output.

TABLE 12-3: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTB

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	93
IOCBP	IOCBP7	IOCBP6	IOCBP5	IOCBP4	IOCBP3	IOCBP2	IOCBP1	IOCBP0	152
IOCBN	IOCBN7	IOCBN6	IOCBN5	IOCBN4	IOCBN3	IOCBN2	IOCBN1	IOCBN0	153
IOCBF	IOCBF7	IOCBF6	IOCBF5	IOCBF4	IOCBF3	IOCBF2	IOCBF1	IOCBF0	153
LATB	LATB7	LATB6	LATB5	LATB4	LATB3	LATB2	LATB1	LATB0	131
LCDSE1	SE15	SE14	SE13	SE12	SE11	SE10	SE9	SE8	341
LCDSE3	SE31	SE30	SE29	SE28	SE27	SE26	SE25	SE24	341
LCDSE4	SE39	SE38	SE37	SE36	SE35	SE34	SE33	SE32	341
OPTION_REG	$\overline{\text{WPUEN}}$	INTEDG	TMR0CS	TMR0SE	PSA	PS<2:0>			195
PORTB	RB7	RB6	RB5	RB4	RB3	RB2	RB1	RB0	131
T1GCON	TMR1GE	T1GPOL	T1GTM	T1GSPM	T1GGO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$	T1GVAL	T1GSS<1:0>		206
TRISB	TRISB7	TRISB6	TRISB5	TRISB4	TRISB3	TRISB2	TRISB1	TRISB0	131
WPUB	WPUB7	WPUB6	WPUB5	WPUB4	WPUB3	WPUB2	WPUB1	WPUB0	132

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented locations read as ‘0’. Shaded cells are not used by PORTB.

12.4 PORTC Registers

PORTC is a 8-bit wide, bidirectional port. The corresponding data direction register is TRISC (Register 12-11). Setting a TRISC bit (= `1`) will make the corresponding PORTC pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a High-Impedance mode). Clearing a TRISC bit (= `0`) will make the corresponding PORTC pin an output (i.e., enable the output driver and put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin). Example 12-3 shows how to initialize PORTC.

Reading the PORTC register (Register 12-10) reads the status of the pins, whereas writing to it will write to the PORT latch. All write operations are read-modify-write operations. Therefore, a write to a port implies that the port pins are read, this value is modified and then written to the PORT data latch (LATC).

The TRISC register (Register 12-11) controls the PORTC pin output drivers, even when they are being used as analog inputs. The user should ensure the bits in the TRISC register are maintained set when using them as analog inputs. I/O pins configured as analog input always read '`0`'.

EXAMPLE 12-3: INITIALIZING PORTC

```
BANKSEL  PORTC       ;
CLRF     PORTC       ;Init PORTC
BANKSEL  LATC        ;Data Latch
CLRF     LATC        ;
BANKSEL  TRISC       ;
MOVLW    B'11110000' ;Set RC<7:4> as inputs
MOVWF    TRISC       ;and set RC<3:0> as
                     ;outputs
```

12.4.1 PORTC FUNCTIONS AND OUTPUT PRIORITIES

Each PORTC pin is multiplexed with other functions. The pins, their combined functions and their output priorities are briefly described here. For additional information, refer to the appropriate section in this data sheet.

When multiple outputs are enabled, the actual pin control goes to the peripheral with the lowest number in the following lists.

Analog input and some digital input functions are not included in the list below. These input functions can remain active when the pin is configured as an output. Certain digital input functions override other port functions and are included in the priority list.

RC0

1. T1OSO (Timer1 Oscillator)
2. T1CKI (TMR1)
3. SEG40 (ICD)

RC1

1. T1OSI (Timer1 Oscillator)
2. CCP2/P2A
3. SEG32 (ICD)

RC2

1. SEG13 (LCD)
2. CCP1/P1A

RC3

1. SEG17 (LCD)
2. SCL1 (MSSP1)
3. SCK1 (MSSP1)

RC4

1. SEG16 (LCD)
2. SDA1 (MSSP1)
3. SDI1 (MSSP1)

RC5

1. SEG12 (LCD)
2. SDO1 (MSSP1)

RC6

1. SEG27 (LCD)
2. TX1 (EUSART1)
3. CK2 (EUSART1)

RC7

1. SEG28 (LCD)
2. DT1 (EUSART1)
3. RX1 (EUSART1)

REGISTER 12-10: PORTC: PORTC REGISTER

R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u
RC7	RC6	RC5	RC4	RC3	RC2	RC1	RC0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **RC<7:0>**: PORTC General Purpose I/O Pin bits
`1` = Port pin is $\geq$ V_{IH}
`0` = Port pin is $\leq$ V_{IL}

REGISTER 12-11: TRISC: PORTC TRI-STATE REGISTER

R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1
TRISC7	TRISC6	TRISC5	TRISC4	TRISC3	TRISC2	TRISC1	TRISC0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **TRISC<7:0>:** PORTC Tri-State Control bits
`1` = PORTC pin configured as an input (tri-stated)
`0` = PORTC pin configured as an output

REGISTER 12-12: LATC: PORTC DATA LATCH REGISTER

R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u
LATC7	LATC6	LATC5	LATC4	LATC3	LATC2	LATC1	LATC0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **LATC<7:0>**: PORTC Output Latch Value bits(1)

Note 1: Writes to PORTC are actually written to corresponding LATC register. Reads from PORTC register is return of actual I/O pin values.

TABLE 12-4: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTC

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
APFCON	P3CSEL	P3BSEL	P2DSEL	P2CSEL	P2BSEL	CCP2SEL	P1CSEL	P1BSEL	126
LATC	LATC7	LATC6	LATC5	LATC4	LATC3	LATC2	LATC1	LATC0	134
LCDSE1	SE15	SE14	SE13	SE12	SE11	SE10	SE9	SE8	341
LCDSE2	SE23	SE22	SE21	SE20	SE19	SE18	SE17	SE16	341
LCDSE3	SE31	SE30	SE29	SE28	SE27	SE26	SE25	SE24	341
LCDSE4	SE39	SE38	SE37	SE36	SE35	SE34	SE33	SE32	341
LCDSE5	—	—	SE45	SE44	SE43	SE42	SE41	SE40	341
PORTC	RC7	RC6	RC5	RC4	RC3	RC2	RC1	RC0	134
RC1STA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	308
RC2STA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	308
SSP1CON1	WCOL	SSPOV	SSPEN	CKP	SSPM<3:0>				291
SSP2STAT	SMP	CKE	D/$\overline{\text{A}}$	P	S	R/$\overline{\text{W}}$	UA	BF	289
T1CON	TMR1CS<1:0>		T1CKPS<1:0>		T1OSCEN	$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$	—	TMR1ON	205
TX1STA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	306
TX2STA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	—	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	306
TRISC	TRISC7	TRISC6	TRISC5	TRISC4	TRISC3	TRISC2	TRISC1	TRISC0	134

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, - = unimplemented locations read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by PORTC.

12.5 PORTD Registers

PORTD is a 8-bit wide, bidirectional port. The corresponding data direction register is TRISD (Register 12-13). Setting a TRISD bit (= 1) will make the corresponding PORTD pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a High-Impedance mode). Clearing a TRISD bit (= 0) will make the corresponding PORTD pin an output (i.e., enable the output driver and put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin). Example 12-4 shows how to initialize PORTD.

Reading the PORTD register (Register 12-13) reads the status of the pins, whereas writing to it will write to the PORT latch. All write operations are read-modify-write operations. Therefore, a write to a port implies that the port pins are read, this value is modified and then written to the PORT data latch (LATD).

The TRISD register (Register 12-14) controls the PORTD pin output drivers, even when they are being used as analog inputs. The user should ensure the bits in the TRISD register are maintained set when using them as analog inputs. I/O pins configured as analog input always read '0'.

EXAMPLE 12-4: INITIALIZING PORTD

```
BANKSEL  PORTD        ;
CLRF     PORTD        ;Init PORTD
BANKSEL  LATD         ;Data Latch
CLRF     LATD         ;
BANKSEL  TRISD        ;
MOVLW    B'11110000'  ;Set RD<7:4> as inputs
MOVWF    TRISD        ;and set RD<3:0> as
                      ;outputs
```

12.5.1 PORTD FUNCTIONS AND OUTPUT PRIORITIES

Each PORTD pin is multiplexed with other functions. The pins, their combined functions and their output priorities are briefly described here. For additional information, refer to the appropriate section in this data sheet.

When multiple outputs are enabled, the actual pin control goes to the peripheral with the lowest number in the following lists.

Analog input and some digital input functions are not included in the list below. These input functions can remain active when the pin is configured as an output. Certain digital input functions override other port functions and are included in the priority list.

RD0

1. SEG0 (LCD)
2. P2D (CCP)

RD1

1. SEG1 (LCD)
2. P2C (CCP)

RD2

1. P2B (CCP)
2. SEG2 (LCD)

RD3

1. SEG3 (LCD)
2. P3C (CCP)

RD4

1. SEG4 (LCD)
2. P3D (CCP)
3. SDO2 (SSP2)

RD5

1. SEG5 (LCD)
2. P1C (CCP)
3. SDI2/SDA2 (SSP2)

RD6

1. SEG5 (LCD)
2. P1B (CCP)
3. SCK2/SCL2 (SSP2)

RD7

1. SEG7 (LCD)
2. $\overline{SS2}$ (SSP2)

 Preliminary

REGISTER 12-13: PORTD: PORTD REGISTER

R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u
RD7	RD6	RD5	RD4	RD3	RD2	RD1	RD0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **RD<7:0>**: PORTD General Purpose I/O Pin bits
1 = Port pin is $\geq$ V_{IH}
0 = Port pin is $\leq$ V_{IL}

REGISTER 12-14: TRISD: PORTD TRI-STATE REGISTER

R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1
TRISD7	TRISD6	TRISD5	TRISD4	TRISD3	TRISD2	TRISD1	TRISD0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **TRISD<7:0>:** PORTD Tri-State Control bits
1 = PORTD pin configured as an input (tri-stated)
0 = PORTD pin configured as an output

REGISTER 12-15: LATD: PORTD DATA LATCH REGISTER

R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u
LATD7	LATD6	LATD5	LATD4	LATD3	LATD2	LATD1	LATD0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **LATD<7:0>**: PORTD Output Latch Value bits(1)

Note 1: Writes to PORTD are actually written to corresponding LATD register. Reads from PORTD register is return of actual I/O pin values.

TABLE 12-5: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTD

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
APFCON	P3CSEL	P3BSEL	P2DSEL	P2CSEL	P2BSEL	CCP2SEL	P1CSEL	P1BSEL	126
CCPxCON	PxM<1:0>(1)		DCxB<1:0>		CCPxM<3:0>				236
LATD	LATD7	LATD6	LATD5	LATD4	LATD3	LATD2	LATD1	LATD0	137
LCDCON	LCDEN	SLPEN	WERR	—	CS<1:0>		LMUX<1:0>		337
LCDSE0	SE7	SE6	SE5	SE4	SE3	SE2	SE1	SE0	341
PORTD	RD7	RD6	RD5	RD4	RD3	RD2	RD1	RD0	137
TRISD	TRISD7	TRISD6	TRISD5	TRISD4	TRISD3	TRISD2	TRISD1	TRISD0	137

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, – = unimplemented locations read as ‘0’. Shaded cells are not used by PORTD.
Note 1: Applies to ECCP modules only.

12.6 PORTE Registers

PORTE is an 8-bit wide, bidirectional port. The corresponding data direction register is TRISE. Setting a TRISE bit (= `1`) will make the corresponding PORTE pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a High-Impedance mode). Clearing a TRISE bit (= `0`) will make the corresponding PORTE pin an output (i.e., enable the output driver and put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin). The exception is RE3, which is input only and its TRIS bit will always read as ‘`1`’. Example 12-5 shows how to initialize PORTE.

Reading the PORTE register (Register 12-16) reads the status of the pins, whereas writing to it will write to the PORT latch. All write operations are read-modify-write operations. Therefore, a write to a port implies that the port pins are read, this value is modified and then written to the PORT data latch (LATE). RE3 reads ‘`0`’ when MCLRE = `1`.

12.6.1 ANSELE REGISTER

The ANSELE register (Register 12-19) is used to configure the Input mode of an I/O pin to analog. Setting the appropriate ANSELE bit high will cause all digital reads on the pin to be read as ‘`0`’ and allow analog functions on the pin to operate correctly.

The state of the ANSELE bits has no affect on digital output functions. A pin with TRIS clear and ANSEL set will still operate as a digital output, but the Input mode will be analog. This can cause unexpected behavior when executing read-modify-write instructions on the affected port.

The TRISE register (Register 12-17) controls the PORTE pin output drivers, even when they are being used as analog inputs. The user should ensure the bits in the TRISE register are maintained set when using them as analog inputs. I/O pins configured as analog input always read ‘`0`’.

> **Note:** The ANSELE register must be initialized to configure an analog channel as a digital input. Pins configured as analog inputs will read ‘`0`’.

EXAMPLE 12-5: INITIALIZING PORTE

```
BANKSEL PORTE        ;
CLRF    PORTE        ;Init PORTE
BANKSEL  LATE        ;Data Latch
CLRF     LATE        ;
BANKSEL ANSELE       ;
CLRF    ANSELE       ;digital I/O
BANKSEL TRISE        ;
MOVLW   B'00001100'  ;Set RE<3:2> as inputs
MOVWF   TRISE        ;and set RE<1:0>
                     ;as outputs
```

12.6.2 PORTE FUNCTIONS AND OUTPUT PRIORITIES

Each PORTE pin is multiplexed with other functions. The pins, their combined functions and their output priorities are briefly described here. For additional information, refer to the appropriate section in this data sheet.

When multiple outputs are enabled, the actual pin control goes to the peripheral with the lowest number in the following lists.

Analog input and some digital input functions are not included in the list below. These input functions can remain active when the pin is configured as an output. Certain digital input functions, such as the EUSART RX signal, override other port functions and are included in the priority list.

<u>RE0</u>

1. P2D (CCP)
2. VLCD1 (LCD)

<u>RE1</u>

1. P2C (CCP)
2. VLCD2 (LCD)

<u>RE2</u>

1. P2B (CCP)
2. VLCD3 (LCD)

<u>RE3</u>

1. P3C (CCP)
2. COM0 (LCD)

<u>RE4</u>

1. P3B (CCP)
2. COM1 (LCD)

<u>RE5</u>

1. P1C (CCP)
2. COM32(LCD)

<u>RE6</u>

1. P1B (CCP)
2. COM3 (LCD)

<u>RE7</u>

1. CCP2/P2A (CCP)
2. SEG31 (LCD)

REGISTER 12-16: PORTE: PORTE REGISTER

R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u
RE7	RE6	RE5	RE4	RE3	RE2	RE1	RE0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **RE<7:0>**: PORTE I/O Pin bits
`1` = Port pin is $\geq V_{IH}$
`0` = Port pin is $\leq V_{IL}$

REGISTER 12-17: TRISE: PORTE TRI-STATE REGISTER

R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
TRISE7	TRISE6	TRISE5	TRISE4	TRISE3	TRISE2	TRISE1	TRISE0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **TRISE<7:0>:** RE<7:0> Tri-State Control bits
`1` = PORTE pin configured as an input (tri-stated)
`0` = PORTE pin configured as an output

REGISTER 12-18: LATE: PORTE DATA LATCH REGISTER

R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u
LATE7	LATE6	LATE5	LATE4	LATE3	LATE2	LATE1	LATE0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **LATE<7:0>**: PORTE Output Latch Value bits(1)

Note 1: Writes to PORTE are actually written to corresponding LATE register. Reads from PORTE register is return of actual I/O pin values.

REGISTER 12-19: ANSELE: PORTE ANALOG SELECT REGISTER

R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1	R/W-1
—	—	—	—	—	ANSE2	ANSE1	ANSE0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **ANSE<7:0>**: Analog Select between Analog or Digital Function on Pins RE<7:0>, respectively
`0` = Digital I/O. Pin is assigned to port or digital special function.
`1` = Analog input. Pin is assigned as analog input(1). Digital input buffer disabled.

Note 1: When setting a pin to an analog input, the corresponding TRIS bit must be set to Input mode in order to allow external control of the voltage on the pin.

TABLE 12-6: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTE

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
APFCON	P3CSEL	P3BSEL	P2DSEL	P2CSEL	P2BSEL	CCP2SEL	P1CSEL	P1BSEL	126
ANSELE	—	—	—	—	—	ANSE2	ANSE1	ANSE0	141
CCPxCON	PxM<1:0>(1)		DCxB<1:0>		CCPxM<3:0>				236
LATE	LATE7	LATE6	LATE5	LATE4	LATE3	LATE2	LATE1	LATE0	141
LCDCON	LCDEN	SLPEN	WERR	—	CS<1:0>		LMUX<1:0>		337
LCDREF	LCDIRE	LCDIRS	LCDIRI	—	VLCD3PE	VLCD2PE	VLCD1PE	—	339
LCDSE2	SE31	SE30	SE29	SE28	SE27	SE26	SE25	SE24	341
PORTE	RE7	RE6	RE5	RE4	RE3	RE2	RE1	RE0	140
TRISE	TRISE7	TRISE6	TRISE5	TRISE4	TRISE3	TRISE2	TRISE1	TRISE0	140

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, – = unimplemented locations read as ‘0’. Shaded cells are not used by PORTE.
Note 1: Applies to ECCP modules only.

12.7 PORTF Registers

PORTF is a 8-bit wide, bidirectional port. The corresponding data direction register is TRISF (Register 12-21). Setting a TRISF bit (= 1) will make the corresponding PORTF pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a High-Impedance mode). Clearing a TRISF bit (= 0) will make the corresponding PORTF pin an output (i.e., enable the output driver and put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin). Example 12-4 shows how to initialize PORTF.

Reading the PORTF register (Register 12-13) reads the status of the pins, whereas writing to it will write to the PORT latch. All write operations are read-modify-write operations. Therefore, a write to a port implies that the port pins are read, this value is modified and then written to the PORT data latch (LATF).

The TRISF register (Register 12-14) controls the PORTF pin output drivers, even when they are being used as analog inputs. The user should ensure the bits in the TRISF register are maintained set when using them as analog inputs. I/O pins configured as analog input always read '0'.

12.7.1 ANSELF REGISTER

The ANSELF register (Register 12-23) is used to configure the Input mode of an I/O pin to analog. Setting the appropriate ANSELF bit high will cause all digital reads on the pin to be read as '0' and allow analog functions on the pin to operate correctly.

The state of the ANSELF bits has no affect on digital output functions. A pin with TRIS clear and ANSEL set will still operate as a digital output, but the Input mode will be analog. This can cause unexpected behavior when executing read-modify-write instructions on the affected port.

Note:	The ANSELF register must be initialized to configure an analog channel as a digital input. Pins configured as analog inputs will read '0'.

EXAMPLE 12-6: INITIALIZING PORTF

```
BANKSEL  PORTF        ;
CLRF     PORTF        ;Init PORTF
BANKSEL  LATF         ;Data Latch
CLRF     LATF         ;
BANKSEL  ANSELF       ;
CLRF     ANSELF       ;digital I/O
BANKSEL  TRISF        ;
MOVLW    B'11110000' ;Set RF<7:4> as inputs
MOVWF    TRISF        ;and set RF<3:0> as
                      ;outputs
```


12.7.2 PORTF FUNCTIONS AND OUTPUT PRIORITIES

Each PORTF pin is multiplexed with other functions. The pins, their combined functions and their output priorities are briefly described here. For additional information, refer to the appropriate section in this data sheet.

When multiple outputs are enabled, the actual pin control goes to the peripheral with the lowest number in the following lists.

Analog input and some digital input functions are not included in the list below. These input functions can remain active when the pin is configured as an output. Certain digital input functions override other port functions and are included in the priority list.

RF0

1. AN16 (ADC)
2. CPS16 (CSM)
3. C12IN0- (Comparator)
4. SEG41 (LCD)
5. V_{CAP} (LDO)

RF1

1. AN6 (ADC)
2. CPS6 (CSM)
3. C2OUT (Comparator)
4. SRNQ (SR Latch)
5. SEG19 (LCD)

RF2

1. AN7 (ADC)
2. CPS7 (CSM)
3. C1OUT (Comparator)
4. SEG20 (LCD)
5. SRQ (SR Latch)

RF3

1. AN8 (ADC)
2. CPS8 (CSM)
3. C123IN2- (Comparator)
4. SEG21 (LCD)

RF4

1. AN9 (ADC)
2. CPS9 (CSM)
3. C2IN+ (Comparator)
4. SEG22 (LCD)

RF5

1. AN10 (ADC)
2. CPS10 (CSM)
3. C12IN1- (Comparator)
4. DACOUT (DAC)
5. SEG23 (LCD)

RF6

1. AN11 (ADC)
2. CPS11 (CSM)
3. C1IN+ (Comparator)
4. DACOUT (DAC)
5. SEG24 (LCD)

RF7

1. AN5 (ADC)
2. CPS5 (CSM)
3. C123IN3- (Comparator)
4. $\overline{SS1}$ (MSSP1)
5. SEG25 (LCD)

REGISTER 12-20: PORTF: PORTF REGISTER

R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u
RF7	RF6	RF5	RF4	RF3	RF2	RF1	RF0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **RF<7:0>**: PORTF General Purpose I/O Pin bits
1 = Port pin is $\geq$ VIH
0 = Port pin is $\leq$ VIL

REGISTER 12-21: TRISF: PORTF TRI-STATE REGISTER

R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1
TRISF7	TRISF6	TRISF5	TRISF4	TRISF3	TRISF2	TRISF1	TRISF0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **TRISF<7:0>:** PORTF Tri-State Control bits
1 = PORTF pin configured as an input (tri-stated)
0 = PORTF pin configured as an output

REGISTER 12-22: LATF: PORTF DATA LATCH REGISTER

R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u
LATF7	LATF6	LATF5	LATF4	LATF3	LATF2	LATF1	LATF0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **LATF<7:0>**: PORTF Output Latch Value bits(1)

Note 1: Writes to PORTF are actually written to corresponding LATF register. Reads from PORTF register is return of actual I/O pin values.

REGISTER 12-23: ANSELF: PORTF ANALOG SELECT REGISTER

R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1
ANSF7	ANSF6	ANSF5	ANSDF4	ANSF3	ANSF2	ANSDF1	ANSF0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **ANSF<7:0>**: Analog Select between Analog or Digital Function on Pins RF<7:0>, respectively
`0` = Digital I/O. Pin is assigned to port or digital special function.
`1` = Analog input. Pin is assigned as analog input(1). Digital input buffer disabled.

Note 1: When setting a pin to an analog input, the corresponding TRIS bit must be set to Input mode in order to allow external control of the voltage on the pin.

TABLE 12-7: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTF

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
ADCON0	—	CHS<4:0>					GO/$\overline{DONE}$	ADON	166
ANSELF	ANSF7	ANSF6	ANSF5	ANSF4	ANSF3	ANSF2	ANSF1	ANSF0	145
CCPxCON	PxM<1:0>(1)		DCxB<1:0>		CCPxM<3:0>				236
CMOUT	—	—	—	—	—	MC3OUT	MC2OUT	MC1OUT	184
CM1CON1	C1INTP	C1INTN	C1PCH1	C1PCH0	—	—	C1NCH<1:0>		184
CM2CON1	C2INTP	C2INTN	C2PCH1	C2PCH0	—	—	C2NCH<1:0>		184
CPSCON0	CPSON	CPSRM	—	—	CPSRNG<1:0>		CPSOUT	T0XCS	332
CPSCON1	—	—	—	—	CPSCH<3:0>				333
DACCON0	DACEN	DACLPS	DACOE	—	DACPSS<1:0>		—	DACNSS	176
LATF	LATF7	LATF6	LATF5	LATF4	LATF3	LATF2	LATF1	LATF0	137
LCDCON	LCDEN	SLPEN	WERR	—	CS<1:0>		LMUX<1:0>		337
LCDSE2	SE23	SE22	SE21	SE20	SE19	SE18	SE17	SE16	341
LCDSE3	SE31	SE30	SE29	SE28	SE27	SE26	SE25	SE24	341
LCDSE5	—	—	SE45	SE44	SE43	SE42	SE41	SE40	341
PORTF	RF7	RF6	RF5	RF4	RF3	RF2	RF1	RF0	144
SRCON0	SRLEN	SRCLK2	SRCLK1	SRCLK0	SRQEN	SRNQEN	SRPS	SRPR	190
TRISF	TRISF7	TRISF6	TRISF5	TRISF4	TRISF3	TRISF2	TRISF1	TRISF0	144

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, – = unimplemented locations read as ‘`0`’. Shaded cells are not used by PORTF.
Note 1: Applies to ECCP modules only.

TABLE 12-8: SUMMARY OF CONFIGURATION WORDS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTF

Name	Bits	Bit -/7	Bit -/6	Bit 13/5	Bit 12/4	Bit 11/3	Bit 10/2	Bit 9/1	Bit 8/0	Register on Page
CONFIG2	13:8	—	—	LVP	$\overline{DEBUG}$	—	BORV	STVREN	PLLEN	58
	7:0	—	—	VCAPEN	—	—	—	WRT<1:0>		

Legend: — = unimplemented location, read as ‘`0`’. Shaded cells are not used by clock sources.

12.8 PORTG Registers

PORTG is a 8-bit wide, bidirectional port. The corresponding data direction register is TRISG (Register 12-25). Setting a TRISG bit (= 1) will make the corresponding PORTG pin an input (i.e., put the corresponding output driver in a High-Impedance mode). Clearing a TRISG bit (= 0) will make the corresponding PORTG pin an output (i.e., enable the output driver and put the contents of the output latch on the selected pin). Example 12-4 shows how to initialize PORTG.

Reading the PORTG register (Register 12-24) reads the status of the pins, whereas writing to it will write to the PORT latch. All write operations are read-modify-write operations. Therefore, a write to a port implies that the port pins are read, this value is modified and then written to the PORT data latch (LATG).

The TRISG register (Register 12-25) controls the PORTG pin output drivers, even when they are being used as analog inputs. The user should ensure the bits in the TRISG register are maintained set when using them as analog inputs. I/O pins configured as analog input always read '0'.

12.8.1 ANSELG REGISTER

The ANSELG register (Register 12-27) is used to configure the Input mode of an I/O pin to analog. Setting the appropriate ANSELG bit high will cause all digital reads on the pin to be read as '0' and allow analog functions on the pin to operate correctly.

The state of the ANSELG bits has no affect on digital output functions. A pin with TRIS clear and ANSEL set will still operate as a digital output, but the Input mode will be analog. This can cause unexpected behavior when executing read-modify-write instructions on the affected port.

Note:	The ANSELG register must be initialized to configure an analog channel as a digital input. Pins configured as analog inputs will read '0'.

EXAMPLE 12-7: INITIALIZING PORTG

```
BANKSEL  PORTG       ;
CLRF     PORTG       ;Init PORTG
BANKSEL  LATG        ;Data Latch
CLRF     LATG        ;
BANKSEL  ANSELG      ;
CLRF     ANSELG      ;digital I/O
BANKSEL  TRISG       ;
MOVLW    B'11110000' ;Set RG<7:4> as inputs
MOVWF    TRISG       ;and set RG<3:0> as
                     ;outputs
```

12.8.2 PORTG FUNCTIONS AND OUTPUT PRIORITIES

Each PORTG pin is multiplexed with other functions. The pins, their combined functions and their output priorities are briefly described here. For additional information, refer to the appropriate section in this data sheet.

When multiple outputs are enabled, the actual pin control goes to the peripheral with the lowest number in the following lists.

Analog input and some digital input functions are not included in the list below. These input functions can remain active when the pin is configured as an output. Certain digital input functions override other port functions and are included in the priority list.

RG0

1. CCP3 (CCP)
2. P3A (CCP)
3. SEG42 (LCD)

RG1

1. AN15 (ADC)
2. CPS15 (CSM)
3. TX2 (EUSART)
4. CK2 (EUSART)
5. C3OUT (Comparator)
6. SEG43 (LCD)

RG2

1. AN14 (ADC)
2. CPS14 (CSM)
3. DT2/RX2 (EUSART)
4. C3IN+ (Comparator)
5. SEG44 (LCD)

RG3

1. AN13 (ADC)
2. CPS13 (CSM)
3. C3IN0- (Comparator)
4. CCP4 (CCP)
5. P3D (CCP)
6. SEG45 (LCD)

RG4

1. AN12 (ADC)
2. CPS12 (CSM)
3. C3IN1- (Comparator)
4. CCP5 (CCP)
5. P1D (CCP)
6. SEG26 (LCD)

RG5

1. VPP/$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ (Basic)SEG18 (LCD)

REGISTER 12-24: PORTG: PORTG REGISTER

U-0	U-0	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u
—	—	RG5	RG4	RG3	RG2	RG1	RG0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-6 Unimplemented: Read as ‘0’.

bit 5-0 **RG<5:0>**: PORTG General Purpose I/O Pin bits
1 = Port pin is $\geq$ V_{IH}
0 = Port pin is $\leq$ V_{IL}

REGISTER 12-25: TRISG: PORTG TRI-STATE REGISTER

U-0	U-0	R-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1
—	—	TRISG5	TRISG4	TRISG3	TRISG2	TRISG1	TRISG0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-6 Unimplemented: Read as ‘0’.

bit 5 **TRISG5:** PORTG Tri-State Control bit
This bit (RG5 pin) is an input only and always read as ‘1’.

bit 4-0 **TRISG<4:0>:** PORTG Tri-State Control bits
1 = PORTG pin configured as an input (tri-stated)
0 = PORTG pin configured as an output

REGISTER 12-26: LATG: PORTG DATA LATCH REGISTER

U-0	U-0	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u
—	—	LATG5	LATG4	LATG3	LATG2	LATG1	LATG0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-6 Unimplemented: Read as ‘0’.

bit 5-0 **LATG<5:0>**: PORTG Output Latch Value bits

Note 1: Writes to PORTG are actually written to corresponding LATG register. Reads from PORTG register is return of actual I/O pin values.

REGISTER 12-27: ANSELG: PORTG ANALOG SELECT REGISTER

U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	U-0
—	—	—	ANSG4	ANSG3	ANSG2	ANSG1	—
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-5 Unimplemented: Read as ‘0’.

bit 4-1 **ANSG<4:1>**: Analog Select between Analog or Digital Function on Pins RG<4:0>, respectively
0 = Digital I/O. Pin is assigned to port or digital special function.
1 = Analog input. Pin is assigned as analog input(1). Digital input buffer disabled.

bit 0 Unimplemented: Read as ‘0’.

Note 1: When setting a pin to an analog input, the corresponding TRIS bit must be set to Input mode in order to allow external control of the voltage on the pin.

REGISTER 12-28: WPUG: WEAK PULL-UP PORTG REGISTER

U-0	U-0	R/W-1/1	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0
—	—	WPUG5	—	—	—	—	—
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-6 Unimplemented: Read as ‘0’.

bit 5 **WPUG5**: Weak Pull-up Register bits
1 = Pull-up enabled
0 = Pull-up disabled

bit 4-0 Unimplemented: Read as ‘0’.

Note 1: Global $\overline{\text{WPUEN}}$ bit of the OPTION register must be cleared for individual pull-ups to be enabled.
2: The weak pull-up device is automatically disabled if the pin is in configured as an output.

TABLE 12-9: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH PORTG

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
ADCON0	—	CHS<4:0>					GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$	ADON	166
ANSELG	—	—	—	ANSG4	ANSG3	ANSG2	ANSG1	—	148
CCPxCON	PxM<1:0>(1)		DCxB<1:0>		CCPxM<3:0>				236
CMOUT	—	—	—	—	—	MC3OUT	MC2OUT	MC1OUT	184
CM1CON1	C1INTP	C1INTN	C1PCH1	C1PCH0	—	—	C1NCH<1:0>		184
CM2CON1	C2INTP	C2INTN	C2PCH1	C2PCH0	—	—	C2NCH<1:0>		184
CPSCON0	CPSON	CPSRM	—	—	CPSRNG<1:0>		CPSOUT	T0XCS	332
CPSCON1	—	—	—	—	CPSCH<3:0>				333
LATG	—	—	—	LATG4	LATG3	LATG2	LATG1	LATG0	147
LCDCON	LCDEN	SLPEN	WERR	—	CS<1:0>		LMUX<1:0>		337
LCDSE5	—	—	SE45	SE44	SE43	SE42	SE41	SE40	341
PORTG	—	—	RG5	RG4	RG3	RG2	RG1	RG0	147
TRISG	—	—	TRISG5	TRISG4	TRISG3	TRISG2	TRISG1	TRISG0	147
WPUG	—	—	WPUG5	—	—	—	—	—	148

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, – = unimplemented locations read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by PORTG.
Note 1: Applies to ECCP modules only.

NOTES:

13.0 INTERRUPT-ON-CHANGE

The PORTB pins can be configured to operate as Interrupt-On-Change (IOC) pins. An interrupt can be generated by detecting a signal that has either a rising edge or a falling edge. Any individual PORTB pin, or combination of PORTB pins, can be configured to generate an interrupt. The interrupt-on-change module has the following features:

- Interrupt-on-Change enable (Master Switch)
- Individual pin configuration
- Rising and falling edge detection
- Individual pin interrupt flags

Figure 13-1 is a block diagram of the IOC module.

13.1 Enabling the Module

To allow individual PORTB pins to generate an interrupt, the IOCIE bit of the INTCON register must be set. If the IOCIE bit is disabled, the edge detection on the pin will still occur, but an interrupt will not be generated.

13.2 Individual Pin Configuration

For each PORTB pin, a rising edge detector and a falling edge detector are present. To enable a pin to detect a rising edge, the associated IOCBPx bit of the IOCBP register is set. To enable a pin to detect a falling edge, the associated IOCBNx bit of the IOCBN register is set.

A pin can be configured to detect rising and falling edges simultaneously by setting both the IOCBPx bit and the IOCBNx bit of the IOCBP and IOCBN registers, respectively.

13.3 Interrupt Flags

The IOCBFx bits located in the IOCBF register are status flags that correspond to the Interrupt-on-change pins of PORTB. If an expected edge is detected on an appropriately enabled pin, then the status flag for that pin will be set, and an interrupt will be generated if the IOCIE bit is set. The IOCIF bit of the INTCON register reflects the status of all IOCBFx bits.

13.4 Clearing Interrupt Flags

The individual status flags, (IOCBFx bits), can be cleared by resetting them to zero. If another edge is detected during this clearing operation, the associated status flag will be set at the end of the sequence, regardless of the value actually being written.

In order to ensure that no detected edge is lost while clearing flags, only AND operations masking out known changed bits should be performed. The following sequence is an example of what should be performed.

EXAMPLE 13-1:

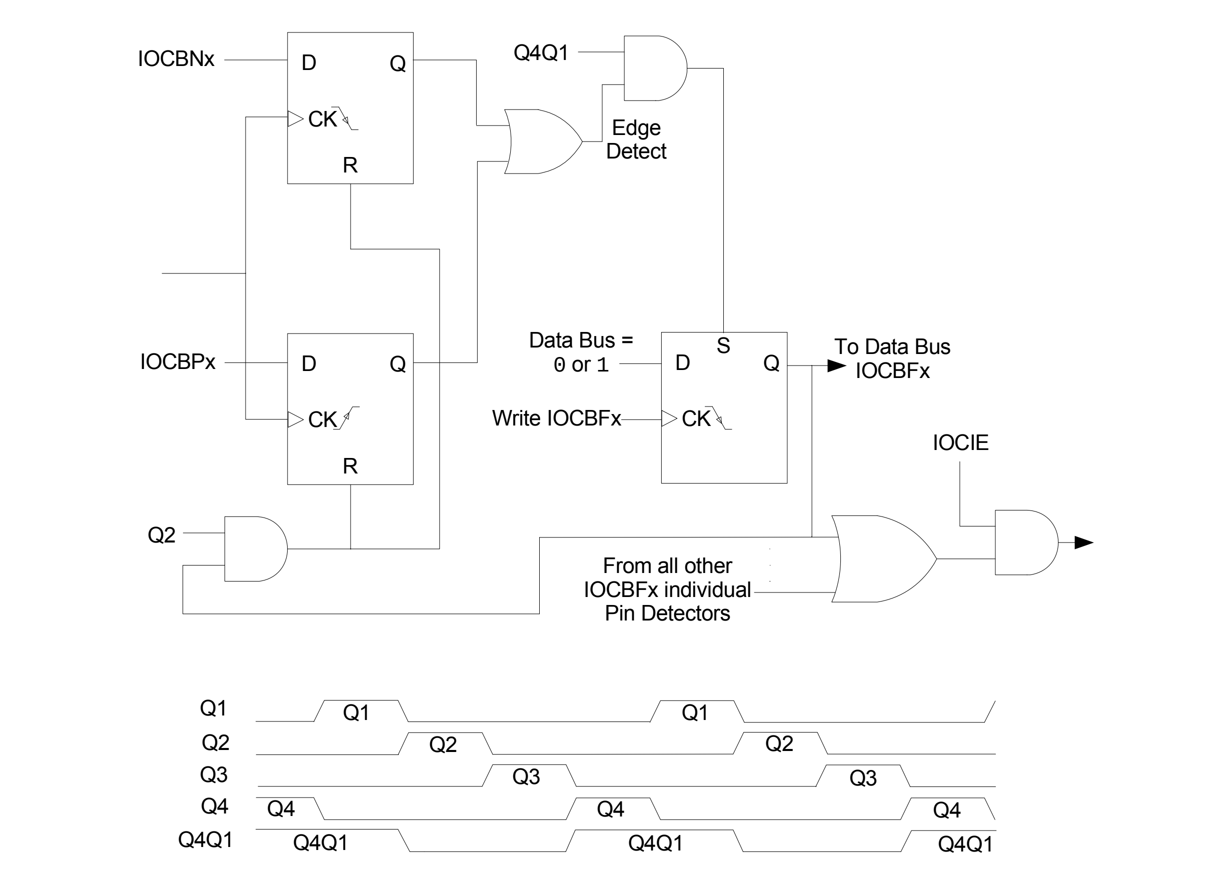
```
MOVLW  0xff
XORWF  IOCBF, W
ANDWF  IOCBF, F
```

13.5 Operation in Sleep

The interrupt-on-change interrupt sequence will wake the device from Sleep mode, if the IOCIE bit is set.

If an edge is detected while in Sleep mode, the IOCBF register will be updated prior to the first instruction executed out of Sleep.

FIGURE 13-1: INTERRUPT-ON-CHANGE BLOCK DIAGRAM



13.6 Interrupt-on-Change Registers

REGISTER 13-1: IOCBP: INTERRUPT-ON-CHANGE POSITIVE EDGE REGISTER

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
IOCBP7	IOCBP6	IOCBP5	IOCBP4	IOCBP3	IOCBP2	IOCBP1	IOCBP0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **IOCBP<7:0>:** Interrupt-on-Change Positive Edge Enable bits

1 = Interrupt-on-Change enabled on the pin for a positive going edge. Associated Status bit and interrupt flag will be set upon detecting an edge.

0 = Interrupt-on-Change disabled for the associated pin.

REGISTER 13-2: IOCBN: INTERRUPT-ON-CHANGE NEGATIVE EDGE REGISTER

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
IOCBN7	IOCBN6	IOCBN5	IOCBN4	IOCBN3	IOCBN2	IOCBN1	IOCBN0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **IOCBN<7:0>:** Interrupt-on-Change Negative Edge Enable bits
1 = Interrupt-on-Change enabled on the pin for a negative going edge. Associated Status bit and interrupt flag will be set upon detecting an edge.
0 = Interrupt-on-Change disabled for the associated pin.

REGISTER 13-3: IOCBF: INTERRUPT-ON-CHANGE FLAG REGISTER

R/W/HS-0/0	R/W/HS-0/0	R/W/HS-0/0	R/W/HS-0/0	R/W/HS-0/0	R/W/HS-0/0	R/W/HS-0/0	R/W/HS-0/0
IOCBF7	IOCBF6	IOCBF5	IOCBF4	IOCBF3	IOCBF2	IOCBF1	IOCBF0
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	HS - Bit is set in hardware

bit 7-0 **IOCBF<7:0>:** Interrupt-on-Change Flag bits
1 = An enabled change was detected on the associated pin.
Set when IOCBPx = 1 and a rising edge was detected on RBx, or when IOCBNx = 1 and a falling edge was detected on RBx.
0 = No change was detected, or the user cleared the detected change.

TABLE 13-1: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH INTERRUPT-ON-CHANGE

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	93
IOCBF	IOCBF7	IOCBF6	IOCBF5	IOCBF4	IOCBF3	IOCBF2	IOCBF1	IOCBF0	153
IOCBN	IOCBN7	IOCBN6	IOCBN5	IOCBN4	IOCBN3	IOCBN2	IOCBN1	IOCBN0	153
IOCBP	IOCBP7	IOCBP6	IOCBP5	IOCBP4	IOCBP3	IOCBP2	IOCBP1	IOCBP0	152
TRISB	TRISB7	TRISB6	TRISB5	TRISB4	TRISB3	TRISB2	TRISB1	TRISB0	131

Legend: — = unimplemented location, read as ‘0’. Shaded cells are not used by Interrupt-on-Change.

NOTES:

14.0 FIXED VOLTAGE REFERENCE (FVR)

The Fixed Voltage Reference, or FVR, is a stable voltage reference, independent of VDD, with 1.024V, 2.048V or 4.096V selectable output levels. The output of the FVR can be configured to supply a reference voltage to the following:

- ADC input channel
- ADC positive reference
- Comparator positive input
- Digital-to-Analog Converter (DAC)
- Capacitive Sensing (CPS) module
- LCD bias generator

The FVR can be enabled by setting the FVREN bit of the FVRCON register.

14.1 Independent Gain Amplifiers

The output of the FVR supplied to the ADC, Comparators, DAC and CPS module is routed through two independent programmable gain amplifiers. Each amplifier can be configured to amplify the reference voltage by 1x, 2x or 4x, to produce the three possible voltage levels.

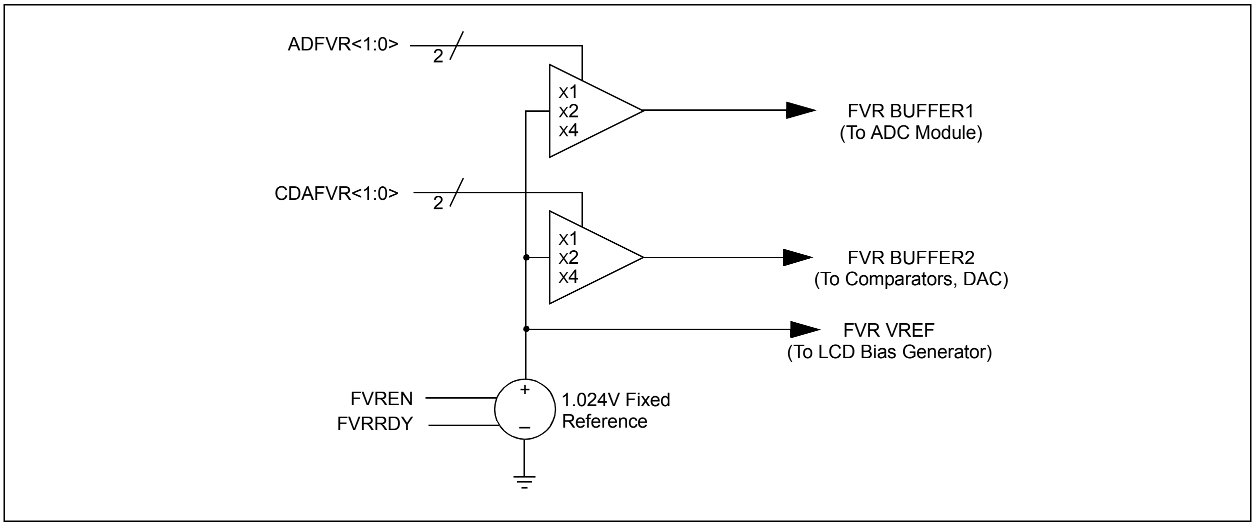
The ADFVR<1:0> bits of the FVRCON register are used to enable and configure the gain amplifier settings for the reference supplied to the ADC module. Reference **Section 16.0 "Analog-to-Digital Converter (ADC) Module"** for additional information.

The CDAFVR<1:0> bits of the FVRCON register are used to enable and configure the gain amplifier settings for the reference supplied to the Comparators, DAC and CPS module. Reference **Section 17.0 "Digital-to-Analog Converter (DAC) Module"**, **Section 18.0 "Comparator Module"** and **Section 26.0 "Capacitive Sensing (CPS) Module"** for additional information.

14.2 FVR Stabilization Period

When the Fixed Voltage Reference module is enabled, it requires time for the reference and amplifier circuits to stabilize. Once the circuits stabilize and are ready for use, the FVRRDY bit of the FVRCON register will be set. See **Section 30.0 "Electrical Specifications"** for the minimum delay requirement.

FIGURE 14-1: VOLTAGE REFERENCE BLOCK DIAGRAM



14.3 FVR Control Registers

REGISTER 14-1: FVRCON: FIXED VOLTAGE REFERENCE CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0/0	R-q/q	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
FVREN	FVRRDY(1)	TSEN	TSRNG	CDAFVR<1:0>		ADFVR<1:0>	
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	q = Value depends on condition

bit 7 **FVREN:** Fixed Voltage Reference Enable bit
`0` = Fixed Voltage Reference is disabled
`1` = Fixed Voltage Reference is enabled

bit 6 **FVRRDY:** Fixed Voltage Reference Ready Flag bit(1)
`0` = Fixed Voltage Reference output is not ready or not enabled
`1` = Fixed Voltage Reference output is ready for use

bit 5 **TSEN:** Temperature Indicator Enable bit(3)
`0` = Temperature Indicator is disabled
`1` = Temperature Indicator is enabled

bit 4 **TSRNG:** Temperature Indicator Range Selection bit(3)
`0` = $V_{OUT} = V_{DD} - 4V_T$ (High Range)
`1` = $V_{OUT} = V_{DD} - 2V_T$ (Low Range)

bit 3-2 **CDAFVR<1:0>:** Comparator and DAC Fixed Voltage Reference Selection bit
`00` = Comparator, DAC and CPS module Fixed Voltage Reference Peripheral output is off
`01` = Comparator, DAC and CPS module Fixed Voltage Reference Peripheral output is 1x (1.024V)
`10` = Comparator, DAC and CPS module Fixed Voltage Reference Peripheral output is 2x (2.048V)(2)
`11` = Comparator, DAC and CPS module Fixed Voltage Reference Peripheral output is 4x (4.096V)(2)

bit 1-0 **ADFVR<1:0>:** ADC Fixed Voltage Reference Selection bit
`00` = ADC Fixed Voltage Reference Peripheral output is off
`01` = ADC Fixed Voltage Reference Peripheral output is 1x (1.024V)
`10` = ADC Fixed Voltage Reference Peripheral output is 2x (2.048V)(2)
`11` = ADC Fixed Voltage Reference Peripheral output is 4x (4.096V)(2)

Note 1: FVRRDY is always ‘`1`’ on PIC16F1946/47 only.
2: Fixed Voltage Reference output cannot exceed V_{DD}.
3: See **Section 15.0 “Temperature Indicator Module”** for additional information.

TABLE 14-1: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH FIXED VOLTAGE REFERENCE

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on page
FVRCON	FVREN	FVRRDY	TSEN	TSRNG	CDAFVR<1:0>		ADFVR<1:0>		156

Legend: Shaded cells are not used with the Fixed Voltage Reference.

15.0 TEMPERATURE INDICATOR MODULE

This family of devices is equipped with a temperature circuit designed to measure the operating temperature of the silicon die. The circuit's range of operating temperature falls between -40°C and +85°C. The output is a voltage that is proportional to the device temperature. The output of the temperature indicator is internally connected to the device ADC.

The circuit may be used as a temperature threshold detector or a more accurate temperature indicator, depending on the level of calibration performed. A one-point calibration allows the circuit to indicate a temperature closely surrounding that point. A two-point calibration allows the circuit to sense the entire range of temperature more accurately. Reference Application Note AN1333, "*Use and Calibration of the Internal Temperature Indicator*" (DS01333) for more details regarding the calibration process.

15.1 Circuit Operation

Figure 15-1 shows a simplified block diagram of the temperature circuit. The proportional voltage output is achieved by measuring the forward voltage drop across multiple silicon junctions.

Equation 15-1 describes the output characteristics of the temperature indicator.

EQUATION 15-1: VOUT RANGES

$$\text{High Range: } V_{OUT} = V_{DD} - 4V_T$$

$$\text{Low Range: } V_{OUT} = V_{DD} - 2V_T$$

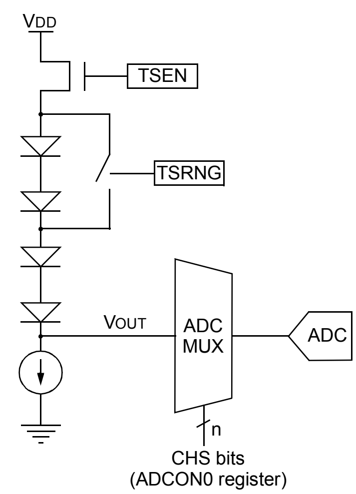
The temperature sense circuit is integrated with the Fixed Voltage Reference (FVR) module. See **Section 14.0 "Fixed Voltage Reference (FVR)"** for more information.

The circuit is enabled by setting the TSEN bit of the FVRCON register. When disabled, the circuit draws no current.

The circuit operates in either high or low range. The high range, selected by setting the TSRNG bit of the FVRCON register, provides a wider output voltage. This provides more resolution over the temperature range, but may be less consistent from part to part. This range requires a higher bias voltage to operate and thus, a higher VDD is needed.

The low range is selected by clearing the TSRNG bit of the FVRCON register. The low range generates a lower voltage drop and thus, a lower bias voltage is needed to operate the circuit. The low range is provided for low voltage operation.

FIGURE 15-1: TEMPERATURE CIRCUIT DIAGRAM



15.2 Minimum Operating VDD vs. Minimum Sensing Temperature

When the temperature circuit is operated in low range, the device may be operated at any operating voltage that is within specifications.

When the temperature circuit is operated in high range, the device operating voltage, VDD, must be high enough to ensure that the temperature circuit is correctly biased.

Table 15-1 shows the recommended minimum VDD vs. range setting.

TABLE 15-1: RECOMMENDED VDD VS. RANGE

Min. VDD, TSRNG = 1	Min. VDD, TSRNG = 0
3.6V	1.8V

15.3 Temperature Output

The output of the circuit is measured using the internal Analog-to-Digital converter. Channel 29 is reserved for the temperature circuit output. Refer to **Section 16.0 "Analog-to-Digital Converter (ADC) Module"** for detailed information.

Note:	Every time the ADC MUX is changed to the temperature indicator output selection (CHS bit in the ADCCON0 register), wait 500 usec for the sampling capacitor to fully charge before sampling the temperature indicator output.

NOTES:

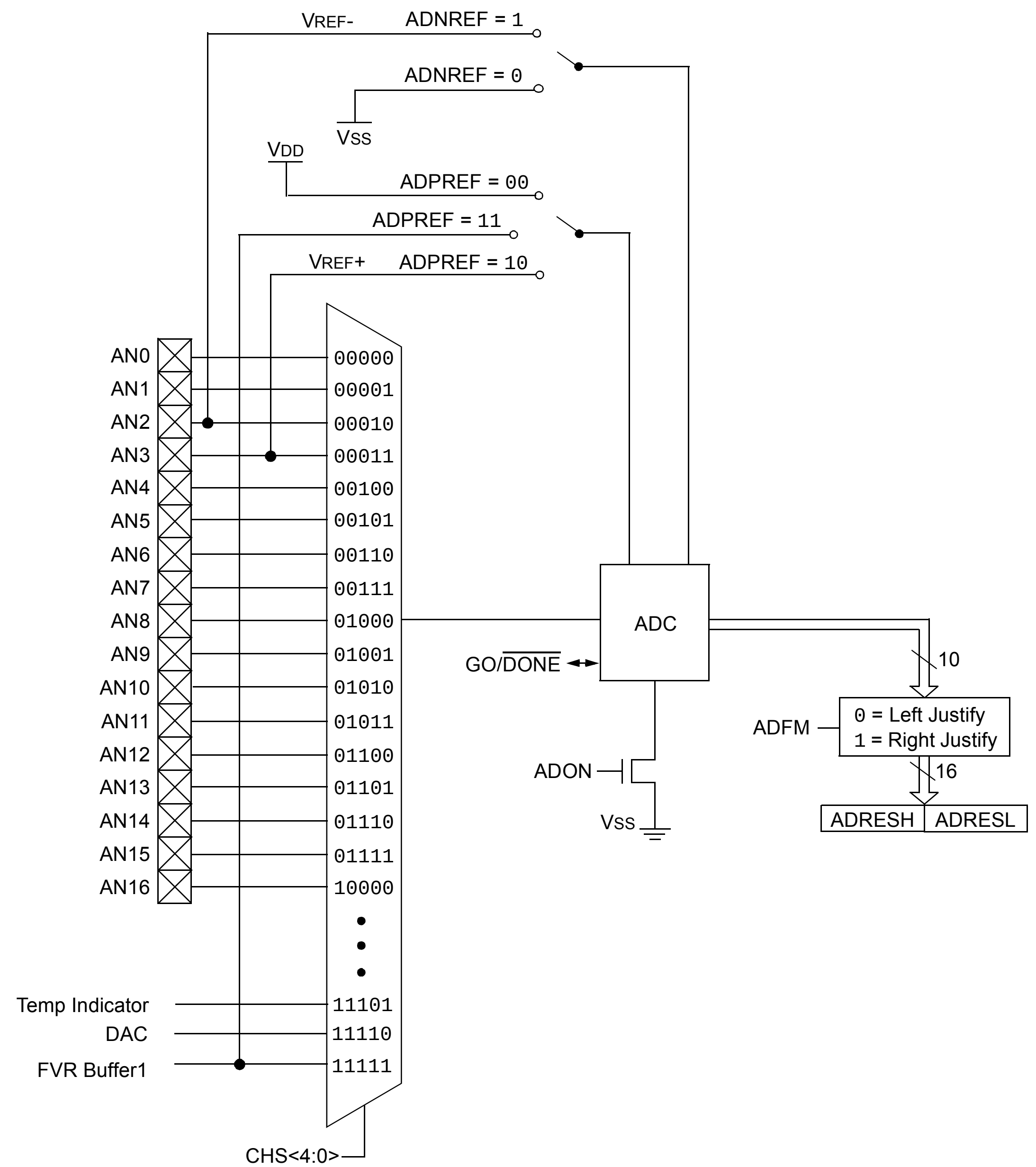
16.0 ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERTER (ADC) MODULE

The Analog-to-Digital Converter (ADC) allows conversion of an analog input signal to a 10-bit binary representation of that signal. This device uses analog inputs, which are multiplexed into a single sample and hold circuit. The output of the sample and hold is connected to the input of the converter. The converter generates a 10-bit binary result via successive approximation and stores the conversion result into the ADC result registers (ADRESH:ADRESL register pair). Figure 16-1 shows the block diagram of the ADC.

The ADC voltage reference is software selectable to be either internally generated or externally supplied.

The ADC can generate an interrupt upon completion of a conversion. This interrupt can be used to wake-up the device from Sleep.

FIGURE 16-1: ADC BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note: When ADON = 0, all multiplexer inputs are disconnected.

 Preliminary

16.1 ADC Configuration

When configuring and using the ADC the following functions must be considered:

- Port configuration
- Channel selection
- ADC voltage reference selection
- ADC conversion clock source
- Interrupt control
- Result formatting

16.1.1 PORT CONFIGURATION

The ADC can be used to convert both analog and digital signals. When converting analog signals, the I/O pin should be configured for analog by setting the associated TRIS and ANSEL bits. Refer to **Section 12.0 "I/O Ports"** for more information.

Note:	Analog voltages on any pin that is defined as a digital input may cause the input buffer to conduct excess current.

16.1.2 CHANNEL SELECTION

There are 20 selections available:

- AN<16:0> pins
- Temperature Indicator
- DAC Output
- FVR (Fixed Voltage Reference) Output

Refer to **Section 15.0 "Temperature Indicator Module"**, **Section 17.0 "Digital-to-Analog Converter (DAC) Module"** and **Section 14.0 "Fixed Voltage Reference (FVR)"** for more information on these channel selections.

The CHS bits of the ADCON0 register determine which channel is connected to the sample and hold circuit.

When changing channels, a delay is required before starting the next conversion. Refer to **Section 16.2 "ADC Operation"** for more information.

16.1.3 ADC VOLTAGE REFERENCE

The ADPREF bits of the ADCON1 register provides control of the positive voltage reference. The positive voltage reference can be:

- VREF+ pin
- VDD
- FVR 2.048V
- FVR 4.096V (Not available on LF devices)

The ADNREF bit of the ADCON1 register provides control of the negative voltage reference. The negative voltage reference can be:

- VREF- pin
- VSS

See **Section 14.0 "Fixed Voltage Reference (FVR)"** for more details on the fixed voltage reference.

16.1.4 CONVERSION CLOCK

The source of the conversion clock is software selectable via the ADCS bits of the ADCON1 register. There are seven possible clock options:

- FOSC/2
- FOSC/4
- FOSC/8
- FOSC/16
- FOSC/32
- FOSC/64
- FRC (dedicated internal oscillator)

The time to complete one bit conversion is defined as TAD. One full 10-bit conversion requires 11.5 TAD periods as shown in Figure 16-2.

For correct conversion, the appropriate TAD specification must be met. Refer to the A/D conversion requirements in **Section 30.0 "Electrical Specifications"** for more information. Table 16-1 gives examples of appropriate ADC clock selections.

Note:	Unless using the FRC, any changes in the system clock frequency will change the ADC clock frequency, which may adversely affect the ADC result.

TABLE 16-1: ADC CLOCK PERIOD (TAD) VS. DEVICE OPERATING FREQUENCIES

ADC Clock Period (TAD)		Device Frequency (FOSC)					
ADC Clock Source	**ADCS<2:0>**	**32 MHz**	**20 MHz**	**16 MHz**	**8 MHz**	**4 MHz**	**1 MHz**
Fosc/2	000	62.5ns(2)	100 ns(2)	125 ns(2)	250 ns(2)	500 ns(2)	2.0 μs
Fosc/4	100	125 ns(2)	200 ns(2)	250 ns(2)	500 ns(2)	1.0 μs	4.0 μs
Fosc/8	001	0.5 μs(2)	400 ns(2)	0.5 μs(2)	1.0 μs	2.0 μs	8.0 μs(3)
Fosc/16	101	800 ns	800 ns	1.0 μs	2.0 μs	4.0 μs	16.0 μs(3)
Fosc/32	010	1.0 μs	1.6 μs	2.0 μs	4.0 μs	8.0 μs(3)	32.0 μs(3)
Fosc/64	110	2.0 μs	3.2 μs	4.0 μs	8.0 μs(3)	16.0 μs(3)	64.0 μs(3)
FRC	x11	1.0-6.0 μs(1,4)	1.0-6.0 μs(1,4)	1.0-6.0 μs(1,4)	1.0-6.0 μs(1,4)	1.0-6.0 μs(1,4)	1.0-6.0 μs(1,4)

Legend: Shaded cells are outside of recommended range.

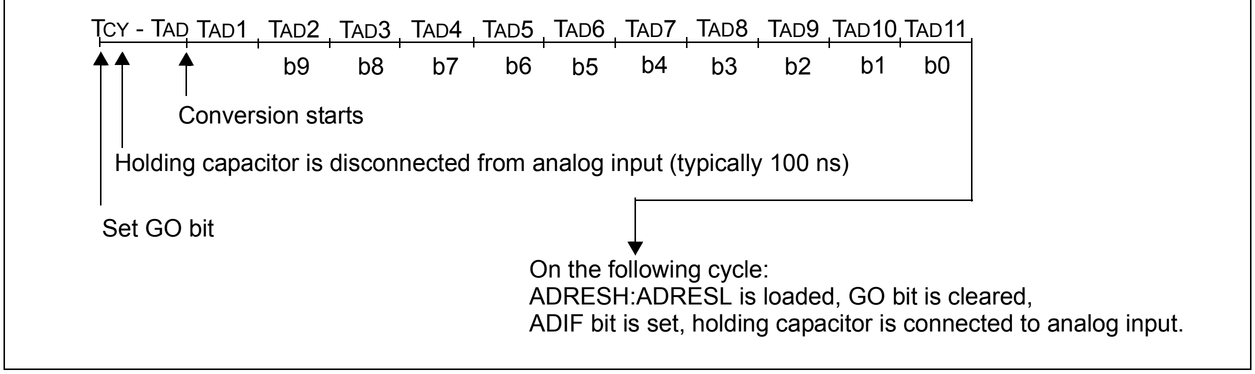
Note 1: The FRC source has a typical TAD time of 1.6 μs for VDD.

2: These values violate the minimum required TAD time.

3: For faster conversion times, the selection of another clock source is recommended.

4: The ADC clock period (TAD) and total ADC conversion time can be minimized when the ADC clock is derived from the system clock FOSC. However, the FRC clock source must be used when conversions are to be performed with the device in Sleep mode.

FIGURE 16-2: ANALOG-TO-DIGITAL CONVERSION TAD CYCLES



16.1.5 INTERRUPTS

The ADC module allows for the ability to generate an interrupt upon completion of an Analog-to-Digital conversion. The ADC Interrupt Flag is the ADIF bit in the PIR1 register. The ADC Interrupt Enable is the ADIE bit in the PIE1 register. The ADIF bit must be cleared in software.

Note 1:	The ADIF bit is set at the completion of every conversion, regardless of whether or not the ADC interrupt is enabled.
2:	The ADC operates during Sleep only when the FRC oscillator is selected.

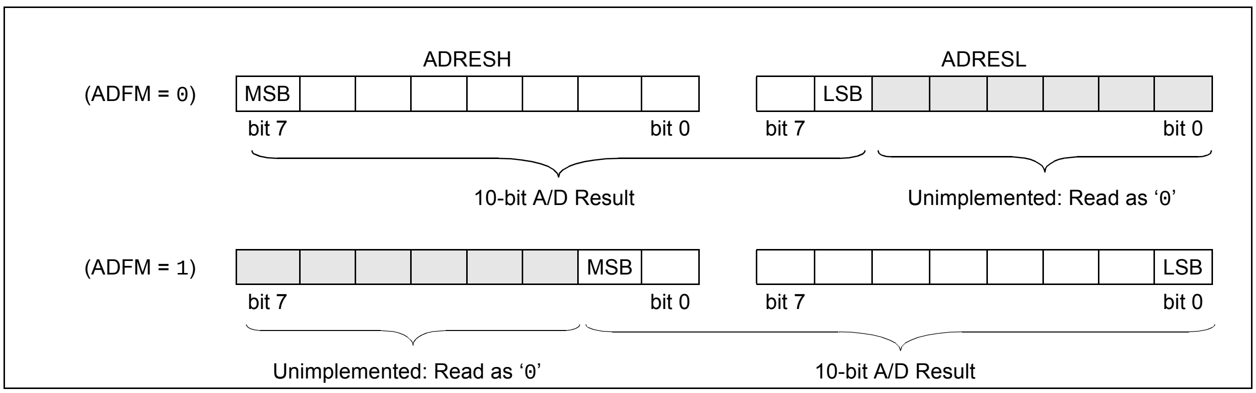
This interrupt can be generated while the device is operating or while in Sleep. If the device is in Sleep, the interrupt will wake-up the device. Upon waking from Sleep, the next instruction following the SLEEP instruction is always executed. If the user is attempting to wake-up from Sleep and resume in-line code execution, the GIE and PEIE bits of the INTCON register must be disabled. If the GIE and PEIE bits of the INTCON register are enabled, execution will switch to the Interrupt Service Routine.

16.1.6 RESULT FORMATTING

The 10-bit A/D conversion result can be supplied in two formats, left justified or right justified. The ADFM bit of the ADCON1 register controls the output format.

Figure 16-3 shows the two output formats.

FIGURE 16-3: 10-BIT A/D CONVERSION RESULT FORMAT



16.2 ADC Operation

16.2.1 STARTING A CONVERSION

To enable the ADC module, the ADON bit of the ADCON0 register must be set to a '1'. Setting the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit of the ADCON0 register to a '1' will start the Analog-to-Digital conversion.

Note:	The GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit should not be set in the same instruction that turns on the ADC. Refer to **Section 16.3.2 "A/D Conversion Procedure"**.

16.2.2 COMPLETION OF A CONVERSION

When the conversion is complete, the ADC module will:

- Clear the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit
- Set the ADIF Interrupt Flag bit
- Update the ADRESH and ADRESL registers with new conversion result

16.2.3 TERMINATING A CONVERSION

If a conversion must be terminated before completion, the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit can be cleared in software. The ADRESH and ADRESL registers will be updated with the partially complete Analog-to-Digital conversion sample. Incomplete bits will match the last bit converted.

Note:	A device Reset forces all registers to their Reset state. Thus, the ADC module is turned off and any pending conversion is terminated.

16.3 ADC Operation During Sleep

The ADC module can operate during Sleep. This requires the ADC clock source to be set to the FRC option. When the FRC clock source is selected, the ADC waits one additional instruction before starting the conversion. This allows the SLEEP instruction to be executed, which can reduce system noise during the conversion. If the ADC interrupt is enabled, the device will wake-up from Sleep when the conversion completes. If the ADC interrupt is disabled, the ADC module is turned off after the conversion completes, although the ADON bit remains set.

When the ADC clock source is something other than FRC, a SLEEP instruction causes the present conversion to be aborted and the ADC module is turned off, although the ADON bit remains set.

16.3.1 SPECIAL EVENT TRIGGER

The Special Event Trigger of the CCPx/ECCPX module allows periodic ADC measurements without software intervention. When this trigger occurs, the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit is set by hardware and the Timer1 counter resets to zero.

TABLE 16-2: SPECIAL EVENT TRIGGER

Device	CCPx/ECCPx
PIC16F/LF1946/47	CCP5

Using the Special Event Trigger does not assure proper ADC timing. It is the user's responsibility to ensure that the ADC timing requirements are met.

Refer to **Section 23.0 "Capture/Compare/PWM Modules"** for more information.

16.3.2 A/D CONVERSION PROCEDURE

This is an example procedure for using the ADC to perform an Analog-to-Digital conversion:

1. Configure Port:
   - Disable pin output driver (Refer to the TRIS register)
   - Configure pin as analog (Refer to the ANSEL register)
2. Configure the ADC module:
   - Select ADC conversion clock
   - Configure voltage reference
   - Select ADC input channel
   - Turn on ADC module
3. Configure ADC interrupt (optional):
   - Clear ADC interrupt flag
   - Enable ADC interrupt
   - Enable peripheral interrupt
   - Enable global interrupt[(1)]
4. Wait the required acquisition time[(2)].
5. Start conversion by setting the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit.
6. Wait for ADC conversion to complete by one of the following:
   - Polling the GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit
   - Waiting for the ADC interrupt (interrupts enabled)
7. Read ADC Result.
8. Clear the ADC interrupt flag (required if interrupt is enabled).

Note 1: The global interrupt can be disabled if the user is attempting to wake-up from Sleep and resume in-line code execution.

2: Refer to **Section 16.5 "A/D Acquisition Requirements"**.

EXAMPLE 16-1: A/D CONVERSION

```
;This code block configures the ADC
;for polling, Vdd and Vss references, Frc
;clock and AN0 input.
;
;Conversion start & polling for completion
; are included.
;
BANKSEL   ADCON1       ;
MOVLW     B'11110000'  ;Right justify, Frc
                       ;clock
MOVWF     ADCON1       ;Vdd and Vss Vref
BANKSEL   TRISA        ;
BSF       TRISA,0      ;Set RA0 to input
BANKSEL   ANSEL        ;
BSF       ANSEL,0      ;Set RA0 to analog
BANKSEL   ADCON0       ;
MOVLW     B'00000001'  ;Select channel AN0
MOVWF     ADCON0       ;Turn ADC On
CALL      SampleTime   ;Acquisiton delay
BSF       ADCON0,ADGO  ;Start conversion
BTFSC     ADCON0,ADGO  ;Is conversion done?
GOTO      $-1          ;No, test again
BANKSEL   ADRESH       ;
MOVF      ADRESH,W     ;Read upper 2 bits
MOVWF     RESULTHI     ;store in GPR space
BANKSEL   ADRESL       ;
MOVF      ADRESL,W     ;Read lower 8 bits
MOVWF     RESULTLO     ;Store in GPR space
```

16.4 ADC Register Definitions

The following registers are used to control the operation of the ADC.

REGISTER 16-1: ADCON0: A/D CONTROL REGISTER 0

U-0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
—	CHS<4:0>					GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$	ADON
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 6-2 **CHS<4:0>:** Analog Channel Select bits
00000 = AN0
00001 = AN1
00010 = AN2
00011 = AN3
00100 = AN4
00101 = AN5
00110 = AN6
00111 = AN7
01000 = AN8
01001 = AN9
01010 = AN10
01011 = AN11
01100 = AN12
01101 = AN13
01110 = AN14
01111 = AN15
10000 = AN16
10001 = Reserved. No channel connected.
•
•
•
11100 = Reserved. No channel connected.
11101 = Temperature Indicator(3)
11110 = DAC output(1)
11111 = FVR (Fixed Voltage Reference) Buffer 1 Output(2)

bit 1 **GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$:** A/D Conversion Status bit
1 = A/D conversion cycle in progress. Setting this bit starts an A/D conversion cycle.
This bit is automatically cleared by hardware when the A/D conversion has completed.
0 = A/D conversion completed/not in progress

bit 0 **ADON:** ADC Enable bit
1 = ADC is enabled
0 = ADC is disabled and consumes no operating current

Note 1: See **Section 17.0 “Digital-to-Analog Converter (DAC) Module”** for more information.
2: See **Section 14.0 “Fixed Voltage Reference (FVR)”** for more information.
3: See **Section 15.0 “Temperature Indicator Module”** for more information.

REGISTER 16-2: ADCON1: A/D CONTROL REGISTER 1

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	U-0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
ADFM	ADCS<2:0>			—	ADNREF	ADPREF<1:0>	
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7 **ADFM:** A/D Result Format Select bit
1 = Right justified. Six Most Significant bits of ADRESH are set to ‘0’ when the conversion result is loaded.
0 = Left justified. Six Least Significant bits of ADRESL are set to ‘0’ when the conversion result is loaded.

bit 6-4 **ADCS<2:0>:** A/D Conversion Clock Select bits
000 = FOSC/2
001 = FOSC/8
010 = FOSC/32
011 = FRC (clock supplied from a dedicated RC oscillator)
100 = FOSC/4
101 = FOSC/16
110 = FOSC/64
111 = FRC (clock supplied from a dedicated RC oscillator)

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 2 **ADNREF:** A/D Negative Voltage Reference Configuration bit
0 = VREF- is connected to VSS
1 = VREF- is connected to external VREF-

bit 1-0 **ADPREF<1:0>:** A/D Positive Voltage Reference Configuration bits
00 = VREF+ is connected to VDD
01 = Reserved
10 = VREF+ is connected to external VREF+(1)
11 = VREF+ is connected to internal Fixed Voltage Reference (FVR) module(1)

Note 1: When selecting the FVR or the VREF+ pin as the source of the positive reference, be aware that a minimum voltage specification exists. See **Section 30.0 “Electrical Specifications”** for details.

REGISTER 16-3: ADRESH: ADC RESULT REGISTER HIGH (ADRESH) ADFM = 0

R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u
ADRES<9:2>							
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **ADRES<9:2>**: ADC Result Register bits
Upper 8 bits of 10-bit conversion result

REGISTER 16-4: ADRESL: ADC RESULT REGISTER LOW (ADRESL) ADFM = 0

R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u
ADRES<1:0>		—	—	—	—	—	—
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-6 **ADRES<1:0>**: ADC Result Register bits
Lower 2 bits of 10-bit conversion result

bit 5-0 **Reserved**: Do not use.

REGISTER 16-5: ADRESH: ADC RESULT REGISTER HIGH (ADRESH) ADFM = 1

R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u
—	—	—	—	—	—	ADRES<9:8>	
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-2 **Reserved**: Do not use.

bit 1-0 **ADRES<9:8>**: ADC Result Register bits
Upper 2 bits of 10-bit conversion result

REGISTER 16-6: ADRESL: ADC RESULT REGISTER LOW (ADRESL) ADFM = 1

R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u
ADRES<7:0>							
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **ADRES<7:0>**: ADC Result Register bits
Lower 8 bits of 10-bit conversion result

16.5 A/D Acquisition Requirements

For the ADC to meet its specified accuracy, the charge holding capacitor (CHOLD) must be allowed to fully charge to the input channel voltage level. The Analog Input model is shown in Figure 16-4. The source impedance (RS) and the internal sampling switch (RSS) impedance directly affect the time required to charge the capacitor CHOLD. The sampling switch (RSS) impedance varies over the device voltage (VDD), refer to Figure 16-4. **The maximum recommended impedance for analog sources is 10 kΩ.** As the source impedance is decreased, the acquisition time may be decreased. After the analog input channel is selected (or changed), an A/D acquisition must be done before the conversion can be started. To calculate the minimum acquisition time, Equation 16-1 may be used. This equation assumes that 1/2 LSb error is used (1,024 steps for the ADC). The 1/2 LSb error is the maximum error allowed for the ADC to meet its specified resolution.

EQUATION 16-1: ACQUISITION TIME EXAMPLE

Assumptions: $Temperature = 50°C$ *and external impedance of* $10k\Omega$ $5.0V$ V_{DD}

$$\begin{aligned} T_{ACQ} &= \text{Amplifier Settling Time} + \text{Hold Capacitor Charging Time} + \text{Temperature Coefficient} \\ &= T_{AMP} + T_C + T_{COFF} \\ &= 2\mu s + T_C + [(Temperature - 25°C)(0.05\mu s/°C)] \end{aligned}$$

The value for T_C *can be approximated with the following equations:*

$$V_{APPLIED}\left(1 - \frac{1}{(2^{n+1}) - 1}\right) = V_{CHOLD} \qquad ;[1]\ V_{CHOLD} \text{ charged to within 1/2 lsb}$$

$$V_{APPLIED}\left(1 - e^{\frac{-T_C}{RC}}\right) = V_{CHOLD} \qquad ;[2]\ V_{CHOLD} \text{ charge response to } V_{APPLIED}$$

$$V_{APPLIED}\left(1 - e^{\frac{-T_C}{RC}}\right) = V_{APPLIED}\left(1 - \frac{1}{(2^{n+1}) - 1}\right) \qquad ;\text{combining [1] and [2]}$$

Note: Where n = number of bits of the ADC.

Solving for T_C*:*

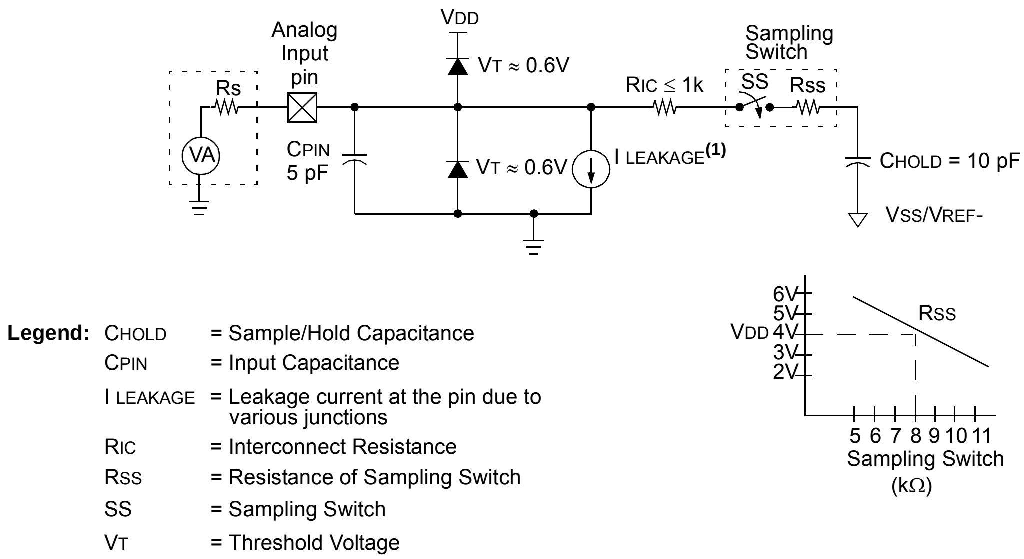
$$\begin{aligned} T_C &= -C_{HOLD}(R_{IC} + R_{SS} + R_S)\ \ln(1/2047) \\ &= -10pF(1k\Omega + 7k\Omega + 10k\Omega)\ln(4.88 \times 10^{-4}) \\ &= 1.37\mu s \end{aligned}$$

Therefore:

$$\begin{aligned} T_{ACQ} &= 2\mu s + 1.37\mu s + [(50°C - 25°C)(0.05\mu s/°C)] \\ &= 4.62\mu s \end{aligned}$$

> **Note 1:** The reference voltage (VREF) has no effect on the equation, since it cancels itself out.
>
> **2:** The charge holding capacitor (CHOLD) is not discharged after each conversion.
>
> **3:** The maximum recommended impedance for analog sources is 10 kΩ. This is required to meet the pin leakage specification.

FIGURE 16-4: ANALOG INPUT MODEL



Note 1: Refer to **Section 30.0 "Electrical Specifications"**.

FIGURE 16-5: ADC TRANSFER FUNCTION

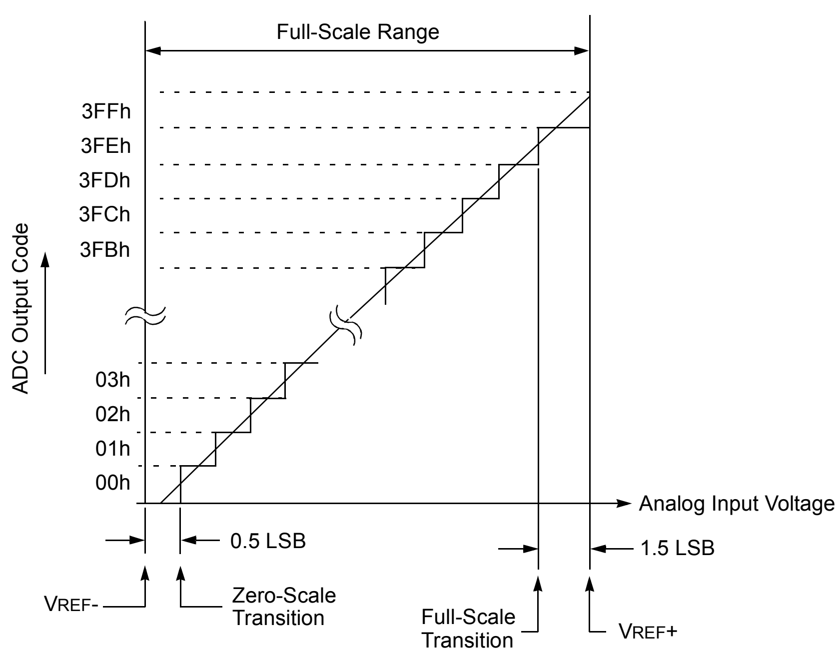


TABLE 16-3: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH ADC

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
ADCON0	—	CHS<4:0>					GO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$	ADON	166
ADCON1	ADFM	ADCS<2:0>			—	ADNREF	ADPREF<1:0>		167
ADRESH	A/D Result Register High								168
ADRESL	A/D Result Register Low								168
ANSELA	—	—	ANSA5	—	ANSA3	ANSA2	ANSA1	ANSA0	129
ANSELF	ANSELF7	ANSELF6	ANSELF5	ANSELF4	ANSELF3	ANSELF2	ANSELF1	ANSELF0	145
ANSELG	—	—	—	ANSELG4	ANSELG3	ANSELG2	ANSELG1	—	148
CCP1CON	P1M<1:0>		DC1B<1:0>		CCP1M<3:0>				236
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	93
PIE1	TMR1GIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	94
PIR1	TMR1GIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	98
TRISA	TRISA7	TRISA6	TRISA5	TRISA4	TRISA3	TRISA2	TRISA1	TRISA0	128
TRISB	TRISB7	TRISB6	TRISB5	TRISB4	TRISB3	TRISB2	TRISB1	TRISB0	131
TRISE	TRISE7	TRISE6	TRISE5	TRISE4	TRISE3	TRISE2	TRISE1	TRISE0	140
FVRCON	FVREN	FVRRDY	TSEN	TSRNG	CDAFVR<1:0>		ADFVR<1:0>		156
DACCON0	DACEN	DACLPS	DACOE	—	DACPSS<1:0>		—	DACNSS	176
DACCON1	—	—	—	DACR<4:0>					176

Legend: x = unknown, u = unchanged, – = unimplemented read as '0', q = value depends on condition. Shaded cells are not used for ADC module.

17.0 DIGITAL-TO-ANALOG CONVERTER (DAC) MODULE

The Digital-to-Analog Converter supplies a variable voltage reference, ratiometric with the input source, with 32 selectable output levels.

The input of the DAC can be connected to:

- External VREF pins
- VDD supply voltage
- FVR (Fixed Voltage Reference)

The output of the DAC can be configured to supply a reference voltage to the following:

- Comparator positive input
- ADC input channel
- DACOUT pin

The Digital-to-Analog Converter (DAC) can be enabled by setting the DACEN bit of the DACCON0 register.

17.1 Output Voltage Selection

The DAC has 32 voltage level ranges. The 32 levels are set with the DACR<4:0> bits of the DACCON1 register.

The DAC output voltage is determined by the following equations:

EQUATION 17-1: DAC OUTPUT VOLTAGE

IF DACEN = 1

$$V_{OUT} = \left((V_{SOURCE+} - V_{SOURCE-}) \times \frac{DACR[4:0]}{2^5} \right) + V_{SOURCE-}$$

IF DACEN = 0 & DACLPS = 1 & DACR[4:0] = 11111

$$V_{OUT} = V_{SOURCE+}$$

IF DACEN = 0 & DACLPS = 0 & DACR[4:0] = 00000

$$V_{OUT} = V_{SOURCE-}$$

$V_{SOURCE+}$ = VDD, VREF, or FVR BUFFER 2

$V_{SOURCE-}$ = VSS

17.2 Ratiometric Output Level

The DAC output value is derived using a resistor ladder with each end of the ladder tied to a positive and negative voltage reference input source. If the voltage of either input source fluctuates, a similar fluctuation will result in the DAC output value.

The value of the individual resistors within the ladder can be found in **Section 30.0 "Electrical Specifications"**.

17.3 DAC Voltage Reference Output

The DAC can be output to the DACOUT pin by setting the DACOE bit of the DACCON0 register to '1'. Selecting the DAC reference voltage for output on the DACOUT pin automatically overrides the digital output buffer and digital input threshold detector functions of that pin. Reading the DACOUT pin when it has been configured for DAC reference voltage output will always return a '0'.

Due to the limited current drive capability, a buffer must be used on the DAC voltage reference output for external connections to DACOUT. Figure 17-2 shows an example buffering technique.

FIGURE 17-1: DIGITAL-TO-ANALOG CONVERTER BLOCK DIAGRAM

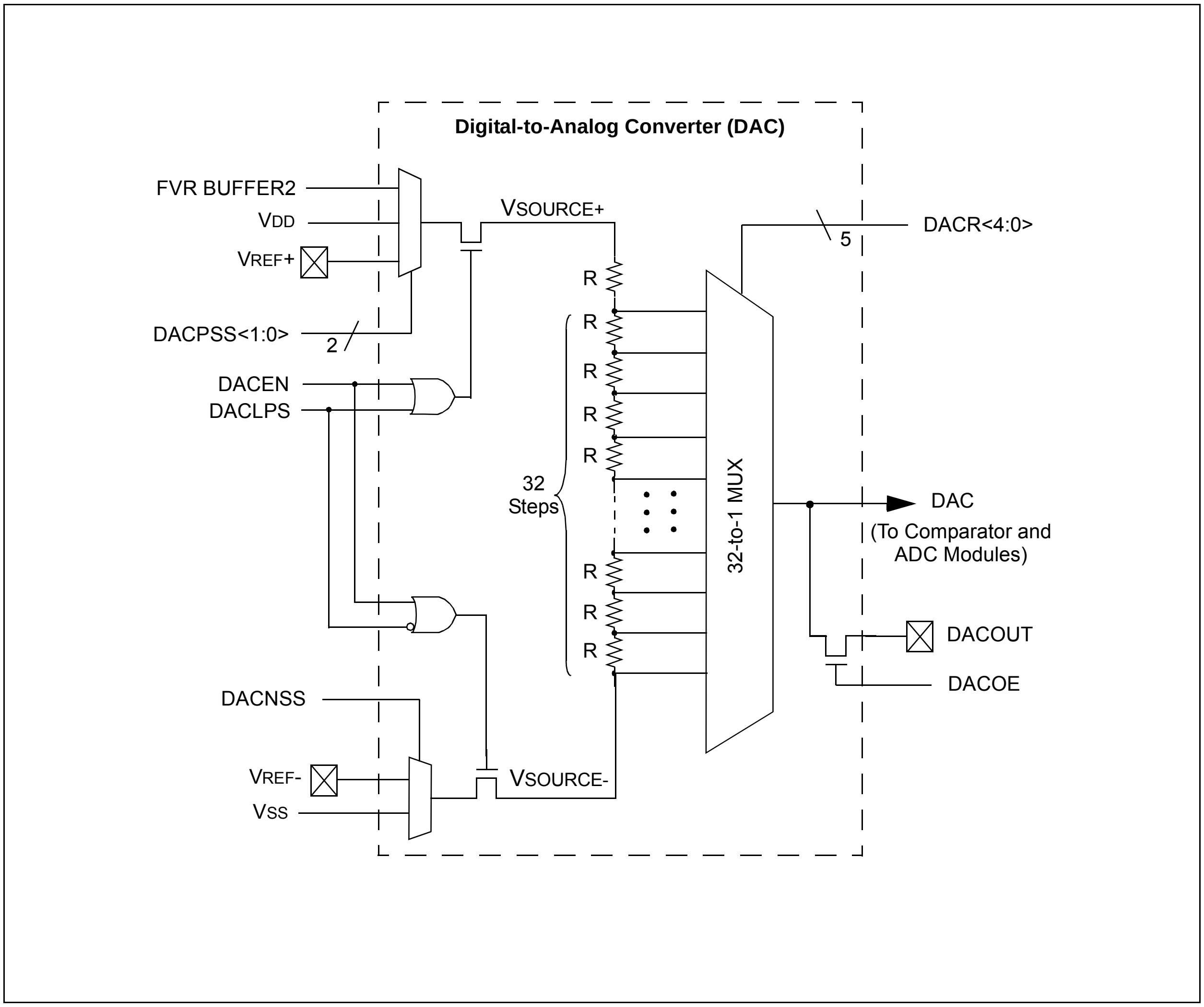
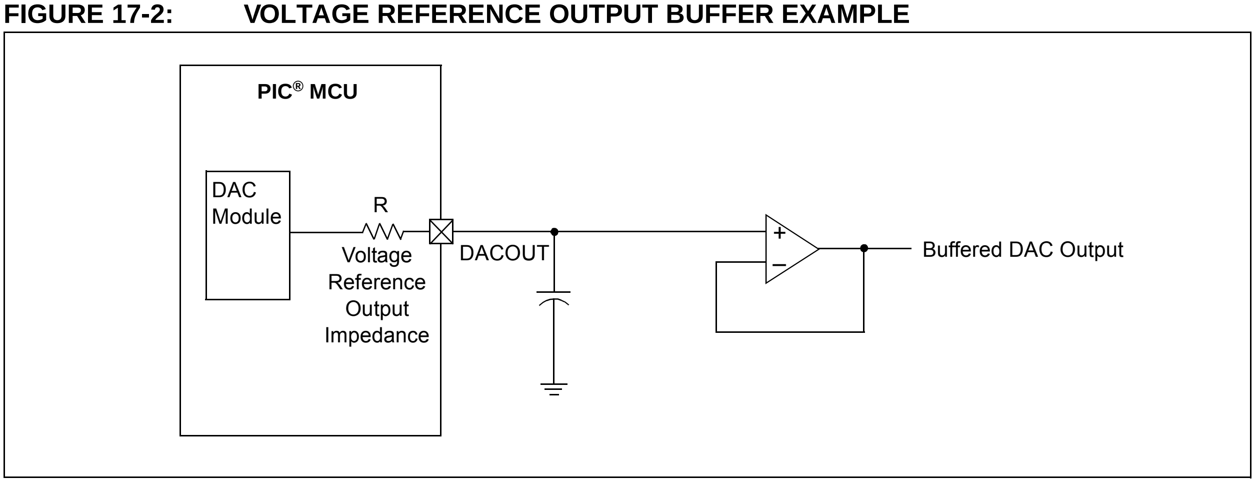


FIGURE 17-2: VOLTAGE REFERENCE OUTPUT BUFFER EXAMPLE



17.4 Low-Power Voltage State

In order for the DAC module to consume the least amount of power, one of the two voltage reference input sources to the resistor ladder must be disconnected. Either the positive voltage source, (VSOURCE+), or the negative voltage source, (VSOURCE-) can be disabled.

The negative voltage source is disabled by setting the DACLPS bit in the DACCON0 register. Clearing the DACLPS bit in the DACCON0 register disables the positive voltage source.

17.4.1 OUTPUT CLAMPED TO POSITIVE VOLTAGE SOURCE

The DAC output voltage can be set to VSOURCE+ with the least amount of power consumption by performing the following:

- Clearing the DACEN bit in the DACCON0 register.
- Setting the DACLPS bit in the DACCON0 register.
- Configuring the DACPSS bits to the proper positive source.
- Configuring the DACR<4:0> bits to ‘11111’ in the DACCON1 register.

This is also the method used to output the voltage level from the FVR to an output pin. See **Section 17.5 “Operation During Sleep”** for more information.

Reference Figure 17-3 for output clamping examples.

17.4.2 OUTPUT CLAMPED TO NEGATIVE VOLTAGE SOURCE

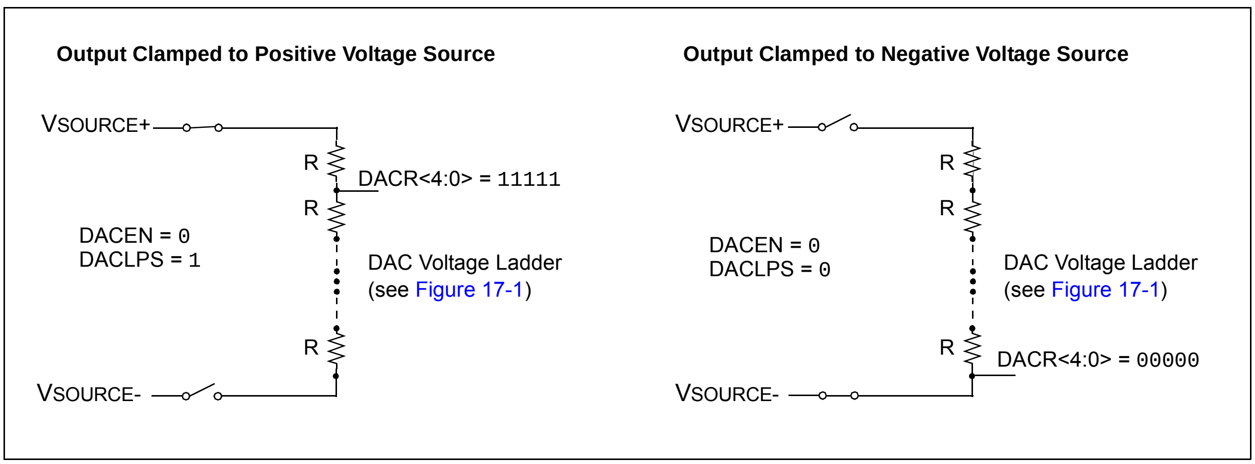
The DAC output voltage can be set to VSOURCE- with the least amount of power consumption by performing the following:

- Clearing the DACEN bit in the DACCON0 register.
- Clearing the DACLPS bit in the DACCON0 register.
- Configuring the DACNSS bits to the proper negative source.
- Configuring the DACR<4:0> bits to ‘00000’ in the DACCON1 register.

This allows the comparator to detect a zero-crossing while not consuming additional current through the DAC module.

Reference Figure 17-3 for output clamping examples.

FIGURE 17-3: OUTPUT VOLTAGE CLAMPING EXAMPLES



17.5 Operation During Sleep

When the device wakes up from Sleep through an interrupt or a Watchdog Timer time-out, the contents of the DACCON0 register are not affected. To minimize current consumption in Sleep mode, the voltage reference should be disabled.

17.6 Effects of a Reset

A device Reset affects the following:

- DAC is disabled.
- DAC output voltage is removed from the DACOUT pin.
- The DACR<4:0> range select bits are cleared.

17.7 Voltage Reference Control Registers

REGISTER 17-1: DACCON0: VOLTAGE REFERENCE CONTROL REGISTER 0

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	U-0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	U-0	R/W-0/0
DACEN	DACLPS	DACOE	—	DACPSS<1:0>		—	DACNSS
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	

bit 7 **DACEN:** DAC Enable bit
1 = DAC is enabled
0 = DAC is disabled

bit 6 **DACLPS:** DAC Low-Power Voltage State Select bit
1 = DAC Positive reference source selected
0 = DAC Negative reference source selected

bit 5 **DACOE:** DAC Voltage Output Enable bit
1 = DAC voltage level is also an output on the DACOUT pin
0 = DAC voltage level is disconnected from the DACOUT pin

bit 4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 3-2 **DACPSS<1:0>:** DAC Positive Source Select bits
00 = VDD
01 = VREF+ pin
10 = FVR Buffer2 output
11 = Reserved, do not use

bit 1 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 0 **DACNSS:** DAC Negative Source Select bits
1 = VREF-
0 = VSS

REGISTER 17-2: DACCON1: VOLTAGE REFERENCE CONTROL REGISTER 1

U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
—	—	—	DACR<4:0>				
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4-0 **DACR<4:0>:** DAC Voltage Output Select bits

TABLE 17-1: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH THE DAC MODULE

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on page
FVRCON	FVREN	FVRRDY	TSEN	TSRNG	CDAFVR<1:0>		ADFVR1	ADFVR0	156
DACCON0	DACEN	DACLPS	DACOE	—	DACPSS<1:0>		—	DACNSS	176
DACCON1	—	—	—	DACR<4:0>					176

Legend: — = Unimplemented location, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used with the DAC module.

18.0 COMPARATOR MODULE

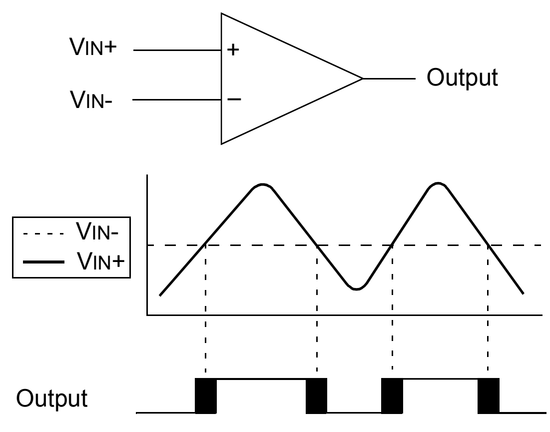
Comparators are used to interface analog circuits to a digital circuit by comparing two analog voltages and providing a digital indication of their relative magnitudes. Comparators are very useful mixed signal building blocks because they provide analog functionality independent of program execution. The analog comparator module includes the following features:

- Independent comparator control
- Programmable input selection
- Comparator output is available internally/externally
- Programmable output polarity
- Interrupt-on-change
- Wake-up from Sleep
- Programmable Speed/Power optimization
- PWM shutdown
- Programmable and fixed voltage reference

18.1 Comparator Overview

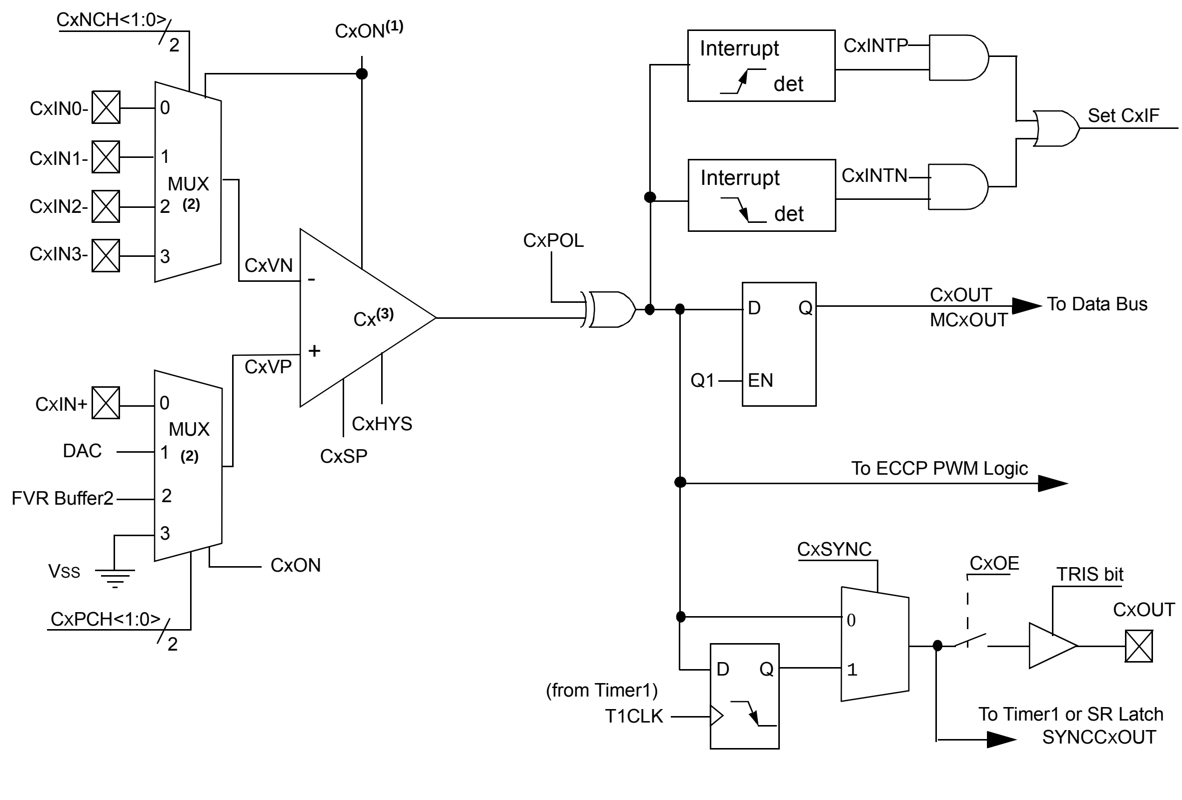
A single comparator is shown in Figure 18-1 along with the relationship between the analog input levels and the digital output. When the analog voltage at VIN+ is less than the analog voltage at VIN-, the output of the comparator is a digital low level. When the analog voltage at VIN+ is greater than the analog voltage at VIN-, the output of the comparator is a digital high level.

FIGURE 18-1: SINGLE COMPARATOR



Note: The black areas of the output of the comparator represents the uncertainty due to input offsets and response time.

FIGURE 18-2: COMPARATOR MODULE SIMPLIFIED BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note	**1:**	When CxON = 0, the Comparator will produce a ‘0’ at the output.
	2:	When CxON = 0, all multiplexer inputs are disconnected.
	3:	Output of comparator can be frozen during debugging.

18.2 Comparator Control

Each comparator has 2 control registers: CMxCON0 and CMxCON1.

The CMxCON0 registers (see Register 18-1) contain Control and Status bits for the following:

- Enable
- Output selection
- Output polarity
- Speed/Power selection
- Hysteresis enable
- Output synchronization

The CMxCON1 registers (see Register 18-2) contain Control bits for the following:

- Interrupt enable
- Interrupt edge polarity
- Positive input channel selection
- Negative input channel selection

18.2.1 COMPARATOR ENABLE

Setting the CxON bit of the CMxCON0 register enables the comparator for operation. Clearing the CxON bit disables the comparator resulting in minimum current consumption.

18.2.2 COMPARATOR OUTPUT SELECTION

The output of the comparator can be monitored by reading either the CxOUT bit of the CMxCON0 register or the MCxOUT bit of the CMOUT register. In order to make the output available for an external connection, the following conditions must be true:

- CxOE bit of the CMxCON0 register must be set
- Corresponding TRIS bit must be cleared
- CxON bit of the CMxCON0 register must be set

> **Note 1:** The CxOE bit of the CMxCON0 register overrides the PORT data latch. Setting the CxON bit of the CMxCON0 register has no impact on the port override.
>
> **2:** The internal output of the comparator is latched with each instruction cycle. Unless otherwise specified, external outputs are not latched.

18.2.3 COMPARATOR OUTPUT POLARITY

Inverting the output of the comparator is functionally equivalent to swapping the comparator inputs. The polarity of the comparator output can be inverted by setting the CxPOL bit of the CMxCON0 register. Clearing the CxPOL bit results in a non-inverted output.

Table 18-1 shows the output state versus input conditions, including polarity control.

TABLE 18-1: COMPARATOR OUTPUT STATE VS. INPUT CONDITIONS

Input Condition	CxPOL	CxOUT
CxVN > CxVP	0	0
CxVN < CxVP	0	1
CxVN > CxVP	1	1
CxVN < CxVP	1	0

18.2.4 COMPARATOR SPEED/POWER SELECTION

The trade-off between speed or power can be optimized during program execution with the CxSP control bit. The default state for this bit is ‘1’ which selects the normal speed mode. Device power consumption can be optimized at the cost of slower comparator propagation delay by clearing the CxSP bit to ‘0’.

18.3 Comparator Hysteresis

A selectable amount of separation voltage can be added to the input pins of each comparator to provide a hysteresis function to the overall operation. Hysteresis is enabled by setting the CxHYS bit of the CM2CON1 register.

See **Section 30.0 "Electrical Specifications"** for more information.

18.4 Timer1 Gate Operation

The output resulting from a comparator operation can be used as a source for gate control of Timer1. See **Section 21.6 "Timer1 Gate"** for more information. This feature is useful for timing the duration or interval of an analog event.

It is recommended that the comparator output be synchronized to Timer1. This ensures that Timer1 does not increment while a change in the comparator is occurring.

18.4.1 COMPARATOR OUTPUT SYNCHRONIZATION

The output from a comparator can be synchronized with Timer1 by setting the CxSYNC bit of the CMxCON0 register.

Once enabled, the comparator output is latched on the falling edge of the Timer1 source clock. If a prescaler is used with Timer1, the comparator output is latched after the prescaling function. To prevent a race condition, the comparator output is latched on the falling edge of the Timer1 clock source and Timer1 increments on the rising edge of its clock source. See the Comparator Block Diagram (Figure 18-2) and the Timer1 Block Diagram (Figure 21-1) for more information.

18.5 Comparator Interrupt

An interrupt can be generated upon a change in the output value of the comparator for each comparator, a rising edge detector and a Falling edge detector are present.

When either edge detector is triggered and its associated enable bit is set (CxINTP and/or CxINTN bits of the CMxCON1 register), the Corresponding Interrupt Flag bit (CxIF bit of the PIR2 register) will be set.

To enable the interrupt, you must set the following bits:

- CxON, CxPOL and CxSP bits of the CMxCON0 register
- CxIE bit of the PIE2 register
- CxINTP bit of the CMxCON1 register (for a rising edge detection)
- CxINTN bit of the CMxCON1 register (for a falling edge detection)
- PEIE and GIE bits of the INTCON register

The associated interrupt flag bit, CxIF bit of the PIR2 register, must be cleared in software. If another edge is detected while this flag is being cleared, the flag will still be set at the end of the sequence.

Note:	Although a comparator is disabled, an interrupt can be generated by changing the output polarity with the CxPOL bit of the CMxCON0 register, or by switching the comparator on or off with the CxON bit of the CMxCON0 register.

18.6 Comparator Positive Input Selection

Configuring the CxPCH<1:0> bits of the CMxCON1 register directs an internal voltage reference or an analog pin to the non-inverting input of the comparator:

- CxIN+ analog pin
- DAC
- FVR (Fixed Voltage Reference)
- VSS (Ground)

See **Section 14.0 "Fixed Voltage Reference (FVR)"** for more information on the Fixed Voltage Reference module.

See **Section 17.0 "Digital-to-Analog Converter (DAC) Module"** for more information on the DAC input signal.

Any time the comparator is disabled (CxON = `0`), all comparator inputs are disabled.

18.7 Comparator Negative Input Selection

The CxNCH<1:0> bits of the CMxCON0 register direct one of four analog pins to the comparator inverting input.

Note:	To use CxIN+ and CxINx- pins as analog input, the appropriate bits must be set in the ANSEL register and the corresponding TRIS bits must also be set to disable the output drivers.

18.8 Comparator Response Time

The comparator output is indeterminate for a period of time after the change of an input source or the selection of a new reference voltage. This period is referred to as the response time. The response time of the comparator differs from the settling time of the voltage reference. Therefore, both of these times must be considered when determining the total response time to a comparator input change. See the Comparator and Voltage Reference Specifications in **Section 30.0 "Electrical Specifications"** for more details.

18.9 Interaction with ECCP Logic

The comparators can be used as general purpose comparators. Their outputs can be brought out to the CxOUT pins. When the ECCP Auto-Shutdown is active it can use one or both comparator signals. If auto-restart is also enabled, the comparators can be configured as a closed loop analog feedback to the ECCP, thereby, creating an analog controlled PWM.

Note:	When the Comparator module is first initialized the output state is unknown. Upon initialization, the user should verify the output state of the comparator prior to relying on the result, primarily when using the result in connection with other peripheral features, such as the ECCP Auto-Shutdown mode.

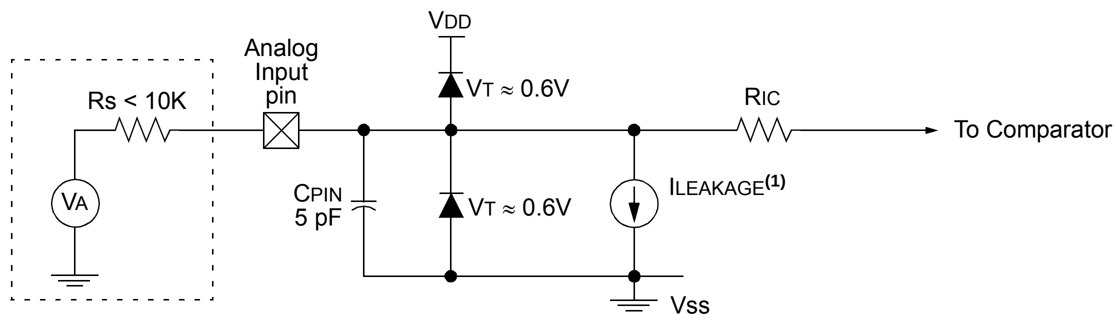
18.10 Analog Input Connection Considerations

A simplified circuit for an analog input is shown in Figure 18-3. Since the analog input pins share their connection with a digital input, they have reverse biased ESD protection diodes to VDD and VSS. The analog input, therefore, must be between VSS and VDD. If the input voltage deviates from this range by more than 0.6V in either direction, one of the diodes is forward biased and a latch-up may occur.

A maximum source impedance of 10 kΩ is recommended for the analog sources. Also, any external component connected to an analog input pin, such as a capacitor or a Zener diode, should have very little leakage current to minimize inaccuracies introduced.

Note 1:	When reading a PORT register, all pins configured as analog inputs will read as a '0'. Pins configured as digital inputs will convert as an analog input, according to the input specification.
2:	Analog levels on any pin defined as a digital input, may cause the input buffer to consume more current than is specified.

FIGURE 18-3: ANALOG INPUT MODEL



Legend: CPIN = Input Capacitance
ILEAKAGE = Leakage Current at the pin due to various junctions
RIC = Interconnect Resistance
RS = Source Impedance
VA = Analog Voltage
VT = Threshold Voltage

Note 1: See **Section 30.0 "Electrical Specifications"**

18.11 Comparator Control Registers

REGISTER 18-1: CMxCON0: COMPARATOR Cx CONTROL REGISTER 0

R/W-0/0	R-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	U-0	R/W-1/1	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
CxON	CxOUT	CxOE	CxPOL	—	CxSP	CxHYS	CxSYNC
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7 **CxON:** Comparator Enable bit
1 = Comparator is enabled and consumes no active power
0 = Comparator is disabled

bit 6 **CxOUT:** Comparator Output bit
If CxPOL = 1 (inverted polarity):
1 = CxVP < CxVN
0 = CxVP > CxVN
If CxPOL = 0 (non-inverted polarity):
1 = CxVP > CxVN
0 = CxVP < CxVN

bit 5 **CxOE:** Comparator Output Enable bit
1 = CxOUT is present on the CxOUT pin. Requires that the associated TRIS bit be cleared to actually drive the pin. Not affected by CxON.
0 = CxOUT is internal only

bit 4 **CxPOL:** Comparator Output Polarity Select bit
1 = Comparator output is inverted
0 = Comparator output is not inverted

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 2 **CxSP:** Comparator Speed/Power Select bit
1 = Comparator operates in normal power, higher speed mode
0 = Comparator operates in low-power, low-speed mode

bit 1 **CxHYS:** Comparator Hysteresis Enable bit
1 = Comparator hysteresis enabled
0 = Comparator hysteresis disabled

bit 0 **CxSYNC:** Comparator Output Synchronous Mode bit
1 = Comparator output to Timer1 and I/O pin is synchronous to changes on Timer1 clock source. Output updated on the falling edge of Timer1 clock source.
0 = Comparator output to Timer1 and I/O pin is asynchronous.

REGISTER 18-2: CMxCON1: COMPARATOR Cx CONTROL REGISTER 1

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
CxINTP	CxINTN	CxPCH<1:0>		—	—	CxNCH<1:0>	
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	

bit 7 **CxINTP:** Comparator Interrupt on Positive Going Edge Enable bits
1 = The CxIF interrupt flag will be set upon a positive going edge of the CxOUT bit
0 = No interrupt flag will be set on a positive going edge of the CxOUT bit

bit 6 **CxINTN:** Comparator Interrupt on Negative Going Edge Enable bits
1 = The CxIF interrupt flag will be set upon a negative going edge of the CxOUT bit
0 = No interrupt flag will be set on a negative going edge of the CxOUT bit

bit 5-4 **CxPCH<1:0>:** Comparator Positive Input Channel Select bits
00 = CxVP connects to CxIN+ pin
01 = CxVP connects to DAC Voltage Reference
10 = CxVP connects to FVR Voltage Reference
11 = CxVP connects to VSS

bit 3-2 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 1-0 **CxNCH<1:0>:** Comparator Negative Input Channel Select bits
00 = CxVN connects to CxIN0- pin
01 = CxVN connects to CxIN1- pin
10 = CxVN connects to CxIN2- pin
11 = CxVN connects to CxIN3- pin

REGISTER 18-3: CMOUT: COMPARATOR OUTPUT REGISTER

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R-0/0	R-0/0	R-0/0
—	—	—	—	—	MC3OUT	MC2OUT	MC1OUT
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 2 **MC3OUT:** Mirror Copy of C3OUT bit

bit 1 **MC2OUT:** Mirror Copy of C2OUT bit

bit 0 **MC1OUT:** Mirror Copy of C1OUT bit

TABLE 18-2: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH COMPARATOR MODULE

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
ANSELF	ANSF7	ANSF6	ANSF5	ANSF4	ANSF3	ANSF2	ANSF1	ANSF0	145
ANSELG	—	—	—	ANSG4	ANSG3	ANSG2	ANSG1	—	148
CM1CON0	C1ON	C1OUT	C1OE	C1POL	—	C1SP	C1HYS	C1SYNC	183
CM2CON0	C2ON	C2OUT	C2OE	C2POL	—	C2SP	C2HYS	C2SYNC	183
CM1CON1	C1NTP	C1INTN	C1PCH<1:0>		—	—	C1NCH<1:0>		184
CM2CON1	C2NTP	C2INTN	C2PCH<1:0>		—	—	C2NCH<1:0>		184
CM3CON0	C3ON	C3OUT	C3OE	C3POL	—	C3SP	C3HYS	C3SYNC	183
CM3CON1	C3INTP	C3INTN	C3PCH1	C3PCH0	—	—	C3NCH<1:0>		184
CMOUT	—	—	—	—	—	MC3OUT	MC2OUT	MC1OUT	184
FVRCON	FVREN	FVRRDY	TSEN	TSRNG	CDAFVR<1:0>		ADFVR<1:0>		156
DACCON0	DACEN	DACLPS	DACOE	—	DACPSS<1:0>		—	DACNSS	176
DACCON1	—	—	—	DACR<4:0>					176
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	93
PIE2	OSFIE	C2IE	C1IE	EEIE	BCLIE	LCDIE	C3IE	CCP2IE	95
PIR2	OSFIF	C2IF	C1IF	EEIF	BCLIF	LCDIF	C3IF	CCP2IF	99
TRISF	TRISF7	TRISF6	TRISF5	TRISF4	TRISF3	TRISF2	TRISF1	TRISF0	144
TRISG	—	—	TRISG5	TRISG4	TRISG3	TRISG2	TRISG1	TRISG0	147

Legend: — = unimplemented location, read as '0'. Shaded cells are unused by the Comparator module.

NOTES:

19.0 SR LATCH

The module consists of a single SR Latch with multiple Set and Reset inputs as well as separate latch outputs. The SR Latch module includes the following features:

- Programmable input selection
- SR Latch output is available externally
- Separate Q and $\overline{Q}$ outputs
- Firmware Set and Reset

The SR Latch can be used in a variety of analog applications, including oscillator circuits, one-shot circuit, hysteretic controllers, and analog timing applications.

19.1 Latch Operation

The latch is a Set-Reset Latch that does not depend on a clock source. Each of the Set and Reset inputs are active-high. The latch can be Set or Reset by:

- Software control (SRPS and SRPR bits)
- Comparator C1 output (SYNCC1OUT)
- Comparator C2 output (SYNCC2OUT)
- SRI pin
- Programmable clock (SRCLK)

The SRPS and the SRPR bits of the SRCON0 register may be used to Set or Reset the SR Latch, respectively. The latch is Reset-dominant. Therefore, if both Set and Reset inputs are high, the latch will go to the Reset state. Both the SRPS and SRPR bits are self resetting which means that a single write to either of the bits is all that is necessary to complete a latch Set or Reset operation.

The output from Comparator C1 or C2 can be used as the Set or Reset inputs of the SR Latch. The output of either Comparator can be synchronized to the Timer1 clock source. See **Section 18.0 "Comparator Module"** and **Section 21.0 "Timer1 Module with Gate Control"** for more information.

An external source on the SRI pin can be used as the Set or Reset inputs of the SR Latch.

An internal clock source is available that can periodically set or reset the SR Latch. The SRCLK<2:0> bits in the SRCON0 register are used to select the clock source period. The SRSCKE and SRRCKE bits of the SRCON1 register enable the clock source to Set or Reset the SR Latch, respectively.

Note:	Enabling both the Set and Reset inputs from any one source at the same time may result in indeterminate operation, as the Reset dominance cannot be assured.

19.2 Latch Output

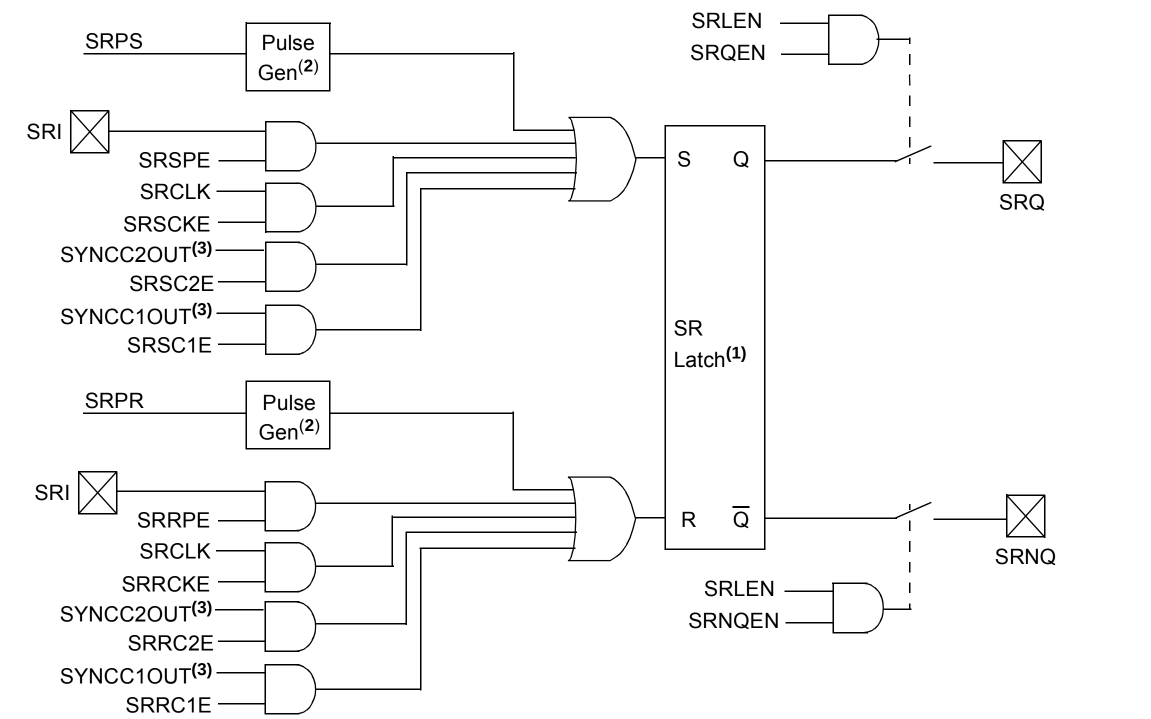
The SRQEN and SRNQEN bits of the SRCON0 register control the Q and $\overline{Q}$ latch outputs. Both of the SR Latch outputs may be directly output to an I/O pin at the same time.

The applicable TRIS bit of the corresponding port must be cleared to enable the port pin output driver.

19.3 Effects of a Reset

Upon any device Reset, the SR Latch output is not initialized to a known state. The user's firmware is responsible for initializing the latch output before enabling the output pins.

FIGURE 19-1: SR LATCH SIMPLIFIED BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: If R = 1 and S = 1 simultaneously, Q = 0, $\overline{Q}$ = 1.
2: Pulse generator causes a 1 Q-state pulse width.
3: Name denotes the connection point at the comparator output.

TABLE 19-1: SRCLK FREQUENCY TABLE

SRCLK	Divider	Fosc = 32 MHz	Fosc = 20 MHz	Fosc = 16 MHz	Fosc = 4 MHz	Fosc = 1 MHz
111	512	62.5 kHz	39.0 kHz	31.3 kHz	7.81 kHz	1.95 kHz
110	256	125 kHz	78.1 kHz	62.5 kHz	15.6 kHz	3.90 kHz
101	128	250 kHz	156 kHz	125 kHz	31.25 kHz	7.81 kHz
100	64	500 kHz	313 kHz	250 kHz	62.5 kHz	15.6 kHz
011	32	1 MHz	625 kHz	500 kHz	125 kHz	31.3 kHz
010	16	2 MHz	1.25 MHz	1 MHz	250 kHz	62.5 kHz
001	8	4 MHz	2.5 MHz	2 MHz	500 kHz	125 kHz
000	4	8 MHz	5 MHz	4 MHz	1 MHz	250 kHz

19.4 SR Latch Control Registers

REGISTER 19-1: SRCON0: SR LATCH CONTROL 0 REGISTER

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/S-0/0	R/S-0/0
SRLEN	SRCLK<2:0>			SRQEN	SRNQEN	SRPS	SRPR
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	S = Bit is set only

bit 7 **SRLEN:** SR Latch Enable bit
1 = SR Latch is enabled
0 = SR Latch is disabled

bit 6-4 **SRCLK<2:0>:** SR Latch Clock Divider bits
000 = Generates a 1 FOSC wide pulse every 4th FOSC cycle clock
001 = Generates a 1 FOSC wide pulse every 8th FOSC cycle clock
010 = Generates a 1 FOSC wide pulse every 16th FOSC cycle clock
011 = Generates a 1 FOSC wide pulse every 32nd FOSC cycle clock
100 = Generates a 1 FOSC wide pulse every 64th FOSC cycle clock
101 = Generates a 1 FOSC wide pulse every 128th FOSC cycle clock
110 = Generates a 1 FOSC wide pulse every 256th FOSC cycle clock
111 = Generates a 1 FOSC wide pulse every 512th FOSC cycle clock

bit 3 **SRQEN:** SR Latch Q Output Enable bit
If SRLEN = 1:
1 = Q is present on the SRQ pin
0 = External Q output is disabled
If SRLEN = 0:
SR Latch is disabled

bit 2 **SRNQEN:** SR Latch $\overline{Q}$ Output Enable bit
If SRLEN = 1:
1 = $\overline{Q}$ is present on the SRnQ pin
0 = External $\overline{Q}$ output is disabled
If SRLEN = 0:
SR Latch is disabled

bit 1 **SRPS:** Pulse Set Input of the SR Latch bit(1)
1 = Pulse set input for 1 Q-clock period
0 = No effect on set input

bit 0 **SRPR:** Pulse Reset Input of the SR Latch bit(1)
1 = Pulse reset input for 1 Q-clock period
0 = No effect on reset input

Note 1: Set only, always reads back ‘0’.

REGISTER 19-2: SRCON1: SR LATCH CONTROL 1 REGISTER

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
SRSPE	SRSCKE	SRSC2E	SRSC1E	SRRPE	SRRCKE	SRRC2E	SRRC1E
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7 **SRSPE:** SR Latch Peripheral Set Enable bit
1 = SR Latch is set when the SRI pin is high
0 = SRI pin has no effect on the set input of the SR Latch

bit 6 **SRSCKE:** SR Latch Set Clock Enable bit
1 = Set input of SR Latch is pulsed with SRCLK
0 = SRCLK has no effect on the set input of the SR Latch

bit 5 **SRSC2E:** SR Latch C2 Set Enable bit
1 = SR Latch is set when the C2 Comparator output is high
0 = C2 Comparator output has no effect on the set input of the SR Latch

bit 4 **SRSC1E:** SR Latch C1 Set Enable bit
1 = SR Latch is set when the C1 Comparator output is high
0 = C1 Comparator output has no effect on the set input of the SR Latch

bit 3 **SRRPE:** SR Latch Peripheral Reset Enable bit
1 = SR Latch is reset when the SRI pin is high
0 = SRI pin has no effect on the reset input of the SR Latch

bit 2 **SRRCKE:** SR Latch Reset Clock Enable bit
1 = Reset input of SR Latch is pulsed with SRCLK
0 = SRCLK has no effect on the reset input of the SR Latch

bit 1 **SRRC2E:** SR Latch C2 Reset Enable bit
1 = SR Latch is reset when the C2 Comparator output is high
0 = C2 Comparator output has no effect on the reset input of the SR Latch

bit 0 **SRRC1E:** SR Latch C1 Reset Enable bit
1 = SR Latch is reset when the C1 Comparator output is high
0 = C1 Comparator output has no effect on the reset input of the SR Latch

TABLE 19-2: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SR LATCH MODULE

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
ANSELA	—	—	ANSA5	—	ANSA3	ANSA2	ANSA1	ANSA0	129
SRCON0	SRLEN	SRCLK<2:0>			SRQEN	SRNQEN	SRPS	SRPR	190
SRCON1	SRSPE	SRSCKE	SRSC2E	SRSC1E	SRRPE	SRRCKE	SRRC2E	SRRC1E	191
TRISA	TRISA7	TRISA6	TRISA5	TRISA4	TRISA3	TRISA2	TRISA1	TRISA0	128

Legend: — = unimplemented location, read as ‘0’. Shaded cells are unused by the SR Latch module.

NOTES:

 Preliminary

20.0 TIMER0 MODULE

The Timer0 module is an 8-bit timer/counter with the following features:

- 8-bit timer/counter register (TMR0)
- 8-bit prescaler (independent of Watchdog Timer)
- Programmable internal or external clock source
- Programmable external clock edge selection
- Interrupt on overflow
- TMR0 can be used to gate Timer1

Figure 20-1 is a block diagram of the Timer0 module.

20.1 Timer0 Operation

The Timer0 module can be used as either an 8-bit timer or an 8-bit counter.

20.1.1 8-BIT TIMER MODE

The Timer0 module will increment every instruction cycle, if used without a prescaler. 8-Bit Timer mode is selected by clearing the TMR0CS bit of the OPTION register.

When TMR0 is written, the increment is inhibited for two instruction cycles immediately following the write.

Note:	The value written to the TMR0 register can be adjusted, in order to account for the two instruction cycle delay when TMR0 is written.

20.1.2 8-BIT COUNTER MODE

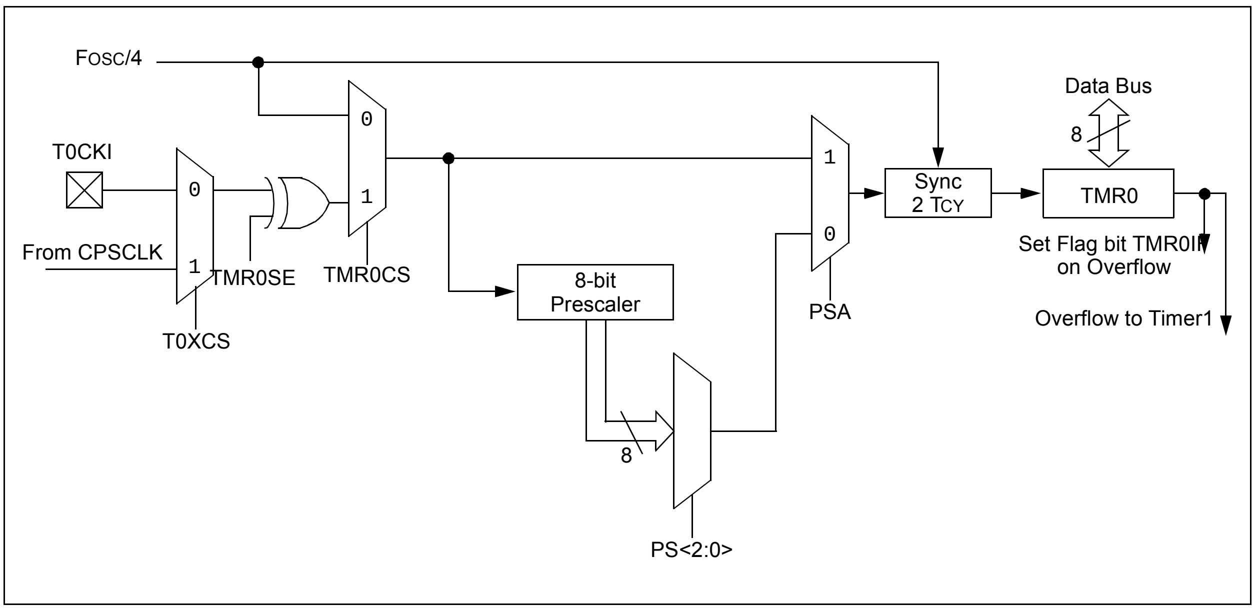
In 8-Bit Counter mode, the Timer0 module will increment on every rising or falling edge of the T0CKI pin or the Capacitive Sensing Oscillator (CPSCLK) signal.

8-Bit Counter mode using the T0CKI pin is selected by setting the TMR0CS bit in the OPTION register to '1' and resetting the T0XCS bit in the CPSCON0 register to '0'.

8-Bit Counter mode using the Capacitive Sensing Oscillator (CPSCLK) signal is selected by setting the TMR0CS bit in the OPTION register to '1' and setting the T0XCS bit in the CPSCON0 register to '1'.

The rising or falling transition of the incrementing edge for either input source is determined by the TMR0SE bit in the OPTION register.

FIGURE 20-1: BLOCK DIAGRAM OF THE TIMER0



20.1.3 SOFTWARE PROGRAMMABLE PRESCALER

A software programmable prescaler is available for exclusive use with Timer0. The prescaler is enabled by clearing the PSA bit of the OPTION register.

Note:	The Watchdog Timer (WDT) uses its own independent prescaler.

There are 8 prescaler options for the Timer0 module ranging from 1:2 to 1:256. The prescale values are selectable via the PS<2:0> bits of the OPTION register. In order to have a 1:1 prescaler value for the Timer0 module, the prescaler must be disabled by setting the PSA bit of the OPTION register.

The prescaler is not readable or writable. All instructions writing to the TMR0 register will clear the prescaler.

20.1.4 TIMER0 INTERRUPT

Timer0 will generate an interrupt when the TMR0 register overflows from FFh to 00h. The TMR0IF interrupt flag bit of the INTCON register is set every time the TMR0 register overflows, regardless of whether or not the Timer0 interrupt is enabled. The TMR0IF bit can only be cleared in software. The Timer0 interrupt enable is the TMR0IE bit of the INTCON register.

Note:	The Timer0 interrupt cannot wake the processor from Sleep since the timer is frozen during Sleep.

20.1.5 8-BIT COUNTER MODE SYNCHRONIZATION

When in 8-Bit Counter mode, the incrementing edge on the T0CKI pin must be synchronized to the instruction clock. Synchronization can be accomplished by sampling the prescaler output on the Q2 and Q4 cycles of the instruction clock. The high and low periods of the external clocking source must meet the timing requirements as shown in **Section 30.0 "Electrical Specifications"**.

20.1.6 OPERATION DURING SLEEP

Timer0 cannot operate while the processor is in Sleep mode. The contents of the TMR0 register will remain unchanged while the processor is in Sleep mode.

REGISTER 20-1: OPTION_REG: OPTION REGISTER

R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1
$\overline{\text{WPUEN}}$	INTEDG	TMR0CS	TMR0SE	PSA	PS<2:0>		
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7 **$\overline{\text{WPUEN}}$:** Weak Pull-up Enable bit
1 = All weak pull-ups are disabled (except $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$, if it is enabled)
0 = Weak pull-ups are enabled by individual WPUx latch values

bit 6 **INTEDG:** Interrupt Edge Select bit
1 = Interrupt on rising edge of RB0/INT pin
0 = Interrupt on falling edge of RB0/INT pin

bit 5 **TMR0CS:** Timer0 Clock Source Select bit
1 = Transition on RA4/T0CKI pin
0 = Internal instruction cycle clock (FOSC/4)

bit 4 **TMR0SE:** Timer0 Source Edge Select bit
1 = Increment on high-to-low transition on RA4/T0CKI pin
0 = Increment on low-to-high transition on RA4/T0CKI pin

bit 3 **PSA:** Prescaler Assignment bit
1 = Prescaler is not assigned to the Timer0 module
0 = Prescaler is assigned to the Timer0 module

bit 2-0 **PS<2:0>:** Prescaler Rate Select bits

Bit Value	Timer0 Rate
000	1 : 2
001	1 : 4
010	1 : 8
011	1 : 16
100	1 : 32
101	1 : 64
110	1 : 128
111	1 : 256

TABLE 20-1: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH TIMER0

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
CPSCON0	CPSON	CPSRM	—	—	CPSRNG<1:0>		CPSOUT	T0XCS	332
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	93
OPTION_REG	$\overline{\text{WPUEN}}$	INTEDG	TMR0CS	TMR0SE	PSA	PS<2:0>			195
TMR0	Timer0 Module Register								193*
TRISA	TRISA7	TRISA6	TRISA5	TRISA4	TRISA3	TRISA2	TRISA1	TRISA0	128

Legend: — = Unimplemented location, read as ‘0’. Shaded cells are not used by the Timer0 module.
* Page provides register information.

NOTES:

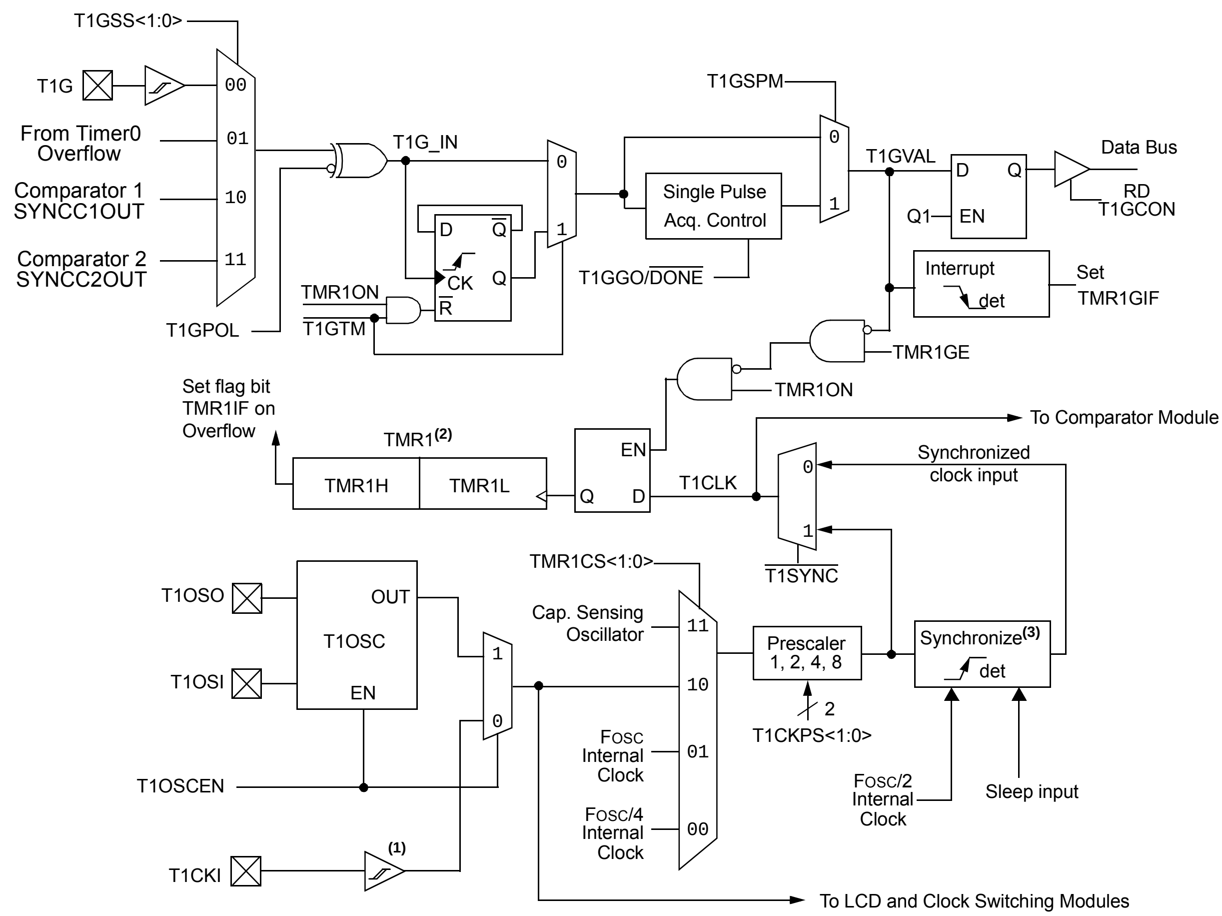
21.0 TIMER1 MODULE WITH GATE CONTROL

The Timer1 module is a 16-bit timer/counter with the following features:

- 16-bit timer/counter register pair (TMR1H:TMR1L)
- Programmable internal or external clock source
- 2-bit prescaler
- Dedicated 32 kHz oscillator circuit
- Optionally synchronized comparator out
- Multiple Timer1 gate (count enable) sources
- Interrupt on overflow
- Wake-up on overflow (external clock, Asynchronous mode only)
- Time base for the Capture/Compare function
- Special Event Trigger (with CCP/ECCP)
- Selectable Gate Source Polarity
- Gate Toggle Mode
- Gate Single-pulse Mode
- Gate Value Status
- Gate Event Interrupt

Figure 21-1 is a block diagram of the Timer1 module.

FIGURE 21-1: TIMER1 BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: ST Buffer is high speed type when using T1CKI.
2: Timer1 register increments on rising edge.
3: Synchronize does not operate while in Sleep.

21.1 Timer1 Operation

The Timer1 module is a 16-bit incrementing counter which is accessed through the TMR1H:TMR1L register pair. Writes to TMR1H or TMR1L directly update the counter.

When used with an internal clock source, the module is a timer and increments on every instruction cycle. When used with an external clock source, the module can be used as either a timer or counter and increments on every selected edge of the external source.

Timer1 is enabled by configuring the TMR1ON and TMR1GE bits in the T1CON and T1GCON registers, respectively. Table 21-1 displays the Timer1 enable selections.

TABLE 21-1: TIMER1 ENABLE SELECTIONS

TMR1ON	TMR1GE	Timer1 Operation
0	0	Off
0	1	Off
1	0	Always On
1	1	Count Enabled

21.2 Clock Source Selection

The TMR1CS<1:0> and T1OSCEN bits of the T1CON register are used to select the clock source for Timer1. Table 21-2 displays the clock source selections.

21.2.1 INTERNAL CLOCK SOURCE

When the internal clock source is selected, the TMR1H:TMR1L register pair will increment on multiples of FOSC as determined by the Timer1 prescaler.

When the FOSC internal clock source is selected, the Timer1 register value will increment by four counts every instruction clock cycle. Due to this condition, a 2 LSB error in resolution will occur when reading the Timer1 value. To utilize the full resolution of Timer1, an asynchronous input signal must be used to gate the Timer1 clock input.

The following asynchronous sources may be used:

- Asynchronous event on the T1G pin to Timer1 Gate
- C1 or C2 comparator input to Timer1 Gate

21.2.2 EXTERNAL CLOCK SOURCE

When the external clock source is selected, the Timer1 module may work as a timer or a counter.

When enabled to count, Timer1 is incremented on the rising edge of the external clock input T1CKI or the capacitive sensing oscillator signal. Either of these external clock sources can be synchronized to the microcontroller system clock or they can run asynchronously.

When used as a timer with a clock oscillator, an external 32.768 kHz crystal can be used in conjunction with the dedicated internal oscillator circuit.

> **Note:** In Counter mode, a falling edge must be registered by the counter prior to the first incrementing rising edge after any one or more of the following conditions:
> - Timer1 enabled after POR
> - Write to TMR1H or TMR1L
> - Timer1 is disabled
> - Timer1 is disabled (TMR1ON = 0) when T1CKI is high then Timer1 is enabled (TMR1ON=1) when T1CKI is low.

TABLE 21-2: CLOCK SOURCE SELECTIONS

TMR1CS1	TMR1CS0	T1OSCEN	Clock Source
0	1	x	System Clock (FOSC)
0	0	x	Instruction Clock (FOSC/4)
1	1	x	Capacitive Sensing Oscillator
1	0	0	External Clocking on T1CKI Pin
1	0	1	Osc.Circuit On T1OSI/T1OSO Pins

21.3 Timer1 Prescaler

Timer1 has four prescaler options allowing 1, 2, 4 or 8 divisions of the clock input. The T1CKPS bits of the T1CON register control the prescale counter. The prescale counter is not directly readable or writable; however, the prescaler counter is cleared upon a write to TMR1H or TMR1L.

21.4 Timer1 Oscillator

A dedicated low-power 32.768 kHz oscillator circuit is built-in between pins T1OSI (input) and T1OSO (amplifier output). This internal circuit is to be used in conjunction with an external 32.768 kHz crystal.

The oscillator circuit is enabled by setting the T1OSCEN bit of the T1CON register. The oscillator will continue to run during Sleep.

> **Note:** The oscillator requires a start-up and stabilization time before use. Thus, T1OSCEN should be set and a suitable delay observed prior to using Timer1. A suitable delay, similar to the OST delay can be implemented in software by clearing the TMR1IF bit, then presetting the TMR1H:TMR1L register pair to FC00h. The TMR1IF flag will be set when 1024 clock cycles have elapsed, thereby indicating that the oscillator is running and is reasonably stable.

21.5 Timer1 Operation in Asynchronous Counter Mode

If control bit $\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$ of the T1CON register is set, the external clock input is not synchronized. The timer increments asynchronously to the internal phase clocks. If the external clock source is selected then the timer will continue to run during Sleep and can generate an interrupt on overflow, which will wake-up the processor. However, special precautions in software are needed to read/write the timer (see **Section 21.5.1 "Reading and Writing Timer1 in Asynchronous Counter Mode"**).

> **Note:** When switching from synchronous to asynchronous operation, it is possible to skip an increment. When switching from asynchronous to synchronous operation, it is possible to produce an additional increment.

21.5.1 READING AND WRITING TIMER1 IN ASYNCHRONOUS COUNTER MODE

Reading TMR1H or TMR1L while the timer is running from an external asynchronous clock will ensure a valid read (taken care of in hardware). However, the user should keep in mind that reading the 16-bit timer in two 8-bit values itself, poses certain problems, since the timer may overflow between the reads.

For writes, it is recommended that the user simply stop the timer and write the desired values. A write contention may occur by writing to the timer registers, while the register is incrementing. This may produce an unpredictable value in the TMR1H:TMR1L register pair.

21.6 Timer1 Gate

Timer1 can be configured to count freely or the count can be enabled and disabled using Timer1 Gate circuitry. This is also referred to as Timer1 Gate Enable.

Timer1 Gate can also be driven by multiple selectable sources.

21.6.1 TIMER1 GATE ENABLE

The Timer1 Gate Enable mode is enabled by setting the TMR1GE bit of the T1GCON register. The polarity of the Timer1 Gate Enable mode is configured using the T1GPOL bit of the T1GCON register.

When Timer1 Gate Enable mode is enabled, Timer1 will increment on the rising edge of the Timer1 clock source. When Timer1 Gate Enable mode is disabled, no incrementing will occur and Timer1 will hold the current count. See Figure 21-3 for timing details.

TABLE 21-3: TIMER1 GATE ENABLE SELECTIONS

T1CLK	T1GPOL	T1G	Timer1 Operation
↑	0	0	Counts
↑	0	1	Holds Count
↑	1	0	Holds Count
↑	1	1	Counts

21.6.2 TIMER1 GATE SOURCE SELECTION

The Timer1 Gate source can be selected from one of four different sources. Source selection is controlled by the T1GSS bits of the T1GCON register. The polarity for each available source is also selectable. Polarity selection is controlled by the T1GPOL bit of the T1GCON register.

TABLE 21-4: TIMER1 GATE SOURCES

T1GSS	Timer1 Gate Source
`00`	Timer1 Gate Pin
`01`	Overflow of Timer0 (TMR0 increments from FFh to 00h)
`10`	Comparator 1 Output SYNCC1OUT (optionally Timer1 synchronized output)
`11`	Comparator 2 Output SYNCC2OUT (optionally Timer1 synchronized output)

21.6.2.1 T1G Pin Gate Operation

The T1G pin is one source for Timer1 Gate Control. It can be used to supply an external source to the Timer1 Gate circuitry.

21.6.2.2 Timer0 Overflow Gate Operation

When Timer0 increments from FFh to 00h, a low-to-high pulse will automatically be generated and internally supplied to the Timer1 Gate circuitry.

21.6.2.3 Comparator C1 Gate Operation

The output resulting from a Comparator 1 operation can be selected as a source for Timer1 Gate Control. The Comparator 1 output (SYNCC1OUT) can be synchronized to the Timer1 clock or left asynchronous. For more information see **Section 18.4.1 "Comparator Output Synchronization"**.

21.6.2.4 Comparator C2 Gate Operation

The output resulting from a Comparator 2 operation can be selected as a source for Timer1 Gate Control. The Comparator 2 output (SYNCC2OUT) can be synchronized to the Timer1 clock or left asynchronous. For more information see **Section 18.4.1 "Comparator Output Synchronization"**.

21.6.3 TIMER1 GATE TOGGLE MODE

When Timer1 Gate Toggle mode is enabled, it is possible to measure the full-cycle length of a Timer1 gate signal, as opposed to the duration of a single level pulse.

The Timer1 Gate source is routed through a flip-flop that changes state on every incrementing edge of the signal. See Figure 21-4 for timing details.

Timer1 Gate Toggle mode is enabled by setting the T1GTM bit of the T1GCON register. When the T1GTM bit is cleared, the flip-flop is cleared and held clear. This is necessary in order to control which edge is measured.

> **Note:** Enabling Toggle mode at the same time as changing the gate polarity may result in indeterminate operation.

21.6.4 TIMER1 GATE SINGLE-PULSE MODE

When Timer1 Gate Single-Pulse mode is enabled, it is possible to capture a single pulse gate event. Timer1 Gate Single-Pulse mode is first enabled by setting the T1GSPM bit in the T1GCON register. Next, the T1GGO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit in the T1GCON register must be set. The Timer1 will be fully enabled on the next incrementing edge. On the next trailing edge of the pulse, the T1GGO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit will automatically be cleared. No other gate events will be allowed to increment Timer1 until the T1GGO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit is once again set in software. See Figure 21-5 for timing details.

If the Single Pulse Gate mode is disabled by clearing the T1GSPM bit in the T1GCON register, the T1GGO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$ bit should also be cleared.

Enabling the Toggle mode and the Single-Pulse mode simultaneously will permit both sections to work together. This allows the cycle times on the Timer1 Gate source to be measured. See Figure 21-6 for timing details.

21.6.5 TIMER1 GATE VALUE STATUS

When Timer1 Gate Value Status is utilized, it is possible to read the most current level of the gate control value. The value is stored in the T1GVAL bit in the T1GCON register. The T1GVAL bit is valid even when the Timer1 Gate is not enabled (TMR1GE bit is cleared).

21.6.6 TIMER1 GATE EVENT INTERRUPT

When Timer1 Gate Event Interrupt is enabled, it is possible to generate an interrupt upon the completion of a gate event. When the falling edge of T1GVAL occurs, the TMR1GIF flag bit in the PIR1 register will be set. If the TMR1GIE bit in the PIE1 register is set, then an interrupt will be recognized.

The TMR1GIF flag bit operates even when the Timer1 Gate is not enabled (TMR1GE bit is cleared).

21.7 Timer1 Interrupt

The Timer1 register pair (TMR1H:TMR1L) increments to FFFFh and rolls over to 0000h. When Timer1 rolls over, the Timer1 interrupt flag bit of the PIR1 register is set. To enable the interrupt on rollover, you must set these bits:

- TMR1ON bit of the T1CON register
- TMR1IE bit of the PIE1 register
- PEIE bit of the INTCON register
- GIE bit of the INTCON register

The interrupt is cleared by clearing the TMR1IF bit in the Interrupt Service Routine.

> **Note:** The TMR1H:TMR1L register pair and the TMR1IF bit should be cleared before enabling interrupts.

21.8 Timer1 Operation During Sleep

Timer1 can only operate during Sleep when setup in Asynchronous Counter mode. In this mode, an external crystal or clock source can be used to increment the counter. To set up the timer to wake the device:

- TMR1ON bit of the T1CON register must be set
- TMR1IE bit of the PIE1 register must be set
- PEIE bit of the INTCON register must be set
- $\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$ bit of the T1CON register must be set
- TMR1CS bits of the T1CON register must be configured
- T1OSCEN bit of the T1CON register must be configured

The device will wake-up on an overflow and execute the next instructions. If the GIE bit of the INTCON register is set, the device will call the Interrupt Service Routine.

Timer1 oscillator will continue to operate in Sleep regardless of the $\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$ bit setting.

21.9 ECCP/CCP Capture/Compare Time Base

The CCP modules use the TMR1H:TMR1L register pair as the time base when operating in Capture or Compare mode.

In Capture mode, the value in the TMR1H:TMR1L register pair is copied into the CCPR1H:CCPR1L register pair on a configured event.

In Compare mode, an event is triggered when the value CCPR1H:CCPR1L register pair matches the value in the TMR1H:TMR1L register pair. This event can be a Special Event Trigger.

For more information, see **Section 23.0 "Capture/Compare/PWM Modules"**.

21.10 ECCP/CCP Special Event Trigger

When any of the CCP's are configured to trigger a special event, the trigger will clear the TMR1H:TMR1L register pair. This special event does not cause a Timer1 interrupt. The CCP module may still be configured to generate a CCP interrupt.

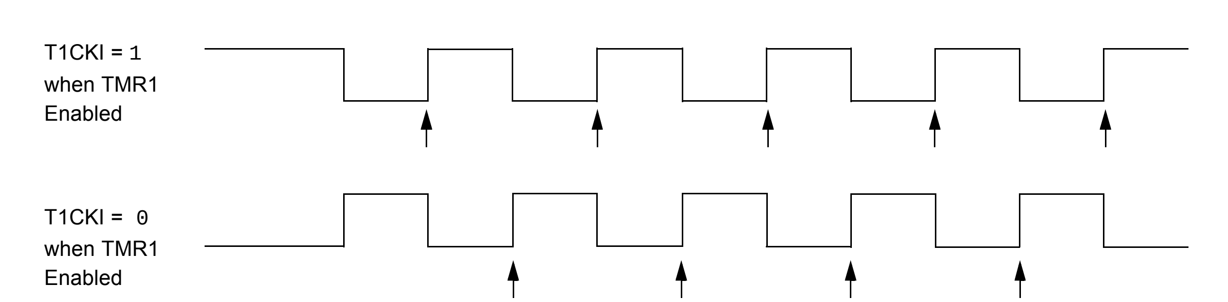
In this mode of operation, the CCPR1H:CCPR1L register pair becomes the period register for Timer1.

Timer1 should be synchronized and FOSC/4 should be selected as the clock source in order to utilize the Special Event Trigger. Asynchronous operation of Timer1 can cause a Special Event Trigger to be missed.

In the event that a write to TMR1H or TMR1L coincides with a Special Event Trigger from the CCP, the write will take precedence.

For more information, see **Section 16.3.1 "Special Event Trigger"**.

FIGURE 21-2: TIMER1 INCREMENTING EDGE



Note 1: Arrows indicate counter increments.

2: In Counter mode, a falling edge must be registered by the counter prior to the first incrementing rising edge of the clock.

FIGURE 21-3: TIMER1 GATE ENABLE MODE

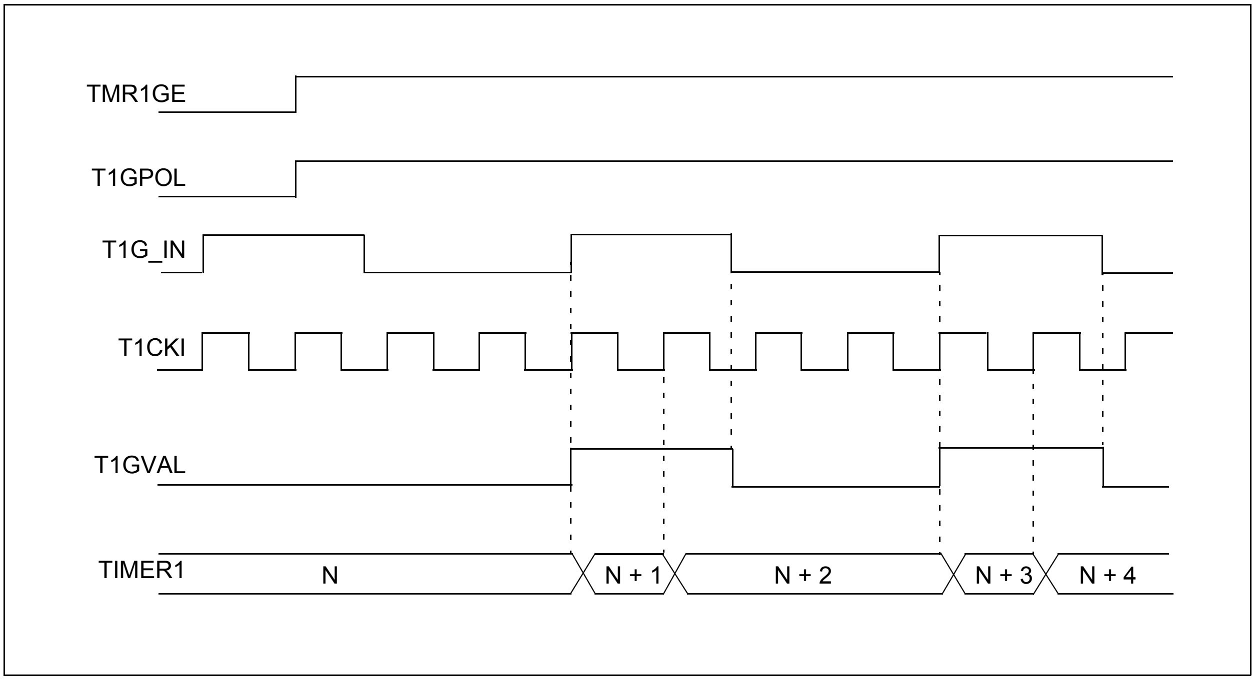


FIGURE 21-4: TIMER1 GATE TOGGLE MODE

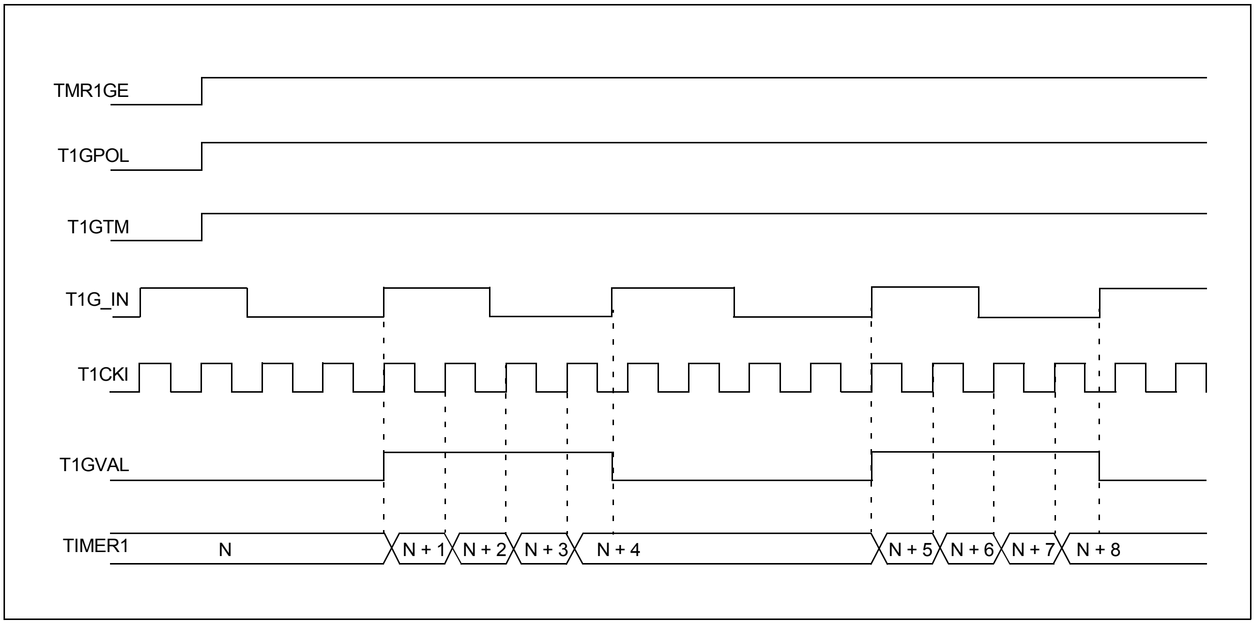


FIGURE 21-5: TIMER1 GATE SINGLE-PULSE MODE

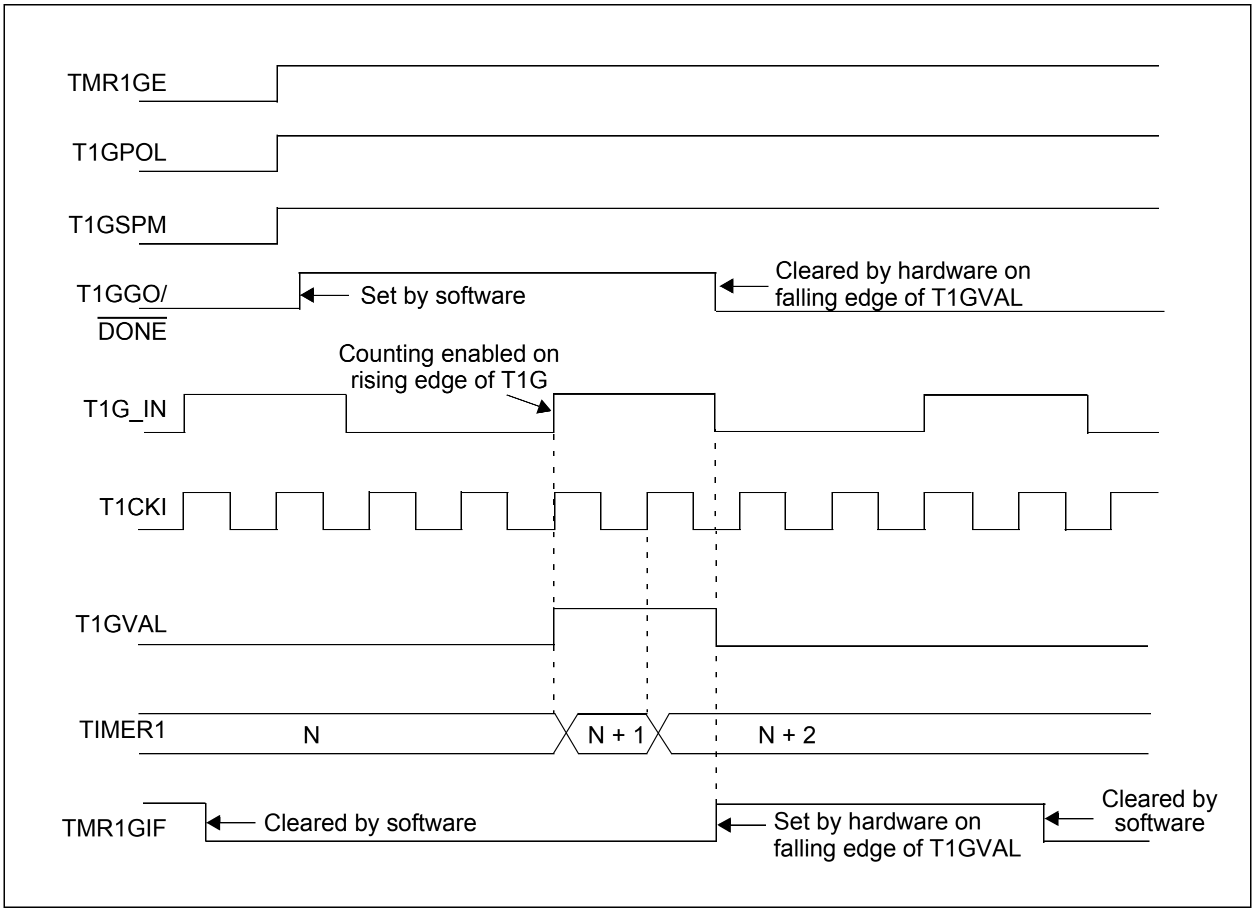
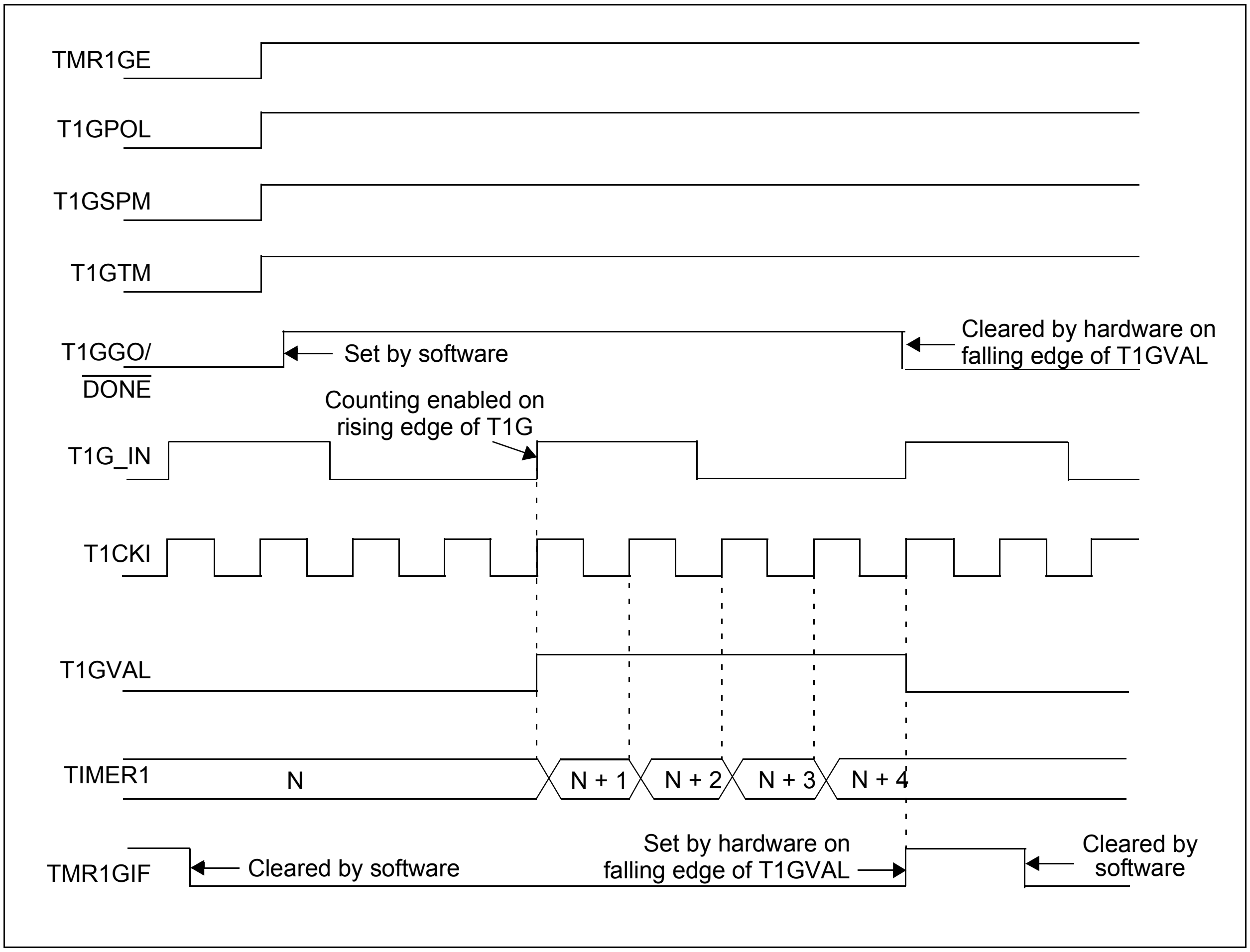


FIGURE 21-6: TIMER1 GATE SINGLE-PULSE AND TOGGLE COMBINED MODE



 Preliminary

21.11 Timer1 Control Register

The Timer1 Control register (T1CON), shown in Register 21-1, is used to control Timer1 and select the various features of the Timer1 module.

REGISTER 21-1: T1CON: TIMER1 CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0/u	R/W-0/u	R/W-0/u	R/W-0/u	R/W-0/u	R/W-0/u	U-0	R/W-0/u
TMR1CS<1:0>		T1CKPS<1:0>		T1OSCEN	$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$	—	TMR1ON
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-6 **TMR1CS<1:0>:** Timer1 Clock Source Select bits
- `11` = Timer1 clock source is Capacitive Sensing Oscillator (CAPOSC)
- `10` = Timer1 clock source is pin or oscillator:
  - If T1OSCEN = `0`:
    External clock from T1CKI pin (on the rising edge)
  - If T1OSCEN = `1`:
    Crystal oscillator on T1OSI/T1OSO pins
- `01` = Timer1 clock source is system clock (FOSC)
- `00` = Timer1 clock source is instruction clock (FOSC/4)

bit 5-4 **T1CKPS<1:0>:** Timer1 Input Clock Prescale Select bits
- `11` = 1:8 Prescale value
- `10` = 1:4 Prescale value
- `01` = 1:2 Prescale value
- `00` = 1:1 Prescale value

bit 3 **T1OSCEN:** LP Oscillator Enable Control bit
- `1` = Dedicated Timer1 oscillator circuit enabled
- `0` = Dedicated Timer1 oscillator circuit disabled

bit 2 **$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$:** Timer1 External Clock Input Synchronization Control bit

TMR1CS<1:0> = `1X`
- `1` = Do not synchronize external clock input
- `0` = Synchronize external clock input with system clock (FOSC)

TMR1CS<1:0> = `0X`
This bit is ignored. Timer1 uses the internal clock when TMR1CS<1:0> = `1X`.

bit 1 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘`0`’

bit 0 **TMR1ON:** Timer1 On bit
- `1` = Enables Timer1
- `0` = Stops Timer1
  Clears Timer1 Gate flip-flop

21.12 Timer1 Gate Control Register

The Timer1 Gate Control register (T1GCON), shown in Register 21-2, is used to control Timer1 Gate.

REGISTER 21-2: T1GCON: TIMER1 GATE CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0/u	R/W-0/u	R/W-0/u	R/W-0/u	R/W/HC-0/u	R-x/x	R/W-0/u	R/W-0/u
TMR1GE	T1GPOL	T1GTM	T1GSPM	T1GGO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$	T1GVAL	T1GSS<1:0>	
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	HC = Bit is cleared by hardware

bit 7 **TMR1GE:** Timer1 Gate Enable bit
If TMR1ON = 0:
This bit is ignored
If TMR1ON = 1:
1 = Timer1 counting is controlled by the Timer1 gate function
0 = Timer1 counts regardless of Timer1 gate function

bit 6 **T1GPOL:** Timer1 Gate Polarity bit
1 = Timer1 gate is active-high (Timer1 counts when gate is high)
0 = Timer1 gate is active-low (Timer1 counts when gate is low)

bit 5 **T1GTM:** Timer1 Gate Toggle Mode bit
1 = Timer1 Gate Toggle mode is enabled
0 = Timer1 Gate Toggle mode is disabled and toggle flip flop is cleared
Timer1 gate flip-flop toggles on every rising edge.

bit 4 **T1GSPM:** Timer1 Gate Single-Pulse Mode bit
1 = Timer1 gate Single-Pulse mode is enabled and is controlling Timer1 gate
0 = Timer1 gate Single-Pulse mode is disabled

bit 3 **T1GGO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$:** Timer1 Gate Single-Pulse Acquisition Status bit
1 = Timer1 gate single-pulse acquisition is ready, waiting for an edge
0 = Timer1 gate single-pulse acquisition has completed or has not been started

bit 2 **T1GVAL:** Timer1 Gate Current State bit
Indicates the current state of the Timer1 gate that could be provided to TMR1H:TMR1L.
Unaffected by Timer1 Gate Enable (TMR1GE).

bit 1-0 **T1GSS<1:0>:** Timer1 Gate Source Select bits
00 = Timer1 Gate pin
01 = Timer0 overflow output
10 = Comparator 1 optionally synchronized output (SYNCC1OUT)
11 = Comparator 2 optionally synchronized output (SYNCC2OUT)

TABLE 21-5: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH TIMER1

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
CCP1CON	P1M<1:0>		DC1B<1:0>		CCP1M<3:0>				236
CCP2CON	P2M<1:0>		DC2B<1:0>		CCP2M<3:0>				236
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	93
PIE1	TMR1GIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	94
PIR1	TMR1GIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	98
TMR1H	Holding Register for the Most Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register								201*
TMR1L	Holding Register for the Least Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register								201*
TRISB	TRISB7	TRISB6	TRISB5	TRISB4	TRISB3	TRISB2	TRISB1	TRISB0	131
TRISC	TRISC7	TRISC6	TRISC5	TRISC4	TRISC3	TRISC2	TRISC1	TRISC0	134
T1CON	TMR1CS<1:0>		T1CKPS<1:0>		T1OSCEN	$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$	—	TMR1ON	205
T1GCON	TMR1GE	T1GPOL	T1GTM	T1GSPM	T1GGO/$\overline{\text{DONE}}$	T1GVAL	T1GSS<1:0>		206

Legend: — = unimplemented location, read as ‘0’. Shaded cells are not used by the Timer1 module.
* Page provides register information.

NOTES:

22.0 TIMER2/4/6 MODULES

There are up to three identical Timer2-type modules available. To maintain pre-existing naming conventions, the Timers are called Timer2, Timer4 and Timer6 (also Timer2/4/6).

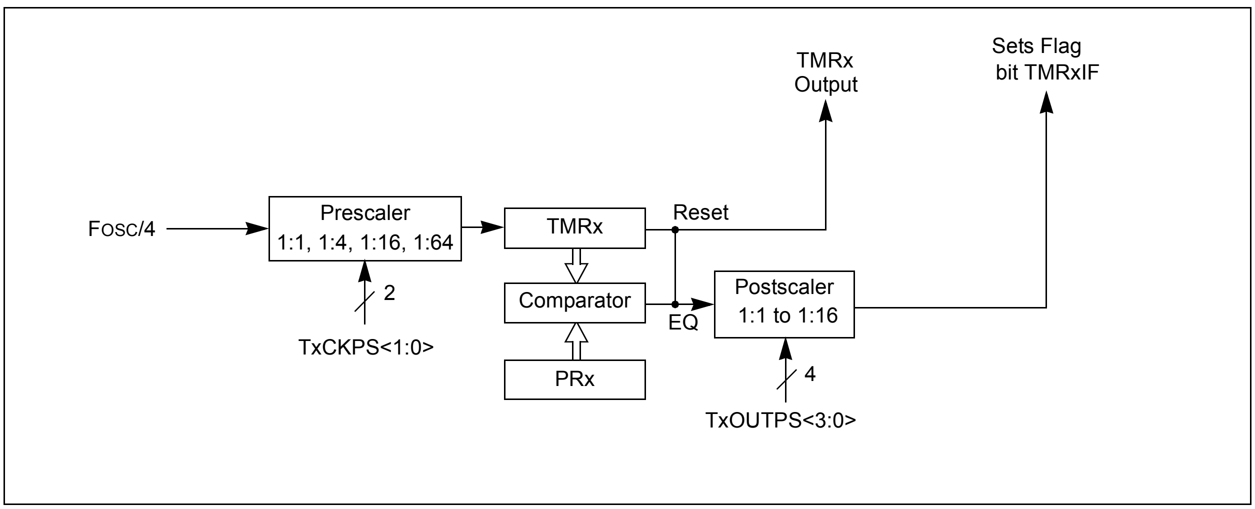
Note:	The 'x' variable used in this section is used to designate Timer2, Timer4, or Timer6. For example, TxCON references T2CON, T4CON or T6CON. PRx references PR2, PR4 or PR6.

The Timer2/4/6 modules incorporate the following features:

- 8-bit Timer and Period registers (TMRx and PRx, respectively)
- Readable and writable (both registers)
- Software programmable prescaler (1:1, 1:4, 1:16 and 1:64)
- Software programmable postscaler (1:1 to 1:16)
- Interrupt on TMRx match with PRx, respectively
- Optional use as the shift clock for the MSSPx modules (Timer2 only)

See Figure 22-1 for a block diagram of Timer2/4/6.

FIGURE 22-1: TIMER2/4/6 BLOCK DIAGRAM



22.1 Timer2/4/6 Operation

The clock input to the Timer2/4/6 modules is the system instruction clock (FOSC/4).

TMRx increments from 00h on each clock edge.

A 4-bit counter/prescaler on the clock input allows direct input, divide-by-4 and divide-by-16 prescale options. These options are selected by the prescaler control bits, TxCKPS<1:0> of the TxCON register. The value of TMRx is compared to that of the Period register, PRx, on each clock cycle. When the two values match, the comparator generates a match signal as the timer output. This signal also resets the value of TMRx to 00h on the next cycle and drives the output counter/postscaler (see **Section 22.2 "Timer2/4/6 Interrupt"**).

The TMRx and PRx registers are both directly readable and writable. The TMRx register is cleared on any device Reset, whereas the PRx register initializes to FFh. Both the prescaler and postscaler counters are cleared on the following events:

- a write to the TMRx register
- a write to the TxCON register
- Power-on Reset (POR)
- Brown-out Reset (BOR)
- $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset
- Watchdog Timer (WDT) Reset
- Stack Overflow Reset
- Stack Underflow Reset
- RESET Instruction

Note:	TMRx is not cleared when TxCON is written.

22.2 Timer2/4/6 Interrupt

Timer2/4/6 can also generate an optional device interrupt. The Timer2/4/6 output signal (TMRx-to-PRx match) provides the input for the 4-bit counter/postscaler. This counter generates the TMRx match interrupt flag which is latched in TMRxIF of the PIRx register. The interrupt is enabled by setting the TMRx Match Interrupt Enable bit, TMRxIE of the PIEx register.

A range of 16 postscale options (from 1:1 through 1:16 inclusive) can be selected with the postscaler control bits, TxOUTPS<3:0>, of the TxCON register.

22.3 Timer2/4/6 Output

The unscaled output of TMRx is available primarily to the CCP modules, where it is used as a time base for operations in PWM mode.

Timer2 can be optionally used as the shift clock source for the MSSPx modules operating in SPI mode. Additional information is provided in **Section 24.0 "Master Synchronous Serial Port (MSSP1 and MSSP2) Module"**.

22.4 Timer2/4/6 Operation During Sleep

The Timer2/4/6 timers cannot be operated while the processor is in Sleep mode. The contents of the TMRx and PRx registers will remain unchanged while the processor is in Sleep mode.

 Preliminary

REGISTER 22-1: TXCON: TIMER2/TIMER4/TIMER6 CONTROL REGISTER

U-0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
—	TxOUTPS<3:0>				TMRxON	TxCKPS<1:0>	
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 6-3 **TxOUTPS<3:0>:** Timerx Output Postscaler Select bits

0000 = 1:1 Postscaler
0001 = 1:2 Postscaler
0010 = 1:3 Postscaler
0011 = 1:4 Postscaler
0100 = 1:5 Postscaler
0101 = 1:6 Postscaler
0110 = 1:7 Postscaler
0111 = 1:8 Postscaler
1000 = 1:9 Postscaler
1001 = 1:10 Postscaler
1010 = 1:11 Postscaler
1011 = 1:12 Postscaler
1100 = 1:13 Postscaler
1101 = 1:14 Postscaler
1110 = 1:15 Postscaler
1111 = 1:16 Postscaler

bit 2 **TMRxON:** Timerx On bit

1 = Timerx is on
0 = Timerx is off

bit 1-0 **TxCKPS<1:0>:** Timer2-type Clock Prescale Select bits

00 = Prescaler is 1
01 = Prescaler is 4
10 = Prescaler is 16
11 = Prescaler is 64

TABLE 22-1: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH TIMER2/4/6

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
CCP2CON	P2M<1:0>		DC2B<1:0>		CCP2M<3:0>				236
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	93
PIE1	TMR1GIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	94
PIE3	—	CCP5IE	CCP4IE	CCP3IE	TMR6IE	—	TMR4IE	—	96
PIR1	TMR1GIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	98
PIR3	—	CCP5IF	CCP4IF	CCP3IF	TMR6IF	—	TMR4IF	—	100
PR2	Timer2 Module Period Register								209*
PR4	Timer4 Module Period Register								209*
PR6	Timer6 Module Period Register								209*
T2CON	—	T2OUTPS<3:0>				TMR2ON	T2CKPS<1:0>		211
T4CON	—	T4OUTPS<3:0>				TMR4ON	T4CKPS<1:0>		211
T6CON	—	T6OUTPS<3:0>				TMR6ON	T6CKPS<1:0>		211
TMR2	Holding Register for the 8-bit TMR2 Register								209*
TMR4	Holding Register for the 8-bit TMR4 Register(1)								209*
TMR6	Holding Register for the 8-bit TMR6 Register(1)								209*

Legend: — = unimplemented location, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used for Timer2 module.
* Page provides register information.

 Preliminary

23.0 CAPTURE/COMPARE/PWM MODULES

The Capture/Compare/PWM module is a peripheral which allows the user to time and control different events, and to generate Pulse-Width Modulation (PWM) signals. In Capture mode, the peripheral allows the timing of the duration of an event. The Compare mode allows the user to trigger an external event when a predetermined amount of time has expired. The PWM mode can generate Pulse-Width Modulated signals of varying frequency and duty cycle.

This family of devices contains three Enhanced Capture/Compare/PWM modules (ECCP1, ECCP2, and ECCP3) and two standard Capture/Compare/PWM modules (CCP4 and CCP5).

The Capture and Compare functions are identical for all five CCP modules (ECCP1, ECCP2, ECCP3, CCP4, and CCP5). The only differences between CCP modules are in the Pulse-Width Modulation (PWM) function. The standard PWM function is identical in modules, CCP4 and CCP5. In CCP modules ECCP1, ECCP2, and ECCP3, the Enhanced PWM function has slight variations from one another. Full-Bridge ECCP modules have four available I/O pins while Half-Bridge ECCP modules only have two available I/O pins. See Table 23-1 for more information.

Note 1: In devices with more than one CCP module, it is very important to pay close attention to the register names used. A number placed after the module acronym is used to distinguish between separate modules. For example, the CCP1CON and CCP2CON control the same operational aspects of two completely different CCP modules.

2: Throughout this section, generic references to a CCP module in any of its operating modes may be interpreted as being equally applicable to ECCP1, ECCP2, ECCP3, CCP4 and CCP5. Register names, module signals, I/O pins, and bit names may use the generic designator 'x' to indicate the use of a numeral to distinguish a particular module, when required.

TABLE 23-1: PWM RESOURCES

Device Name	ECCP1	ECCP2	ECCP3	CCP4	CCP5
PIC16(L)F1946/1947	Enhanced PWM Full-Bridge	Enhanced PWM Full-Bridge	Enhanced PWM Full-Bridge	Standard PWM	Standard PWM

23.1 Capture Mode

The Capture mode function described in this section is available and identical for CCP modules ECCP1, ECCP2, ECCP3, CCP4 and CCP5.

Capture mode makes use of the 16-bit Timer1 resource. When an event occurs on the CCPx pin, the 16-bit CCPRxH:CCPRxL register pair captures and stores the 16-bit value of the TMR1H:TMR1L register pair, respectively. An event is defined as one of the following and is configured by the CCPxM<3:0> bits of the CCPxCON register:

- Every falling edge
- Every rising edge
- Every 4th rising edge
- Every 16th rising edge

When a capture is made, the Interrupt Request Flag bit CCPxIF of the PIRx register is set. The interrupt flag must be cleared in software. If another capture occurs before the value in the CCPRxH, CCPRxL register pair is read, the old captured value is overwritten by the new captured value.

Figure 23-1 shows a simplified diagram of the Capture operation.

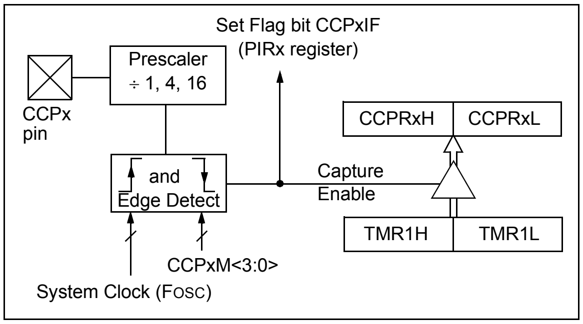
23.1.1 CCP PIN CONFIGURATION

In Capture mode, the CCPx pin should be configured as an input by setting the associated TRIS control bit.

Also, the CCPx pin function can be moved to alternative pins using the APFCON register. Refer to **Section 12.1 "Alternate Pin Function"** for more details.

Note:	If the CCPx pin is configured as an output, a write to the port can cause a capture condition.

FIGURE 23-1: CAPTURE MODE OPERATION BLOCK DIAGRAM



23.1.2 TIMER1 MODE RESOURCE

Timer1 must be running in Timer mode or Synchronized Counter mode for the CCP module to use the capture feature. In Asynchronous Counter mode, the capture operation may not work.

See **Section 21.0 "Timer1 Module with Gate Control"** for more information on configuring Timer1.

23.1.3 SOFTWARE INTERRUPT MODE

When the Capture mode is changed, a false capture interrupt may be generated. The user should keep the CCPxIE interrupt enable bit of the PIEx register clear to avoid false interrupts. Additionally, the user should clear the CCPxIF interrupt flag bit of the PIRx register following any change in Operating mode.

Note:	Clocking Timer1 from the system clock (FOSC) should not be used in Capture mode. In order for Capture mode to recognize the trigger event on the CCPx pin, Timer1 must be clocked from the instruction clock (FOSC/4) or from an external clock source.

23.1.4 CCP PRESCALER

There are four prescaler settings specified by the CCPxM<3:0> bits of the CCPxCON register. Whenever the CCP module is turned off, or the CCP module is not in Capture mode, the prescaler counter is cleared. Any Reset will clear the prescaler counter.

Switching from one capture prescaler to another does not clear the prescaler and may generate a false interrupt. To avoid this unexpected operation, turn the module off by clearing the CCPxCON register before changing the prescaler. Example 23-1 demonstrates the code to perform this function.

EXAMPLE 23-1: CHANGING BETWEEN CAPTURE PRESCALERS

```
BANKSEL CCPxCON    ;Set Bank bits to point
                   ;to CCPxCON
CLRF    CCPxCON    ;Turn CCP module off
MOVLW   NEW_CAPT_PS;Load the W reg with
                   ;the new prescaler
                   ;move value and CCP ON
MOVWF   CCPxCON    ;Load CCPxCON with this
                   ;value
```


23.1.5 CAPTURE DURING SLEEP

Capture mode depends upon the Timer1 module for proper operation. There are two options for driving the Timer1 module in Capture mode. It can be driven by the instruction clock (FOSC/4), or by an external clock source.

When Timer1 is clocked by FOSC/4, Timer1 will not increment during Sleep. When the device wakes from Sleep, Timer1 will continue from its previous state.

Capture mode will operate during Sleep when Timer1 is clocked by an external clock source.

23.1.6 ALTERNATE PIN LOCATIONS

This module incorporates I/O pins that can be moved to other locations with the use of the alternate pin function register, APFCON. To determine which pins can be moved and what their default locations are upon a reset, see **Section 12.1 “Alternate Pin Function”** for more information.

TABLE 23-2: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH CAPTURE

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
CCPxCON	PxM<1:0>[1]		DCxB<1:0>		CCPxM<3:0>				236
CCPRxL	Capture/Compare/PWM Register x Low Byte (LSB)								214*
CCPRxH	Capture/Compare/PWM Register x High Byte (MSB)								214*
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	93
PIE1	TMR1GIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	94
PIE2	OSFIE	C2IE	C1IE	EEIE	BCLIE	LCDIE	C3IE	CCP2IE	95
PIE3	—	CCP5IE	CCP4IE	CCP3IE	TMR6IE	—	TMR4IE	—	96
PIR1	TMR1GIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	98
PIR2	OSFIF	C2IF	C1IF	EEIF	BCLIF	LCDIF	C3IF	CCP2IF	99
PIR3	—	CCP5IF	CCP4IF	CCP3IF	TMR6IF	—	TMR4IF	—	100
T1CON	TMR1CS<1:0>		T1CKPS<1:0>		T1OSCEN	$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$	—	TMR1ON	205
T1GCON	TMR1GE	T1GPOL	T1GTM	T1GSPM	T1GGO/DONE	T1GVAL	T1GSS<1:0>		206
TMR1L	Holding Register for the Least Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register								201*
TMR1H	Holding Register for the Most Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register								201*
TRISA	TRISA7	TRISA6	TRISA5	TRISA4	TRISA3	TRISA2	TRISA1	TRISA0	128
TRISB	TRISB7	TRISB6	TRISB5	TRISB4	TRISB3	TRISB2	TRISB1	TRISB0	131
TRISC	TRISC7	TRISC6	TRISC5	TRISC4	TRISC3	TRISC2	TRISC1	TRISC0	134
TRISD	TRISD7	TRISD6	TRISD5	TRISD4	TRISD3	TRISD2	TRISD1	TRISD0	137
TRISE	—	—	—	—	TRISE3	TRISE2	TRISE1	TRISE0	140

Legend: — = Unimplemented location, read as ‘0’. Shaded cells are not used by Capture mode.

Note 1: Applies to ECCP modules only.

* Page provides register information.

23.2 Compare Mode

The Compare mode function described in this section is available and identical for CCP modules ECCP1, ECCP2, ECCP3, CCP4 and CCP5.

Compare mode makes use of the 16-bit Timer1 resource. The 16-bit value of the CCPRxH:CCPRxL register pair is constantly compared against the 16-bit value of the TMR1H:TMR1L register pair. When a match occurs, one of the following events can occur:

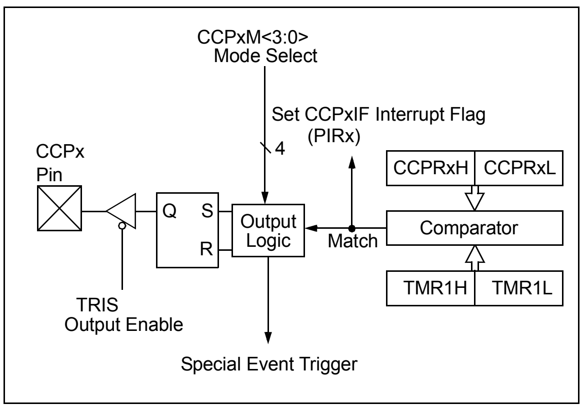
- Toggle the CCPx output
- Set the CCPx output
- Clear the CCPx output
- Generate a Special Event Trigger
- Generate a Software Interrupt

The action on the pin is based on the value of the CCPxM<3:0> control bits of the CCPxCON register. At the same time, the interrupt flag CCPxIF bit is set.

All Compare modes can generate an interrupt.

Figure 23-2 shows a simplified diagram of the Compare operation.

FIGURE 23-2: COMPARE MODE OPERATION BLOCK DIAGRAM



23.2.1 CCP PIN CONFIGURATION

The user must configure the CCPx pin as an output by clearing the associated TRIS bit.

Also, the CCPx pin function can be moved to alternative pins using the APFCON register. Refer to **Section 12.1 "Alternate Pin Function"** for more details.

Note:	Clearing the CCPxCON register will force the CCPx compare output latch to the default low level. This is not the PORT I/O data latch.

23.2.2 TIMER1 MODE RESOURCE

In Compare mode, Timer1 must be running in either Timer mode or Synchronized Counter mode. The compare operation may not work in Asynchronous Counter mode.

See **Section 21.0 "Timer1 Module with Gate Control"** for more information on configuring Timer1.

Note:	Clocking Timer1 from the system clock (FOSC) should not be used in Capture mode. In order for Capture mode to recognize the trigger event on the CCPx pin, TImer1 must be clocked from the instruction clock (FOSC/4) or from an external clock source.

23.2.3 SOFTWARE INTERRUPT MODE

When Generate Software Interrupt mode is chosen (CCPxM<3:0> = `1010`), the CCPx module does not assert control of the CCPx pin (see the CCPxCON register).

23.2.4 SPECIAL EVENT TRIGGER

When Special Event Trigger mode is chosen (CCPxM<3:0> = `1011`), the CCPx module does the following:

- Resets Timer1
- Starts an ADC conversion if ADC is enabled

The CCPx module does not assert control of the CCPx pin in this mode.

The Special Event Trigger output of the CCP occurs immediately upon a match between the TMR1H, TMR1L register pair and the CCPRxH, CCPRxL register pair. The TMR1H, TMR1L register pair is not reset until the next rising edge of the Timer1 clock. The Special Event Trigger output starts an A/D conversion (if the A/D module is enabled). This allows the CCPRxH, CCPRxL register pair to effectively provide a 16-bit programmable period register for Timer1.

TABLE 23-3: SPECIAL EVENT TRIGGER

Device	CCPx/ECCPx
PIC16F/LF1946/47	CCP5

Refer to **Section 16.0 "Analog-to-Digital Converter (ADC) Module"** for more information.

Note 1:	The Special Event Trigger from the CCP module does not set interrupt flag bit TMR1IF of the PIR1 register.
2:	Removing the match condition by changing the contents of the CCPRxH and CCPRxL register pair, between the clock edge that generates the Special Event Trigger and the clock edge that generates the Timer1 Reset, will preclude the Reset from occurring.

23.2.5 COMPARE DURING SLEEP

The Compare mode is dependent upon the system clock (FOSC) for proper operation. Since FOSC is shut down during Sleep mode, the Compare mode will not function properly during Sleep.

23.2.6 ALTERNATE PIN LOCATIONS

This module incorporates I/O pins that can be moved to other locations with the use of the alternate pin function register, APFCON. To determine which pins can be moved and what their default locations are upon a reset, see **Section 12.1 "Alternate Pin Function"** for more information.

TABLE 23-4: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH COMPARE

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
CCPxCON	PxM<1:0>[(1)]		DCxB<1:0>		CCPxM<3:0>				236
CCPRxL	Capture/Compare/PWM Register x Low Byte (LSB)								214*
CCPRxH	Capture/Compare/PWM Register x High Byte (MSB)								214*
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	93
PIE1	TMR1GIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	94
PIE2	OSFIE	C2IE	C1IE	EEIE	BCLIE	LCDIE	C3IE	CCP2IE	95
PIE3	—	CCP5IE	CCP4IE	CCP3IE	TMR6IE	—	TMR4IE	—	96
PIR1	TMR1GIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	98
PIR2	OSFIF	C2IF	C1IF	EEIF	BCLIF	LCDIF	C31F	CCP2IF	99
PIR3	—	CCP5IF	CCP4IF	CCP3IF	TMR6IF	—	TMR4IF	—	100
T1CON	TMR1CS<1:0>		T1CKPS<1:0>		T1OSCEN	$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$	—	TMR1ON	205
T1GCON	TMR1GE	T1GPOL	T1GTM	T1GSPM	T1GGO/DONE	T1GVAL	T1GSS<1:0>		206
TMR1L	Holding Register for the Least Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register								201*
TMR1H	Holding Register for the Most Significant Byte of the 16-bit TMR1 Register								201*
TRISA	TRISA7	TRISA6	TRISA5	TRISA4	TRISA3	TRISA2	TRISA1	TRISA0	128
TRISB	TRISB7	TRISB6	TRISB5	TRISB4	TRISB3	TRISB2	TRISB1	TRISB0	131
TRISC	TRISC7	TRISC6	TRISC5	TRISC4	TRISC3	TRISC2	TRISC1	TRISC0	134
TRISD	TRISD7	TRISD6	TRISD5	TRISD4	TRISD3	TRISD2	TRISD1	TRISD0	137
TRISE	TRISE7	TRISE6	TRISE5	TRISE4	TRISE3	TRISE2	TRISE1	TRISE0	140

Legend: — = Unimplemented location, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by Compare mode.
Note 1: Applies to ECCP modules only.
* Page provides register information.

23.3 PWM Overview

Pulse-Width Modulation (PWM) is a scheme that provides power to a load by switching quickly between fully on and fully off states. The PWM signal resembles a square wave where the high portion of the signal is considered the on state and the low portion of the signal is considered the off state. The high portion, also known as the pulse width, can vary in time and is defined in steps. A larger number of steps applied, which lengthens the pulse width, also supplies more power to the load. Lowering the number of steps applied, which shortens the pulse width, supplies less power. The PWM period is defined as the duration of one complete cycle or the total amount of on and off time combined.

PWM resolution defines the maximum number of steps that can be present in a single PWM period. A higher resolution allows for more precise control of the pulse width time and in turn the power that is applied to the load.

The term duty cycle describes the proportion of the on time to the off time and is expressed in percentages, where 0% is fully off and 100% is fully on. A lower duty cycle corresponds to less power applied and a higher duty cycle corresponds to more power applied.

Figure 23-3 shows a typical waveform of the PWM signal.

23.3.1 STANDARD PWM OPERATION

The standard PWM function described in this section is available and identical for CCP modules ECCP1, ECCP2, ECCP3, CCP4 and CCP5.

The standard PWM mode generates a Pulse-Width modulation (PWM) signal on the CCPx pin with up to 10 bits of resolution. The period, duty cycle, and resolution are controlled by the following registers:

- PRx registers
- TxCON registers
- CCPRxL registers
- CCPxCON registers

Figure 23-4 shows a simplified block diagram of PWM operation.

Note 1: The corresponding TRIS bit must be cleared to enable the PWM output on the CCPx pin.

2: Clearing the CCPxCON register will relinquish control of the CCPx pin.

FIGURE 23-3: CCP PWM OUTPUT SIGNAL

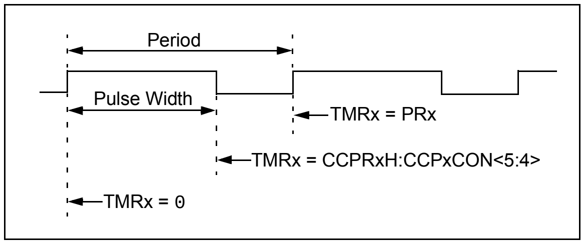
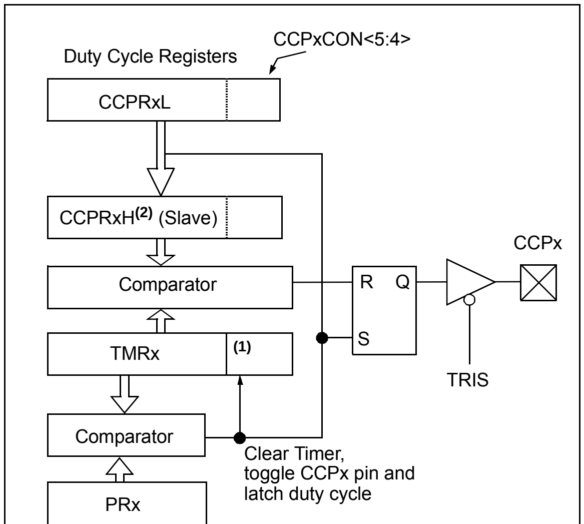


FIGURE 23-4: SIMPLIFIED PWM BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: The 8-bit timer TMRx register is concatenated with the 2-bit internal system clock (FOSC), or 2 bits of the prescaler, to create the 10-bit time base.

2: In PWM mode, CCPRxH is a read-only register.

23.3.2 SETUP FOR PWM OPERATION

The following steps should be taken when configuring the CCP module for standard PWM operation:

1. Disable the CCPx pin output driver by setting the associated TRIS bit.
2. Load the PRx register with the PWM period value.
3. Configure the CCP module for the PWM mode by loading the CCPxCON register with the appropriate values.
4. Load the CCPRxL register and the DCxBx bits of the CCPxCON register, with the PWM duty cycle value.
5. Configure and start Timer2/4/6:
   - Select the Timer2/4/6 resource to be used for PWM generation by setting the CxTSEL<1:0> bits in the CCPTMRSx register.
   - Clear the TMRxIF interrupt flag bit of the PIRx register. See Note below.
   - Configure the TxCKPS bits of the TxCON register with the Timer prescale value.
   - Enable the Timer by setting the TMRxON bit of the TxCON register.
6. Enable PWM output pin:
   - Wait until the Timer overflows and the TMRxIF bit of the PIRx register is set. See Note below.
   - Enable the CCPx pin output driver by clearing the associated TRIS bit.

Note:	In order to send a complete duty cycle and period on the first PWM output, the above steps must be included in the setup sequence. If it is not critical to start with a complete PWM signal on the first output, then step 6 may be ignored.

23.3.3 TIMER2/4/6 TIMER RESOURCE

The PWM standard mode makes use of one of the 8-bit Timer2/4/6 timer resources to specify the PWM period.

Configuring the CxTSEL<1:0> bits in the CCPTMRSx register selects which Timer2/4/6 timer is used.

23.3.4 PWM PERIOD

The PWM period is specified by the PRx register of Timer2/4/6. The PWM period can be calculated using the formula of Equation 23-1.

EQUATION 23-1: PWM PERIOD

$$PWM\ Period = [(PRx) + 1] \bullet 4 \bullet T_{OSC} \bullet (TMRx\ Prescale\ Value)$$

Note 1: $T_{OSC} = 1/F_{OSC}$

When TMRx is equal to PRx, the following three events occur on the next increment cycle:

- TMRx is cleared
- The CCPx pin is set. (Exception: If the PWM duty cycle = 0%, the pin will not be set.)
- The PWM duty cycle is latched from CCPRxL into CCPRxH.

Note:	The Timer postscaler (see **Section 22.1 "Timer2/4/6 Operation"**) is not used in the determination of the PWM frequency.

23.3.5 PWM DUTY CYCLE

The PWM duty cycle is specified by writing a 10-bit value to multiple registers: CCPRxL register and DCxB<1:0> bits of the CCPxCON register. The CCPRxL contains the eight MSbs and the DCxB<1:0> bits of the CCPxCON register contain the two LSbs. CCPRxL and DCxB<1:0> bits of the CCPxCON register can be written to at any time. The duty cycle value is not latched into CCPRxH until after the period completes (i.e., a match between PRx and TMRx registers occurs). While using the PWM, the CCPRxH register is read-only.

Equation 23-2 is used to calculate the PWM pulse width.

Equation 23-3 is used to calculate the PWM duty cycle ratio.

EQUATION 23-2: PULSE WIDTH

$$Pulse\ Width = (CCPRxL:CCPxCON<5:4>) \bullet T_{OSC} \bullet (TMRx\ Prescale\ Value)$$

EQUATION 23-3: DUTY CYCLE RATIO

$$Duty\ Cycle\ Ratio = \frac{(CCPRxL:CCPxCON<5:4>)}{4(PRx + 1)}$$

The CCPRxH register and a 2-bit internal latch are used to double buffer the PWM duty cycle. This double buffering is essential for glitchless PWM operation.

The 8-bit timer TMRx register is concatenated with either the 2-bit internal system clock (F_{OSC}), or 2 bits of the prescaler, to create the 10-bit time base. The system clock is used if the Timer2/4/6 prescaler is set to 1:1.

When the 10-bit time base matches the CCPRxH and 2-bit latch, then the CCPx pin is cleared (see Figure 23-4).

23.3.6 PWM RESOLUTION

The resolution determines the number of available duty cycles for a given period. For example, a 10-bit resolution will result in 1024 discrete duty cycles, whereas an 8-bit resolution will result in 256 discrete duty cycles.

The maximum PWM resolution is 10 bits when PRx is 255. The resolution is a function of the PRx register value as shown by Equation 23-4.

EQUATION 23-4: PWM RESOLUTION

$$Resolution = \frac{\log[4(PRx + 1)]}{\log(2)} \text{ bits}$$

Note:	If the pulse width value is greater than the period the assigned PWM pin(s) will remain unchanged.

TABLE 23-5: EXAMPLE PWM FREQUENCIES AND RESOLUTIONS (FOSC = 32 MHz)

PWM Frequency	1.95 kHz	7.81 kHz	31.25 kHz	125 kHz	250 kHz	333.3 kHz
Timer Prescale (1, 4, 16)	16	4	1	1	1	1
PRx Value	0xFF	0xFF	0xFF	0x3F	0x1F	0x17
Maximum Resolution (bits)	10	10	10	8	7	6.6

TABLE 23-6: EXAMPLE PWM FREQUENCIES AND RESOLUTIONS (FOSC = 20 MHz)

PWM Frequency	1.22 kHz	4.88 kHz	19.53 kHz	78.12 kHz	156.3 kHz	208.3 kHz
Timer Prescale (1, 4, 16)	16	4	1	1	1	1
PRx Value	0xFF	0xFF	0xFF	0x3F	0x1F	0x17
Maximum Resolution (bits)	10	10	10	8	7	6.6

TABLE 23-7: EXAMPLE PWM FREQUENCIES AND RESOLUTIONS (FOSC = 8 MHz)

PWM Frequency	1.22 kHz	4.90 kHz	19.61 kHz	76.92 kHz	153.85 kHz	200.0 kHz
Timer Prescale (1, 4, 16)	16	4	1	1	1	1
PRx Value	0x65	0x65	0x65	0x19	0x0C	0x09
Maximum Resolution (bits)	8	8	8	6	5	5

23.3.7 OPERATION IN SLEEP MODE

In Sleep mode, the TMRx register will not increment and the state of the module will not change. If the CCPx pin is driving a value, it will continue to drive that value. When the device wakes up, TMRx will continue from its previous state.

23.3.8 CHANGES IN SYSTEM CLOCK FREQUENCY

The PWM frequency is derived from the system clock frequency. Any changes in the system clock frequency will result in changes to the PWM frequency. See **Section 5.0 "Oscillator Module (With Fail-Safe Clock Monitor)"** for additional details.

23.3.9 EFFECTS OF RESET

Any Reset will force all ports to Input mode and the CCP registers to their Reset states.

23.3.10 ALTERNATE PIN LOCATIONS

This module incorporates I/O pins that can be moved to other locations with the use of the alternate pin function register, APFCON. To determine which pins can be moved and what their default locations are upon a reset, see **Section 12.1 "Alternate Pin Function"** for more information.

TABLE 23-8: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH STANDARD PWM

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
CCPxCON	PxM<1:0>(1)		DCxB<1:0>		CCPxM<3:0>				236
CCPTMRS0	C4TSEL<1:0>		C3TSEL<1:0>		C2TSEL<1:0>		C1TSEL<1:0>		237
CCPTMRS1	—	—	—	—	—	—	C5TSEL<1:0>		237
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	93
PIE1	TMR1GIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	94
PIE2	OSFIE	C2IE	C1IE	EEIE	BCLIE	LCDIE	C3IE	CCP2IE	95
PIE3	—	CCP5IE	CCP4IE	CCP3IE	TMR6IE	—	TMR4IE	—	96
PIR1	TMR1GIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	98
PIR2	OSFIF	C2IF	C1IF	EEIF	BCLIF	LCDIF	C3IF	CCP2IF	99
PIR3	—	CCP5IF	CCP4IF	CCP3IF	TMR6IF	—	TMR4IF	—	100
PRx	Timer2/4/6 Period Register								209*
TxCON	—	TxOUTPS<3:0>				TMRxON	TxCKPS<:0>1		211
TMRx	Timer2/4/6 Module Register								209*
TRISA	TRISA7	TRISA6	TRISA5	TRISA4	TRISA3	TRISA2	TRISA1	TRISA0	128
TRISB	TRISB7	TRISB6	TRISB5	TRISB4	TRISB3	TRISB2	TRISB1	TRISB0	131
TRISC	TRISC7	TRISC6	TRISC5	TRISC4	TRISC3	TRISC2	TRISC1	TRISC0	134
TRISD	TRISD7	TRISD6	TRISD5	TRISD4	TRISD3	TRISD2	TRISD1	TRISD0	137
TRISE	TRISE7	TRISE6	TRISE5	TRISE4	TRISE3	TRISE2	TRISE1	TRISE0	140

Legend: — = Unimplemented location, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the PWM.
Note 1: Applies to ECCP modules only.
* Page provides register information.

23.4 PWM (Enhanced Mode)

The enhanced PWM function described in this section is available for CCP modules ECCP1, ECCP2 and ECCP3, with any differences between modules noted.

The enhanced PWM mode generates a Pulse-Width Modulation (PWM) signal on up to four different output pins with up to 10 bits of resolution. The period, duty cycle, and resolution are controlled by the following registers:

- PRx registers
- TxCON registers
- CCPRxL registers
- CCPxCON registers

The ECCP modules have the following additional PWM registers which control Auto-shutdown, Auto-restart, Dead-band Delay and PWM Steering modes:

- CCPxAS registers
- PSTRxCON registers
- PWMxCON registers

The enhanced PWM module can generate the following five PWM Output modes:

- Single PWM
- Half-Bridge PWM
- Full-Bridge PWM, Forward Mode
- Full-Bridge PWM, Reverse Mode
- Single PWM with PWM Steering Mode

To select an Enhanced PWM Output mode, the PxM bits of the CCPxCON register must be configured appropriately.

The PWM outputs are multiplexed with I/O pins and are designated PxA, PxB, PxC and PxD. The polarity of the PWM pins is configurable and is selected by setting the CCPxM bits in the CCPxCON register appropriately.

Figure 23-5 shows an example of a simplified block diagram of the Enhanced PWM module.

Table 23-9 shows the pin assignments for various Enhanced PWM modes.

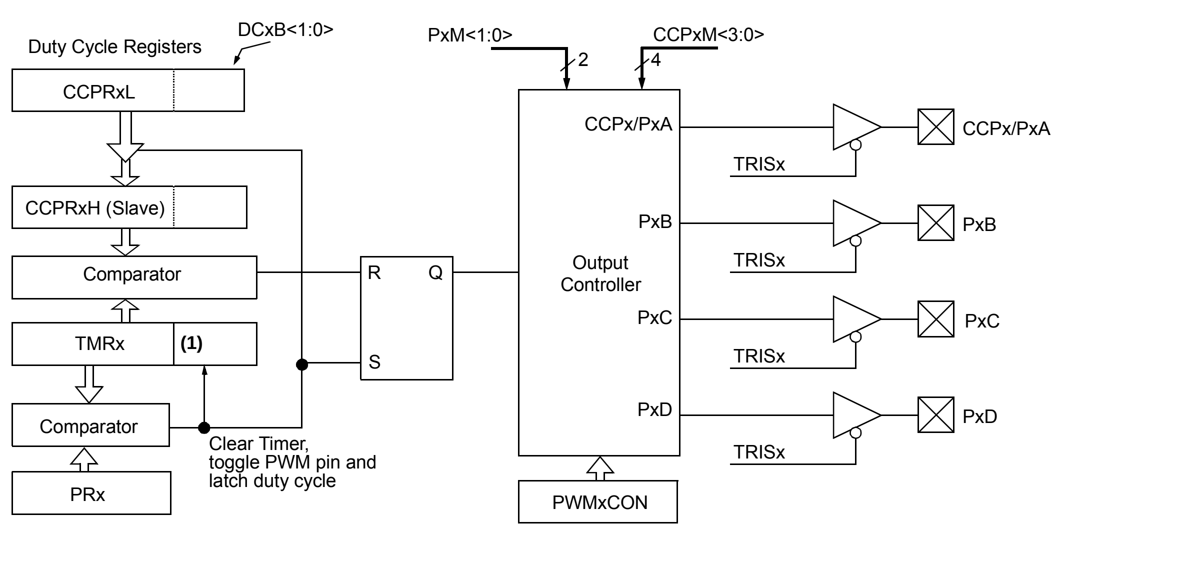
Note 1: The corresponding TRIS bit must be cleared to enable the PWM output on the CCPx pin.

2: Clearing the CCPxCON register will relinquish control of the CCPx pin.

3: Any pin not used in the enhanced PWM mode is available for alternate pin functions, if applicable.

4: To prevent the generation of an incomplete waveform when the PWM is first enabled, the ECCP module waits until the start of a new PWM period before generating a PWM signal.

FIGURE 23-5: EXAMPLE SIMPLIFIED BLOCK DIAGRAM OF THE ENHANCED PWM MODE



Note 1: The 8-bit timer TMRx register is concatenated with the 2-bit internal Q clock, or 2 bits of the prescaler to create the 10-bit time base.

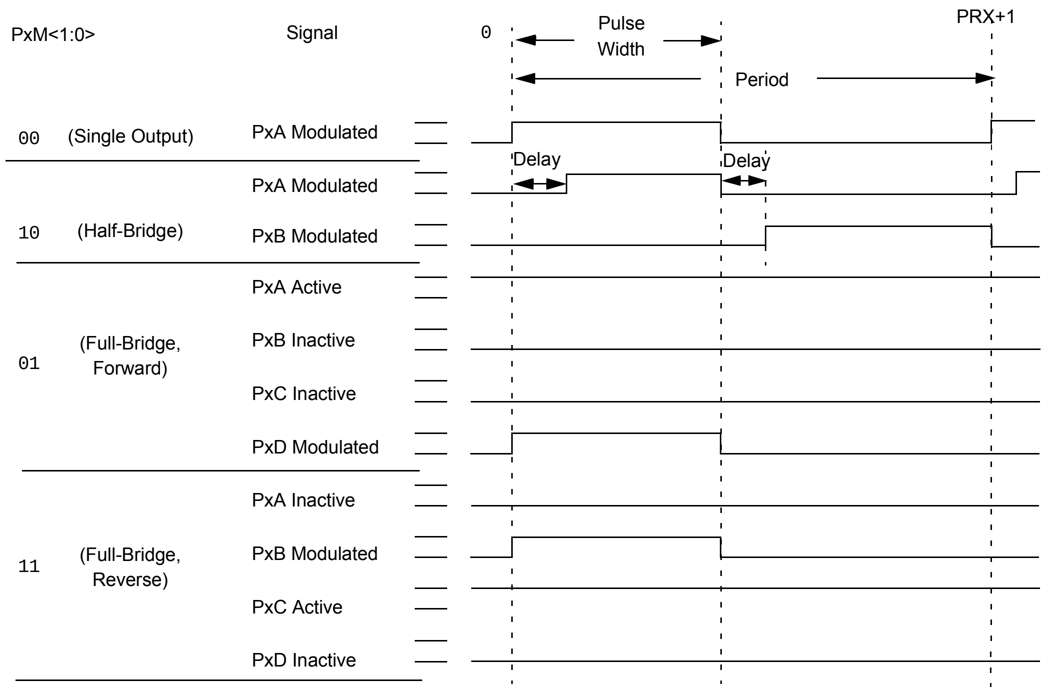
 Preliminary

TABLE 23-9: EXAMPLE PIN ASSIGNMENTS FOR VARIOUS PWM ENHANCED MODES

ECCP Mode	PxM<1:0>	CCPx/PxA	PxB	PxC	PxD
Single	00	Yes(1)	Yes(1)	Yes(1)	Yes(1)
Half-Bridge	10	Yes	Yes	No	No
Full-Bridge, Forward	01	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Full-Bridge, Reverse	11	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

Note 1: PWM Steering enables outputs in Single mode.

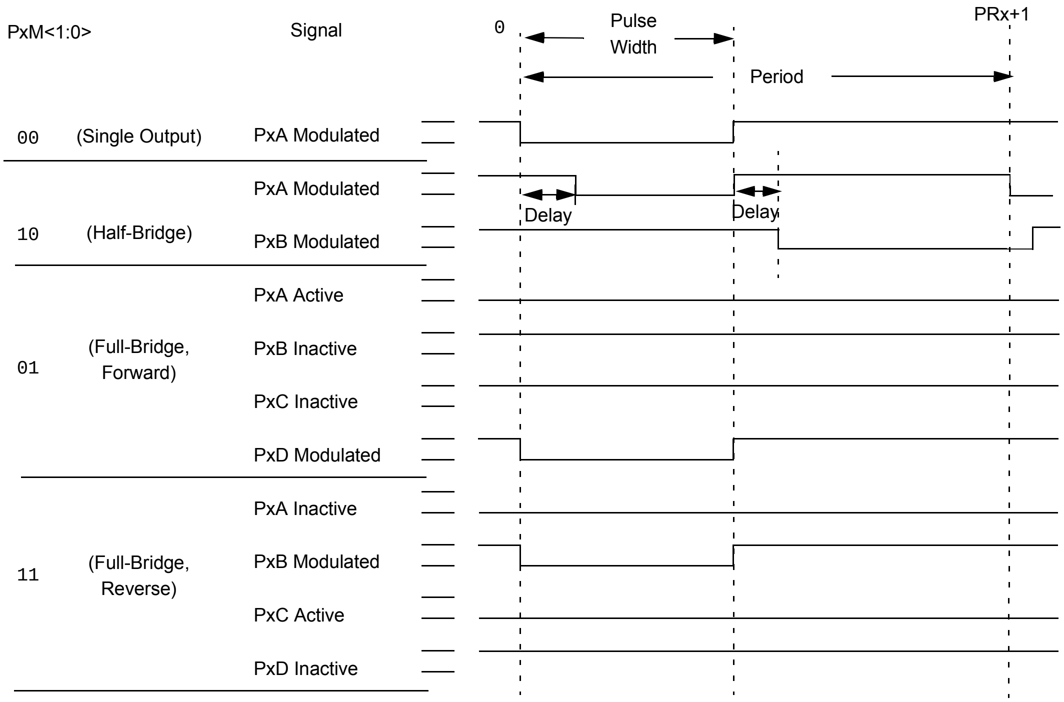
FIGURE 23-6: EXAMPLE PWM (ENHANCED MODE) OUTPUT RELATIONSHIPS (ACTIVE-HIGH STATE)



Relationships:

- Period = 4 * TOSC * (PRx + 1) * (TMRx Prescale Value)
- Pulse Width = TOSC * (CCPRxL<7:0>:CCPxCON<5:4>) * (TMRx Prescale Value)
- Delay = 4 * TOSC * (PWMxCON<6:0>)

FIGURE 23-7: EXAMPLE ENHANCED PWM OUTPUT RELATIONSHIPS (ACTIVE-LOW STATE)



Relationships:
- Period = 4 * TOSC * (PRx + 1) * (TMRx Prescale Value)
- Pulse Width = TOSC * (CCPRxL<7:0>:CCPxCON<5:4>) * (TMRx Prescale Value)
- Delay = 4 * TOSC * (PWMxCON<6:0>)

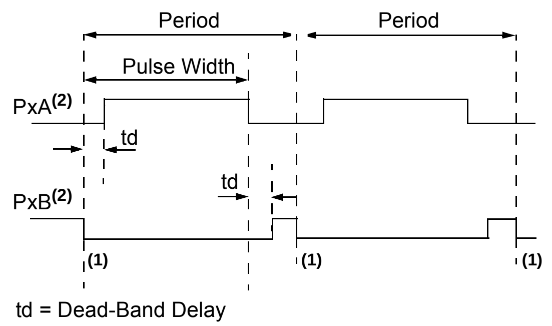
23.4.1 HALF-BRIDGE MODE

In Half-Bridge mode, two pins are used as outputs to drive push-pull loads. The PWM output signal is output on the CCPx/PxA pin, while the complementary PWM output signal is output on the PxB pin (see Figure 23-9). This mode can be used for Half-Bridge applications, as shown in Figure 23-9, or for Full-Bridge applications, where four power switches are being modulated with two PWM signals.

In Half-Bridge mode, the programmable dead-band delay can be used to prevent shoot-through current in Half-Bridge power devices. The value of the PDC<6:0> bits of the PWMxCON register sets the number of instruction cycles before the output is driven active. If the value is greater than the duty cycle, the corresponding output remains inactive during the entire cycle. See **Section 23.4.5 "Programmable Dead-Band Delay Mode"** for more details of the dead-band delay operations.

Since the PxA and PxB outputs are multiplexed with the PORT data latches, the associated TRIS bits must be cleared to configure PxA and PxB as outputs.

FIGURE 23-8: EXAMPLE OF HALF-BRIDGE PWM OUTPUT

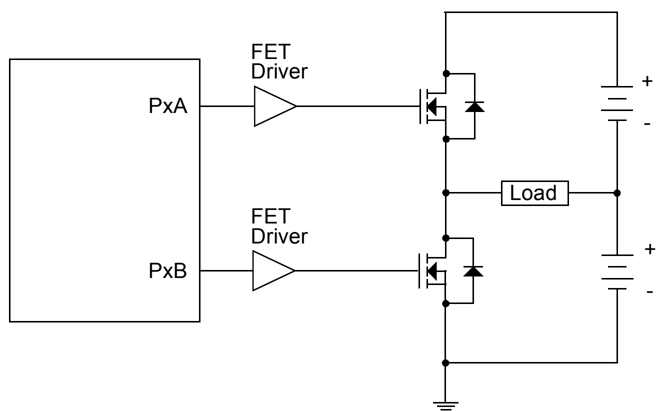


Note 1: At this time, the TMRx register is equal to the PRx register.

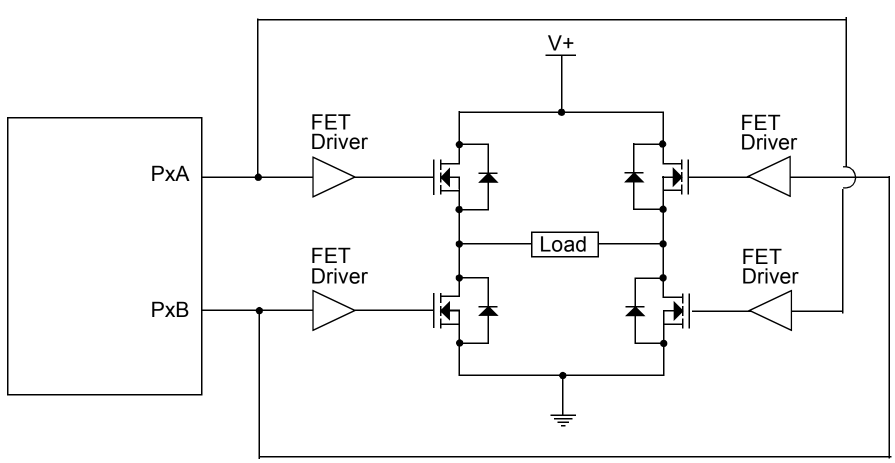
2: Output signals are shown as active-high.

FIGURE 23-9: EXAMPLE OF HALF-BRIDGE APPLICATIONS

Standard Half-Bridge Circuit ("Push-Pull")



Half-Bridge Output Driving a Full-Bridge Circuit



23.4.2 FULL-BRIDGE MODE

In Full-Bridge mode, all four pins are used as outputs. An example of Full-Bridge application is shown in Figure 23-10.

In the Forward mode, pin CCPx/PxA is driven to its active state, pin PxD is modulated, while PxB and PxC will be driven to their inactive state as shown in Figure 23-11.

In the Reverse mode, PxC is driven to its active state, pin PxB is modulated, while PxA and PxD will be driven to their inactive state as shown Figure 23-11.

PxA, PxB, PxC and PxD outputs are multiplexed with the PORT data latches. The associated TRIS bits must be cleared to configure the PxA, PxB, PxC and PxD pins as outputs.

FIGURE 23-10: EXAMPLE OF FULL-BRIDGE APPLICATION

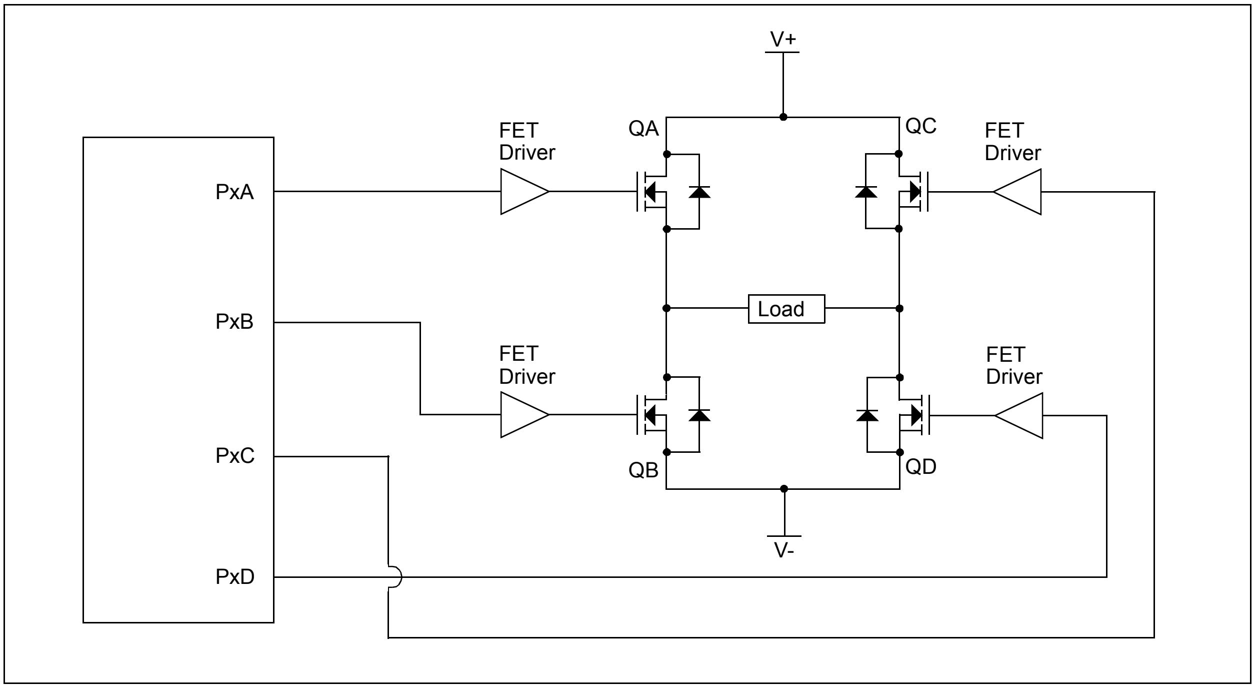
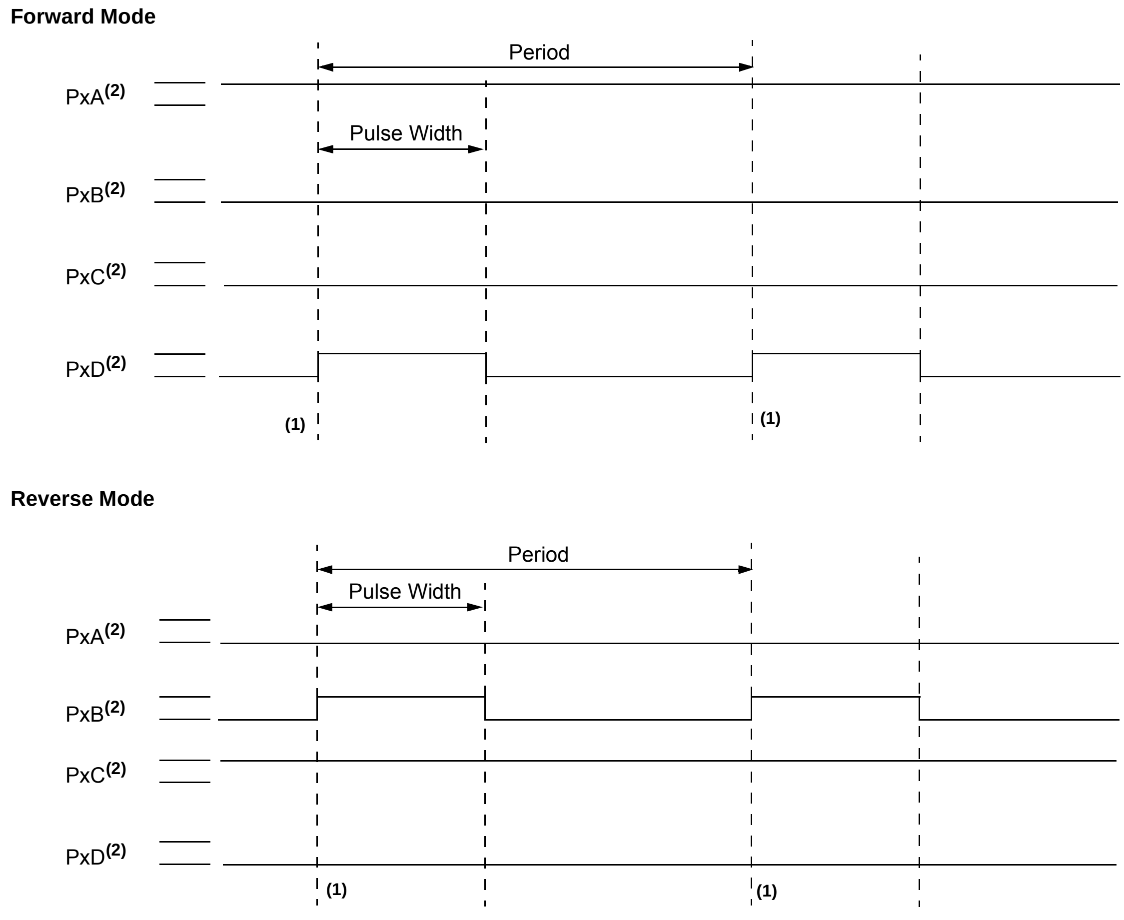


FIGURE 23-11: EXAMPLE OF FULL-BRIDGE PWM OUTPUT



Note 1: At this time, the TMRx register is equal to the PRx register.
2: Output signal is shown as active-high.

23.4.2.1 Direction Change in Full-Bridge Mode

In the Full-Bridge mode, the PxM1 bit in the CCPxCON register allows users to control the forward/reverse direction. When the application firmware changes this direction control bit, the module will change to the new direction on the next PWM cycle.

A direction change is initiated in software by changing the PxM1 bit of the CCPxCON register. The following sequence occurs four Timer cycles prior to the end of the current PWM period:

- The modulated outputs (PxB and PxD) are placed in their inactive state.
- The associated unmodulated outputs (PxA and PxC) are switched to drive in the opposite direction.
- PWM modulation resumes at the beginning of the next period.

See Figure 23-12 for an illustration of this sequence.

The Full-Bridge mode does not provide dead-band delay. As one output is modulated at a time, dead-band delay is generally not required. There is a situation where dead-band delay is required. This situation occurs when both of the following conditions are true:

1. The direction of the PWM output changes when the duty cycle of the output is at or near 100%.
2. The turn off time of the power switch, including the power device and driver circuit, is greater than the turn on time.

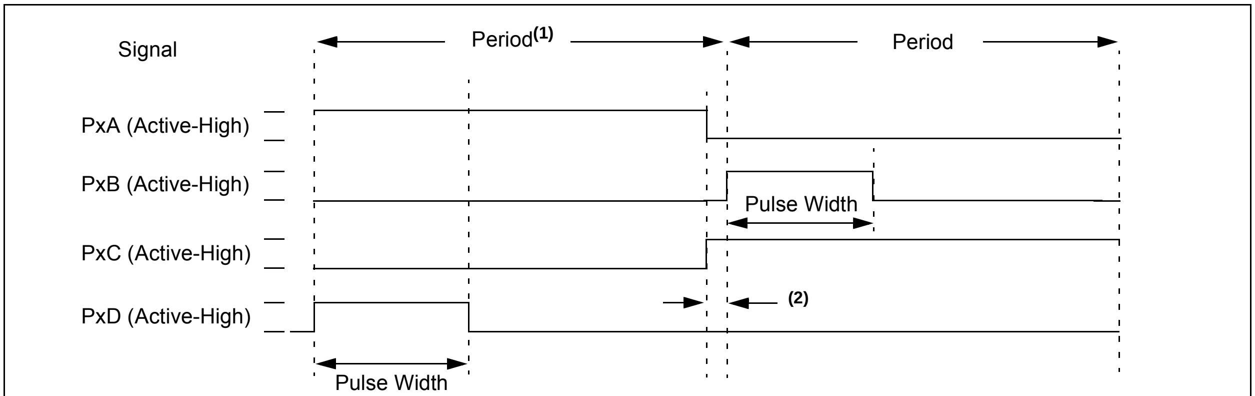
Figure 23-13 shows an example of the PWM direction changing from forward to reverse, at a near 100% duty cycle. In this example, at time t1, the output PxA and PxD become inactive, while output PxC becomes active. Since the turn off time of the power devices is longer than the turn on time, a shoot-through current will flow through power devices QC and QD (see Figure 23-10) for the duration of 't'. The same phenomenon will occur to power devices QA and QB for PWM direction change from reverse to forward.

If changing PWM direction at high duty cycle is required for an application, two possible solutions for eliminating the shoot-through current are:

1. Reduce PWM duty cycle for one PWM period before changing directions.
2. Use switch drivers that can drive the switches off faster than they can drive them on.

Other options to prevent shoot-through current may exist.

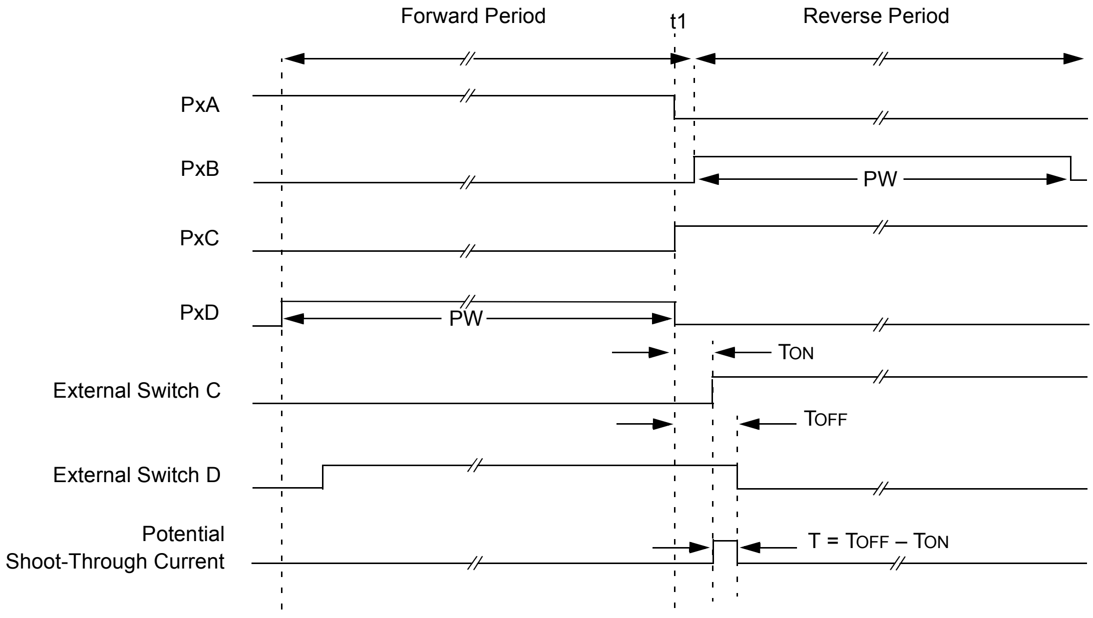
FIGURE 23-12: EXAMPLE OF PWM DIRECTION CHANGE



Note 1: The direction bit PxM1 of the CCPxCON register is written any time during the PWM cycle.

2: When changing directions, the PxA and PxC signals switch before the end of the current PWM cycle. The modulated PxB and PxD signals are inactive at this time. The length of this time is four Timer counts.

FIGURE 23-13: EXAMPLE OF PWM DIRECTION CHANGE AT NEAR 100% DUTY CYCLE



Note 1: All signals are shown as active-high.

2: TON is the turn on delay of power switch QC and its driver.

3: TOFF is the turn off delay of power switch QD and its driver.

23.4.3 ENHANCED PWM AUTO-SHUTDOWN MODE

The PWM mode supports an Auto-Shutdown mode that will disable the PWM outputs when an external shutdown event occurs. Auto-Shutdown mode places the PWM output pins into a predetermined state. This mode is used to help prevent the PWM from damaging the application.

The auto-shutdown sources are selected using the CCPxAS<2:0> bits of the CCPxAS register. A shutdown event may be generated by:

- A logic '0' on the INT pin
- A logic '1' on a Comparator (Cx) output

A shutdown condition is indicated by the CCPxASE (Auto-Shutdown Event Status) bit of the CCPxAS register. If the bit is a '0', the PWM pins are operating normally. If the bit is a '1', the PWM outputs are in the shutdown state.

When a shutdown event occurs, two things happen:

The CCPxASE bit is set to '1'. The CCPxASE will remain set until cleared in firmware or an auto-restart occurs (see **Section 23.4.4 "Auto-Restart Mode"**).

The enabled PWM pins are asynchronously placed in their shutdown states. The PWM output pins are grouped into pairs [PxA/PxC] and [PxB/PxD]. The state of each pin pair is determined by the PSSxAC and PSSxBD bits of the CCPxAS register. Each pin pair may be placed into one of three states:

- Drive logic '1'
- Drive logic '0'
- Tri-state (high-impedance)

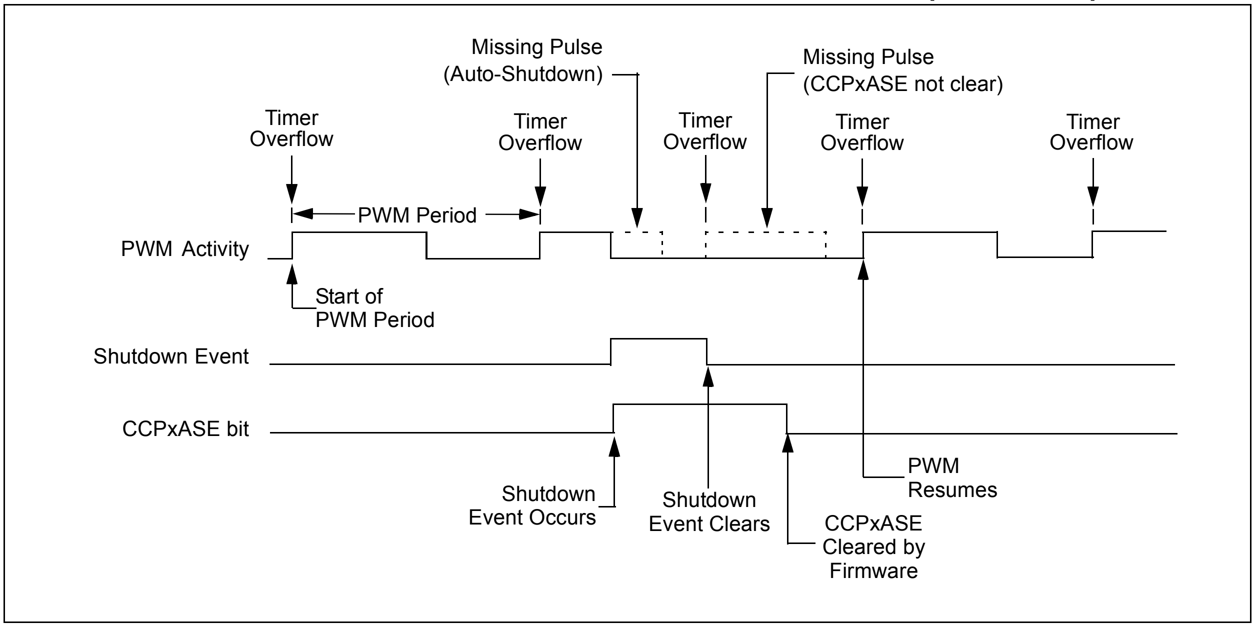
Note 1: The auto-shutdown condition is a level-based signal, not an edge-based signal. As long as the level is present, the auto-shutdown will persist.

2: Writing to the CCPxASE bit of the CCPxAS register is disabled while an auto-shutdown condition persists.

3: Once the auto-shutdown condition has been removed and the PWM restarted (either through firmware or auto-restart) the PWM signal will always restart at the beginning of the next PWM period.

4: Prior to an auto-shutdown event caused by a comparator output or INT pin event, a software shutdown can be triggered in firmware by setting the CCPxASE bit of the CCPxAS register to '1'. The Auto-Restart feature tracks the active status of a shutdown caused by a comparator output or INT pin event only. If it is enabled at this time, it will immediately clear this bit and restart the ECCP module at the beginning of the next PWM period.

FIGURE 23-14: PWM AUTO-SHUTDOWN WITH FIRMWARE RESTART (PXRSEN = 0)

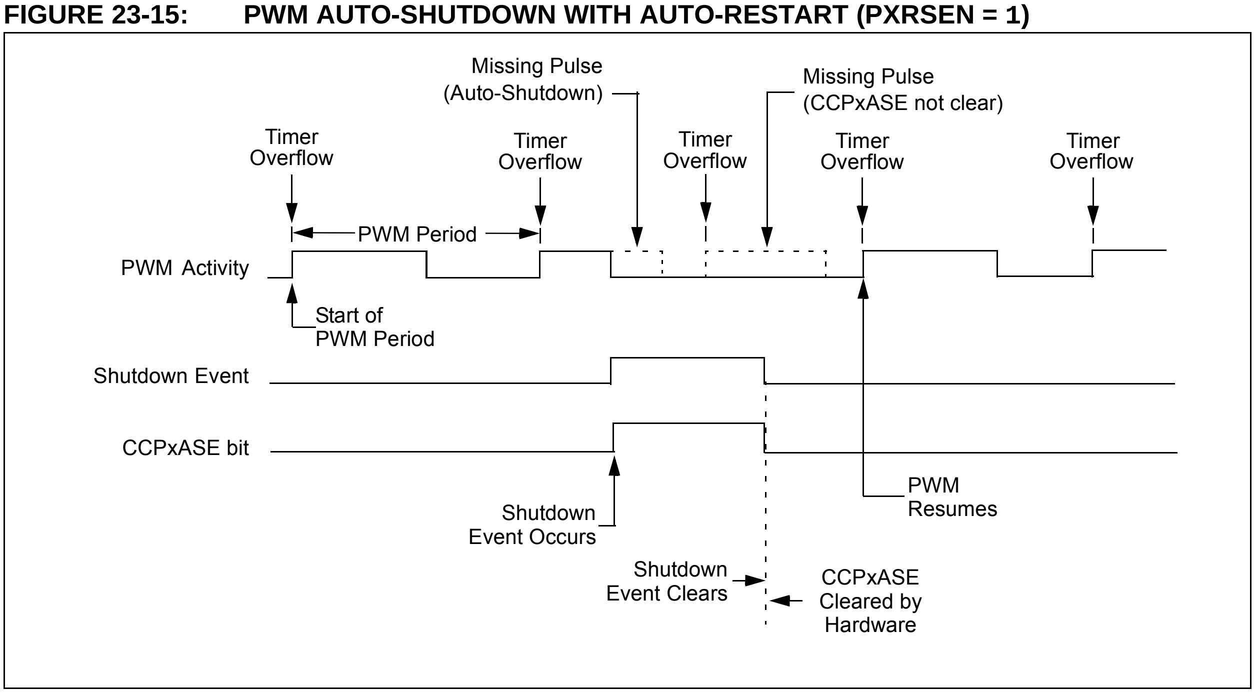


23.4.4 AUTO-RESTART MODE

The Enhanced PWM can be configured to automatically restart the PWM signal once the auto-shutdown condition has been removed. Auto-restart is enabled by setting the PxRSEN bit in the PWMxCON register.

If auto-restart is enabled, the CCPxASE bit will remain set as long as the auto-shutdown condition is active. When the auto-shutdown condition is removed, the CCPxASE bit will be cleared via hardware and normal operation will resume.

FIGURE 23-15: PWM AUTO-SHUTDOWN WITH AUTO-RESTART (PXRSEN = 1)

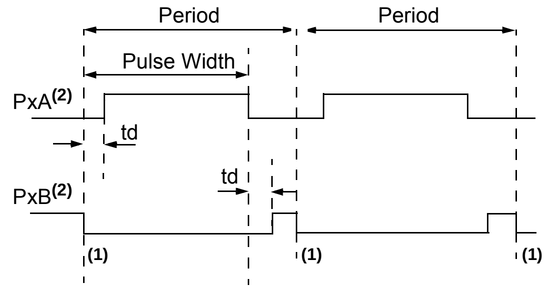


23.4.5 PROGRAMMABLE DEAD-BAND DELAY MODE

In Half-Bridge applications where all power switches are modulated at the PWM frequency, the power switches normally require more time to turn off than to turn on. If both the upper and lower power switches are switched at the same time (one turned on, and the other turned off), both switches may be on for a short period of time until one switch completely turns off. During this brief interval, a very high current (*shoot-through current*) will flow through both power switches, shorting the bridge supply. To avoid this potentially destructive shoot-through current from flowing during switching, turning on either of the power switches is normally delayed to allow the other switch to completely turn off.

In Half-Bridge mode, a digitally programmable dead-band delay is available to avoid shoot-through current from destroying the bridge power switches. The delay occurs at the signal transition from the non-active state to the active state. See Figure 23-16 for illustration. The lower seven bits of the associated PWMxCON register (Register 23-5) sets the delay period in terms of microcontroller instruction cycles (TCY or 4 TOSC).

FIGURE 23-16: EXAMPLE OF HALF-BRIDGE PWM OUTPUT

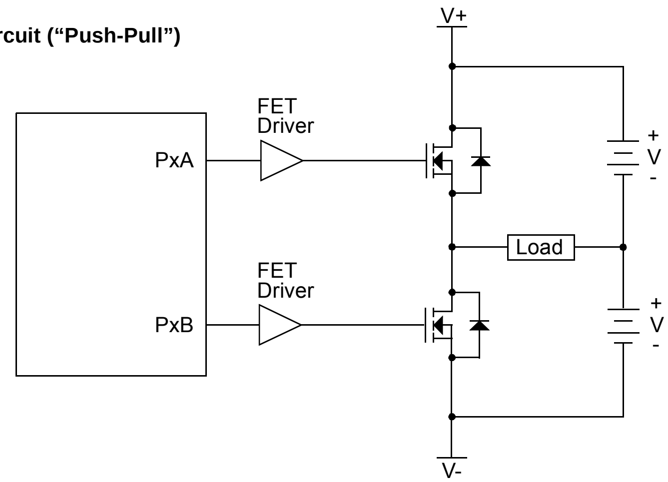


td = Dead-Band Delay

Note 1: At this time, the TMRx register is equal to the PRx register.

2: Output signals are shown as active-high.

FIGURE 23-17: EXAMPLE OF HALF-BRIDGE APPLICATIONS



 Preliminary

23.4.6 PWM STEERING MODE

In Single Output mode, PWM steering allows any of the PWM pins to be the modulated signal. Additionally, the same PWM signal can be simultaneously available on multiple pins.

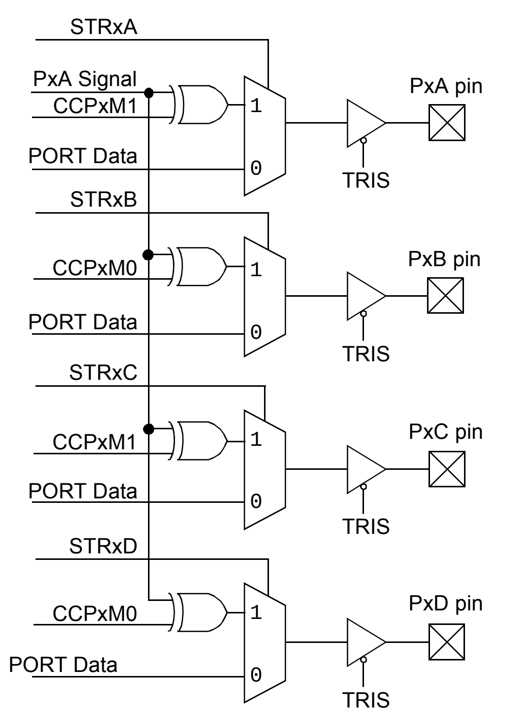
Once the Single Output mode is selected (CCPxM<3:2> = `11` and PxM<1:0> = `00` of the CCPxCON register), the user firmware can bring out the same PWM signal to one, two, three or four output pins by setting the appropriate STRx<D:A> bits of the PSTRxCON register, as shown in Table 23-9.

Note:	The associated TRIS bits must be set to output (‘`0`’) to enable the pin output driver in order to see the PWM signal on the pin.

While the PWM Steering mode is active, CCPxM<1:0> bits of the CCPxCON register select the PWM output polarity for the Px<D:A> pins.

The PWM auto-shutdown operation also applies to PWM Steering mode as described in **Section 23.4.3 “Enhanced PWM Auto-shutdown mode”**. An auto-shutdown event will only affect pins that have PWM outputs enabled.

FIGURE 23-18: SIMPLIFIED STEERING BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: Port outputs are configured as shown when the CCPxCON register bits PxM<1:0> = `00` and CCPxM<3:2> = 11.

2: Single PWM output requires setting at least one of the STRx bits.

23.4.6.1 Steering Synchronization

The STRxSYNC bit of the PSTRxCON register gives the user two selections of when the steering event will happen. When the STRxSYNC bit is '0', the steering event will happen at the end of the instruction that writes to the PSTRxCON register. In this case, the output signal at the Px<D:A> pins may be an incomplete PWM waveform. This operation is useful when the user firmware needs to immediately remove a PWM signal from the pin.

When the STRxSYNC bit is '1', the effective steering update will happen at the beginning of the next PWM period. In this case, steering on/off the PWM output will always produce a complete PWM waveform.

Figures 23-19 and 23-20 illustrate the timing diagrams of the PWM steering depending on the STRxSYNC setting.

23.4.7 START-UP CONSIDERATIONS

When any PWM mode is used, the application hardware must use the proper external pull-up and/or pull-down resistors on the PWM output pins.

The CCPxM<1:0> bits of the CCPxCON register allow the user to choose whether the PWM output signals are active-high or active-low for each pair of PWM output pins (PxA/PxC and PxB/PxD). The PWM output polarities must be selected before the PWM pin output drivers are enabled. Changing the polarity configuration while the PWM pin output drivers are enable is not recommended since it may result in damage to the application circuits.

The PxA, PxB, PxC and PxD output latches may not be in the proper states when the PWM module is initialized. Enabling the PWM pin output drivers at the same time as the Enhanced PWM modes may cause damage to the application circuit. The Enhanced PWM modes must be enabled in the proper Output mode and complete a full PWM cycle before enabling the PWM pin output drivers. The completion of a full PWM cycle is indicated by the TMRxIF bit of the PIRx register being set as the second PWM period begins.

> **Note:** When the microcontroller is released from Reset, all of the I/O pins are in the high-impedance state. The external circuits must keep the power switch devices in the Off state until the microcontroller drives the I/O pins with the proper signal levels or activates the PWM output(s).

FIGURE 23-19: EXAMPLE OF STEERING EVENT AT END OF INSTRUCTION (STRxSYNC = 0)

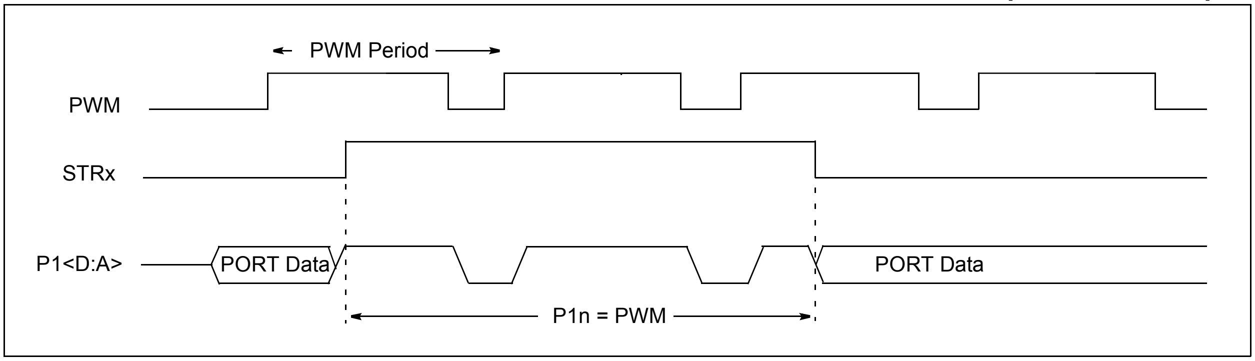
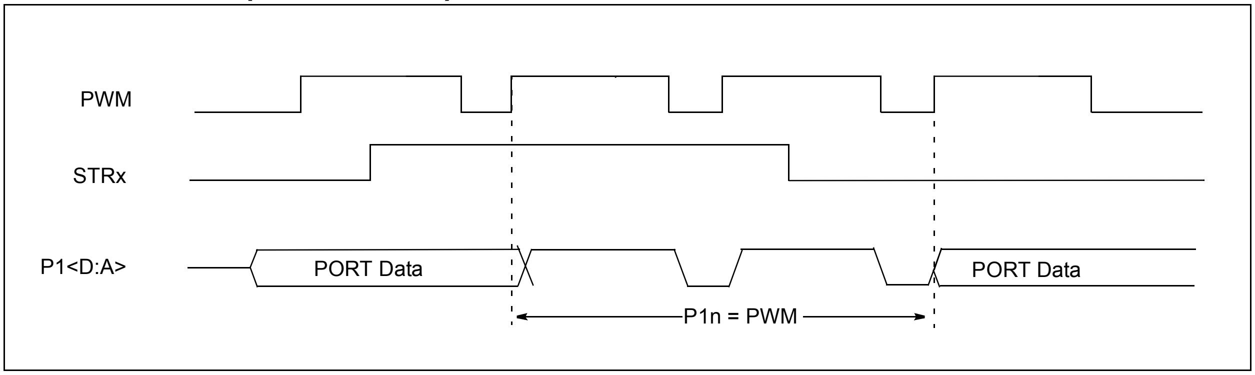


FIGURE 23-20: EXAMPLE OF STEERING EVENT AT BEGINNING OF INSTRUCTION (STRxSYNC = 1)



23.4.8 ALTERNATE PIN LOCATIONS

This module incorporates I/O pins that can be moved to other locations with the use of the alternate pin function register, APFCON. To determine which pins can be moved and what their default locations are upon a reset, see **Section 12.1 "Alternate Pin Function"** for more information.

TABLE 23-10: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH ENHANCED PWM

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
CCPxCON	PxM<1:0>(1)		DCxB<1:0>		CCPxM<3:0>				236
CCPxAS	CCPxASE	CCPxAS<2:0>			PSSxAC<1:0>		PSSxBD<1:0>		238
CCPTMRS0	C4TSEL<1:0>		C3TSEL<1:0>		C2TSEL<1:0>		C1TSEL<1:0>		237
CCPTMRS1	—	—	—	—	—	—	C5TSEL<1:0>		237
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	93
PIE1	TMR1GIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	94
PIE2	OSFIE	C2IE	C1IE	EEIE	BCLIE	LCDIE	C3IE	CCP2IE	95
PIE3	—	CCP5IE	CCP4IE	CCP3IE	TMR6IE	—	TMR4IE	—	96
PIR1	TMR1GIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	98
PIR2	OSFIF	C2IF	C1IF	EEIF	BCLIF	LCDIF	C3IF	CCP2IF	99
PIR3	—	CCP5IF	CCP4IF	CCP3IF	TMR6IF	—	TMR4IF	—	100
PRx	Timer2/4/6 Period Register								209*
PSTRxCON	—	—	—	STRxSYNC	STRxD	STRxC	STRxB	STRxA	240
PWMxCON	PxRSEN	PxDC<6:0>							239
TxCON	—	TxOUTPS<3:0>				TMRxON	TxCKPS<:0>1		211
TMRx	Timer2/4/6 Module Register								209*
TRISA	TRISA7	TRISA6	TRISA5	TRISA4	TRISA3	TRISA2	TRISA1	TRISA0	216
TRISB	TRISB7	TRISB6	TRISB5	TRISB4	TRISB3	TRISB2	TRISB1	TRISB0	216
TRISC	TRISC7	TRISC6	TRISC5	TRISC4	TRISC3	TRISC2	TRISC1	TRISC0	216
TRISD	TRISD7	TRISD6	TRISD5	TRISD4	TRISD3	TRISD2	TRISD1	TRISD0	216
TRISE	—	—	—	—	TRISE3	TRISE2	TRISE1	TRISE0	216

Legend: — = Unimplemented location, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the PWM.
Note 1: Applies to ECCP modules only.
* Page provides register information.

23.5 CCP Control Registers

REGISTER 23-1: CCPxCON: CCPx CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-00	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
PxM<1:0>(1)		DCxB<1:0>		CCPxM<3:0>			
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Reset
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-6 **PxM<1:0>:** Enhanced PWM Output Configuration bits(1)

Capture mode:
Unused

Compare mode:
Unused

If CCPxM<3:2> = `00`, `01`, `10`:
`xx` = PxA assigned as Capture/Compare input; PxB, PxC, PxD assigned as port pins

If CCPxM<3:2> = `11`:
`00` = Single output; PxA modulated; PxB, PxC, PxD assigned as port pins
`01` = Full-Bridge output forward; PxD modulated; PxA active; PxB, PxC inactive
`10` = Half-Bridge output; PxA, PxB modulated with dead-band control; PxC, PxD assigned as port pins
`11` = Full-Bridge output reverse; PxB modulated; PxC active; PxA, PxD inactive

bit 5-4 **DCxB<1:0>:** PWM Duty Cycle Least Significant bits

Capture mode:
Unused

Compare mode:
Unused

PWM mode:
These bits are the two LSbs of the PWM duty cycle. The eight MSbs are found in CCPRxL.

bit 3-0 **CCPxM<3:0>:** ECCPx Mode Select bits

`0000` = Capture/Compare/PWM off (resets ECCPx module)
`0001` = Reserved
`0010` = Compare mode: toggle output on match
`0011` = Reserved

`0100` = Capture mode: every falling edge
`0101` = Capture mode: every rising edge
`0110` = Capture mode: every 4th rising edge
`0111` = Capture mode: every 16th rising edge

`1000` = Compare mode: initialize ECCPx pin low; set output on compare match (set CCPxIF)
`1001` = Compare mode: initialize ECCPx pin high; clear output on compare match (set CCPxIF)
`1010` = Compare mode: generate software interrupt only; ECCPx pin reverts to I/O state
`1011` = Compare mode: Special Event Trigger (ECCPx resets TMR1 or TMR3, sets CCPxIF bit, ECCP2 trigger also starts A/D conversion if A/D module is enabled)(1)

CCP4/CCP5 only:
`11xx` = PWM mode

ECCP1/ECCP2/ECCP3 only:
`1100` = PWM mode: PxA, PxC active-high; PxB, PxD active-high
`1101` = PWM mode: PxA, PxC active-high; PxB, PxD active-low
`1110` = PWM mode: PxA, PxC active-low; PxB, PxD active-high
`1111` = PWM mode: PxA, PxC active-low; PxB, PxD active-low

Note 1: These bits are not implemented on CCP<5:4>.

REGISTER 23-2: CCPTMRS0: PWM TIMER SELECTION CONTROL REGISTER 0

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
C4TSEL<1:0>		C3TSEL<1:0>		C2TSEL<1:0>		C1TSEL<1:0>	
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-6 **C4TSEL<1:0>:** CCP4 Timer Selection
`00` = CCP4 is based off Timer 2 in PWM Mode
`01` = CCP4 is based off Timer 4 in PWM Mode
`10` = CCP4 is based off Timer 6 in PWM Mode
`11` = Reserved

bit 5-4 **C3TSEL<1:0>:** CCP3 Timer Selection
`00` = CCP3 is based off Timer 2 in PWM Mode
`01` = CCP3 is based off Timer 4 in PWM Mode
`10` = CCP3 is based off Timer 6 in PWM Mode
`11` = Reserved

bit 3-2 **C2TSEL<1:0>:** CCP2 Timer Selection
`00` = CCP2 is based off Timer 2 in PWM Mode
`01` = CCP2 is based off Timer 4 in PWM Mode
`10` = CCP2 is based off Timer 6 in PWM Mode
`11` = Reserved

bit 1-0 **C1TSEL<1:0>:** CCP1 Timer Selection
`00` = CCP1 is based off Timer 2 in PWM Mode
`01` = CCP1 is based off Timer 4 in PWM Mode
`10` = CCP1 is based off Timer 6 in PWM Mode
`11` = Reserved

REGISTER 23-3: CCPTMRS1: PWM TIMER SELECTION CONTROL REGISTER 1

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
—	—	—	—	—	—	C5TSEL<1:0>	
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-2 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘`0`’

bit 1-0 **C5TSEL<1:0>:** CCP5 Timer Selection
`00` = CCP5 is based off Timer 2 in PWM Mode
`01` = CCP5 is based off Timer 4 in PWM Mode
`10` = CCP5 is based off Timer 6 in PWM Mode
`11` = Reserved

REGISTER 23-4: CCPxAS: CCPX AUTO-SHUTDOWN CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
CCPxASE	CCPxAS<2:0>			PSSxAC<1:0>		PSSxBD<1:0>	
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7 **CCPxASE:** CCPx Auto-Shutdown Event Status bit
1 = A shutdown event has occurred; CCPx outputs are in shutdown state
0 = CCPx outputs are operating

bit 6-4 **CCPxAS<2:0>:** CCPx Auto-Shutdown Source Select bits
000 = Auto-shutdown is disabled
001 = Comparator C1 output high(1)
010 = Comparator C2 output high(1, 2)
011 = Either Comparator C1 or C2 high(1, 2)
100 = V_{IL} on INT pin
101 = V_{IL} on INT pin or Comparator C1 high(1)
110 = V_{IL} on INT pin or Comparator C2 high(1, 2)
111 = V_{IL} on INT pin or Comparator C1 or Comparator C2 high(1, 2)

bit 3-2 **PSSxAC<1:0>:** Pins PxA and PxC Shutdown State Control bits
00 = Drive pins PxA and PxC to ‘0’
01 = Drive pins PxA and PxC to ‘1’
1x = Pins PxA and PxC tri-state

bit 1-0 **PSSxBD<1:0>:** Pins PxB and PxD Shutdown State Control bits
00 = Drive pins PxB and PxD to ‘0’
01 = Drive pins PxB and PxD to ‘1’
1x = Pins PxB and PxD tri-state

Note 1: If CxSYNC is enabled, the shutdown will be delayed by Timer1.
2: For PIC16F1946/47 devices in ECCP3 mode, CCPxAS uses C3 instead of C2.

REGISTER 23-5: PWMxCON: ENHANCED PWM CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
PxRSEN	PxDC<6:0>						
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	

bit 7 **PxRSEN:** PWM Restart Enable bit

1 = Upon auto-shutdown, the CCPxASE bit clears automatically once the shutdown event goes away; the PWM restarts automatically

0 = Upon auto-shutdown, CCPxASE must be cleared in software to restart the PWM

bit 6-0 **PxDC<6:0>:** PWM Delay Count bits

PxDCx = Number of FOSC/4 (4 * TOSC) cycles between the scheduled time when a PWM signal **should** transition active and the **actual** time it transitions active

Note 1: Bit resets to '0' with Two-Speed Start-up and LP, XT or HS selected as the Oscillator mode or Fail-Safe mode is enabled.

REGISTER 23-6: PSTRxCON: PWM STEERING CONTROL REGISTER(1)

U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-1/1
—	—	—	STRxSYNC	STRxD	STRxC	STRxB	STRxA
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 4 **STRxSYNC:** Steering Sync bit
1 = Output steering update occurs on next PWM period
0 = Output steering update occurs at the beginning of the instruction cycle boundary

bit 3 **STRxD:** Steering Enable bit D
1 = PxD pin has the PWM waveform with polarity control from CCPxM<1:0>
0 = PxD pin is assigned to port pin

bit 2 **STRxC:** Steering Enable bit C
1 = PxC pin has the PWM waveform with polarity control from CCPxM<1:0>
0 = PxC pin is assigned to port pin

bit 1 **STRxB:** Steering Enable bit B
1 = PxB pin has the PWM waveform with polarity control from CCPxM<1:0>
0 = PxB pin is assigned to port pin

bit 0 **STRxA:** Steering Enable bit A
1 = PxA pin has the PWM waveform with polarity control from CCPxM<1:0>
0 = PxA pin is assigned to port pin

Note 1: The PWM Steering mode is available only when the CCPxCON register bits CCPxM<3:2> = 11 and PxM<1:0> = 00.

24.0 MASTER SYNCHRONOUS SERIAL PORT (MSSP1 AND MSSP2) MODULE

24.1 Master SSPx (MSSPx) Module Overview

The Master Synchronous Serial Port (MSSPx) module is a serial interface useful for communicating with other peripheral or microcontroller devices. These peripheral devices may be Serial EEPROMs, shift registers, display drivers, A/D converters, etc. The MSSPx module can operate in one of two modes:

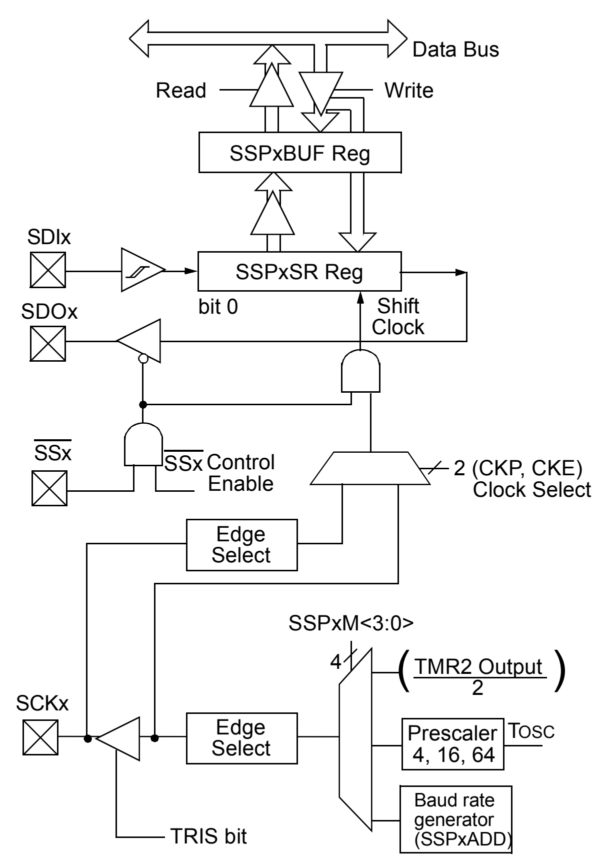
- Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI)
- Inter-Integrated Circuit (I^2C™)

The SPI interface supports the following modes and features:

- Master mode
- Slave mode
- Clock Parity
- Slave Select Synchronization (Slave mode only)
- Daisy-chain connection of slave devices

Figure 24-1 is a block diagram of the SPI interface module.

FIGURE 24-1: MSSPX BLOCK DIAGRAM (SPI MODE)



The I^2C interface supports the following modes and features:

- Master mode
- Slave mode
- Byte NACKing (Slave mode)
- Limited Multi-master support
- 7-bit and 10-bit addressing
- Start and Stop interrupts
- Interrupt masking
- Clock stretching
- Bus collision detection
- General call address matching
- Address masking
- Address Hold and Data Hold modes
- Selectable SDAx hold times

Figure 24-2 is a block diagram of the I^2C interface module in Master mode. Figure 24-3 is a diagram of the I^2C interface module in Slave mode.

The PIC16F1947 has two MSSP modules, MSSP1 and MSSP2, each module operating independently from the other.

Note 1:	In devices with more than one MSSP module, it is very important to pay close attention to SSPxCONx register names. SSP1CON1 and SSP1CON2 registers control different operational aspects of the same module, while SSP1CON1 and SSP2CON1 control the same features for two different modules.
2:	Throughout this section, generic references to an MSSP module in any of its operating modes may be interpreted as being equally applicable to MSSP1 or MSSP2. Register names, module I/O signals, and bit names may use the generic designator 'x' to indicate the use of a numeral to distinguish a particular module when required.

FIGURE 24-2: MSSPX BLOCK DIAGRAM (I^2C™ MASTER MODE)

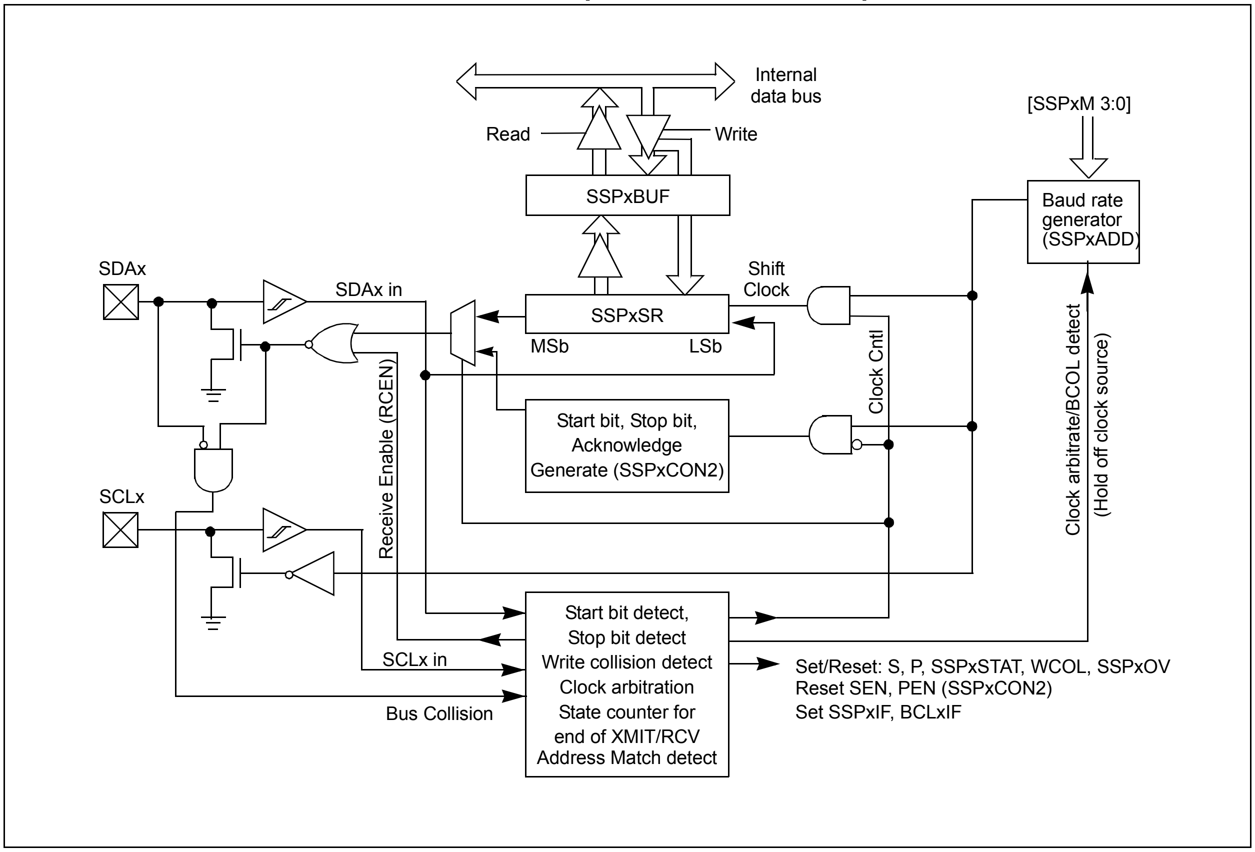
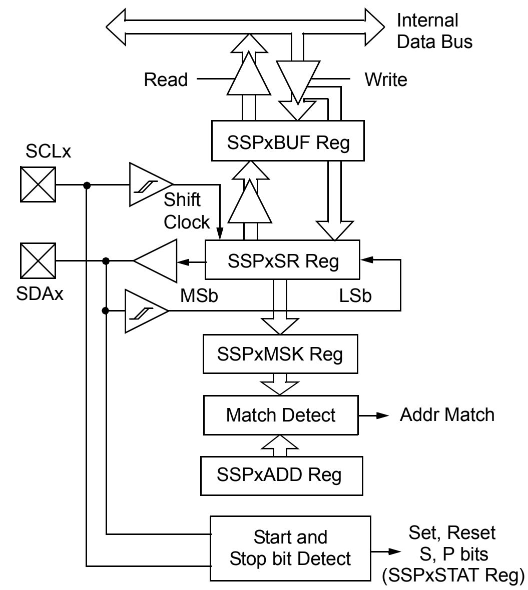


FIGURE 24-3: MSSPx BLOCK DIAGRAM (I^2C™ SLAVE MODE)



24.2 SPI Mode Overview

The Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) bus is a synchronous serial data communication bus that operates in Full Duplex mode. Devices communicate in a master/slave environment where the master device initiates the communication. A slave device is controlled through a chip select known as Slave Select.

The SPI bus specifies four signal connections:

- Serial Clock (SCKx)
- Serial Data Out (SDOx)
- Serial Data In (SDIx)
- Slave Select ($\overline{\text{SSx}}$)

Figure 24-1 shows the block diagram of the MSSPx module when operating in SPI Mode.

The SPI bus operates with a single master device and one or more slave devices. When multiple slave devices are used, an independent Slave Select connection is required from the master device to each slave device.

Figure 24-4 shows a typical connection between a master device and multiple slave devices.

The master selects only one slave at a time. Most slave devices have tri-state outputs so their output signal appears disconnected from the bus when they are not selected.

Transmissions involve two shift registers, eight bits in size, one in the master and one in the slave. With either the master or the slave device, data is always shifted out one bit at a time, with the Most Significant bit (MSb) shifted out first. At the same time, a new Least Significant bit (LSb) is shifted into the same register.

Figure 24-5 shows a typical connection between two processors configured as master and slave devices.

Data is shifted out of both shift registers on the programmed clock edge and latched on the opposite edge of the clock.

The master device transmits information out on its SDOx output pin which is connected to, and received by, the slave's SDIx input pin. The slave device transmits information out on its SDOx output pin, which is connected to, and received by, the master's SDIx input pin.

To begin communication, the master device first sends out the clock signal. Both the master and the slave devices should be configured for the same clock polarity.

The master device starts a transmission by sending out the MSb from its shift register. The slave device reads this bit from that same line and saves it into the LSb position of its shift register.

During each SPI clock cycle, a full duplex data transmission occurs. This means that while the master device is sending out the MSb from its shift register (on its SDOx pin) and the slave device is reading this bit and saving it as the LSb of its shift register, that the slave device is also sending out the MSb from its shift register (on its SDOx pin) and the master device is reading this bit and saving it as the LSb of its shift register.

After 8 bits have been shifted out, the master and slave have exchanged register values.

If there is more data to exchange, the shift registers are loaded with new data and the process repeats itself.

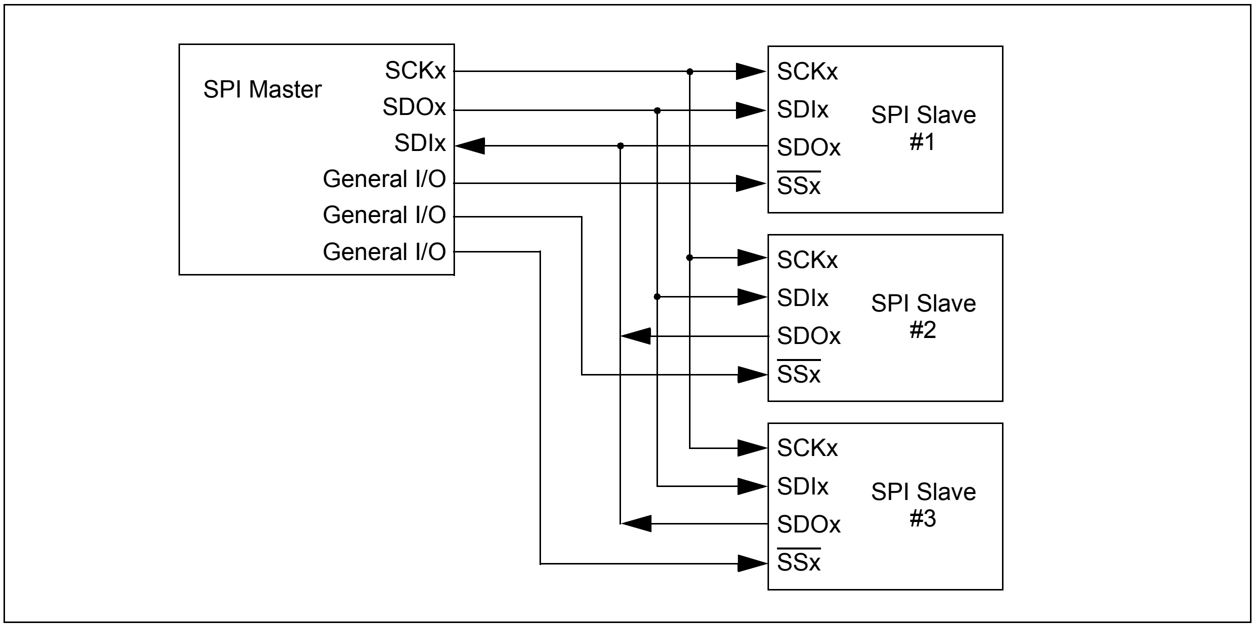
Whether the data is meaningful or not (dummy data), depends on the application software. This leads to three scenarios for data transmission:

- Master sends useful data and slave sends dummy data.
- Master sends useful data and slave sends useful data.
- Master sends dummy data and slave sends useful data.

Transmissions may involve any number of clock cycles. When there is no more data to be transmitted, the master stops sending the clock signal and it deselects the slave.

Every slave device connected to the bus that has not been selected through its slave select line must disregard the clock and transmission signals and must not transmit out any data of its own.

FIGURE 24-4: SPI MASTER AND MULTIPLE SLAVE CONNECTION



24.2.1 SPI MODE REGISTERS

The MSSPx module has five registers for SPI mode operation. These are:

- MSSPx STATUS register (SSPxSTAT)
- MSSPx Control Register 1 (SSPxCON1)
- MSSPx Control Register 3 (SSPxCON3)
- MSSPx Data Buffer register (SSPxBUF)
- MSSPx Address register (SSPxADD)
- MSSPx Shift register (SSPxSR) (Not directly accessible)

SSPxCON1 and SSPxSTAT are the control and STATUS registers in SPI mode operation. The SSPxCON1 register is readable and writable. The lower 6 bits of the SSPxSTAT are read-only. The upper two bits of the SSPxSTAT are read/write.

In one SPI master mode, SSPxADD can be loaded with a value used in the Baud Rate Generator. More information on the Baud Rate Generator is available in **Section 24.7 “Baud Rate Generator”**.

SSPxSR is the shift register used for shifting data in and out. SSPxBUF provides indirect access to the SSPxSR register. SSPxBUF is the buffer register to which data bytes are written, and from which data bytes are read.

In receive operations, SSPxSR and SSPxBUF together create a buffered receiver. When SSPxSR receives a complete byte, it is transferred to SSPxBUF and the SSPxIF interrupt is set.

During transmission, the SSPxBUF is not buffered. A write to SSPxBUF will write to both SSPxBUF and SSPxSR.

24.2.2 SPI MODE OPERATION

When initializing the SPI, several options need to be specified. This is done by programming the appropriate control bits (SSPxCON1<5:0> and SSPxSTAT<7:6>). These control bits allow the following to be specified:

- Master mode (SCKx is the clock output)
- Slave mode (SCKx is the clock input)
- Clock Polarity (Idle state of SCKx)
- Data Input Sample Phase (middle or end of data output time)
- Clock Edge (output data on rising/falling edge of SCKx)
- Clock Rate (Master mode only)
- Slave Select mode (Slave mode only)

To enable the serial port, SSPx Enable bit, SSPxEN of the SSPxCON1 register, must be set. To reset or reconfigure SPI mode, clear the SSPxEN bit, re-initialize the SSPxCONx registers and then set the SSPxEN bit. This configures the SDIx, SDOx, SCKx and $\overline{\text{SSx}}$ pins as serial port pins. For the pins to behave as the serial port function, some must have their data direction bits (in the TRIS register) appropriately programmed as follows:

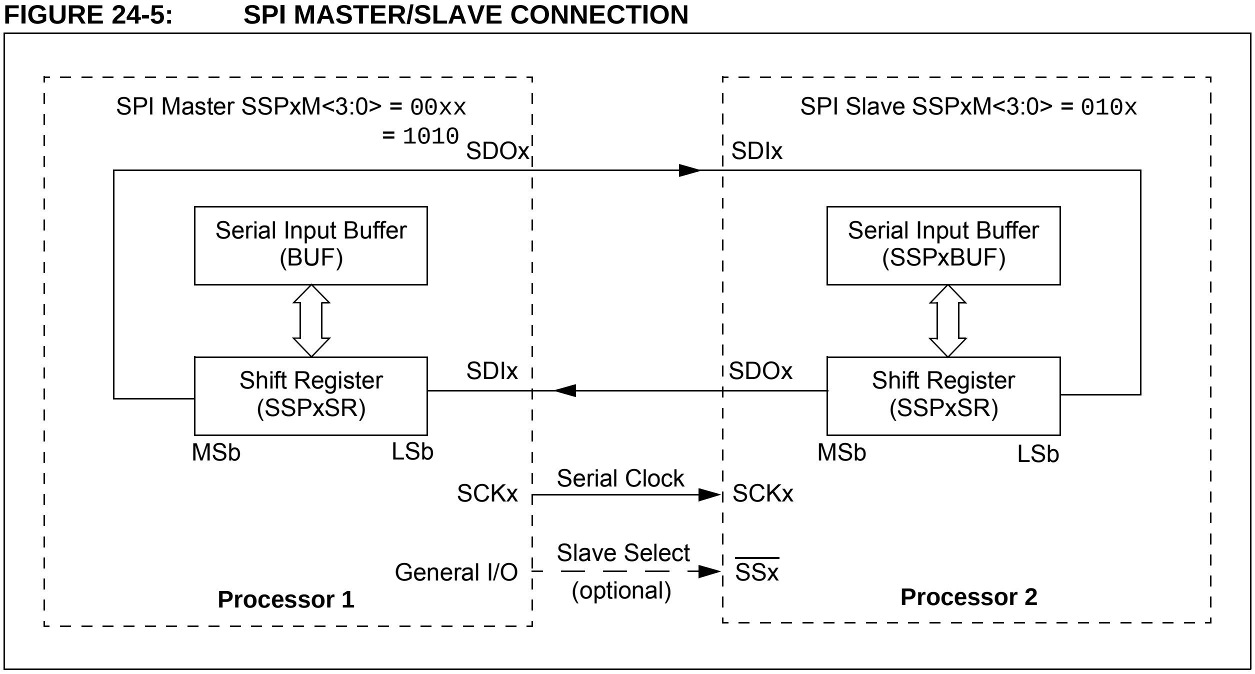
- SDIx must have corresponding TRIS bit set
- SDOx must have corresponding TRIS bit cleared
- SCKx (Master mode) must have corresponding TRIS bit cleared
- SCKx (Slave mode) must have corresponding TRIS bit set
- $\overline{\text{SSx}}$ must have corresponding TRIS bit set

Any serial port function that is not desired may be overridden by programming the corresponding data direction (TRIS) register to the opposite value.

The MSSPx consists of a transmit/receive shift register (SSPxSR) and a buffer register (SSPxBUF). The SSPxSR shifts the data in and out of the device, MSb first. The SSPxBUF holds the data that was written to the SSPxSR until the received data is ready. Once the 8 bits of data have been received, that byte is moved to the SSPxBUF register. Then, the Buffer Full Detect bit, BF of the SSPxSTAT register, and the interrupt flag bit, SSPxIF, are set. This double-buffering of the received data (SSPxBUF) allows the next byte to start reception before reading the data that was just received. Any write to the SSPxBUF register during transmission/reception of data will be ignored and the write collision detect bit WCOL of the SSPxCON1 register, will be set. User software must clear the WCOL bit to allow the following write(s) to the SSPxBUF register to complete successfully.

When the application software is expecting to receive valid data, the SSPxBUF should be read before the next byte of data to transfer is written to the SSPxBUF. The Buffer Full bit, BF of the SSPxSTAT register, indicates when SSPxBUF has been loaded with the received data (transmission is complete). When the SSPxBUF is read, the BF bit is cleared. This data may be irrelevant if the SPI is only a transmitter. Generally, the MSSPx interrupt is used to determine when the transmission/reception has completed. If the interrupt method is not going to be used, then software polling can be done to ensure that a write collision does not occur.

FIGURE 24-5: SPI MASTER/SLAVE CONNECTION



24.2.3 SPI MASTER MODE

The master can initiate the data transfer at any time because it controls the SCKx line. The master determines when the slave (Processor 2, Figure 24-5) is to broadcast data by the software protocol.

In Master mode, the data is transmitted/received as soon as the SSPxBUF register is written to. If the SPI is only going to receive, the SDOx output could be disabled (programmed as an input). The SSPxSR register will continue to shift in the signal present on the SDIx pin at the programmed clock rate. As each byte is received, it will be loaded into the SSPxBUF register as if a normal received byte (interrupts and Status bits appropriately set).

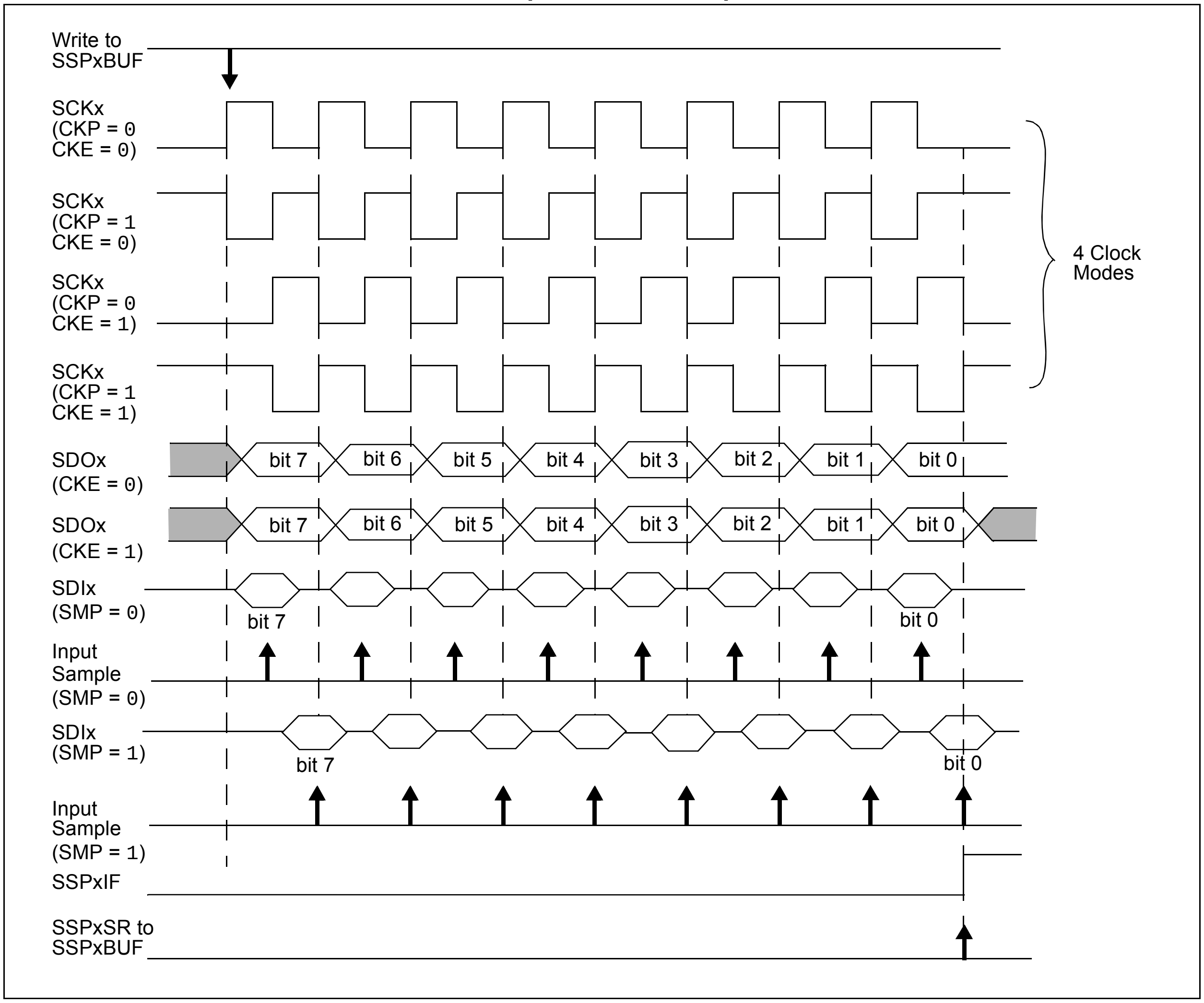
The clock polarity is selected by appropriately programming the CKP bit of the SSPxCON1 register and the CKE bit of the SSPxSTAT register. This then, would give waveforms for SPI communication as shown in Figure 24-6, Figure 24-8 and Figure 24-9, where the MSB is transmitted first. In Master mode, the SPI clock rate (bit rate) is user programmable to be one of the following:

- FOSC/4 (or TCY)
- FOSC/16 (or 4 * TCY)
- FOSC/64 (or 16 * TCY)
- Timer2 output/2
- Fosc/(4 * (SSPxADD + 1))

Figure 24-6 shows the waveforms for Master mode.

When the CKE bit is set, the SDOx data is valid before there is a clock edge on SCKx. The change of the input sample is shown based on the state of the SMP bit. The time when the SSPxBUF is loaded with the received data is shown.

FIGURE 24-6: SPI MODE WAVEFORM (MASTER MODE)



24.2.4 SPI SLAVE MODE

In Slave mode, the data is transmitted and received as external clock pulses appear on SCKx. When the last bit is latched, the SSPxIF interrupt flag bit is set.

Before enabling the module in SPI Slave mode, the clock line must match the proper Idle state. The clock line can be observed by reading the SCKx pin. The Idle state is determined by the CKP bit of the SSPxCON1 register.

While in Slave mode, the external clock is supplied by the external clock source on the SCKx pin. This external clock must meet the minimum high and low times as specified in the electrical specifications.

While in Sleep mode, the slave can transmit/receive data. The shift register is clocked from the SCKx pin input and when a byte is received, the device will generate an interrupt. If enabled, the device will wake-up from Sleep.

24.2.4.1 Daisy-Chain Configuration

The SPI bus can sometimes be connected in a daisy-chain configuration. The first slave output is connected to the second slave input, the second slave output is connected to the third slave input, and so on. The final slave output is connected to the master input. Each slave sends out, during a second group of clock pulses, an exact copy of what was received during the first group of clock pulses. The whole chain acts as one large communication shift register. The daisy-chain feature only requires a single Slave Select line from the master device.

Figure 24-7 shows the block diagram of a typical daisy-chain connection when operating in SPI Mode.

In a daisy-chain configuration, only the most recent byte on the bus is required by the slave. Setting the BOEN bit of the SSPxCON3 register will enable writes to the SSPxBUF register, even if the previous byte has not been read. This allows the software to ignore data that may not apply to it.

24.2.5 SLAVE SELECT SYNCHRONIZATION

The Slave Select can also be used to synchronize communication. The Slave Select line is held high until the master device is ready to communicate. When the Slave Select line is pulled low, the slave knows that a new transmission is starting.

If the slave fails to receive the communication properly, it will be reset at the end of the transmission, when the Slave Select line returns to a high state. The slave is then ready to receive a new transmission when the Slave Select line is pulled low again. If the Slave Select line is not used, there is a risk that the slave will eventually become out of sync with the master. If the slave misses a bit, it will always be one bit off in future transmissions. Use of the Slave Select line allows the slave and master to align themselves at the beginning of each transmission.

The $\overline{\text{SSx}}$ pin allows a Synchronous Slave mode. The SPI must be in Slave mode with $\overline{\text{SSx}}$ pin control enabled (SSPxCON1<3:0> = `0100`).

When the $\overline{\text{SSx}}$ pin is low, transmission and reception are enabled and the SDOx pin is driven.

When the $\overline{\text{SSx}}$ pin goes high, the SDOx pin is no longer driven, even if in the middle of a transmitted byte and becomes a floating output. External pull-up/pull-down resistors may be desirable depending on the application.

> **Note 1:** When the SPI is in Slave mode with $\overline{\text{SSx}}$ pin control enabled (SSPxCON1<3:0> = `0100`), the SPI module will reset if the $\overline{\text{SSx}}$ pin is set to VDD.
>
> **2:** When the SPI is used in Slave mode with CKE set; the user must enable $\overline{\text{SSx}}$ pin control.
>
> **3:** While operated in SPI Slave mode the SMP bit of the SSPxSTAT register must remain clear.

When the SPI module resets, the bit counter is forced to '`0`'. This can be done by either forcing the $\overline{\text{SSx}}$ pin to a high level or clearing the SSPxEN bit.

FIGURE 24-7: SPI DAISY-CHAIN CONNECTION

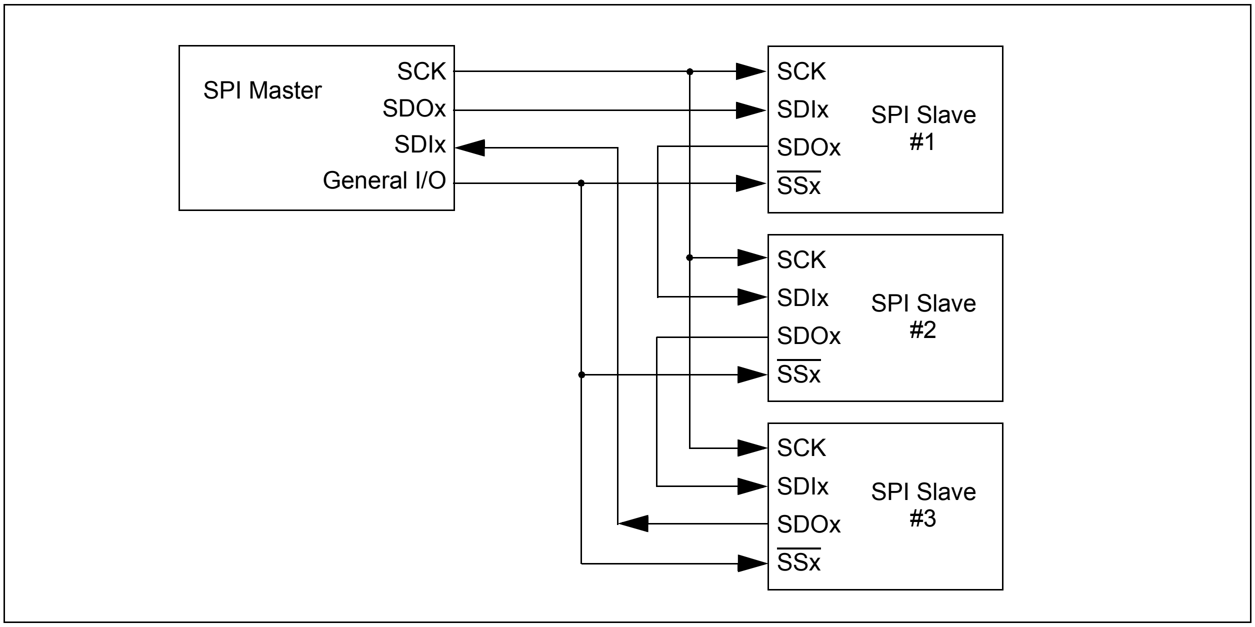


FIGURE 24-8: SLAVE SELECT SYNCHRONOUS WAVEFORM

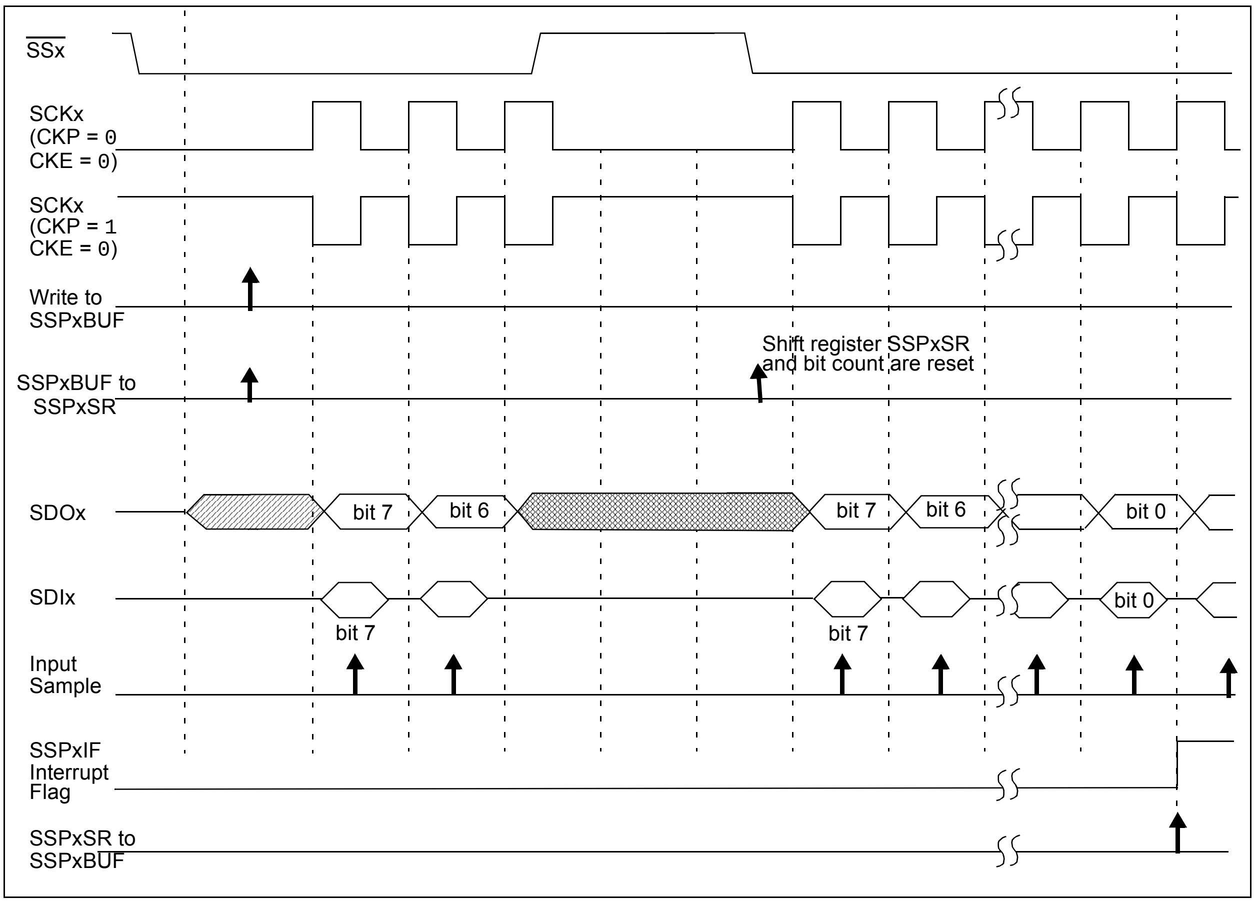


FIGURE 24-9: SPI MODE WAVEFORM (SLAVE MODE WITH CKE = 0)

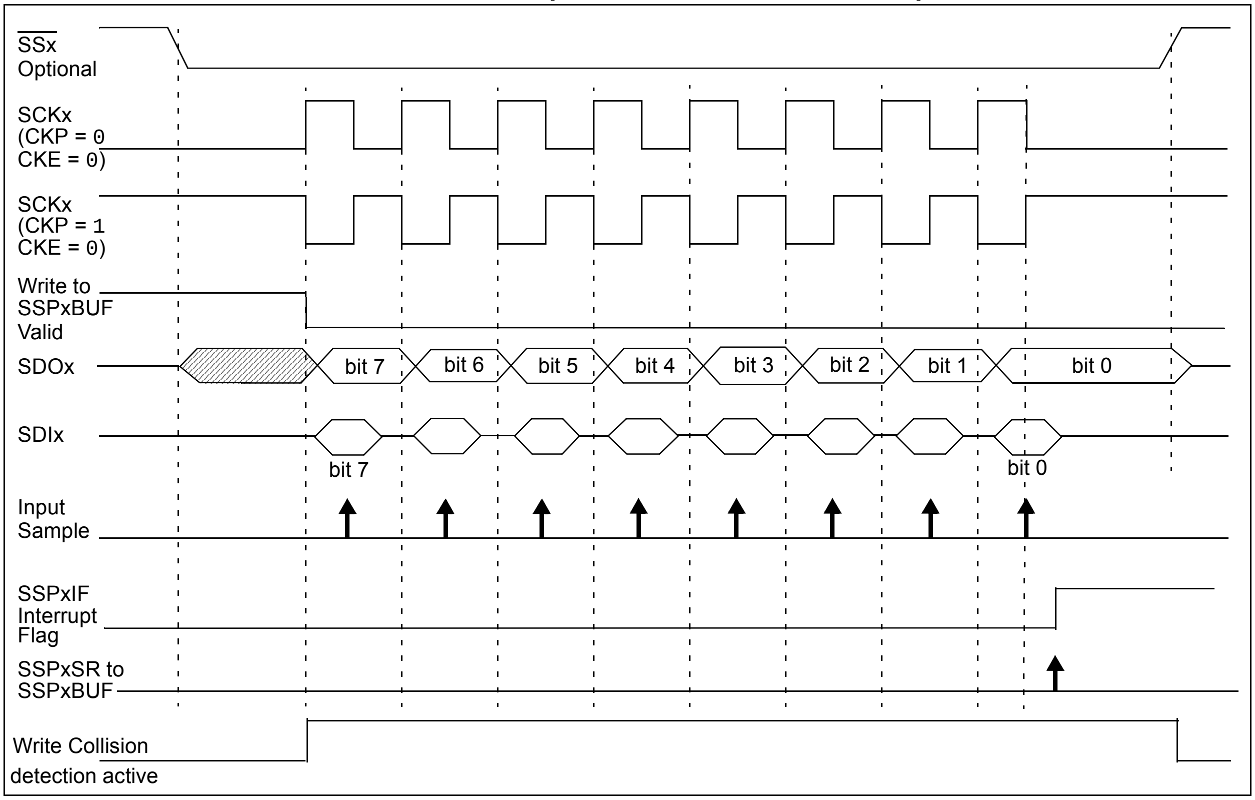
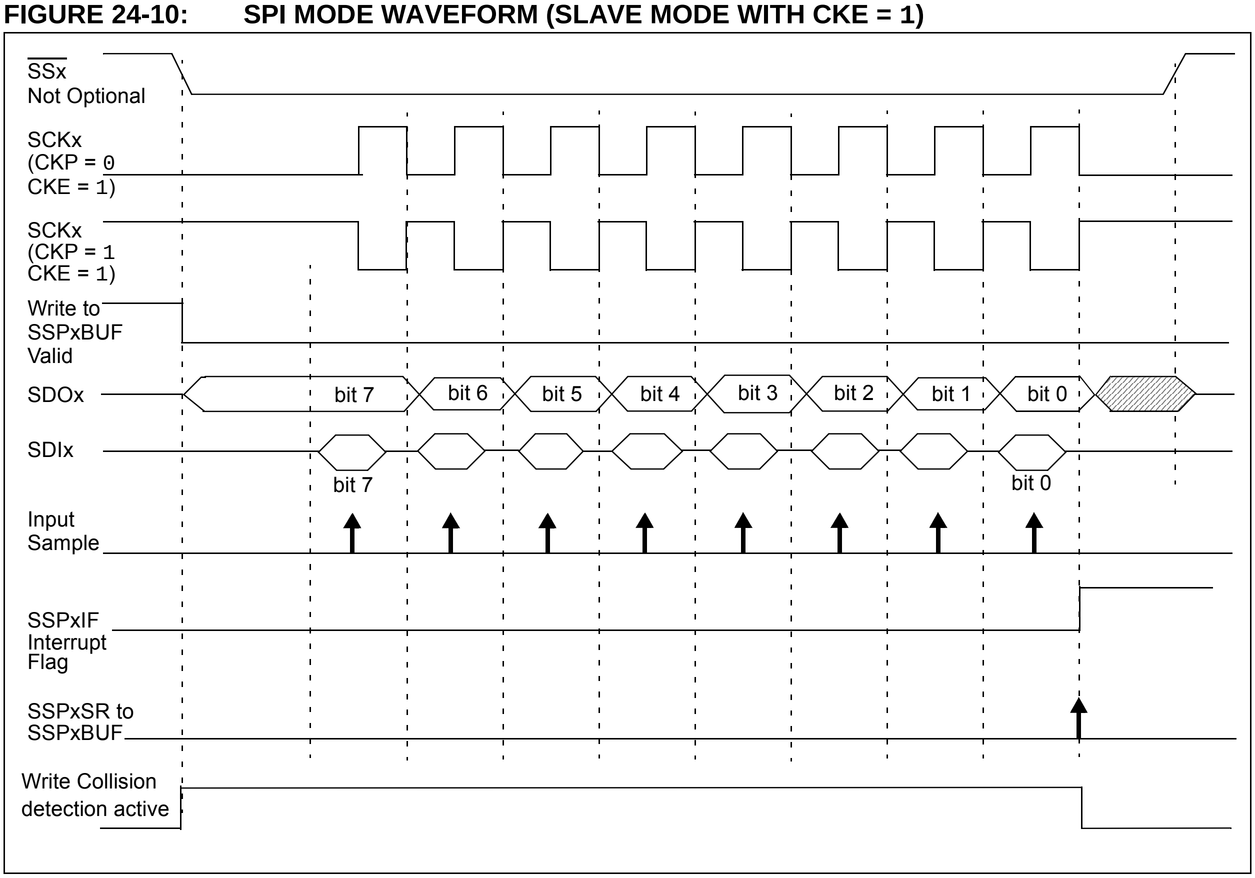


FIGURE 24-10: SPI MODE WAVEFORM (SLAVE MODE WITH CKE = 1)



 Preliminary

24.2.6 SPI OPERATION IN SLEEP MODE

In SPI Master mode, module clocks may be operating at a different speed than when in full power mode; in the case of the Sleep mode, all clocks are halted.

Special care must be taken by the user when the MSSPx clock is much faster than the system clock.

In Slave mode, when MSSPx interrupts are enabled, after the master completes sending data, an MSSPx interrupt will wake the controller from Sleep.

If an exit from Sleep mode is not desired, MSSPx interrupts should be disabled.

In SPI Master mode, when the Sleep mode is selected, all module clocks are halted and the transmission/reception will remain in that state until the device wakes. After the device returns to Run mode, the module will resume transmitting and receiving data.

In SPI Slave mode, the SPI Transmit/Receive Shift register operates asynchronously to the device. This allows the device to be placed in Sleep mode and data to be shifted into the SPI Transmit/Receive Shift register. When all 8 bits have been received, the MSSPx interrupt flag bit will be set and if enabled, will wake the device.

TABLE 24-1: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SPI OPERATION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
ANSELA	ANSA7	ANSA6	ANSA5	ANSA4	ANSA3	ANSA2	ANSA1	ANSA0	129
APFCON	P3CSEL	P3BSEL	P2DSEL	P2CSEL	P2BSEL	CCP2SEL	P1CSEL	P1BSEL	126
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	93
PIE1	TMR1GIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	94
PIE4	—	—	RC2IE	TX2IE	—	—	BCL2IE	SSP2IE	97
PIR1	TMR1GIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	98
PIR4	—	—	RC2IF	TX2IF	—	—	BCL2IF	SSP2IF	101
SSPxBUF	Synchronous Serial Port Receive Buffer/Transmit Register								245*
SSPxCON1	WCOL	SSPxOV	SSPxEN	CKP	SSPxM<3:0>				291
SSPxCON3	ACKTIM	PCIE	SCIE	BOEN	SDAHT	SBCDE	AHEN	DHEN	294
SSPxSTAT	SMP	CKE	$D/\overline{A}$	P	S	$R/\overline{W}$	UA	BF	289
TRISA	TRISA7	TRISA6	TRISA5	TRISA4	TRISA3	TRISA2	TRISA1	TRISA0	128
TRISB	TRISB7	TRISB6	TRISB5	TRISB4	TRISB3	TRISB2	TRISB1	TRISB0	131

Legend: — = Unimplemented location, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the MSSPx in SPI mode.
* Page provides register information.

24.3 I²C MODE OVERVIEW

The Inter-Integrated Circuit Bus (I²C™) is a multi-master serial data communication bus. Devices communicate in a master/slave environment where the master devices initiate the communication. A Slave device is controlled through addressing.

The I²C bus specifies two signal connections:

- Serial Clock (SCLx)
- Serial Data (SDAx)

Figure 24-11 shows the block diagram of the MSSPx module when operating in I²C Mode.

Both the SCLx and SDAx connections are bidirectional open-drain lines, each requiring pull-up resistors for the supply voltage. Pulling the line to ground is considered a logical zero and letting the line float is considered a logical one.

Figure 24-11 shows a typical connection between two processors configured as master and slave devices.

The I²C bus can operate with one or more master devices and one or more slave devices.

There are four potential modes of operation for a given device:

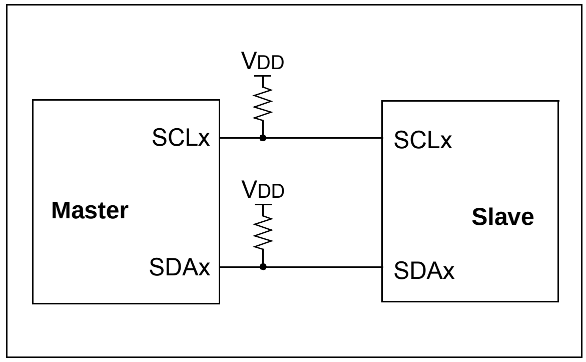
- Master Transmit mode
  (master is transmitting data to a slave)
- Master Receive mode
  (master is receiving data from a slave)
- Slave Transmit mode
  (slave is transmitting data to a master)
- Slave Receive mode
  (slave is receiving data from the master)

To begin communication, a master device starts out in Master Transmit mode. The master device sends out a Start bit followed by the address byte of the slave it intends to communicate with. This is followed by a single Read/Write bit, which determines whether the master intends to transmit to or receive data from the slave device.

If the requested slave exists on the bus, it will respond with an Acknowledge bit, otherwise known as an $\overline{\text{ACK}}$. The master then continues in either Transmit mode or Receive mode and the slave continues in the complement, either in Receive mode or Transmit mode, respectively.

A Start bit is indicated by a high-to-low transition of the SDAx line while the SCLx line is held high. Address and data bytes are sent out, Most Significant bit (MSb) first. The Read/Write bit is sent out as a logical one when the master intends to read data from the slave, and is sent out as a logical zero when it intends to write data to the slave.

FIGURE 24-11: I²C MASTER/ SLAVE CONNECTION



The Acknowledge bit ($\overline{\text{ACK}}$) is an active-low signal, which holds the SDAx line low to indicate to the transmitter that the slave device has received the transmitted data and is ready to receive more.

The transition of a data bit is always performed while the SCLx line is held low. Transitions that occur while the SCLx line is held high are used to indicate Start and Stop bits.

If the master intends to write to the slave, then it repeatedly sends out a byte of data, with the slave responding after each byte with an $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ bit. In this example, the master device is in Master Transmit mode and the slave is in Slave Receive mode.

If the master intends to read from the slave, then it repeatedly receives a byte of data from the slave, and responds after each byte with an $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ bit. In this example, the master device is in Master Receive mode and the slave is Slave Transmit mode.

On the last byte of data communicated, the master device may end the transmission by sending a Stop bit. If the master device is in Receive mode, it sends the Stop bit in place of the last $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ bit. A Stop bit is indicated by a low-to-high transition of the SDAx line while the SCLx line is held high.

In some cases, the master may want to maintain control of the bus and re-initiate another transmission. If so, the master device may send another Start bit in place of the Stop bit or last $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ bit when it is in receive mode.

The I²C bus specifies three message protocols;

- Single message where a master writes data to a slave.
- Single message where a master reads data from a slave.
- Combined message where a master initiates a minimum of two writes, or two reads, or a combination of writes and reads, to one or more slaves.

When one device is transmitting a logical one, or letting the line float, and a second device is transmitting a logical zero, or holding the line low, the first device can detect that the line is not a logical one. This detection, when used on the SCLx line, is called clock stretching. Clock stretching gives slave devices a mechanism to control the flow of data. When this detection is used on the SDAx line, it is called arbitration. Arbitration ensures that there is only one master device communicating at any single time.

24.3.1 CLOCK STRETCHING

When a slave device has not completed processing data, it can delay the transfer of more data through the process of Clock Stretching. An addressed slave device may hold the SCLx clock line low after receiving or sending a bit, indicating that it is not yet ready to continue. The master that is communicating with the slave will attempt to raise the SCLx line in order to transfer the next bit, but will detect that the clock line has not yet been released. Because the SCLx connection is open-drain, the slave has the ability to hold that line low until it is ready to continue communicating.

Clock stretching allows receivers that cannot keep up with a transmitter to control the flow of incoming data.

24.3.2 ARBITRATION

Each master device must monitor the bus for Start and Stop bits. If the device detects that the bus is busy, it cannot begin a new message until the bus returns to an Idle state.

However, two master devices may try to initiate a transmission on or about the same time. When this occurs, the process of arbitration begins. Each transmitter checks the level of the SDAx data line and compares it to the level that it expects to find. The first transmitter to observe that the two levels don’t match, loses arbitration, and must stop transmitting on the SDAx line.

For example, if one transmitter holds the SDAx line to a logical one (lets it float) and a second transmitter holds it to a logical zero (pulls it low), the result is that the SDAx line will be low. The first transmitter then observes that the level of the line is different than expected and concludes that another transmitter is communicating.

The first transmitter to notice this difference is the one that loses arbitration and must stop driving the SDAx line. If this transmitter is also a master device, it also must stop driving the SCLx line. It then can monitor the lines for a Stop condition before trying to reissue its transmission. In the meantime, the other device that has not noticed any difference between the expected and actual levels on the SDAx line continues with its original transmission. It can do so without any complications, because so far, the transmission appears exactly as expected with no other transmitter disturbing the message.

Slave Transmit mode can also be arbitrated, when a master addresses multiple slaves, but this is less common.

If two master devices are sending a message to two different slave devices at the address stage, the master sending the lower slave address always wins arbitration. When two master devices send messages to the same slave address, and addresses can sometimes refer to multiple slaves, the arbitration process must continue into the data stage.

Arbitration usually occurs very rarely, but it is a necessary process for proper multi-master support.

24.4 I^{2}C Mode Operation

All MSSPx I^{2}C communication is byte oriented and shifted out MSb first. Six SFR registers and 2 interrupt flags interface the module with the PIC® microcontroller and user software. Two pins, SDAx and SCLx, are exercised by the module to communicate with other external I^{2}C devices.

24.4.1 BYTE FORMAT

All communication in I^{2}C is done in 9-bit segments. A byte is sent from a Master to a Slave or vice-versa, followed by an Acknowledge bit sent back. After the 8th falling edge of the SCLx line, the device outputting data on the SDAx changes that pin to an input and reads in an acknowledge value on the next clock pulse.

The clock signal, SCLx, is provided by the master. Data is valid to change while the SCLx signal is low, and sampled on the rising edge of the clock. Changes on the SDAx line while the SCLx line is high define special conditions on the bus, explained below.

24.4.2 DEFINITION OF I^{2}C TERMINOLOGY

There is language and terminology in the description of I^{2}C communication that have definitions specific to I^{2}C. That word usage is defined below and may be used in the rest of this document without explanation. This table was adapted from the Philips I^{2}C specification.

24.4.3 SDAX AND SCLX PINS

Selection of any I^{2}C mode with the SSPxEN bit set, forces the SCLx and SDAx pins to be open-drain. These pins should be set by the user to inputs by setting the appropriate TRIS bits.

Note:	Data is tied to output zero when an I^{2}C mode is enabled.

24.4.4 SDAX HOLD TIME

The hold time of the SDAx pin is selected by the SDAHT bit of the SSPxCON3 register. Hold time is the time SDAx is held valid after the falling edge of SCLx. Setting the SDAHT bit selects a longer 300 ns minimum hold time and may help on buses with large capacitance.

TABLE 24-2: I²C BUS TERMS

TERM	Description
Transmitter	The device which shifts data out onto the bus.
Receiver	The device which shifts data in from the bus.
Master	The device that initiates a transfer, generates clock signals and terminates a transfer.
Slave	The device addressed by the master.
Multi-master	A bus with more than one device that can initiate data transfers.
Arbitration	Procedure to ensure that only one master at a time controls the bus. Winning arbitration ensures that the message is not corrupted.
Synchronization	Procedure to synchronize the clocks of two or more devices on the bus.
Idle	No master is controlling the bus, and both SDAx and SCLx lines are high.
Active	Any time one or more master devices are controlling the bus.
Addressed Slave	Slave device that has received a matching address and is actively being clocked by a master.
Matching Address	Address byte that is clocked into a slave that matches the value stored in SSPxADD.
Write Request	Slave receives a matching address with R/$\overline{W}$ bit clear, and is ready to clock in data.
Read Request	Master sends an address byte with the R/$\overline{W}$ bit set, indicating that it wishes to clock data out of the Slave. This data is the next and all following bytes until a Restart or Stop.
Clock Stretching	When a device on the bus holds SCLx low to stall communication.
Bus Collision	Any time the SDAx line is sampled low by the module while it is outputting and expected high state.

 Preliminary

24.4.5 START CONDITION

The I^{2}C specification defines a Start condition as a transition of SDAx from a high to a low state while SCLx line is high. A Start condition is always generated by the master and signifies the transition of the bus from an Idle to an Active state. Figure 24-10 shows wave forms for Start and Stop conditions.

A bus collision can occur on a Start condition if the module samples the SDAx line low before asserting it low. This does not conform to the I^{2}C Specification that states no bus collision can occur on a Start.

24.4.6 STOP CONDITION

A Stop condition is a transition of the SDAx line from low-to-high state while the SCLx line is high.

Note:	At least one SCLx low time must appear before a Stop is valid, therefore, if the SDAx line goes low then high again while the SCLx line stays high, only the Start condition is detected.

24.4.7 RESTART CONDITION

A Restart is valid any time that a Stop would be valid. A master can issue a Restart if it wishes to hold the bus after terminating the current transfer. A Restart has the same effect on the slave that a Start would, resetting all slave logic and preparing it to clock in an address. The master may want to address the same or another slave.

In 10-bit Addressing Slave mode a Restart is required for the master to clock data out of the addressed slave. Once a slave has been fully addressed, matching both high and low address bytes, the master can issue a Restart and the high address byte with the R/$\overline{W}$ bit set. The slave logic will then hold the clock and prepare to clock out data.

After a full match with R/$\overline{W}$ clear in 10-bit mode, a prior match flag is set and maintained. Until a Stop condition, a high address with R/$\overline{W}$ clear, or high address match fails.

24.4.8 START/STOP CONDITION INTERRUPT MASKING

The SCIE and PCIE bits of the SSPxCON3 register can enable the generation of an interrupt in Slave modes that do not typically support this function. Slave modes where interrupt on Start and Stop detect are already enabled, these bits will have no effect.

FIGURE 24-12: I^{2}C START AND STOP CONDITIONS

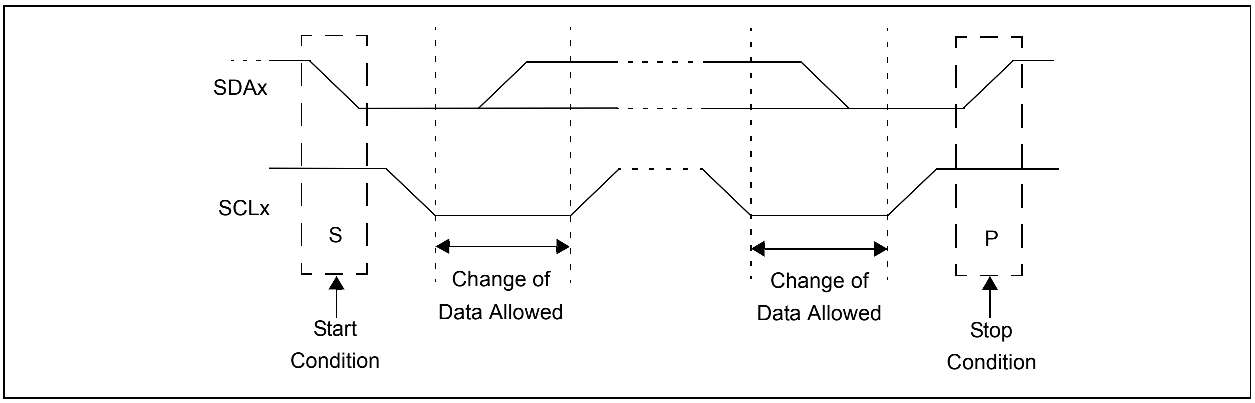
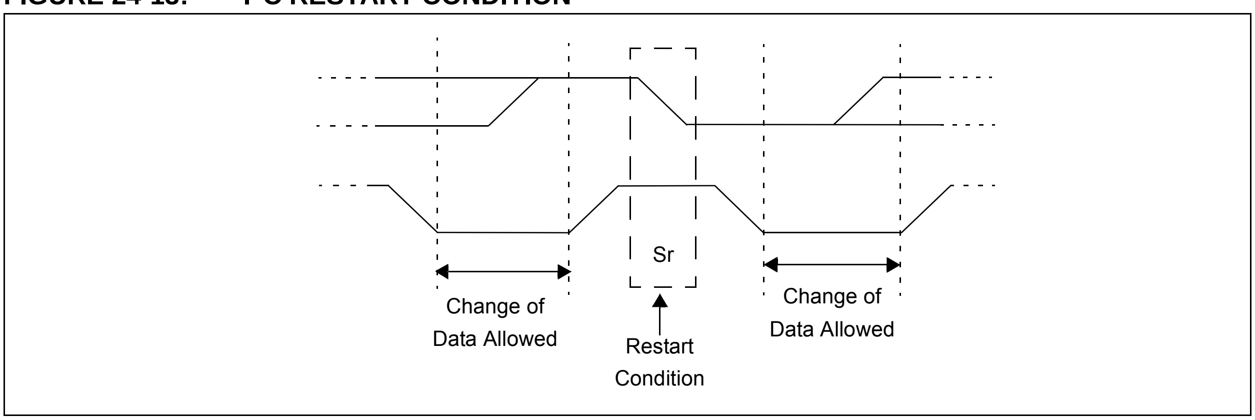


FIGURE 24-13: I^{2}C RESTART CONDITION



24.4.9 ACKNOWLEDGE SEQUENCE

The 9th SCLx pulse for any transferred byte in I^{2}C is dedicated as an Acknowledge. It allows receiving devices to respond back to the transmitter by pulling the SDAx line low. The transmitter must release control of the line during this time to shift in the response. The Acknowledge ($\overline{\text{ACK}}$) is an active-low signal, pulling the SDAx line low indicated to the transmitter that the device has received the transmitted data and is ready to receive more.

The result of an $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ is placed in the ACKSTAT bit of the SSPxCON2 register.

Slave software, when the AHEN and DHEN bits are set, allow the user to set the $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ value sent back to the transmitter. The ACKDT bit of the SSPxCON2 register is set/cleared to determine the response.

Slave hardware will generate an $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ response if the AHEN and DHEN bits of the SSPxCON3 register are clear.

There are certain conditions where an $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ will not be sent by the slave. If the BF bit of the SSPxSTAT register or the SSPxOV bit of the SSPxCON1 register are set when a byte is received.

When the module is addressed, after the 8th falling edge of SCLx on the bus, the ACKTIM bit of the SSPxCON3 register is set. The ACKTIM bit indicates the acknowledge time of the active bus. The ACKTIM Status bit is only active when the AHEN bit or DHEN bit is enabled.

24.5 I^{2}C SLAVE MODE OPERATION

The MSSPx Slave mode operates in one of four modes selected in the SSPxM bits of SSPxCON1 register. The modes can be divided into 7-bit and 10-bit Addressing mode. 10-bit Addressing modes operate the same as 7-bit with some additional overhead for handling the larger addresses.

Modes with Start and Stop bit interrupts operated the same as the other modes with SSPxIF additionally getting set upon detection of a Start, Restart, or Stop condition.

24.5.1 SLAVE MODE ADDRESSES

The SSPxADD register (Register 24-6) contains the Slave mode address. The first byte received after a Start or Restart condition is compared against the value stored in this register. If the byte matches, the value is loaded into the SSPxBUF register and an interrupt is generated. If the value does not match, the module goes idle and no indication is given to the software that anything happened.

The SSPx Mask register (Register 24-5) affects the address matching process. See **Section 24.5.9 "SSPx Mask Register"** for more information.

24.5.1.1 I^{2}C Slave 7-bit Addressing Mode

In 7-bit Addressing mode, the LSb of the received data byte is ignored when determining if there is an address match.

24.5.1.2 I^{2}C Slave 10-bit Addressing Mode

In 10-bit Addressing mode, the first received byte is compared to the binary value of '1 1 1 1 0 A9 A8 0'. A9 and A8 are the two MSb of the 10-bit address and stored in bits 2 and 1 of the SSPxADD register.

After the acknowledge of the high byte, the UA bit is set and SCLx is held low until the user updates SSPxADD with the low address. The low address byte is clocked in and all 8 bits are compared to the low address value in SSPxADD. Even if there is not an address match; SSPxIF and UA are set, and SCLx is held low until SSPxADD is updated to receive a high byte again. When SSPxADD is updated, the UA bit is cleared. This ensures the module is ready to receive the high address byte on the next communication.

A high and low address match as a write request is required at the start of all 10-bit addressing communication. A transmission can be initiated by issuing a Restart once the slave is addressed, and clocking in the high address with the R/$\overline{\text{W}}$ bit set. The slave hardware will then acknowledge the read request and prepare to clock out data. This is only valid for a slave after it has received a complete high and low address byte match.

24.5.2 SLAVE RECEPTION

When the R/$\overline{W}$ bit of a matching received address byte is clear, the R/$\overline{W}$ bit of the SSPxSTAT register is cleared. The received address is loaded into the SSPxBUF register and acknowledged.

When the overflow condition exists for a received address, then not Acknowledge is given. An overflow condition is defined as either bit BF bit of the SSPxSTAT register is set, or bit SSPxOV bit of the SSPxCON1 register is set. The BOEN bit of the SSPxCON3 register modifies this operation. For more information see Register 24-4.

An MSSPx interrupt is generated for each transferred data byte. Flag bit, SSPxIF, must be cleared by software.

When the SEN bit of the SSPxCON2 register is set, SCLx will be held low (clock stretch) following each received byte. The clock must be released by setting the CKP bit of the SSPxCON1 register, except sometimes in 10-bit mode. See **Section 24.2.3 “SPI Master Mode”** for more detail.

24.5.2.1 7-bit Addressing Reception

This section describes a standard sequence of events for the MSSPx module configured as an I^{2}C Slave in 7-bit Addressing mode. All decisions made by hardware or software and their effect on reception. Figure 24-13 and Figure 24-14 is used as a visual reference for this description.

This is a step by step process of what typically must be done to accomplish I^{2}C communication.

1. Start bit detected.
2. S bit of SSPxSTAT is set; SSPxIF is set if interrupt on Start detect is enabled.
3. Matching address with R/$\overline{W}$ bit clear is received.
4. The slave pulls SDAx low sending an $\overline{ACK}$ to the master, and sets SSPxIF bit.
5. Software clears the SSPxIF bit.
6. Software reads received address from SSPxBUF clearing the BF flag.
7. If SEN = 1; Slave software sets CKP bit to release the SCLx line.
8. The master clocks out a data byte.
9. Slave drives SDAx low sending an $\overline{ACK}$ to the master, and sets SSPxIF bit.
10. Software clears SSPxIF.
11. Software reads the received byte from SSPxBUF clearing BF.
12. Steps 8-12 are repeated for all received bytes from the Master.
13. Master sends Stop condition, setting P bit of SSPxSTAT, and the bus goes idle.

24.5.2.2 7-bit Reception with AHEN and DHEN

Slave device reception with AHEN and DHEN set operate the same as without these options with extra interrupts and clock stretching added after the 8th falling edge of SCLx. These additional interrupts allow the slave software to decide whether it wants to $\overline{ACK}$ the receive address or data byte, rather than the hardware. This functionality adds support for PMBus™ that was not present on previous versions of this module.

This list describes the steps that need to be taken by slave software to use these options for I^{2}C communication. Figure 24-15 displays a module using both address and data holding. Figure 24-16 includes the operation with the SEN bit of the SSPxCON2 register set.

1. S bit of SSPxSTAT is set; SSPxIF is set if interrupt on Start detect is enabled.
2. Matching address with R/$\overline{W}$ bit clear is clocked in. SSPxIF is set and CKP cleared after the 8th falling edge of SCLx.
3. Slave clears the SSPxIF.
4. Slave can look at the ACKTIM bit of the SSPxCON3 register to determine if the SSPxIF was after or before the $\overline{ACK}$.
5. Slave reads the address value from SSPxBUF, clearing the BF flag.
6. Slave sets $\overline{ACK}$ value clocked out to the master by setting ACKDT.
7. Slave releases the clock by setting CKP.
8. SSPxIF is set after an $\overline{ACK}$, not after a NACK.
9. If SEN = 1 the slave hardware will stretch the clock after the $\overline{ACK}$.
10. Slave clears SSPxIF.

Note:	SSPxIF is still set after the 9th falling edge of SCLx even if there is no clock stretching and BF has been cleared. Only if NACK is sent to Master is SSPxIF not set

11. SSPxIF set and CKP cleared after 8th falling edge of SCLx for a received data byte.
12. Slave looks at ACKTIM bit of SSPxCON3 to determine the source of the interrupt.
13. Slave reads the received data from SSPxBUF clearing BF.
14. Steps 7-14 are the same for each received data byte.
15. Communication is ended by either the slave sending an $\overline{ACK}$ = 1, or the master sending a Stop condition. If a Stop is sent and Interrupt on Stop Detect is disabled, the slave will only know by polling the P bit of the SSTSTAT register.

FIGURE 24-14: I²C SLAVE, 7-BIT ADDRESS, RECEPTION (SEN = 0, AHEN = 0, DHEN = 0)

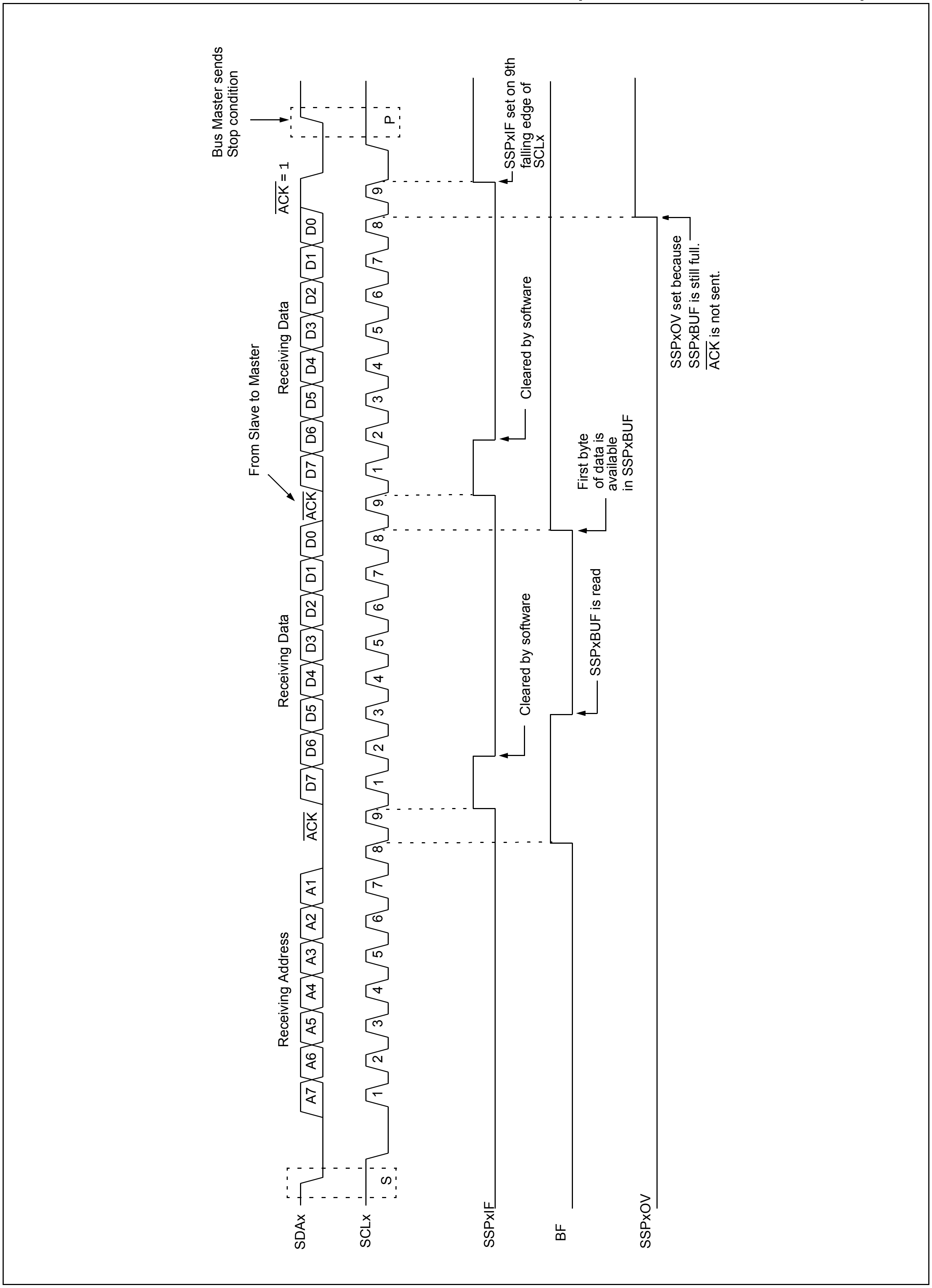


FIGURE 24-15: I^2C SLAVE, 7-BIT ADDRESS, RECEPTION (SEN = 1, AHEN = 0, DHEN = 0)

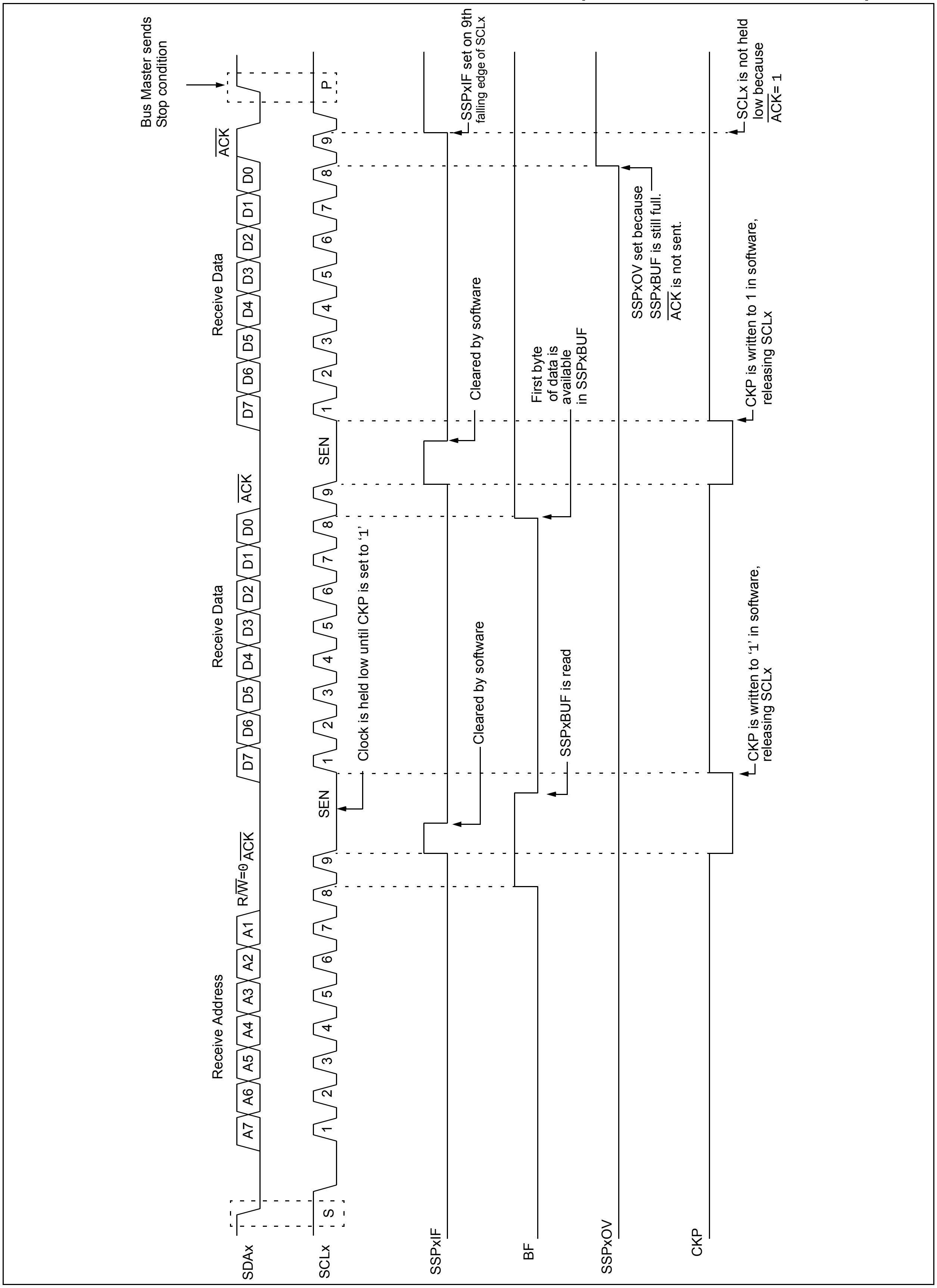


FIGURE 24-16: I²C SLAVE, 7-BIT ADDRESS, RECEPTION (SEN = 0, AHEN = 1, DHEN = 1)

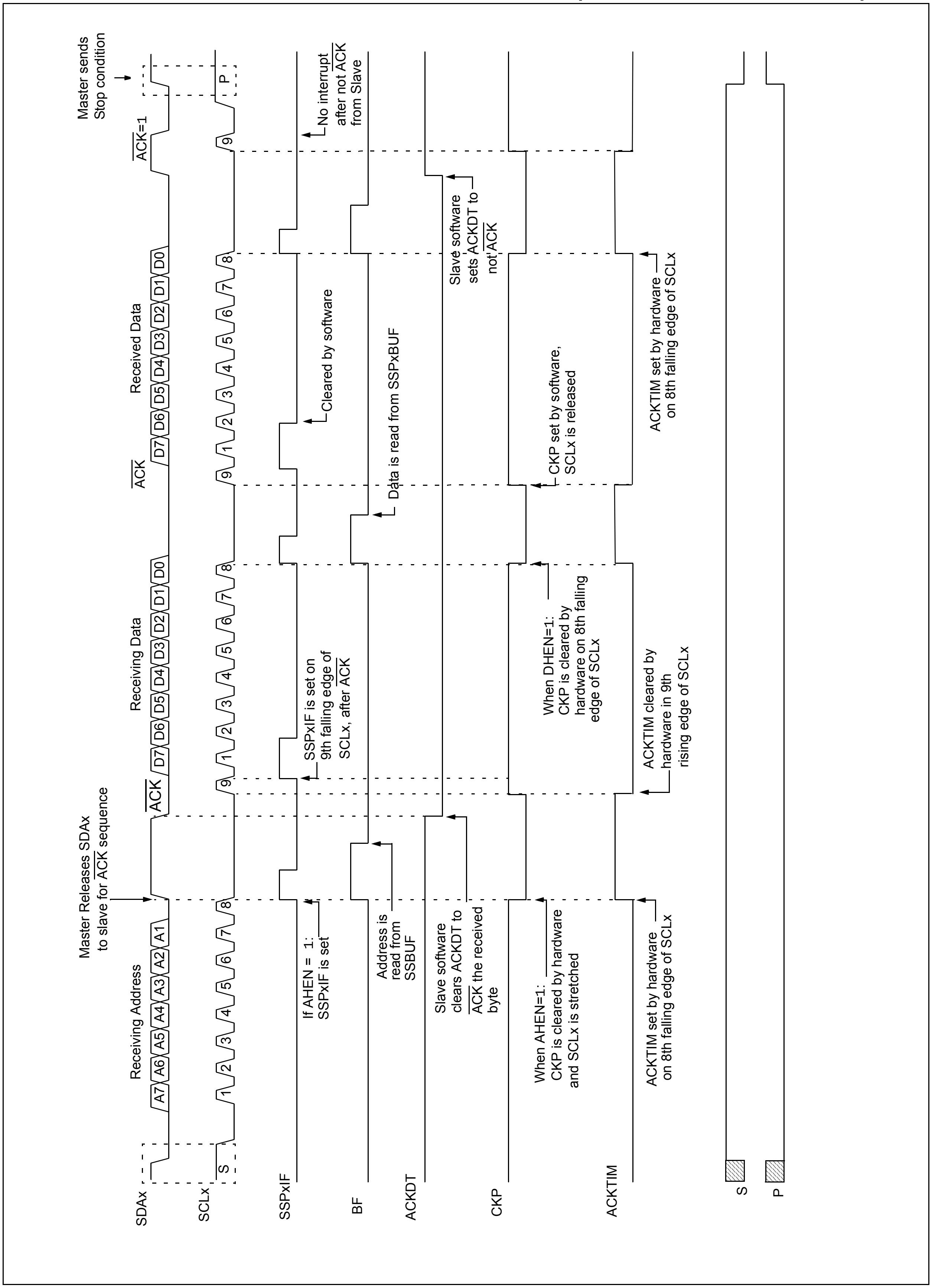
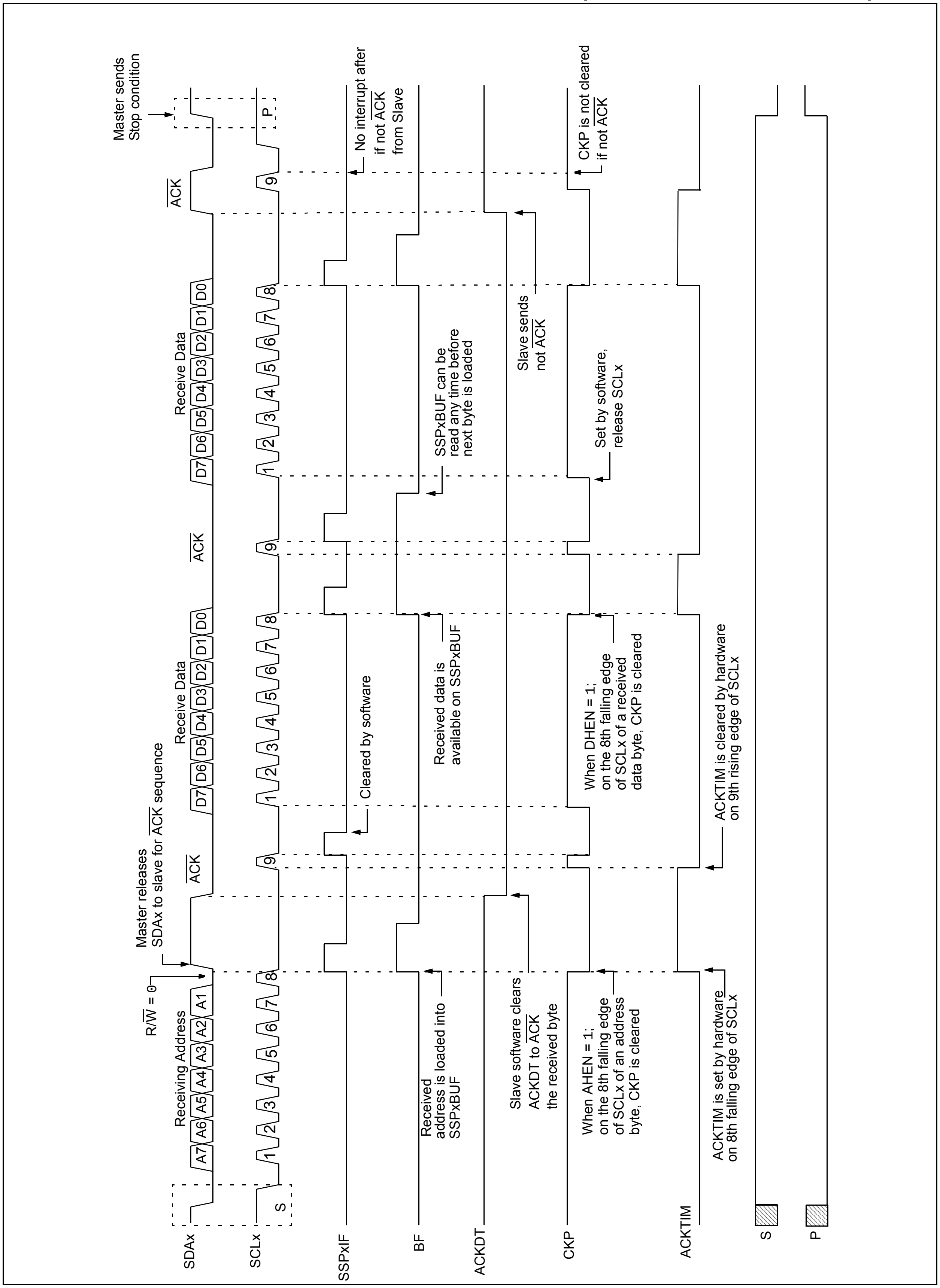


FIGURE 24-17: I²C SLAVE, 7-BIT ADDRESS, RECEPTION (SEN = 1, AHEN = 1, DHEN = 1)



24.5.3 SLAVE TRANSMISSION

When the $R/\overline{W}$ bit of the incoming address byte is set and an address match occurs, the $R/\overline{W}$ bit of the SSPxSTAT register is set. The received address is loaded into the SSPxBUF register, and an $\overline{ACK}$ pulse is sent by the slave on the ninth bit.

Following the $\overline{ACK}$, slave hardware clears the CKP bit and the SCLx pin is held low (see **Section 24.5.6 "Clock Stretching"** for more detail). By stretching the clock, the master will be unable to assert another clock pulse until the slave is done preparing the transmit data.

The transmit data must be loaded into the SSPxBUF register which also loads the SSPxSR register. Then the SCLx pin should be released by setting the CKP bit of the SSPxCON1 register. The eight data bits are shifted out on the falling edge of the SCLx input. This ensures that the SDAx signal is valid during the SCLx high time.

The $\overline{ACK}$ pulse from the master-receiver is latched on the rising edge of the ninth SCLx input pulse. This $\overline{ACK}$ value is copied to the ACKSTAT bit of the SSPxCON2 register. If ACKSTAT is set (not $\overline{ACK}$), then the data transfer is complete. In this case, when the not $\overline{ACK}$ is latched by the slave, the slave goes idle and waits for another occurrence of the Start bit. If the SDAx line was low ($\overline{ACK}$), the next transmit data must be loaded into the SSPxBUF register. Again, the SCLx pin must be released by setting bit CKP.

An MSSPx interrupt is generated for each data transfer byte. The SSPxIF bit must be cleared by software and the SSPxSTAT register is used to determine the status of the byte. The SSPxIF bit is set on the falling edge of the ninth clock pulse.

24.5.3.1 Slave Mode Bus Collision

A slave receives a Read request and begins shifting data out on the SDAx line. If a bus collision is detected and the SBCDE bit of the SSPxCON3 register is set, the BCLxIF bit of the PIRx register is set. Once a bus collision is detected, the slave goes Idle and waits to be addressed again. User software can use the BCLxIF bit to handle a slave bus collision.

24.5.3.2 7-bit Transmission

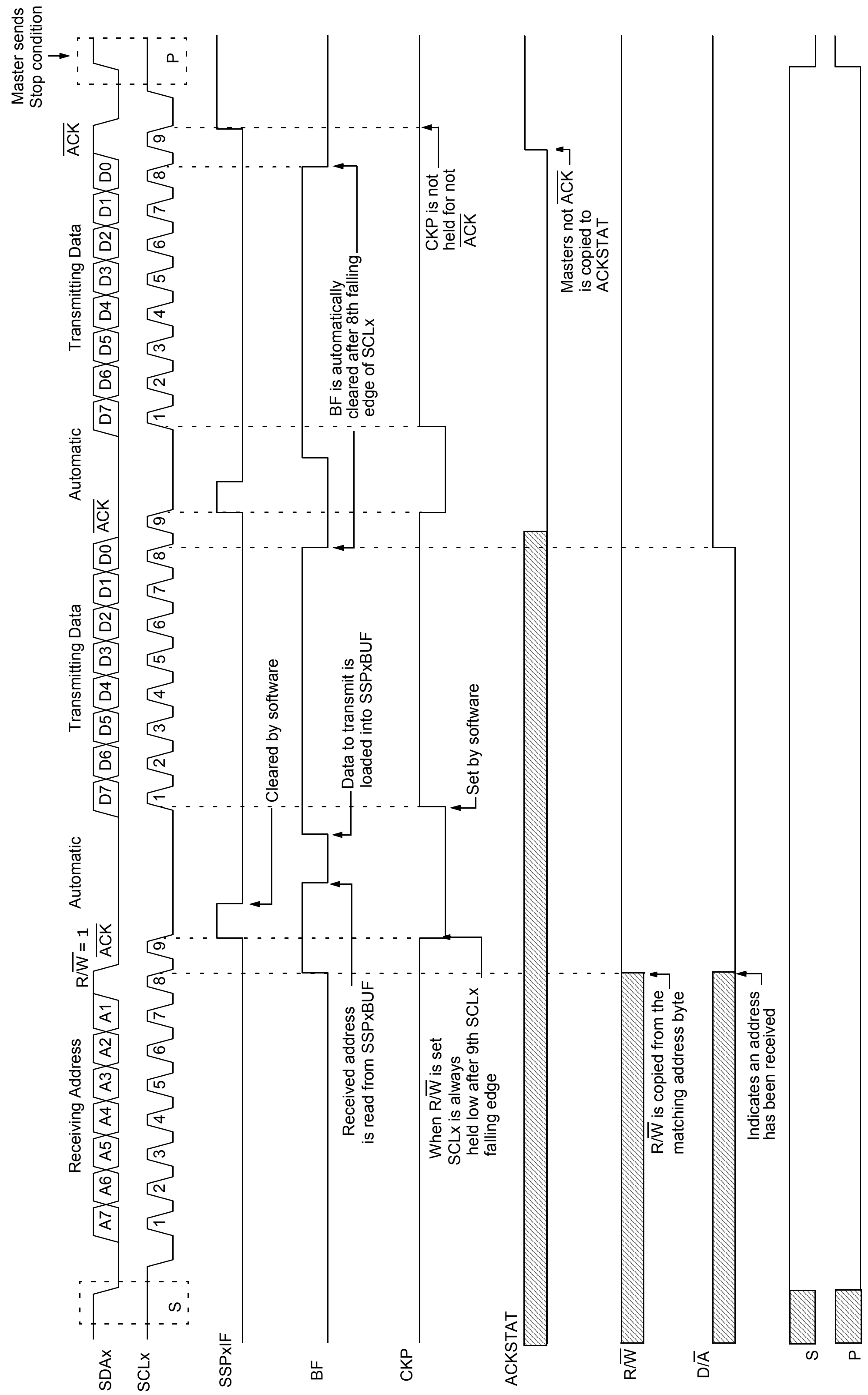
A master device can transmit a read request to a slave, and then clock data out of the slave. The list below outlines what software for a slave will need to do to accomplish a standard transmission. Figure 24-17 can be used as a reference to this list.

1. Master sends a Start condition on SDAx and SCLx.
2. S bit of SSPxSTAT is set; SSPxIF is set if interrupt on Start detect is enabled.
3. Matching address with $R/\overline{W}$ bit set is received by the Slave setting SSPxIF bit.
4. Slave hardware generates an $\overline{ACK}$ and sets SSPxIF.
5. SSPxIF bit is cleared by user.
6. Software reads the received address from SSPxBUF, clearing BF.
7. $R/\overline{W}$ is set so CKP was automatically cleared after the $\overline{ACK}$.
8. The slave software loads the transmit data into SSPxBUF.
9. CKP bit is set releasing SCLx, allowing the master to clock the data out of the slave.
10. SSPxIF is set after the $\overline{ACK}$ response from the master is loaded into the ACKSTAT register.
11. SSPxIF bit is cleared.
12. The slave software checks the ACKSTAT bit to see if the master wants to clock out more data.

> **Note 1:** If the master $\overline{ACK}$s the clock will be stretched.
>
> **2:** ACKSTAT is the only bit updated on the rising edge of SCLx (9th) rather than the falling.

13. Steps 9-13 are repeated for each transmitted byte.
14. If the master sends a not $\overline{ACK}$; the clock is not held, but SSPxIF is still set.
15. The master sends a Restart condition or a Stop.
16. The slave is no longer addressed.

FIGURE 24-18: I²C SLAVE, 7-BIT ADDRESS, TRANSMISSION (AHEN = 0)



24.5.3.3 7-bit Transmission with Address Hold Enabled

Setting the AHEN bit of the SSPxCON3 register enables additional clock stretching and interrupt generation after the 8th falling edge of a received matching address. Once a matching address has been clocked in, CKP is cleared and the SSPxIF interrupt is set.

Figure 24-18 displays a standard waveform of a 7-bit Address Slave Transmission with AHEN enabled.

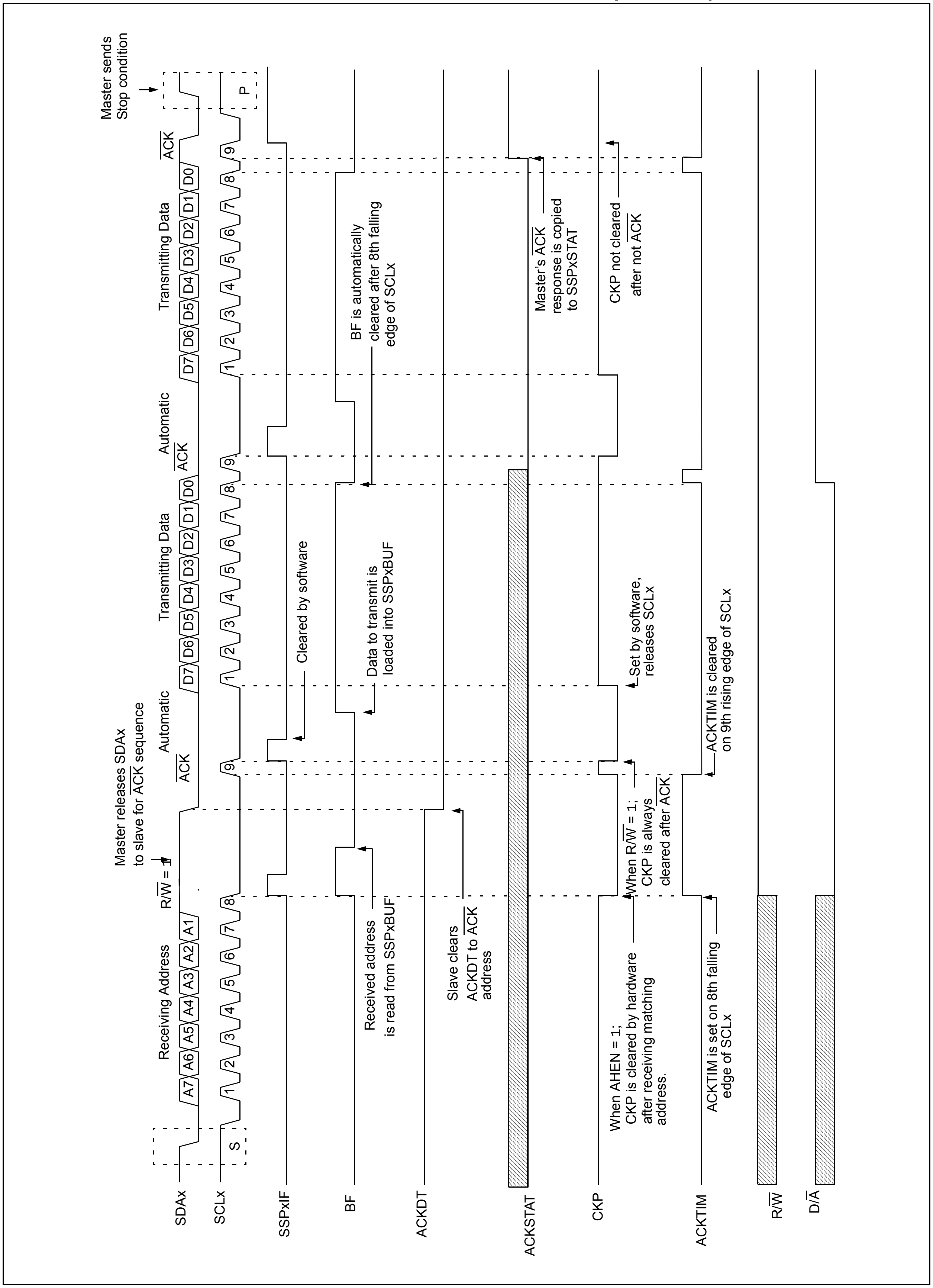
1. Bus starts Idle.
2. Master sends Start condition; the S bit of SSPxSTAT is set; SSPxIF is set if interrupt on Start detect is enabled.
3. Master sends matching address with R/$\overline{W}$ bit set. After the 8th falling edge of the SCLx line the CKP bit is cleared and SSPxIF interrupt is generated.
4. Slave software clears SSPxIF.
5. Slave software reads ACKTIM bit of SSPxCON3 register, and R/$\overline{W}$ and D/$\overline{A}$ of the SSPxSTAT register to determine the source of the interrupt.
6. Slave reads the address value from the SSPxBUF register clearing the BF bit.
7. Slave software decides from this information if it wishes to $\overline{ACK}$ or not $\overline{ACK}$ and sets ACKDT bit of the SSPxCON2 register accordingly.
8. Slave sets the CKP bit releasing SCLx.
9. Master clocks in the $\overline{ACK}$ value from the slave.
10. Slave hardware automatically clears the CKP bit and sets SSPxIF after the $\overline{ACK}$ if the R/$\overline{W}$ bit is set.
11. Slave software clears SSPxIF.
12. Slave loads value to transmit to the master into SSPxBUF setting the BF bit.

Note: SSPxBUF cannot be loaded until after the $\overline{ACK}$.

13. Slave sets CKP bit releasing the clock.
14. Master clocks out the data from the slave and sends an $\overline{ACK}$ value on the 9th SCLx pulse.
15. Slave hardware copies the $\overline{ACK}$ value into the ACKSTAT bit of the SSPxCON2 register.
16. Steps 10-15 are repeated for each byte transmitted to the master from the slave.
17. If the master sends a not $\overline{ACK}$ the slave releases the bus allowing the master to send a Stop and end the communication.

Note: Master must send a not $\overline{ACK}$ on the last byte to ensure that the slave releases the SCLx line to receive a Stop.

FIGURE 24-19: I²C SLAVE, 7-BIT ADDRESS, TRANSMISSION (AHEN = 1)



24.5.4 SLAVE MODE 10-BIT ADDRESS RECEPTION

This section describes a standard sequence of events for the MSSPx module configured as an I^{2}C Slave in 10-bit Addressing mode.

Figure 24-19 is used as a visual reference for this description.

This is a step by step process of what must be done by slave software to accomplish I^{2}C communication.

1. Bus starts Idle.
2. Master sends Start condition; S bit of SSPxSTAT is set; SSPxIF is set if interrupt on Start detect is enabled.
3. Master sends matching high address with R/$\overline{\text{W}}$ bit clear; UA bit of the SSPxSTAT register is set.
4. Slave sends $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ and SSPxIF is set.
5. Software clears the SSPxIF bit.
6. Software reads received address from SSPxBUF clearing the BF flag.
7. Slave loads low address into SSPxADD, releasing SCLx.
8. Master sends matching low address byte to the Slave; UA bit is set.

Note:	Updates to the SSPxADD register are not allowed until after the $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ sequence.

9. Slave sends $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ and SSPxIF is set.

Note:	If the low address does not match, SSPxIF and UA are still set so that the slave software can set SSPxADD back to the high address. BF is not set because there is no match. CKP is unaffected.

10. Slave clears SSPxIF.
11. Slave reads the received matching address from SSPxBUF clearing BF.
12. Slave loads high address into SSPxADD.
13. Master clocks a data byte to the slave and clocks out the slaves $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ on the 9th SCLx pulse; SSPxIF is set.
14. If SEN bit of SSPxCON2 is set, CKP is cleared by hardware and the clock is stretched.
15. Slave clears SSPxIF.
16. Slave reads the received byte from SSPxBUF clearing BF.
17. If SEN is set the slave sets CKP to release the SCLx.
18. Steps 13-17 repeat for each received byte.
19. Master sends Stop to end the transmission.

24.5.5 10-BIT ADDRESSING WITH ADDRESS OR DATA HOLD

Reception using 10-bit addressing with AHEN or DHEN set is the same as with 7-bit modes. The only difference is the need to update the SSPxADD register using the UA bit. All functionality, specifically when the CKP bit is cleared and SCLx line is held low are the same. Figure 24-20 can be used as a reference of a slave in 10-bit addressing with AHEN set.

Figure 24-21 shows a standard waveform for a slave transmitter in 10-bit Addressing mode.

FIGURE 24-20: I²C SLAVE, 10-BIT ADDRESS, RECEPTION (SEN = 1, AHEN = 0, DHEN = 0)

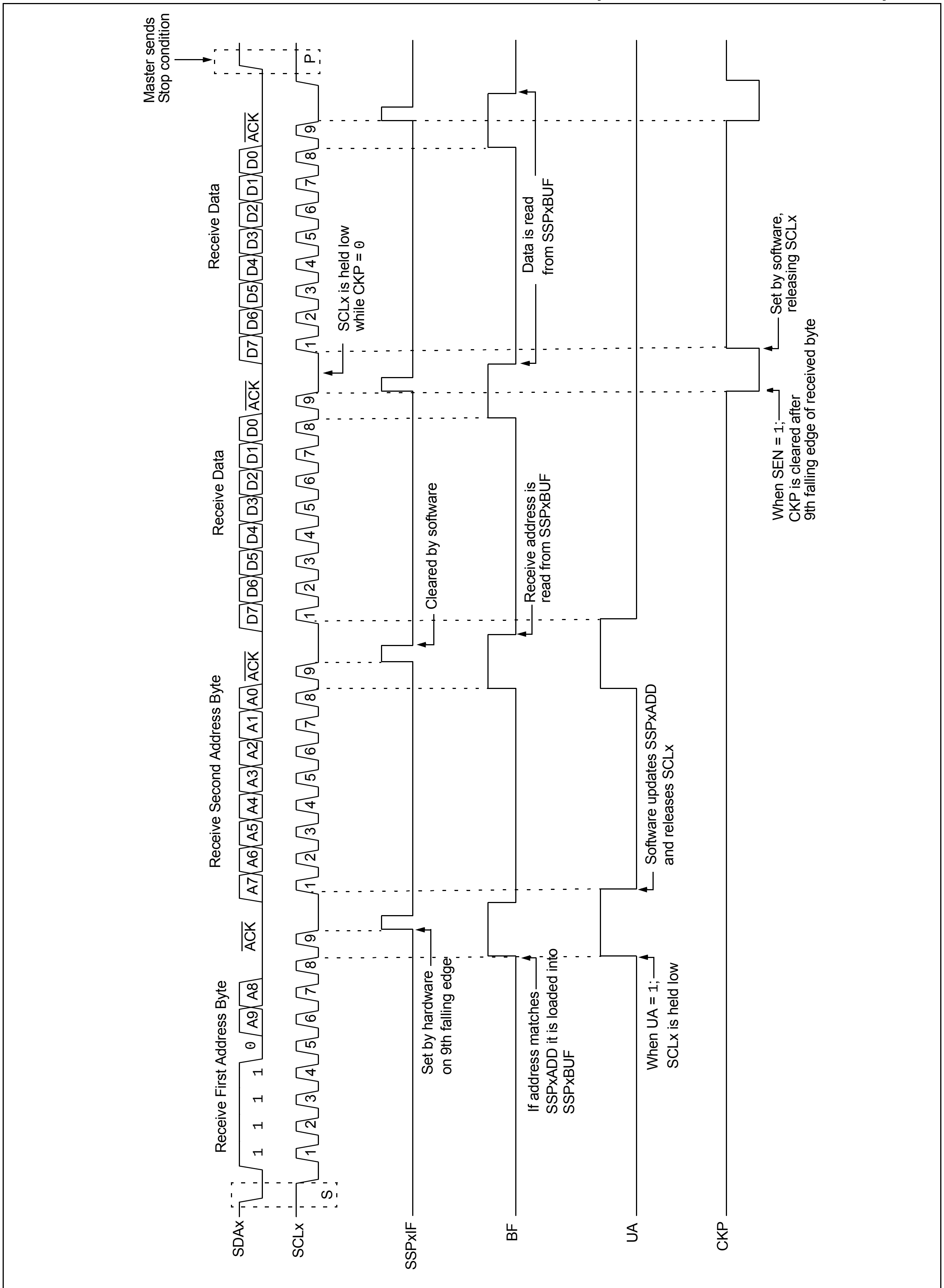
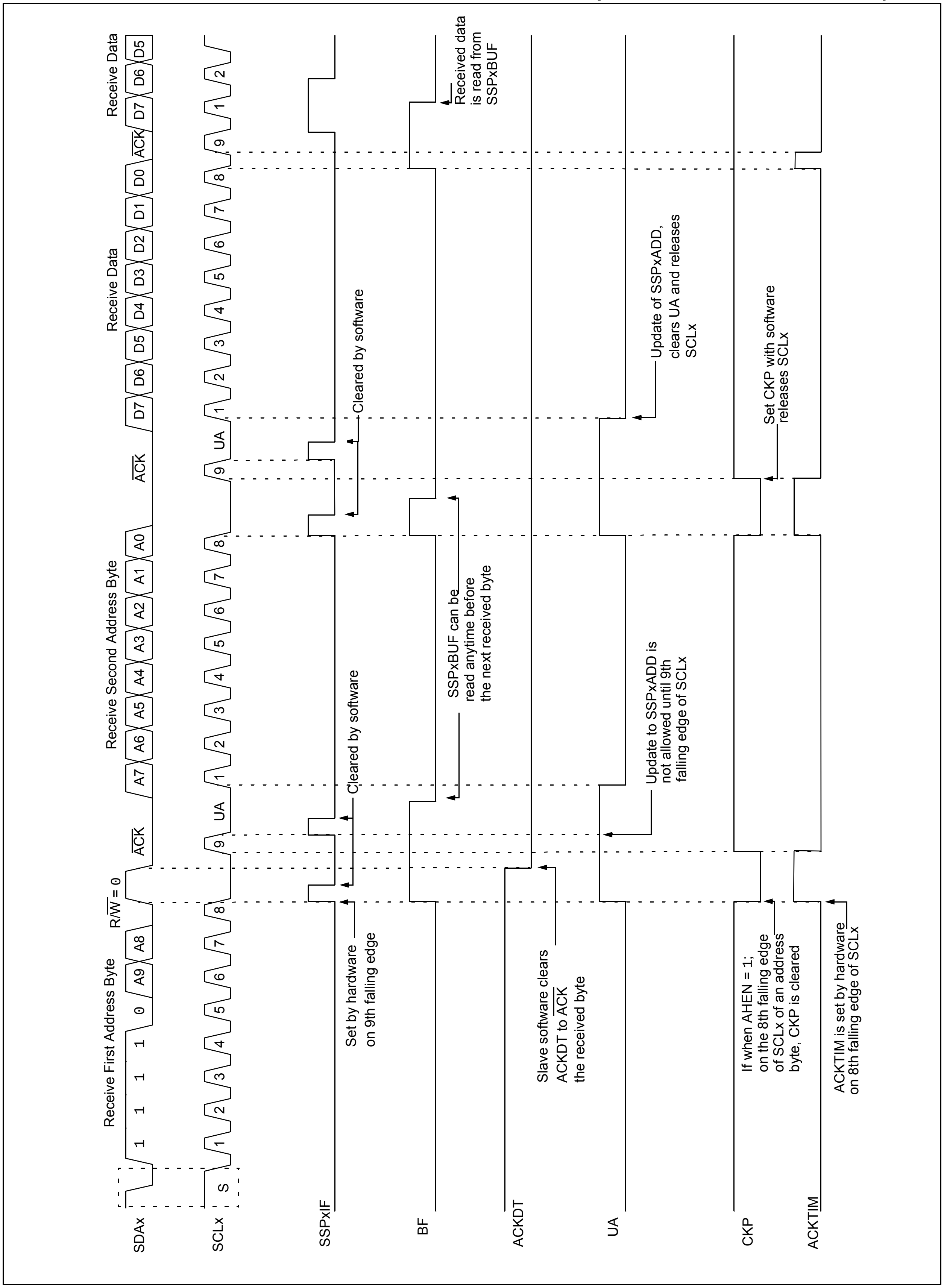
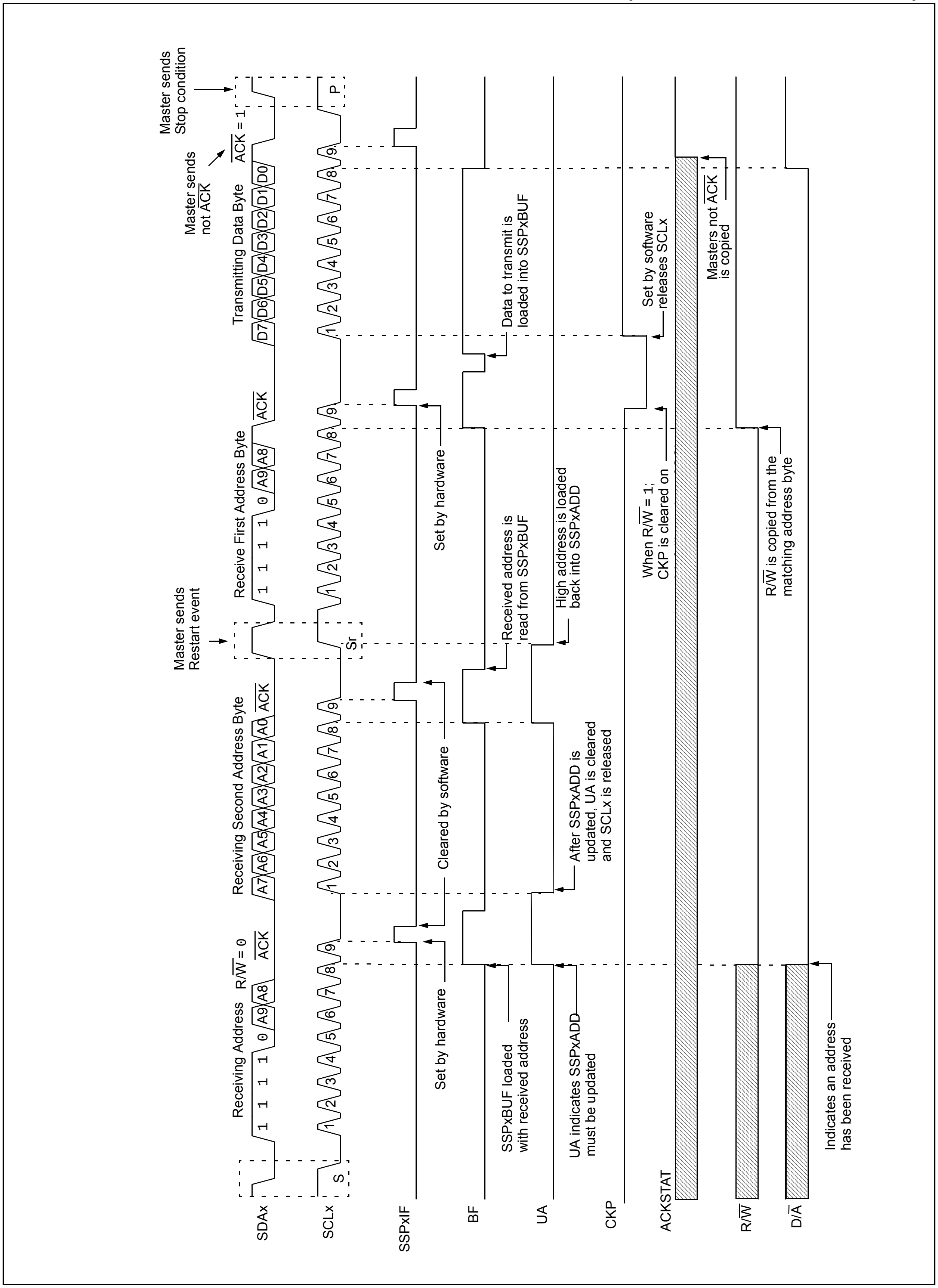


FIGURE 24-21: I²C SLAVE, 10-BIT ADDRESS, RECEPTION (SEN = 0, AHEN = 1, DHEN = 0)



 Preliminary

FIGURE 24-22: I²C SLAVE, 10-BIT ADDRESS, TRANSMISSION (SEN = 0, AHEN = 0, DHEN = 0)



24.5.6 CLOCK STRETCHING

Clock stretching occurs when a device on the bus holds the SCLx line low effectively pausing communication. The slave may stretch the clock to allow more time to handle data or prepare a response for the master device. A master device is not concerned with stretching as anytime it is active on the bus and not transferring data it is stretching. Any stretching done by a slave is invisible to the master software and handled by the hardware that generates SCLx.

The CKP bit of the SSPxCON1 register is used to control stretching in software. Any time the CKP bit is cleared, the module will wait for the SCLx line to go low and then hold it. Setting CKP will release SCLx and allow more communication.

24.5.6.1 Normal Clock Stretching

Following an $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ if the R/$\overline{\text{W}}$ bit of SSPxSTAT is set, a read request, the slave hardware will clear CKP. This allows the slave time to update SSPxBUF with data to transfer to the master. If the SEN bit of SSPxCON2 is set, the slave hardware will always stretch the clock after the $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ sequence. Once the slave is ready; CKP is set by software and communication resumes.

> **Note 1:** The BF bit has no effect on if the clock will be stretched or not. This is different than previous versions of the module that would not stretch the clock, clear CKP, if SSPxBUF was read before the 9th falling edge of SCLx.
>
> **2:** Previous versions of the module did not stretch the clock for a transmission if SSPxBUF was loaded before the 9th falling edge of SCLx. It is now always cleared for read requests.

24.5.6.2 10-bit Addressing Mode

In 10-bit Addressing mode, when the UA bit is set, the clock is always stretched. This is the only time the SCLx is stretched without CKP being cleared. SCLx is released immediately after a write to SSPxADD.

> **Note:** Previous versions of the module did not stretch the clock if the second address byte did not match.

24.5.6.3 Byte NACKing

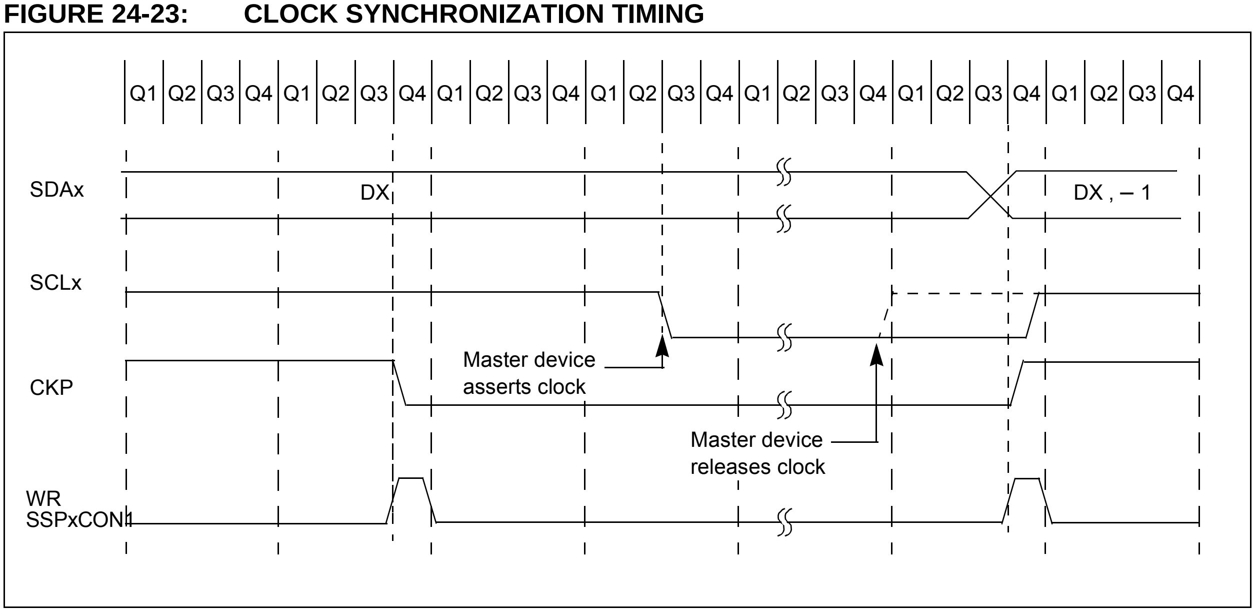
When AHEN bit of SSPxCON3 is set; CKP is cleared by hardware after the 8th falling edge of SCLx for a received matching address byte. When DHEN bit of SSPxCON3 is set; CKP is cleared after the 8th falling edge of SCLx for received data.

Stretching after the 8th falling edge of SCLx allows the slave to look at the received address or data and decide if it wants to ACK the received data.

24.5.7 CLOCK SYNCHRONIZATION AND THE CKP BIT

Any time the CKP bit is cleared, the module will wait for the SCLx line to go low and then hold it. However, clearing the CKP bit will not assert the SCLx output low until the SCLx output is already sampled low. Therefore, the CKP bit will not assert the SCLx line until an external I^{2}C master device has already asserted the SCLx line. The SCLx output will remain low until the CKP bit is set and all other devices on the I^{2}C bus have released SCLx. This ensures that a write to the CKP bit will not violate the minimum high time requirement for SCLx (see Figure 24-22).

FIGURE 24-23: CLOCK SYNCHRONIZATION TIMING



 Preliminary

24.5.8 GENERAL CALL ADDRESS SUPPORT

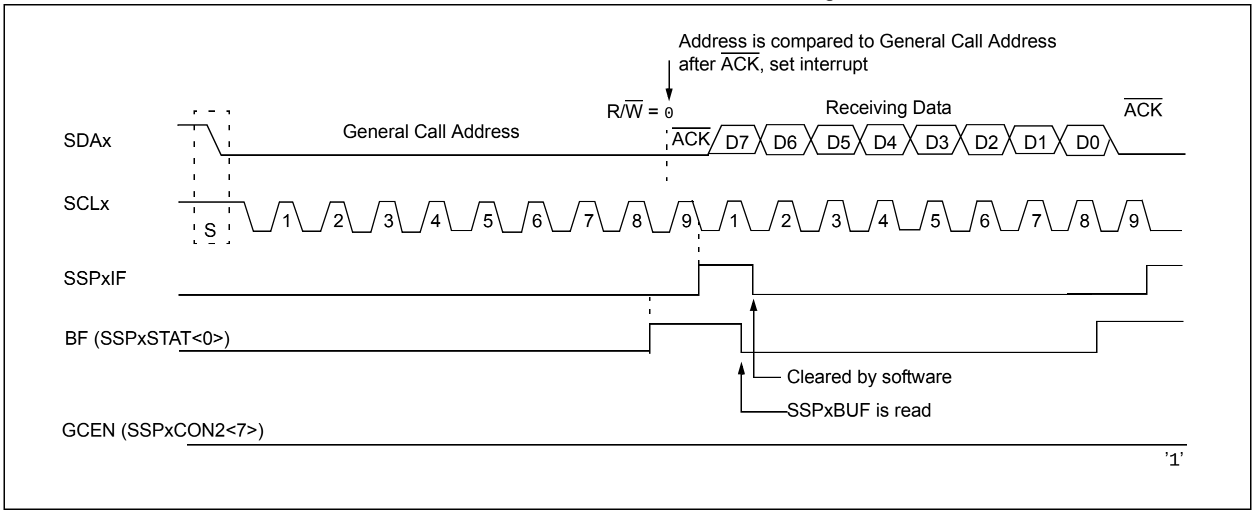
The addressing procedure for the I^{2}C bus is such that the first byte after the Start condition usually determines which device will be the slave addressed by the master device. The exception is the general call address which can address all devices. When this address is used, all devices should, in theory, respond with an acknowledge.

The general call address is a reserved address in the I^{2}C protocol, defined as address 0x00. When the GCEN bit of the SSPxCON2 register is set, the slave module will automatically $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ the reception of this address regardless of the value stored in SSPxADD. After the slave clocks in an address of all zeros with the R/$\overline{\text{W}}$ bit clear, an interrupt is generated and slave software can read SSPxBUF and respond. Figure 24-23 shows a general call reception sequence.

In 10-bit Address mode, the UA bit will not be set on the reception of the general call address. The slave will prepare to receive the second byte as data, just as it would in 7-bit mode.

If the AHEN bit of the SSPxCON3 register is set, just as with any other address reception, the slave hardware will stretch the clock after the 8th falling edge of SCLx. The slave must then set its ACKDT value and release the clock with communication progressing as it would normally.

FIGURE 24-24: SLAVE MODE GENERAL CALL ADDRESS SEQUENCE



24.5.9 SSPX MASK REGISTER

An SSPx Mask (SSPxMSK) register (Register 24-5) is available in I^{2}C Slave mode as a mask for the value held in the SSPxSR register during an address comparison operation. A zero (‘0’) bit in the SSPxMSK register has the effect of making the corresponding bit of the received address a “don’t care”.

This register is reset to all ‘1’s upon any Reset condition and, therefore, has no effect on standard SSPx operation until written with a mask value.

The SSPx Mask register is active during:

- 7-bit Address mode: address compare of A<7:1>.
- 10-bit Address mode: address compare of A<7:0> only. The SSPx mask has no effect during the reception of the first (high) byte of the address.

24.6 I²C MASTER MODE

Master mode is enabled by setting and clearing the appropriate SSPxM bits in the SSPxCON1 register and by setting the SSPxEN bit. The SDA and SCK pins must be configured as inputs. The MSSP peripheral hardware will override the output driver TRIS controls when necessary to drive the pins low.

Master mode of operation is supported by interrupt generation on the detection of the Start and Stop conditions. The Stop (P) and Start (S) bits are cleared from a Reset or when the MSSPx module is disabled. Control of the I²C bus may be taken when the P bit is set, or the bus is Idle.

In Firmware Controlled Master mode, user code conducts all I²C bus operations based on Start and Stop bit condition detection. Start and Stop condition detection is the only active circuitry in this mode. All other communication is done by the user software directly manipulating the SDAx and SCLx lines.

The following events will cause the SSPx Interrupt Flag bit, SSPxIF, to be set (SSPx interrupt, if enabled):

- Start condition detected
- Stop condition detected
- Data transfer byte transmitted/received
- Acknowledge transmitted/received
- Repeated Start generated

Note 1: The MSSPx module, when configured in I²C Master mode, does not allow queueing of events. For instance, the user is not allowed to initiate a Start condition and immediately write the SSPxBUF register to initiate transmission before the Start condition is complete. In this case, the SSPxBUF will not be written to and the WCOL bit will be set, indicating that a write to the SSPxBUF did not occur

2: When in Master mode, Start/Stop detection is masked and an interrupt is generated when the SEN/PEN bit is cleared and the generation is complete.

24.6.1 I²C MASTER MODE OPERATION

The master device generates all of the serial clock pulses and the Start and Stop conditions. A transfer is ended with a Stop condition or with a Repeated Start condition. Since the Repeated Start condition is also the beginning of the next serial transfer, the I²C bus will not be released.

In Master Transmitter mode, serial data is output through SDAx, while SCLx outputs the serial clock. The first byte transmitted contains the slave address of the receiving device (7 bits) and the Read/$\overline{\text{Write}}$ (R/$\overline{\text{W}}$) bit. In this case, the R/$\overline{\text{W}}$ bit will be logic '0'. Serial data is transmitted 8 bits at a time. After each byte is transmitted, an Acknowledge bit is received. Start and Stop conditions are output to indicate the beginning and the end of a serial transfer.

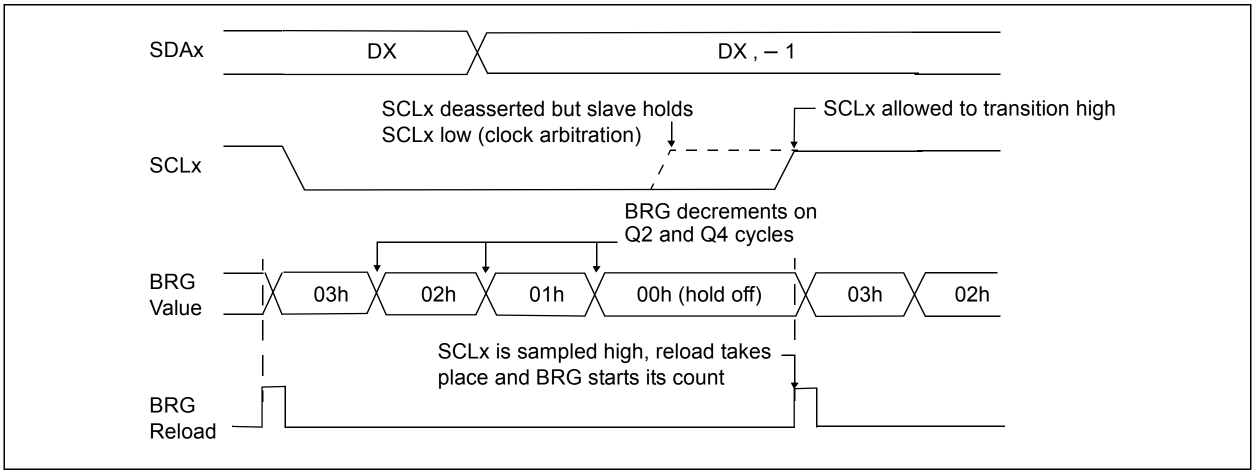
In Master Receive mode, the first byte transmitted contains the slave address of the transmitting device (7 bits) and the R/$\overline{\text{W}}$ bit. In this case, the R/$\overline{\text{W}}$ bit will be logic '1'. Thus, the first byte transmitted is a 7-bit slave address followed by a '1' to indicate the receive bit. Serial data is received via SDAx, while SCLx outputs the serial clock. Serial data is received 8 bits at a time. After each byte is received, an Acknowledge bit is transmitted. Start and Stop conditions indicate the beginning and end of transmission.

A Baud Rate Generator is used to set the clock frequency output on SCLx. See **Section 24.7 "Baud Rate Generator"** for more detail.

24.6.2 CLOCK ARBITRATION

Clock arbitration occurs when the master, during any receive, transmit or Repeated Start/Stop condition, releases the SCLx pin (SCLx allowed to float high). When the SCLx pin is allowed to float high, the Baud Rate Generator (BRG) is suspended from counting until the SCLx pin is actually sampled high. When the SCLx pin is sampled high, the Baud Rate Generator is reloaded with the contents of SSPxADD<7:0> and begins counting. This ensures that the SCLx high time will always be at least one BRG rollover count in the event that the clock is held low by an external device (Figure 24-25).

FIGURE 24-25: BAUD RATE GENERATOR TIMING WITH CLOCK ARBITRATION



24.6.3 WCOL STATUS FLAG

If the user writes the SSPxBUF when a Start, Restart, Stop, Receive or Transmit sequence is in progress, the WCOL is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write does not occur). Any time the WCOL bit is set it indicates that an action on SSPxBUF was attempted while the module was not Idle.

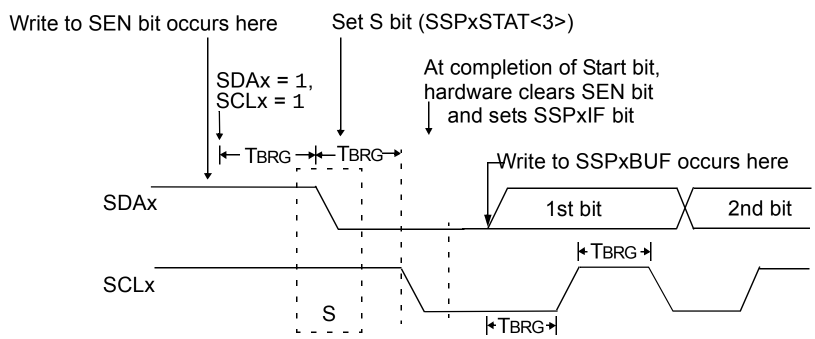
Note:	Because queueing of events is not allowed, writing to the lower 5 bits of SSPxCON2 is disabled until the Start condition is complete.

24.6.4 I²C MASTER MODE START CONDITION TIMING

To initiate a Start condition, the user sets the Start Enable bit, SEN bit of the SSPxCON2 register. If the SDAx and SCLx pins are sampled high, the Baud Rate Generator is reloaded with the contents of SSPxADD<7:0> and starts its count. If SCLx and SDAx are both sampled high when the Baud Rate Generator times out (TBRG), the SDAx pin is driven low. The action of the SDAx being driven low while SCLx is high is the Start condition and causes the S bit of the SSPxSTAT1 register to be set. Following this, the Baud Rate Generator is reloaded with the contents of SSPxADD<7:0> and resumes its count. When the Baud Rate Generator times out (TBRG), the SEN bit of the SSPxCON2 register will be automatically cleared by hardware; the Baud Rate Generator is suspended, leaving the SDAx line held low and the Start condition is complete.

> **Note 1:** If at the beginning of the Start condition, the SDAx and SCLx pins are already sampled low, or if during the Start condition, the SCLx line is sampled low before the SDAx line is driven low, a bus collision occurs, the Bus Collision Interrupt Flag, BCLxIF, is set, the Start condition is aborted and the I²C module is reset into its Idle state.
>
> **2:** The Philips I²C Specification states that a bus collision cannot occur on a Start.

FIGURE 24-26: FIRST START BIT TIMING



 Preliminary

24.6.5 I²C MASTER MODE REPEATED START CONDITION TIMING

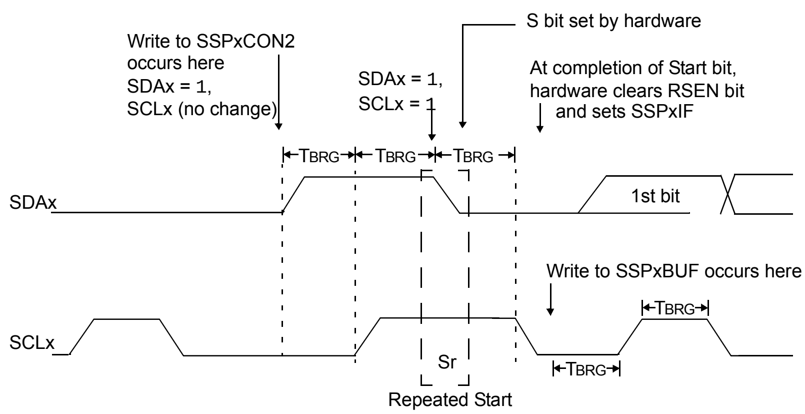
A Repeated Start condition occurs when the RSEN bit of the SSPxCON2 register is programmed high and the Master state machine is no longer active. When the RSEN bit is set, the SCLx pin is asserted low. When the SCLx pin is sampled low, the Baud Rate Generator is loaded and begins counting. The SDAx pin is released (brought high) for one Baud Rate Generator count (TBRG). When the Baud Rate Generator times out, if SDAx is sampled high, the SCLx pin will be deasserted (brought high). When SCLx is sampled high, the Baud Rate Generator is reloaded and begins counting. SDAx and SCLx must be sampled high for one TBRG. This action is then followed by assertion of the SDAx pin (SDAx = 0) for one TBRG while SCLx is high. SCLx is asserted low. Following this, the RSEN bit of the SSPxCON2 register will be automatically cleared and the Baud Rate Generator will not be reloaded, leaving the SDAx pin held low. As soon as a Start condition is detected on the SDAx and SCLx pins, the S bit of the SSPxSTAT register will be set. The SSPxIF bit will not be set until the Baud Rate Generator has timed out.

Note 1: If RSEN is programmed while any other event is in progress, it will not take effect.

2: A bus collision during the Repeated Start condition occurs if:

- SDAx is sampled low when SCLx goes from low-to-high.
- SCLx goes low before SDAx is asserted low. This may indicate that another master is attempting to transmit a data ‘1’.

FIGURE 24-27: REPEAT START CONDITION WAVEFORM



24.6.6 I²C MASTER MODE TRANSMISSION

Transmission of a data byte, a 7-bit address or the other half of a 10-bit address is accomplished by simply writing a value to the SSPxBUF register. This action will set the Buffer Full flag bit, BF, and allow the Baud Rate Generator to begin counting and start the next transmission. Each bit of address/data will be shifted out onto the SDAx pin after the falling edge of SCLx is asserted. SCLx is held low for one Baud Rate Generator rollover count (TBRG). Data should be valid before SCLx is released high. When the SCLx pin is released high, it is held that way for TBRG. The data on the SDAx pin must remain stable for that duration and some hold time after the next falling edge of SCLx. After the eighth bit is shifted out (the falling edge of the eighth clock), the BF flag is cleared and the master releases SDAx. This allows the slave device being addressed to respond with an $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ bit during the ninth bit time if an address match occurred, or if data was received properly. The status of $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ is written into the ACKSTAT bit on the rising edge of the ninth clock. If the master receives an Acknowledge, the Acknowledge Status bit, ACKSTAT, is cleared. If not, the bit is set. After the ninth clock, the SSPxIF bit is set and the master clock (Baud Rate Generator) is suspended until the next data byte is loaded into the SSPxBUF, leaving SCLx low and SDAx unchanged (Figure 24-27).

After the write to the SSPxBUF, each bit of the address will be shifted out on the falling edge of SCLx until all seven address bits and the R/$\overline{\text{W}}$ bit are completed. On the falling edge of the eighth clock, the master will release the SDAx pin, allowing the slave to respond with an Acknowledge. On the falling edge of the ninth clock, the master will sample the SDAx pin to see if the address was recognized by a slave. The status of the $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ bit is loaded into the ACKSTAT Status bit of the SSPxCON2 register. Following the falling edge of the ninth clock transmission of the address, the SSPxIF is set, the BF flag is cleared and the Baud Rate Generator is turned off until another write to the SSPxBUF takes place, holding SCLx low and allowing SDAx to float.

24.6.6.1 BF Status Flag

In Transmit mode, the BF bit of the SSPxSTAT register is set when the CPU writes to SSPxBUF and is cleared when all 8 bits are shifted out.

24.6.6.2 WCOL Status Flag

If the user writes the SSPxBUF when a transmit is already in progress (i.e., SSPxSR is still shifting out a data byte), the WCOL is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write does not occur).

WCOL must be cleared by software before the next transmission.

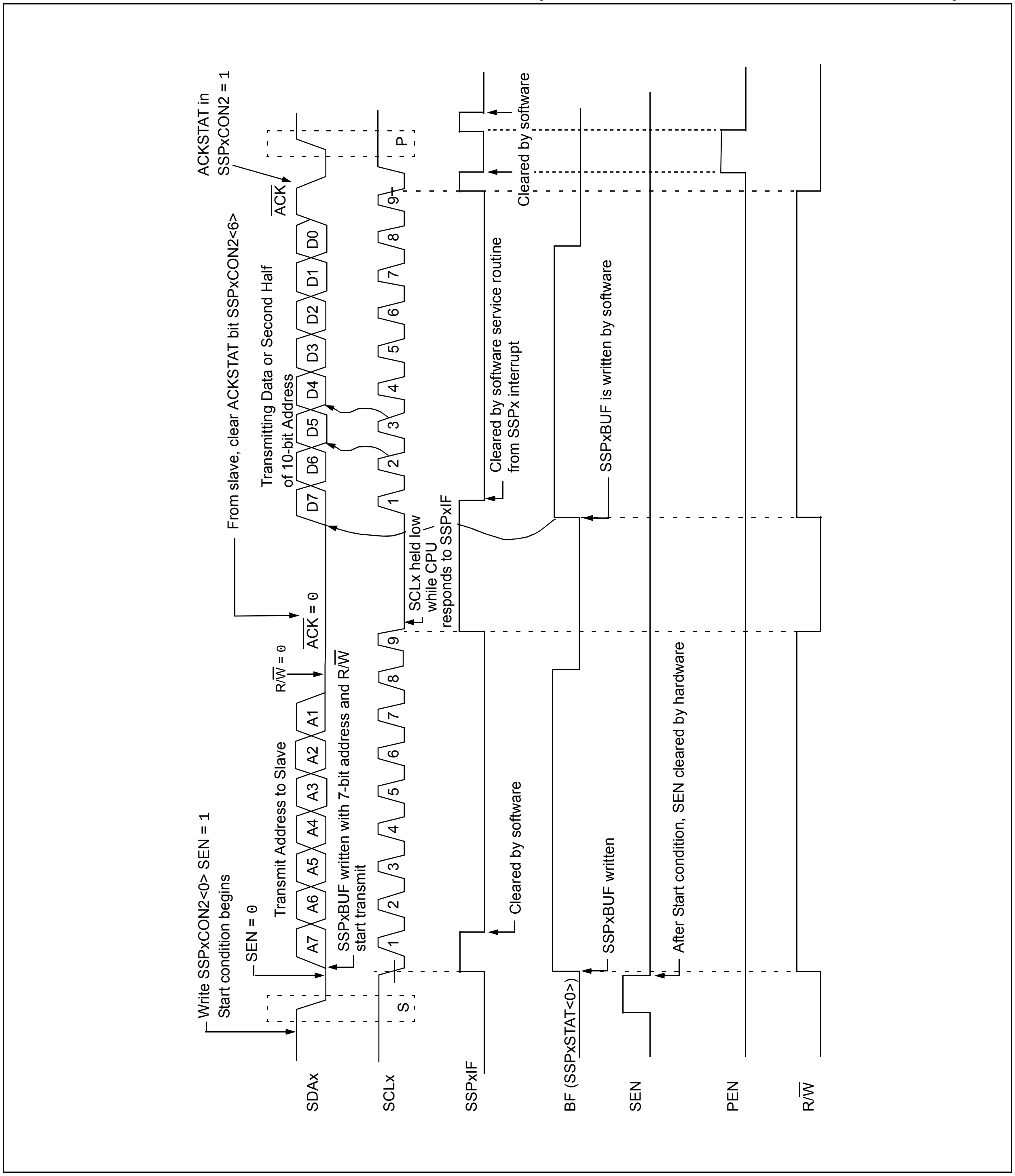
24.6.6.3 ACKSTAT Status Flag

In Transmit mode, the ACKSTAT bit of the SSPxCON2 register is cleared when the slave has sent an Acknowledge ($\overline{\text{ACK}}$ = `0`) and is set when the slave does not Acknowledge ($\overline{\text{ACK}}$ = `1`). A slave sends an Acknowledge when it has recognized its address (including a general call), or when the slave has properly received its data.

24.6.6.4 Typical transmit sequence:

1. The user generates a Start condition by setting the SEN bit of the SSPxCON2 register.
2. SSPxIF is set by hardware on completion of the Start.
3. SSPxIF is cleared by software.
4. The MSSPx module will wait the required start time before any other operation takes place.
5. The user loads the SSPxBUF with the slave address to transmit.
6. Address is shifted out the SDAx pin until all 8 bits are transmitted. Transmission begins as soon as SSPxBUF is written to.
7. The MSSPx module shifts in the $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ bit from the slave device and writes its value into the ACKSTAT bit of the SSPxCON2 register.
8. The MSSPx module generates an interrupt at the end of the ninth clock cycle by setting the SSPxIF bit.
9. The user loads the SSPxBUF with eight bits of data.
10. Data is shifted out the SDAx pin until all 8 bits are transmitted.
11. The MSSPx module shifts in the $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ bit from the slave device and writes its value into the ACKSTAT bit of the SSPxCON2 register.
12. Steps 8-11 are repeated for all transmitted data bytes.
13. The user generates a Stop or Restart condition by setting the PEN or RSEN bits of the SSPxCON2 register. Interrupt is generated once the Stop/Restart condition is complete.

FIGURE 24-28: I^2C MASTER MODE WAVEFORM (TRANSMISSION, 7 OR 10-BIT ADDRESS)



24.6.7 I2C MASTER MODE RECEPTION

Master mode reception is enabled by programming the Receive Enable bit, RCEN bit of the SSPxCON2 register.

Note:	The MSSPx module must be in an Idle state before the RCEN bit is set or the RCEN bit will be disregarded.

The Baud Rate Generator begins counting and on each rollover, the state of the SCLx pin changes (high-to-low/low-to-high) and data is shifted into the SSPxSR. After the falling edge of the eighth clock, the receive enable flag is automatically cleared, the contents of the SSPxSR are loaded into the SSPxBUF, the BF flag bit is set, the SSPxIF flag bit is set and the Baud Rate Generator is suspended from counting, holding SCLx low. The MSSPx is now in Idle state awaiting the next command. When the buffer is read by the CPU, the BF flag bit is automatically cleared. The user can then send an Acknowledge bit at the end of reception by setting the Acknowledge Sequence Enable, ACKEN bit of the SSPxCON2 register.

24.6.7.1 BF Status Flag

In receive operation, the BF bit is set when an address or data byte is loaded into SSPxBUF from SSPxSR. It is cleared when the SSPxBUF register is read.

24.6.7.2 SSPxOV Status Flag

In receive operation, the SSPxOV bit is set when 8 bits are received into the SSPxSR and the BF flag bit is already set from a previous reception.

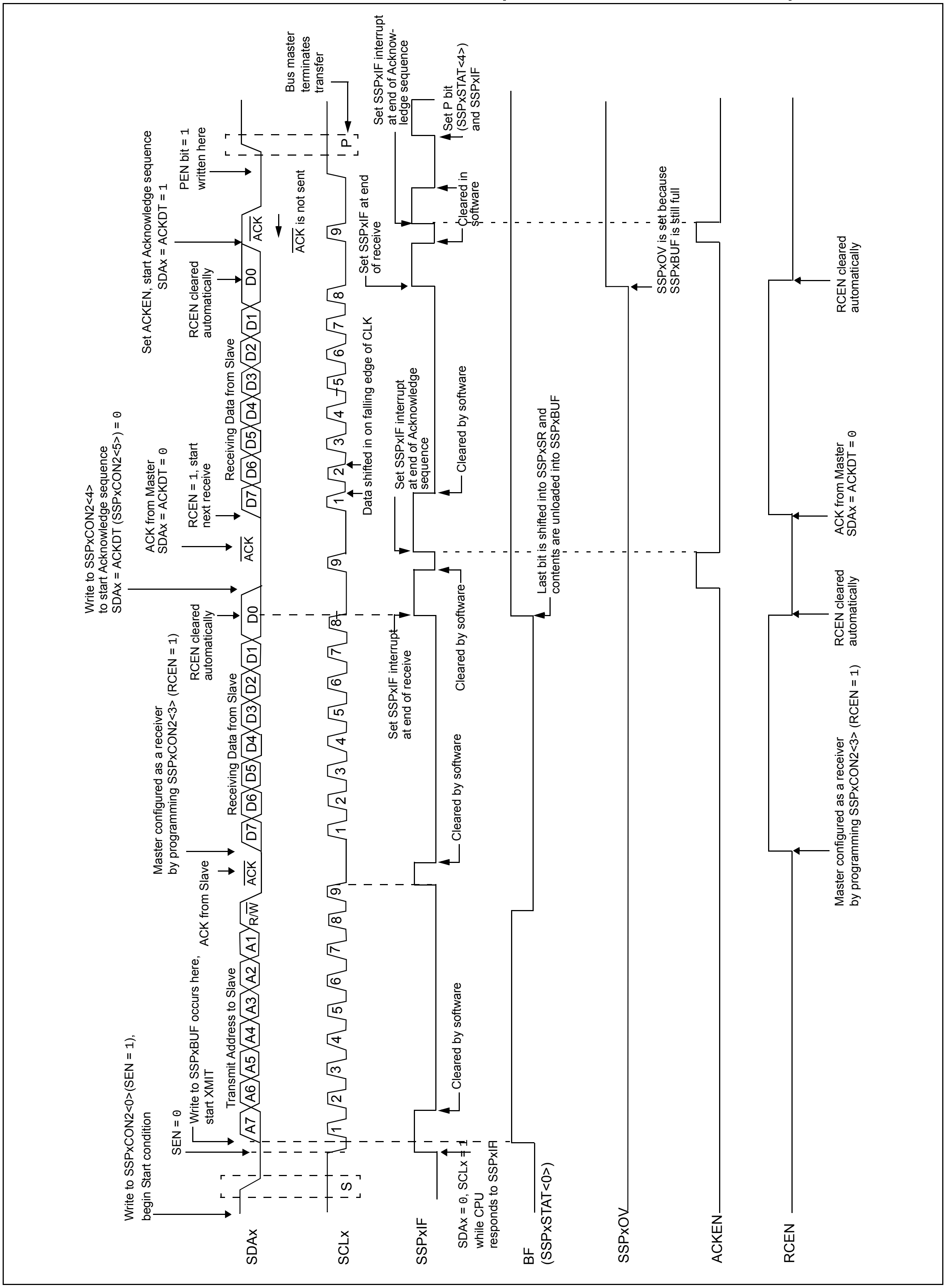
24.6.7.3 WCOL Status Flag

If the user writes the SSPxBUF when a receive is already in progress (i.e., SSPxSR is still shifting in a data byte), the WCOL bit is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write does not occur).

24.6.7.4 Typical Receive Sequence:

1. The user generates a Start condition by setting the SEN bit of the SSPxCON2 register.
2. SSPxIF is set by hardware on completion of the Start.
3. SSPxIF is cleared by software.
4. User writes SSPxBUF with the slave address to transmit and the R/$\overline{\text{W}}$ bit set.
5. Address is shifted out the SDAx pin until all 8 bits are transmitted. Transmission begins as soon as SSPxBUF is written to.
6. The MSSPx module shifts in the $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ bit from the slave device and writes its value into the ACKSTAT bit of the SSPxCON2 register.
7. The MSSPx module generates an interrupt at the end of the ninth clock cycle by setting the SSPxIF bit.
8. User sets the RCEN bit of the SSPxCON2 register and the Master clocks in a byte from the slave.
9. After the 8th falling edge of SCLx, SSPxIF and BF are set.
10. Master clears SSPxIF and reads the received byte from SSPxUF, clears BF.
11. Master sets $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ value sent to slave in ACKDT bit of the SSPxCON2 register and initiates the $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ by setting the ACKEN bit.
12. Masters $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ is clocked out to the Slave and SSPxIF is set.
13. User clears SSPxIF.
14. Steps 8-13 are repeated for each received byte from the slave.
15. Master sends a not $\overline{\text{ACK}}$ or Stop to end communication.

FIGURE 24-29: I²C MASTER MODE WAVEFORM (RECEPTION, 7-BIT ADDRESS)



24.6.8 ACKNOWLEDGE SEQUENCE TIMING

An Acknowledge sequence is enabled by setting the Acknowledge Sequence Enable bit, ACKEN bit of the SSPxCON2 register. When this bit is set, the SCLx pin is pulled low and the contents of the Acknowledge data bit are presented on the SDAx pin. If the user wishes to generate an Acknowledge, then the ACKDT bit should be cleared. If not, the user should set the ACKDT bit before starting an Acknowledge sequence. The Baud Rate Generator then counts for one rollover period (TBRG) and the SCLx pin is deasserted (pulled high). When the SCLx pin is sampled high (clock arbitration), the Baud Rate Generator counts for TBRG. The SCLx pin is then pulled low. Following this, the ACKEN bit is automatically cleared, the Baud Rate Generator is turned off and the MSSPx module then goes into Idle mode (Figure 24-29).

24.6.8.1 WCOL Status Flag

If the user writes the SSPxBUF when an Acknowledge sequence is in progress, then WCOL is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write does not occur).

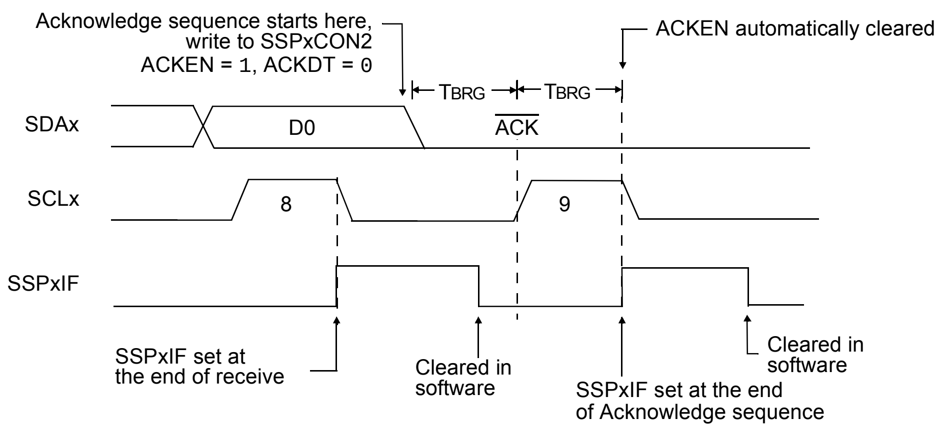
24.6.9 STOP CONDITION TIMING

A Stop bit is asserted on the SDAx pin at the end of a receive/transmit by setting the Stop Sequence Enable bit, PEN bit of the SSPxCON2 register. At the end of a receive/transmit, the SCLx line is held low after the falling edge of the ninth clock. When the PEN bit is set, the master will assert the SDAx line low. When the SDAx line is sampled low, the Baud Rate Generator is reloaded and counts down to '0'. When the Baud Rate Generator times out, the SCLx pin will be brought high and one TBRG (Baud Rate Generator rollover count) later, the SDAx pin will be deasserted. When the SDAx pin is sampled high while SCLx is high, the P bit of the SSPxSTAT register is set. A TBRG later, the PEN bit is cleared and the SSPxIF bit is set (Figure 24-30).

24.6.9.1 WCOL Status Flag

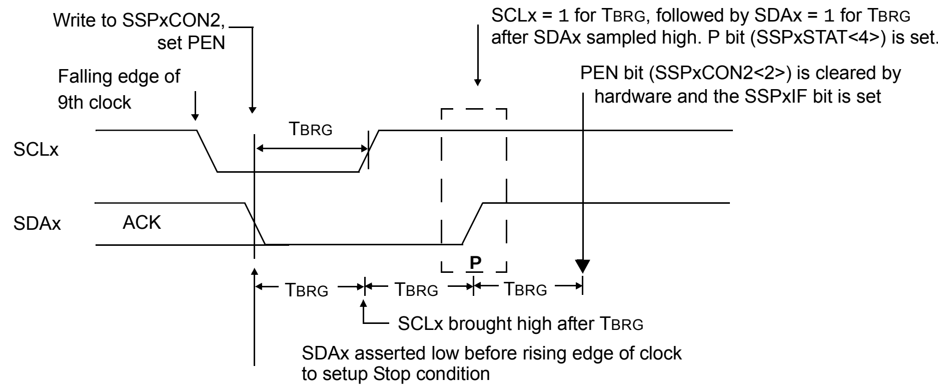
If the user writes the SSPxBUF when a Stop sequence is in progress, then the WCOL bit is set and the contents of the buffer are unchanged (the write does not occur).

FIGURE 24-30: ACKNOWLEDGE SEQUENCE WAVEFORM



Note: TBRG = one Baud Rate Generator period.

FIGURE 24-31: STOP CONDITION RECEIVE OR TRANSMIT MODE



Note: TBRG = one Baud Rate Generator period.

24.6.10 SLEEP OPERATION

While in Sleep mode, the I²C slave module can receive addresses or data and when an address match or complete byte transfer occurs, wake the processor from Sleep (if the MSSPx interrupt is enabled).

24.6.11 EFFECTS OF A RESET

A Reset disables the MSSPx module and terminates the current transfer.

24.6.12 MULTI-MASTER MODE

In Multi-Master mode, the interrupt generation on the detection of the Start and Stop conditions allows the determination of when the bus is free. The Stop (P) and Start (S) bits are cleared from a Reset or when the MSSPx module is disabled. Control of the I²C bus may be taken when the P bit of the SSPxSTAT register is set, or the bus is Idle, with both the S and P bits clear. When the bus is busy, enabling the SSPx interrupt will generate the interrupt when the Stop condition occurs.

In multi-master operation, the SDAx line must be monitored for arbitration to see if the signal level is the expected output level. This check is performed by hardware with the result placed in the BCLxIF bit.

The states where arbitration can be lost are:

- Address Transfer
- Data Transfer
- A Start Condition
- A Repeated Start Condition
- An Acknowledge Condition

24.6.13 MULTI -MASTER COMMUNICATION, BUS COLLISION AND BUS ARBITRATION

Multi-Master mode support is achieved by bus arbitration. When the master outputs address/data bits onto the SDAx pin, arbitration takes place when the master outputs a '1' on SDAx, by letting SDAx float high and another master asserts a '0'. When the SCLx pin floats high, data should be stable. If the expected data on SDAx is a '1' and the data sampled on the SDAx pin is '0', then a bus collision has taken place. The master will set the Bus Collision Interrupt Flag, BCLxIF, and reset the I²C port to its Idle state (Figure 24-31).

If a transmit was in progress when the bus collision occurred, the transmission is halted, the BF flag is cleared, the SDAx and SCLx lines are deasserted and the SSPxBUF can be written to. When the user services the bus collision Interrupt Service Routine and if the I²C bus is free, the user can resume communication by asserting a Start condition.

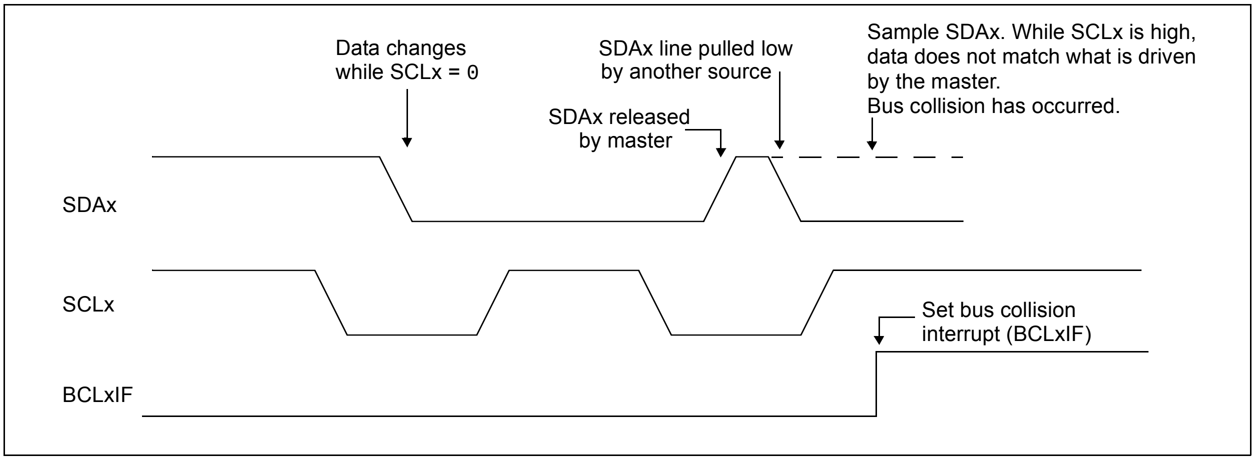
If a Start, Repeated Start, Stop or Acknowledge condition was in progress when the bus collision occurred, the condition is aborted, the SDAx and SCLx lines are deasserted and the respective control bits in the SSPxCON2 register are cleared. When the user services the bus collision Interrupt Service Routine and if the I²C bus is free, the user can resume communication by asserting a Start condition.

The master will continue to monitor the SDAx and SCLx pins. If a Stop condition occurs, the SSPxIF bit will be set.

A write to the SSPxBUF will start the transmission of data at the first data bit, regardless of where the transmitter left off when the bus collision occurred.

In Multi-Master mode, the interrupt generation on the detection of Start and Stop conditions allows the determination of when the bus is free. Control of the I²C bus can be taken when the P bit is set in the SSPxSTAT register, or the bus is Idle and the S and P bits are cleared.

FIGURE 24-32: BUS COLLISION TIMING FOR TRANSMIT AND ACKNOWLEDGE



24.6.13.1 Bus Collision During a Start Condition

During a Start condition, a bus collision occurs if:

a) SDAx or SCLx are sampled low at the beginning of the Start condition (Figure 24-32).

b) SCLx is sampled low before SDAx is asserted low (Figure 24-33).

During a Start condition, both the SDAx and the SCLx pins are monitored.

If the SDAx pin is already low, or the SCLx pin is already low, then all of the following occur:

- the Start condition is aborted,
- the BCLxIF flag is set and
- the MSSPx module is reset to its Idle state (Figure 24-32).

The Start condition begins with the SDAx and SCLx pins deasserted. When the SDAx pin is sampled high, the Baud Rate Generator is loaded and counts down. If the SCLx pin is sampled low while SDAx is high, a bus collision occurs because it is assumed that another master is attempting to drive a data '1' during the Start condition.

If the SDAx pin is sampled low during this count, the BRG is reset and the SDAx line is asserted early (Figure 24-34). If, however, a '1' is sampled on the SDAx pin, the SDAx pin is asserted low at the end of the BRG count. The Baud Rate Generator is then reloaded and counts down to zero; if the SCLx pin is sampled as '0' during this time, a bus collision does not occur. At the end of the BRG count, the SCLx pin is asserted low.

Note:	The reason that bus collision is not a factor during a Start condition is that no two bus masters can assert a Start condition at the exact same time. Therefore, one master will always assert SDAx before the other. This condition does not cause a bus collision because the two masters must be allowed to arbitrate the first address following the Start condition. If the address is the same, arbitration must be allowed to continue into the data portion, Repeated Start or Stop conditions.

FIGURE 24-33: BUS COLLISION DURING START CONDITION (SDAX ONLY)

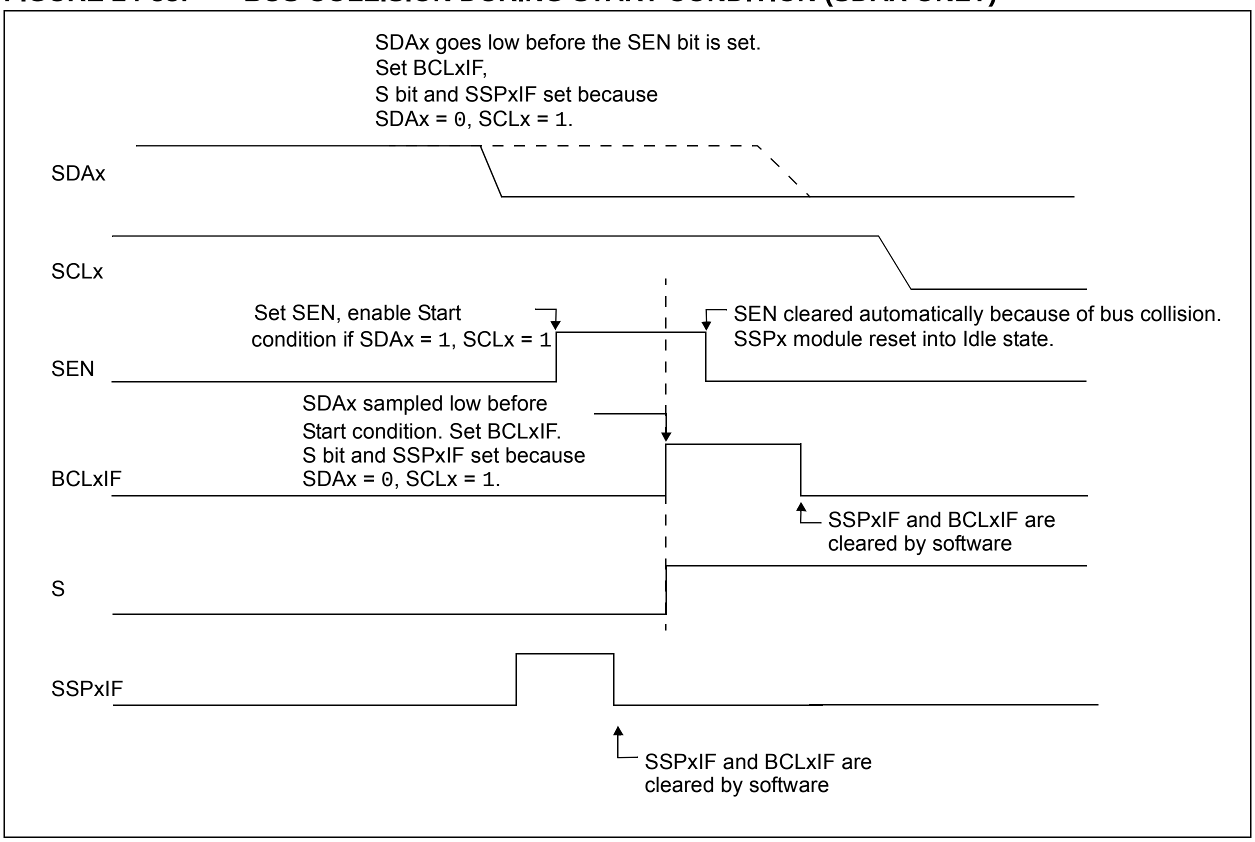


FIGURE 24-34: BUS COLLISION DURING START CONDITION (SCLX = 0)

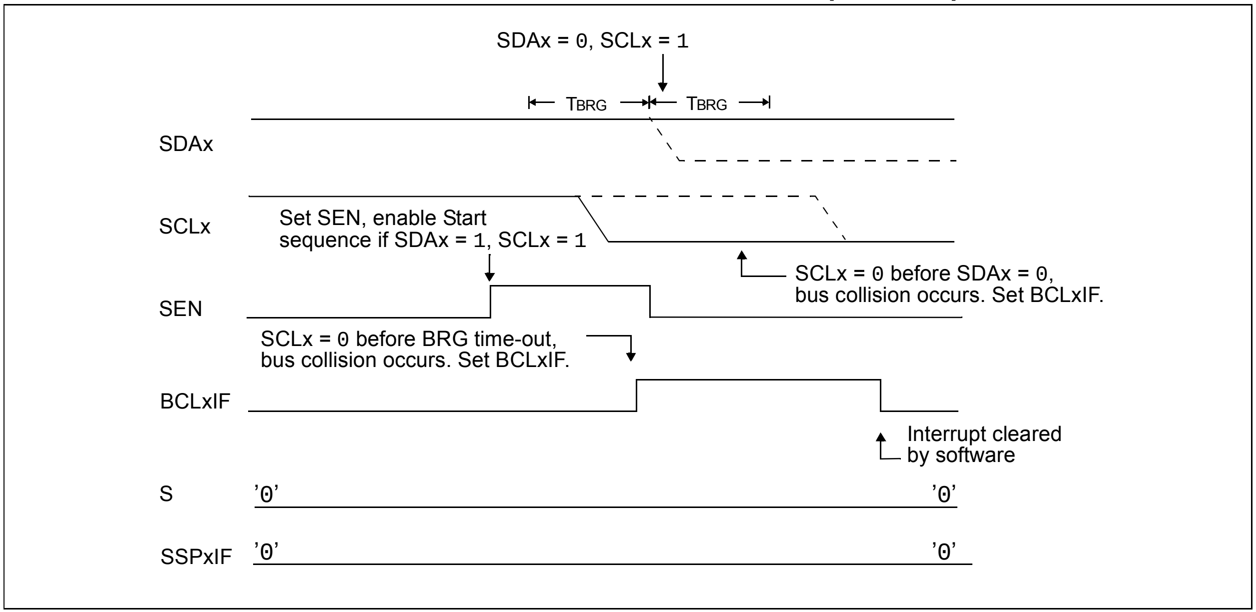
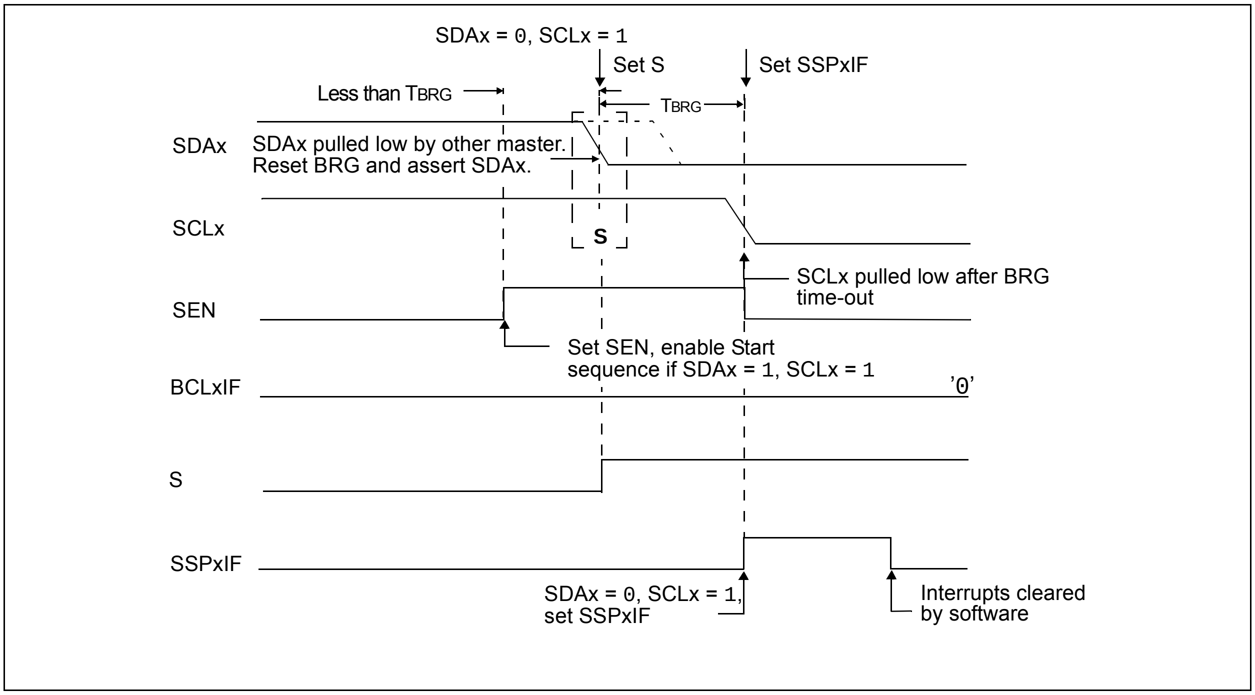


FIGURE 24-35: BRG RESET DUE TO SDA ARBITRATION DURING START CONDITION



 Preliminary

24.6.13.2 Bus Collision During a Repeated Start Condition

During a Repeated Start condition, a bus collision occurs if:

a) A low level is sampled on SDAx when SCLx goes from low level to high level.
b) SCLx goes low before SDAx is asserted low, indicating that another master is attempting to transmit a data '1'.

When the user releases SDAx and the pin is allowed to float high, the BRG is loaded with SSPxADD and counts down to zero. The SCLx pin is then deasserted and when sampled high, the SDAx pin is sampled.

If SDAx is low, a bus collision has occurred (i.e., another master is attempting to transmit a data '0', Figure 24-35). If SDAx is sampled high, the BRG is reloaded and begins counting. If SDAx goes from high-to-low before the BRG times out, no bus collision occurs because no two masters can assert SDAx at exactly the same time.

If SCLx goes from high-to-low before the BRG times out and SDAx has not already been asserted, a bus collision occurs. In this case, another master is attempting to transmit a data '1' during the Repeated Start condition, see Figure 24-36.

If, at the end of the BRG time-out, both SCLx and SDAx are still high, the SDAx pin is driven low and the BRG is reloaded and begins counting. At the end of the count, regardless of the status of the SCLx pin, the SCLx pin is driven low and the Repeated Start condition is complete.

FIGURE 24-36: BUS COLLISION DURING A REPEATED START CONDITION (CASE 1)

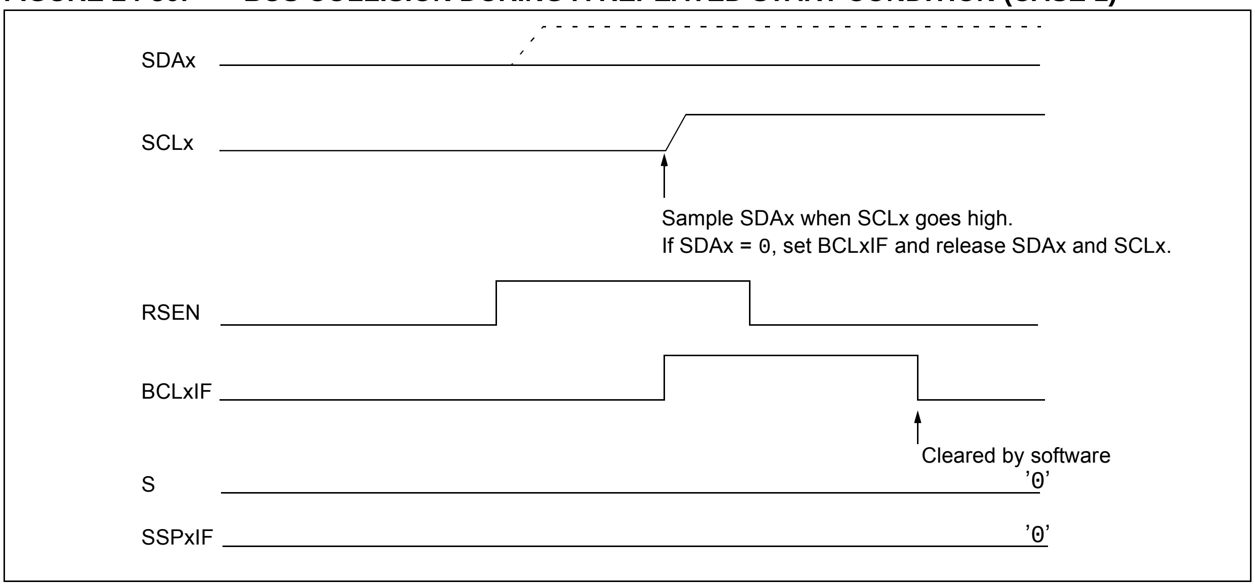
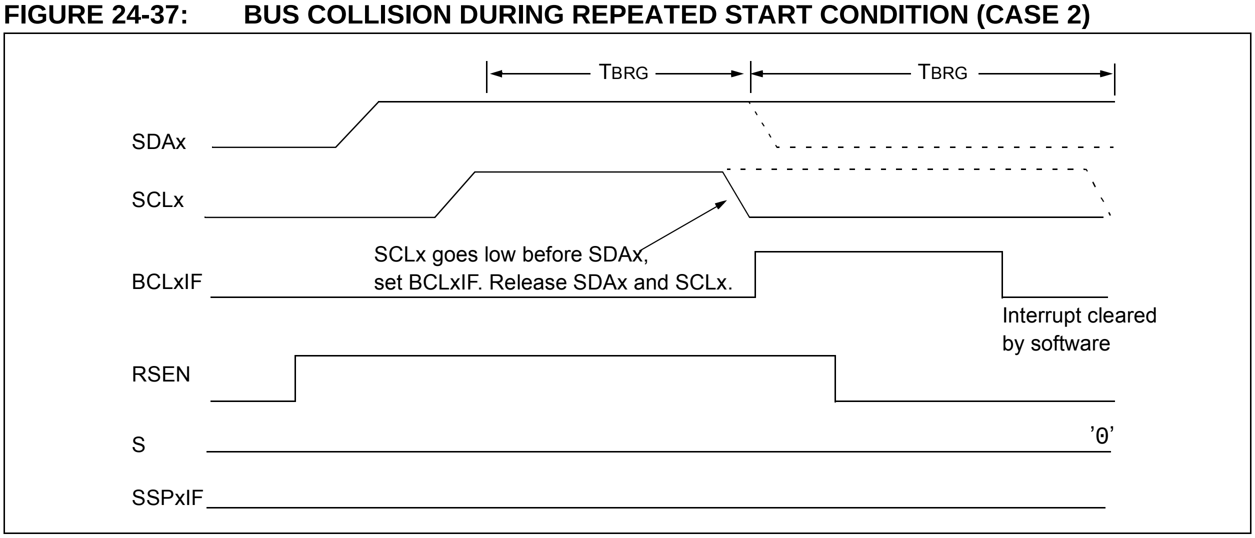


FIGURE 24-37: BUS COLLISION DURING REPEATED START CONDITION (CASE 2)



24.6.13.3 Bus Collision During a Stop Condition

Bus collision occurs during a Stop condition if:

a) After the SDAx pin has been deasserted and allowed to float high, SDAx is sampled low after the BRG has timed out.
b) After the SCLx pin is deasserted, SCLx is sampled low before SDAx goes high.

The Stop condition begins with SDAx asserted low. When SDAx is sampled low, the SCLx pin is allowed to float. When the pin is sampled high (clock arbitration), the Baud Rate Generator is loaded with SSPxADD and counts down to 0. After the BRG times out, SDAx is sampled. If SDAx is sampled low, a bus collision has occurred. This is due to another master attempting to drive a data '0' (Figure 24-37). If the SCLx pin is sampled low before SDAx is allowed to float high, a bus collision occurs. This is another case of another master attempting to drive a data '0' (Figure 24-38).

FIGURE 24-38: BUS COLLISION DURING A STOP CONDITION (CASE 1)

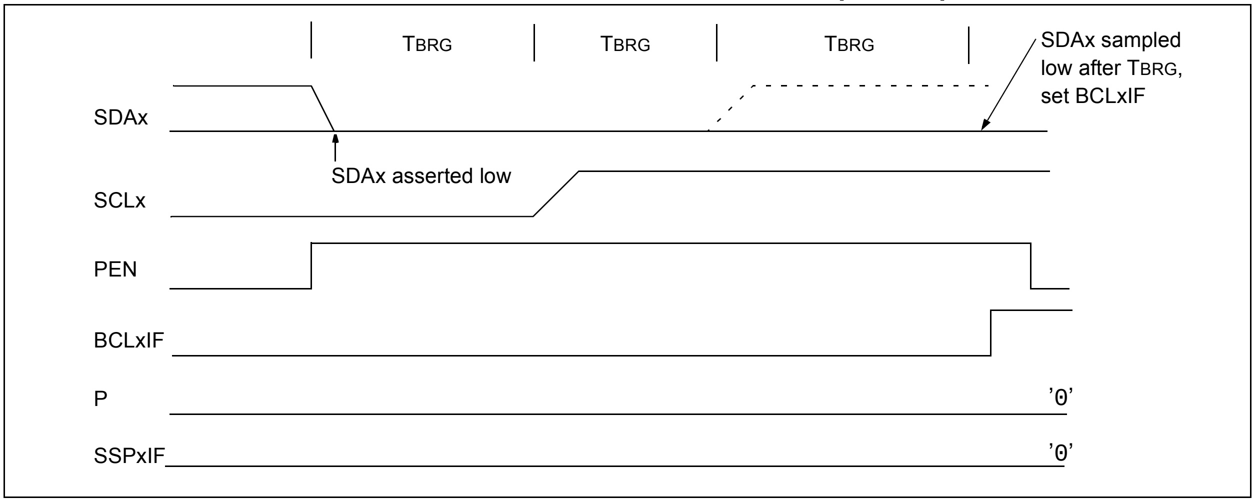
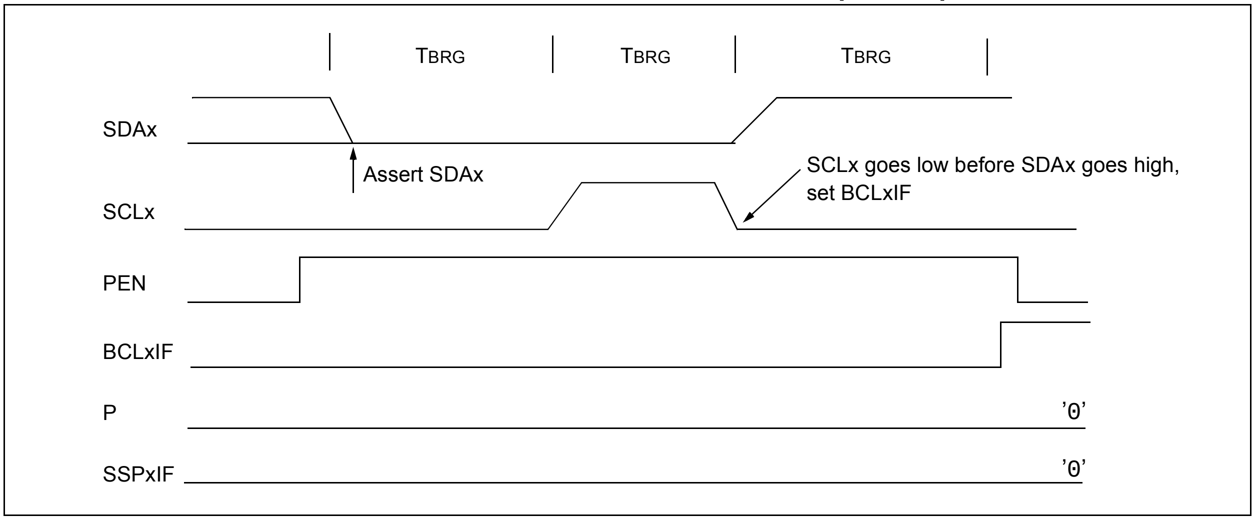


FIGURE 24-39: BUS COLLISION DURING A STOP CONDITION (CASE 2)



 Preliminary

TABLE 24-3: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH I²C™ OPERATION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Reset Values on Page
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	93
PIE1	TMR1GIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	94
PIE2	OSFIE	C2IE	C1IE	EEIE	BCLIE	LCDIE	C3IE	CCP2IE(1)	95
PIE4(1)	—	—	RC2IE	TX2IE	—	—	BCL2IE	SSP2IE	97
PIR1	TMR1GIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	98
PIR2	OSFIF	C2IF	C1IF	EEIF	BCLIF	LCDIF	C3IF	CCP2IF(1)	99
PIR4(1)	—	—	RC2IF	TX2IF	—	—	BCL2IF	SSP2IF	101
TRISA	TRISA7	TRISA6	TRISA5	TRISA4	TRISA3	TRISA2	TRISA1	TRISA0	128
TRISB	TRISB7	TRISB6	TRISB5	TRISB4	TRISB3	TRISB2	TRISB1	TRISB0	131
SSPxADD	ADD<7:0>								295
SSPxBUF	MSSPx Receive Buffer/Transmit Register								245*
SSPxCON1	WCOL	SSPOV	SSPEN	CKP	SSPM<3:0>				291
SSPxCON2	GCEN	ACKSTAT	ACKDT	ACKEN	RCEN	PEN	RSEN	SEN	293
SSPxCON3	ACKTIM	PCIE	SCIE	BOEN	SDAHT	SBCDE	AHEN	DHEN	294
SSPxMSK	MSK<7:0>								295
SSPxSTAT	SMP	CKE	$D/\overline{A}$	P	S	$R/\overline{W}$	UA	BF	289

Legend: — = unimplemented location, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the MSSP module in I²C™ mode.
* Page provides register information.

Note 1: PIC16F1947 only.

24.7 BAUD RATE GENERATOR

The MSSPx module has a Baud Rate Generator available for clock generation in both I²C and SPI Master modes. The Baud Rate Generator (BRG) reload value is placed in the SSPxADD register (Register 24-6). When a write occurs to SSPxBUF, the Baud Rate Generator will automatically begin counting down.

Once the given operation is complete, the internal clock will automatically stop counting and the clock pin will remain in its last state.

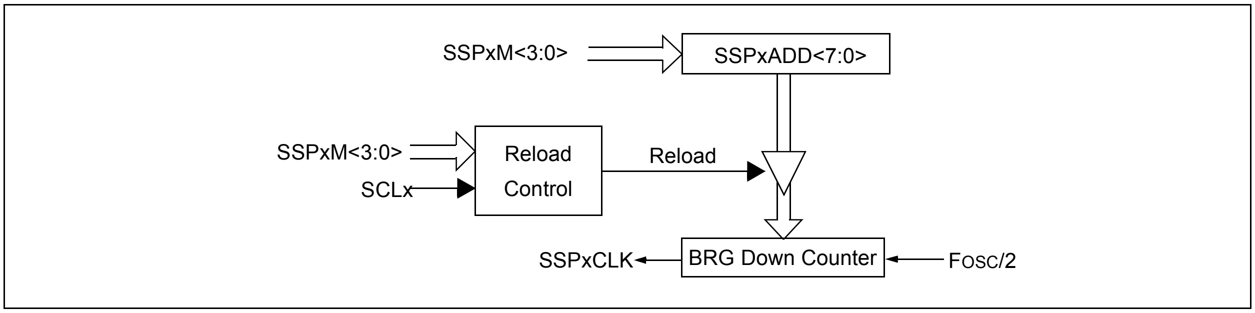
An internal signal “Reload” in Figure 24-39 triggers the value from SSPxADD to be loaded into the BRG counter. This occurs twice for each oscillation of the module clock line. The logic dictating when the reload signal is asserted depends on the mode the MSSPx is being operated in.

Table 24-4 demonstrates clock rates based on instruction cycles and the BRG value loaded into SSPxADD.

EQUATION 24-1:

$$F_{CLOCK} = \frac{F_{OSC}}{(SSPxADD + 1)(4)}$$

FIGURE 24-40: BAUD RATE GENERATOR BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note:	Values of 0x00, 0x01 and 0x02 are not valid for SSPxADD when used as a Baud Rate Generator for I²C. This is an implementation limitation.

TABLE 24-4: MSSPx CLOCK RATE W/BRG

FOSC	FCY	BRG Value	FCLOCK (2 Rollovers of BRG)
32 MHz	8 MHz	13h	400 kHz(1)
32 MHz	8 MHz	19h	308 kHz
32 MHz	8 MHz	4Fh	100 kHz
16 MHz	4 MHz	09h	400 kHz(1)
16 MHz	4 MHz	0Ch	308 kHz
16 MHz	4 MHz	27h	100 kHz
4 MHz	1 MHz	09h	100 kHz

Note 1: The I²C interface does not conform to the 400 kHz I²C specification (which applies to rates greater than 100 kHz) in all details, but may be used with care where higher rates are required by the application.

 Preliminary

24.8 MSSP Control Registers

REGISTER 24-1: SSPxSTAT: SSPx STATUS REGISTER

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R-0/0	R-0/0	R-0/0	R-0/0	R-0/0	R-0/0
SMP	CKE	D/$\overline{A}$	P	S	R/$\overline{W}$	UA	BF
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7 **SMP:** SPI Data Input Sample bit

SPI Master mode:
1 = Input data sampled at end of data output time
0 = Input data sampled at middle of data output time

SPI Slave mode:
SMP must be cleared when SPI is used in Slave mode

In I^{2}C Master or Slave mode:
1 = Slew rate control disabled for standard speed mode (100 kHz and 1 MHz)
0 = Slew rate control enabled for high speed mode (400 kHz)

bit 6 **CKE:** SPI Clock Edge Select bit (SPI mode only)

In SPI Master or Slave mode:
1 = Transmit occurs on transition from active to Idle clock state
0 = Transmit occurs on transition from Idle to active clock state

In I^{2}C™ mode only:
1 = Enable input logic so that thresholds are compliant with SMBus specification
0 = Disable SMBus specific inputs

bit 5 **D/$\overline{A}$:** Data/$\overline{\text{Address}}$ bit (I^{2}C mode only)
1 = Indicates that the last byte received or transmitted was data
0 = Indicates that the last byte received or transmitted was address

bit 4 **P:** Stop bit

(I^{2}C mode only. This bit is cleared when the MSSPx module is disabled, SSPxEN is cleared.)
1 = Indicates that a Stop bit has been detected last (this bit is ‘0’ on Reset)
0 = Stop bit was not detected last

bit 3 **S:** Start bit

(I^{2}C mode only. This bit is cleared when the MSSPx module is disabled, SSPxEN is cleared.)
1 = Indicates that a Start bit has been detected last (this bit is ‘0’ on Reset)
0 = Start bit was not detected last

bit 2 **R/$\overline{W}$:** Read/$\overline{\text{Write}}$ bit information (I^{2}C mode only)

This bit holds the R/$\overline{W}$ bit information following the last address match. This bit is only valid from the address match to the next Start bit, Stop bit, or not ACK bit.

In I^{2}C Slave mode:
1 = Read
0 = Write

In I^{2}C Master mode:
1 = Transmit is in progress
0 = Transmit is not in progress

OR-ing this bit with SEN, RSEN, PEN, RCEN or ACKEN will indicate if the MSSPx is in Idle mode.

bit 1 **UA:** Update Address bit (10-bit I^{2}C mode only)
1 = Indicates that the user needs to update the address in the SSPxADD register
0 = Address does not need to be updated

REGISTER 24-1: SSPxSTAT: SSPx STATUS REGISTER (CONTINUED)

bit 0 **BF:** Buffer Full Status bit

Receive (SPI and I^2C modes):
`1` = Receive complete, SSPxBUF is full
`0` = Receive not complete, SSPxBUF is empty

Transmit (I^2C mode only):
`1` = Data transmit in progress (does not include the $\overline{ACK}$ and Stop bits), SSPxBUF is full
`0` = Data transmit complete (does not include the $\overline{ACK}$ and Stop bits), SSPxBUF is empty

REGISTER 24-2: SSPxCON1: SSPx CONTROL REGISTER 1

R/C/HS-0/0	R/C/HS-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
WCOL	SSPxOV	SSPxEN	CKP	SSPxM<3:0>			
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’	
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets	
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	HS = Bit is set by hardware	C = User cleared

bit 7 **WCOL:** Write Collision Detect bit
Master mode:
1 = A write to the SSPxBUF register was attempted while the I^{2}C conditions were not valid for a transmission to be started
0 = No collision
Slave mode:
1 = The SSPxBUF register is written while it is still transmitting the previous word (must be cleared in software)
0 = No collision

bit 6 **SSPxOV:** Receive Overflow Indicator bit(1)
In SPI mode:
1 = A new byte is received while the SSPxBUF register is still holding the previous data. In case of overflow, the data in SSPxSR is lost. Overflow can only occur in Slave mode. In Slave mode, the user must read the SSPxBUF, even if only transmitting data, to avoid setting overflow. In Master mode, the overflow bit is not set since each new reception (and transmission) is initiated by writing to the SSPxBUF register (must be cleared in software).
0 = No overflow
In I^{2}C mode:
1 = A byte is received while the SSPxBUF register is still holding the previous byte. SSPxOV is a “don’t care” in Transmit mode (must be cleared in software).
0 = No overflow

bit 5 **SSPxEN:** Synchronous Serial Port Enable bit
In both modes, when enabled, these pins must be properly configured as input or output
In SPI mode:
1 = Enables serial port and configures SCKx, SDOx, SDIx and $\overline{\text{SSx}}$ as the source of the serial port pins(2)
0 = Disables serial port and configures these pins as I/O port pins
In I^{2}C mode:
1 = Enables the serial port and configures the SDAx and SCLx pins as the source of the serial port pins(3)
0 = Disables serial port and configures these pins as I/O port pins

bit 4 **CKP:** Clock Polarity Select bit
In SPI mode:
1 = Idle state for clock is a high level
0 = Idle state for clock is a low level
In I^{2}C Slave mode:
SCLx release control
1 = Enable clock
0 = Holds clock low (clock stretch). (Used to ensure data setup time.)
In I^{2}C Master mode:
Unused in this mode

REGISTER 24-2: SSPxCON1: SSPx CONTROL REGISTER 1 (CONTINUED)

bit 3-0 **SSPxM<3:0>:** Synchronous Serial Port Mode Select bits
`0000` = SPI Master mode, clock = FOSC/4
`0001` = SPI Master mode, clock = FOSC/16
`0010` = SPI Master mode, clock = FOSC/64
`0011` = SPI Master mode, clock = TMR2 output/2
`0100` = SPI Slave mode, clock = SCKx pin, $\overline{\text{SSx}}$ pin control enabled
`0101` = SPI Slave mode, clock = SCKx pin, $\overline{\text{SSx}}$ pin control disabled, $\overline{\text{SSx}}$ can be used as I/O pin
`0110` = I^2C Slave mode, 7-bit address
`0111` = I^2C Slave mode, 10-bit address
`1000` = I^2C Master mode, clock = FOSC / (4 * (SSPxADD+1))(4)
`1001` = Reserved
`1010` = SPI Master mode, clock = FOSC/(4 * (SSPxADD+1))(5)
`1011` = I^2C firmware controlled Master mode (Slave idle)
`1100` = Reserved
`1101` = Reserved
`1110` = I^2C Slave mode, 7-bit address with Start and Stop bit interrupts enabled
`1111` = I^2C Slave mode, 10-bit address with Start and Stop bit interrupts enabled

Note 1: In Master mode, the overflow bit is not set since each new reception (and transmission) is initiated by writing to the SSPxBUF register.
2: When enabled, these pins must be properly configured as input or output.
3: When enabled, the SDAx and SCLx pins must be configured as inputs.
4: SSPxADD values of 0, 1 or 2 are not supported for I^2C Mode.
5: SSPxADD value of '`0`' is not supported. Use SSPxM = `0000` instead.

REGISTER 24-3: SSPxCON2: SSPx CONTROL REGISTER 2

R/W-0/0	R-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/S/HS-0/0	R/S/HS-0/0	R/S/HS-0/0	R/S/HS-0/0	R/W/HS-0/0
GCEN	ACKSTAT	ACKDT	ACKEN	RCEN	PEN	RSEN	SEN
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	HC = Cleared by hardware S = User set

bit 7 **GCEN:** General Call Enable bit (in I^{2}C Slave mode only)
1 = Enable interrupt when a general call address (0x00 or 00h) is received in the SSPxSR
0 = General call address disabled

bit 6 **ACKSTAT:** Acknowledge Status bit (in I^{2}C mode only)
1 = Acknowledge was not received
0 = Acknowledge was received

bit 5 **ACKDT:** Acknowledge Data bit (in I^{2}C mode only)
In Receive mode:
Value transmitted when the user initiates an Acknowledge sequence at the end of a receive
1 = Not Acknowledge
0 = Acknowledge

bit 4 **ACKEN:** Acknowledge Sequence Enable bit (in I^{2}C Master mode only)
In Master Receive mode:
1 = Initiate Acknowledge sequence on SDAx and SCLx pins, and transmit ACKDT data bit. Automatically cleared by hardware.
0 = Acknowledge sequence idle

bit 3 **RCEN:** Receive Enable bit (in I^{2}C Master mode only)
1 = Enables Receive mode for I^{2}C
0 = Receive idle

bit 2 **PEN:** Stop Condition Enable bit (in I^{2}C Master mode only)
SCKx Release Control:
1 = Initiate Stop condition on SDAx and SCLx pins. Automatically cleared by hardware.
0 = Stop condition Idle

bit 1 **RSEN:** Repeated Start Condition Enabled bit (in I^{2}C Master mode only)
1 = Initiate Repeated Start condition on SDAx and SCLx pins. Automatically cleared by hardware.
0 = Repeated Start condition Idle

bit 0 **SEN:** Start Condition Enabled bit (in I^{2}C Master mode only)
In Master mode:
1 = Initiate Start condition on SDAx and SCLx pins. Automatically cleared by hardware.
0 = Start condition Idle
In Slave mode:
1 = Clock stretching is enabled for both slave transmit and slave receive (stretch enabled)
0 = Clock stretching is disabled

Note 1: For bits ACKEN, RCEN, PEN, RSEN, SEN: If the I^{2}C module is not in the Idle mode, this bit may not be set (no spooling) and the SSPxBUF may not be written (or writes to the SSPxBUF are disabled).

REGISTER 24-4: SSPxCON3: SSPx CONTROL REGISTER 3

R-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
ACKTIM	PCIE	SCIE	BOEN	SDAHT	SBCDE	AHEN	DHEN
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7 **ACKTIM:** Acknowledge Time Status bit (I^2C mode only)(3)
1 = Indicates the I^2C bus is in an Acknowledge sequence, set on 8^{TH} falling edge of SCLx clock
0 = Not an Acknowledge sequence, cleared on 9^{TH} rising edge of SCLx clock

bit 6 **PCIE**: Stop Condition Interrupt Enable bit (I^2C mode only)
1 = Enable interrupt on detection of Stop condition
0 = Stop detection interrupts are disabled(2)

bit 5 **SCIE**: Start Condition Interrupt Enable bit (I^2C mode only)
1 = Enable interrupt on detection of Start or Restart conditions
0 = Start detection interrupts are disabled(2)

bit 4 **BOEN:** Buffer Overwrite Enable bit
In SPI Slave mode:(1)
1 = SSPxBUF updates every time that a new data byte is shifted in ignoring the BF bit
0 = If new byte is received with BF bit of the SSPxSTAT register already set, SSPxOV bit of the SSPxCON1 register is set, and the buffer is not updated
In I^2C Master mode and SPI Master mode:
This bit is ignored.
In I^2C Slave mode:
1 = SSPxBUF is updated and $\overline{ACK}$ is generated for a received address/data byte, ignoring the state of the SSPxOV bit only if the BF bit = 0.
0 = SSPxBUF is only updated when SSPxOV is clear

bit 3 **SDAHT:** SDAx Hold Time Selection bit (I^2C mode only)
1 = Minimum of 300 ns hold time on SDAx after the falling edge of SCLx
0 = Minimum of 100 ns hold time on SDAx after the falling edge of SCLx

bit 2 **SBCDE:** Slave Mode Bus Collision Detect Enable bit (I^2C Slave mode only)
If on the rising edge of SCLx, SDAx is sampled low when the module is outputting a high state, the BCLxIF bit of the PIR2 register is set, and bus goes idle
1 = Enable slave bus collision interrupts
0 = Slave bus collision interrupts are disabled

bit 1 **AHEN:** Address Hold Enable bit (I^2C Slave mode only)
1 = Following the 8th falling edge of SCLx for a matching received address byte; CKP bit of the SSPxCON1 register will be cleared and the SCLx will be held low.
0 = Address holding is disabled

bit 0 **DHEN:** Data Hold Enable bit (I^2C Slave mode only)
1 = Following the 8th falling edge of SCLx for a received data byte; slave hardware clears the CKP bit of the SSPxCON1 register and SCLx is held low.
0 = Data holding is disabled

Note 1: For daisy-chained SPI operation; allows the user to ignore all but the last received byte. SSPxOV is still set when a new byte is received and BF = 1, but hardware continues to write the most recent byte to SSPxBUF.
2: This bit has no effect in Slave modes that Start and Stop condition detection is explicitly listed as enabled.
3: The ACKTIM Status bit is only active when the AHEN bit or DHEN bit is set.

REGISTER 24-5: SSPxMSK: SSPx MASK REGISTER

R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1
MSK<7:0>							
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-1 **MSK<7:1>:** Mask bits
`1` = The received address bit n is compared to SSPxADD<n> to detect I^2C address match
`0` = The received address bit n is not used to detect I^2C address match

bit 0 **MSK<0>:** Mask bit for I^2C Slave mode, 10-bit Address
I^2C Slave mode, 10-bit address (SSPxM<3:0> = `0111` or `1111`):
`1` = The received address bit 0 is compared to SSPxADD<0> to detect I^2C address match
`0` = The received address bit 0 is not used to detect I^2C address match
I^2C Slave mode, 7-bit address, the bit is ignored

REGISTER 24-6: SSPxADD: MSSPx ADDRESS AND BAUD RATE REGISTER (I^2C MODE)

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
ADD<7:0>							
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

Master mode:

bit 7-0 **ADD<7:0>:** Baud Rate Clock Divider bits
SCLx pin clock period = ((ADD<7:0> + 1) *4)/FOSC

10-Bit Slave mode – Most Significant Address byte:

bit 7-3 **Not used:** Unused for Most Significant Address byte. Bit state of this register is a “don’t care”. Bit pattern sent by master is fixed by I^2C specification and must be equal to ‘`11110`’. However, those bits are compared by hardware and are not affected by the value in this register.

bit 2-1 **ADD<2:1>:** Two Most Significant bits of 10-bit address

bit 0 **Not used:** Unused in this mode. Bit state is a “don’t care”.

10-Bit Slave mode – Least Significant Address byte:

bit 7-0 **ADD<7:0>:** Eight Least Significant bits of 10-bit address

7-Bit Slave mode:

bit 7-1 **ADD<7:1>:** 7-bit address

bit 0 **Not used:** Unused in this mode. Bit state is a “don’t care”.

NOTES:

25.0 ENHANCED UNIVERSAL SYNCHRONOUS ASYNCHRONOUS RECEIVER TRANSMITTER (EUSART)

Note:	The PIC16F/LF/1946/47 devices have two EUSARTs. Therefore, all information in this section refers to both EUSART 1 and EUSART 2.

The Enhanced Universal Synchronous Asynchronous Receiver Transmitter (EUSART) module is a serial I/O communications peripheral. It contains all the clock generators, shift registers and data buffers necessary to perform an input or output serial data transfer independent of device program execution. The EUSART, also known as a Serial Communications Interface (SCI), can be configured as a full-duplex asynchronous system or half-duplex synchronous system. Full-Duplex mode is useful for communications with peripheral systems, such as CRT terminals and personal computers. Half-Duplex Synchronous mode is intended for communications with peripheral devices, such as A/D or D/A integrated circuits, serial EEPROMs or other microcontrollers. These devices typically do not have internal clocks for baud rate generation and require the external clock signal provided by a master synchronous device.

The EUSART module includes the following capabilities:

- Full-duplex asynchronous transmit and receive
- Two-character input buffer
- One-character output buffer
- Programmable 8-bit or 9-bit character length
- Address detection in 9-bit mode
- Input buffer overrun error detection
- Received character framing error detection
- Half-duplex synchronous master
- Half-duplex synchronous slave
- Programmable clock and data polarity

The EUSART module implements the following additional features, making it ideally suited for use in Local Interconnect Network (LIN) bus systems:

- Automatic detection and calibration of the baud rate
- Wake-up on Break reception
- 13-bit Break character transmit

Block diagrams of the EUSART transmitter and receiver are shown in Figure 25-1 and Figure 25-2.

FIGURE 25-1: EUSART TRANSMIT BLOCK DIAGRAM

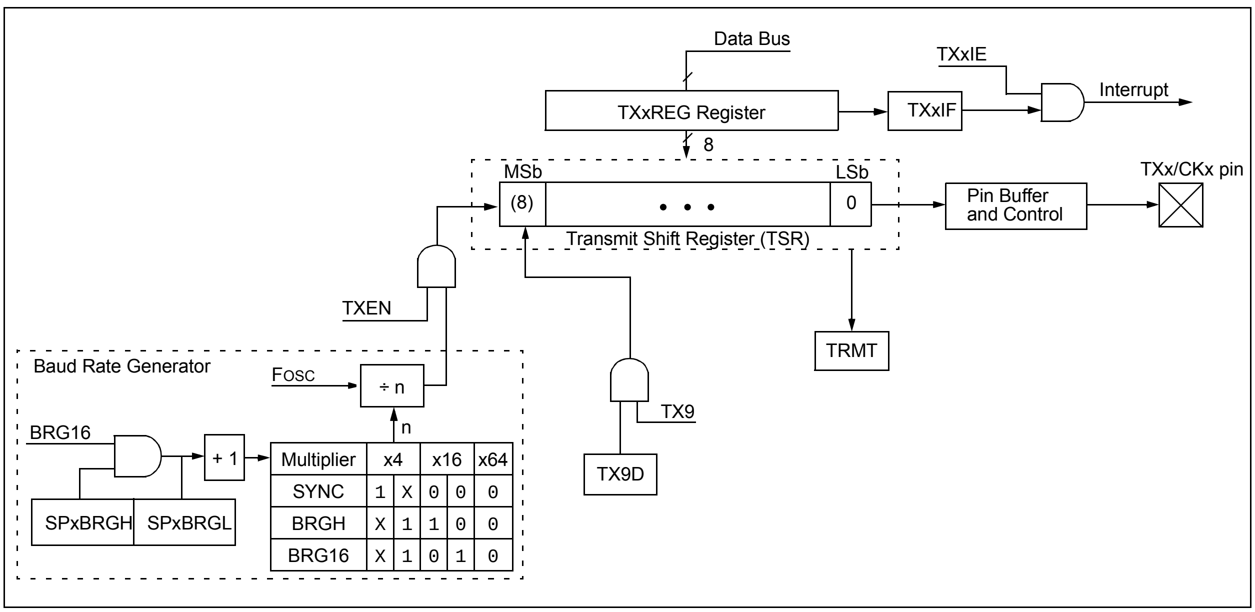
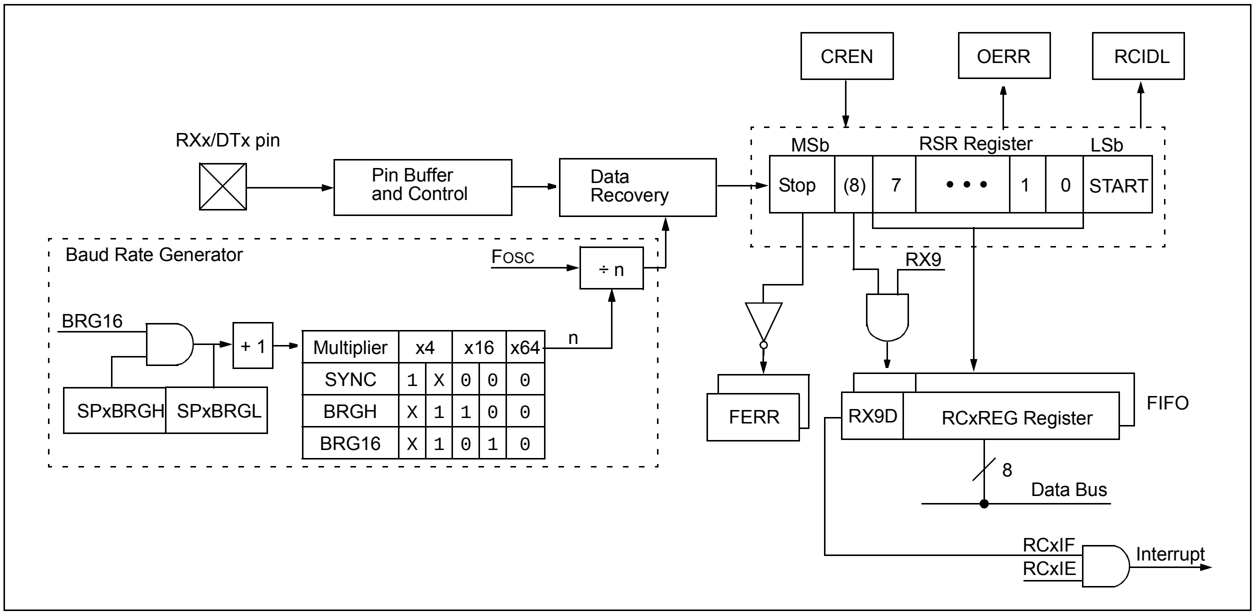


FIGURE 25-2: EUSART RECEIVE BLOCK DIAGRAM



The operation of the EUSART module is controlled through three registers:

- Transmit Status and Control (TXxSTA)
- Receive Status and Control (RCxSTA)
- Baud Rate Control (BAUDxCON)

These registers are detailed in Register 25-1, Register 25-2 and Register 25-3, respectively.

For all modes of EUSART operation, the TRIS control bits corresponding to the RXx/DTx and TXx/CKx pins should be set to '1'. The EUSART control will automatically reconfigure the pin from input to output, as needed.

When the receiver or transmitter section is not enabled then the corresponding RXx/DTx or TXx/CKx pin may be used for general purpose input and output.

25.1 EUSART Asynchronous Mode

The EUSART transmits and receives data using the standard non-return-to-zero (NRZ) format. NRZ is implemented with two levels: a V_{OH} mark state which represents a '1' data bit, and a V_{OL} space state which represents a '0' data bit. NRZ refers to the fact that consecutively transmitted data bits of the same value stay at the output level of that bit without returning to a neutral level between each bit transmission. An NRZ transmission port idles in the mark state. Each character transmission consists of one Start bit followed by eight or nine data bits and is always terminated by one or more Stop bits. The Start bit is always a space and the Stop bits are always marks. The most common data format is 8 bits. Each transmitted bit persists for a period of 1/(Baud Rate). An on-chip dedicated 8-bit/16-bit Baud Rate Generator is used to derive standard baud rate frequencies from the system oscillator. See Table 25-5 for examples of baud rate configurations.

The EUSART transmits and receives the LSb first. The EUSART's transmitter and receiver are functionally independent, but share the same data format and baud rate. Parity is not supported by the hardware, but can be implemented in software and stored as the ninth data bit.

25.1.1 EUSART ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMITTER

The EUSART transmitter block diagram is shown in Figure 25-1. The heart of the transmitter is the serial Transmit Shift Register (TSR), which is not directly accessible by software. The TSR obtains its data from the transmit buffer, which is the TXxREG register.

25.1.1.1 Enabling the Transmitter

The EUSART transmitter is enabled for asynchronous operations by configuring the following three control bits:

- TXEN = 1
- SYNC = 0
- SPEN = 1

All other EUSART control bits are assumed to be in their default state.

Setting the TXEN bit of the TXxSTA register enables the transmitter circuitry of the EUSART. Clearing the SYNC bit of the TXxSTA register configures the EUSART for asynchronous operation. Setting the SPEN bit of the RCSTA register enables the EUSART and automatically configures the TXx/CKx I/O pin as an output. If the TXx/CKx pin is shared with an analog peripheral, the analog I/O function must be disabled by clearing the corresponding ANSEL bit.

Note:	The TXxIF transmitter interrupt flag is set when the TXEN enable bit is set.

25.1.1.2 Transmitting Data

A transmission is initiated by writing a character to the TXxREG register. If this is the first character, or the previous character has been completely flushed from the TSR, the data in the TXxREG is immediately transferred to the TSR register. If the TSR still contains all or part of a previous character, the new character data is held in the TXxREG until the Stop bit of the previous character has been transmitted. The pending character in the TXxREG is then transferred to the TSR in one T_{CY} immediately following the Stop bit transmission. The transmission of the Start bit, data bits and Stop bit sequence commences immediately following the transfer of the data to the TSR from the TXxREG.

25.1.1.3 Transmit Data Polarity

The polarity of the transmit data can be controlled with the SCKP bit of the BAUDxCON register. The default state of this bit is '0' which selects high true transmit Idle and data bits. Setting the SCKP bit to '1' will invert the transmit data resulting in low true Idle and data bits. The SCKP bit controls transmit data polarity only in Asynchronous mode. In Synchronous mode the SCKP bit has a different function.

25.1.1.4 Transmit Interrupt Flag

The TXxIF interrupt flag bit of the PIR1/PIR3 register is set whenever the EUSART transmitter is enabled and no character is being held for transmission in the TXxREG. In other words, the TXxIF bit is only clear when the TSR is busy with a character and a new character has been queued for transmission in the TXxREG. The TXxIF flag bit is not cleared immediately upon writing TXxREG. TXxIF becomes valid in the second instruction cycle following the write execution. Polling TXxIF immediately following the TXxREG write will return invalid results. The TXxIF bit is read-only, it cannot be set or cleared by software.

The TXxIF interrupt can be enabled by setting the TXxIE interrupt enable bit of the PIE1/PIE3 register. However, the TXxIF flag bit will be set whenever the TXxREG is empty, regardless of the state of TXxIE enable bit.

To use interrupts when transmitting data, set the TXxIE bit only when there is more data to send. Clear the TXxIE interrupt enable bit upon writing the last character of the transmission to the TXxREG.

25.1.1.5 TSR Status

The TRMT bit of the TXxSTA register indicates the status of the TSR register. This is a read-only bit. The TRMT bit is set when the TSR register is empty and is cleared when a character is transferred to the TSR register from the TXxREG. The TRMT bit remains clear until all bits have been shifted out of the TSR register. No interrupt logic is tied to this bit, so the user needs to poll this bit to determine the TSR status.

Note:	The TSR register is not mapped in data memory, so it is not available to the user.

25.1.1.6 Transmitting 9-Bit Characters

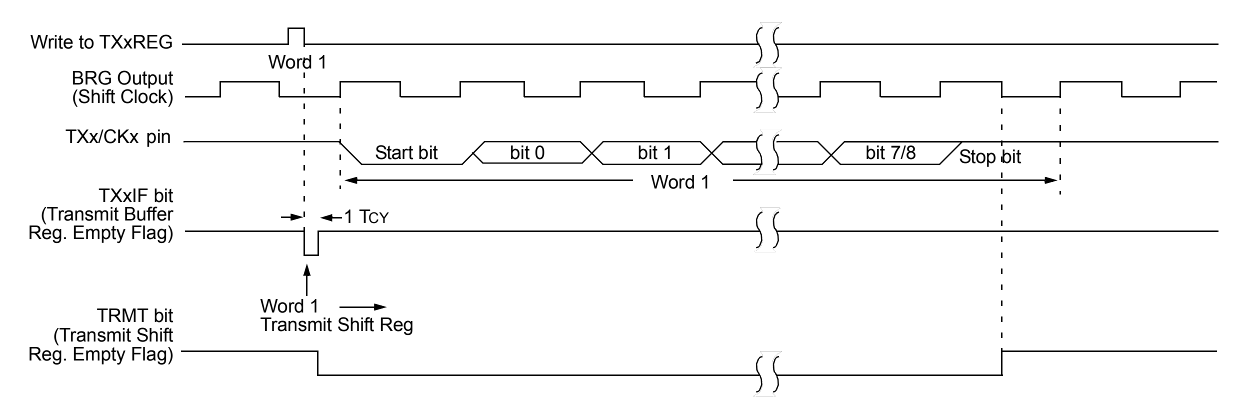
The EUSART supports 9-bit character transmissions. When the TX9 bit of the TXxSTA register is set the EUSART will shift 9 bits out for each character transmitted. The TX9D bit of the TXxSTA register is the ninth, and Most Significant, data bit. When transmitting 9-bit data, the TX9D data bit must be written before writing the 8 Least Significant bits into the TXxREG. All nine bits of data will be transferred to the TSR shift register immediately after the TXxREG is written.

A special 9-bit Address mode is available for use with multiple receivers. See **Section 25.1.2.7 "Address Detection"** for more information on the Address mode.

25.1.1.7 Asynchronous Transmission Set-up:

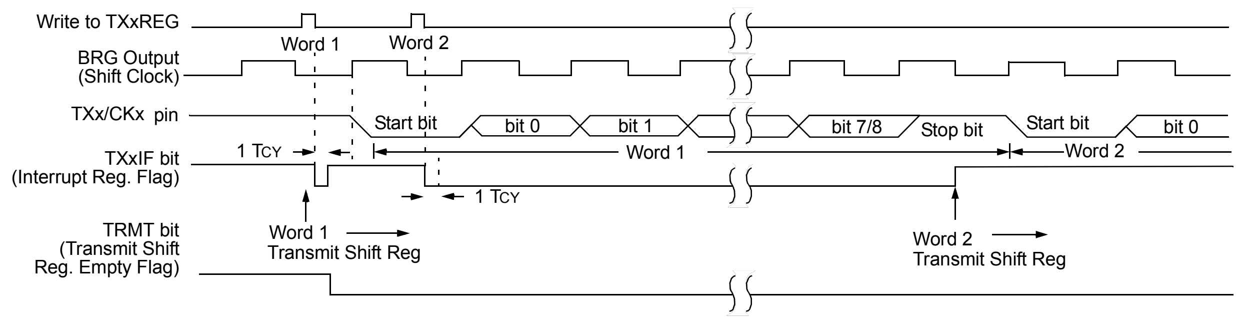
1. Initialize the SPxBRGH:SPxBRGL register pair and the BRGH and BRG16 bits to achieve the desired baud rate (see **Section 25.4 "EUSART Baud Rate Generator (BRG)"**).
2. Set the RXx/DTx and TXx/CKx TRIS controls to '1'.
3. Enable the asynchronous serial port by clearing the SYNC bit and setting the SPEN bit.
4. If 9-bit transmission is desired, set the TX9 control bit. A set ninth data bit will indicate that the 8 Least Significant data bits are an address when the receiver is set for address detection.
5. Set the SCKP control bit if inverted transmit data polarity is desired.
6. Enable the transmission by setting the TXEN control bit. This will cause the TXxIF interrupt bit to be set.
7. If interrupts are desired, set the TXxIE interrupt enable bit. An interrupt will occur immediately provided that the GIE and PEIE bits of the INTCON register are also set.
8. If 9-bit transmission is selected, the ninth bit should be loaded into the TX9D data bit.
9. Load 8-bit data into the TXxREG register. This will start the transmission.

FIGURE 25-3: ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION



 Preliminary

FIGURE 25-4: ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION (BACK-TO-BACK)



Note: This timing diagram shows two consecutive transmissions.

TABLE 25-1: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH ASYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on page
BAUD1CON	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	309
BAUD2CON	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	309
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	93
PIE1	TMR1GIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	94
PIE4	—	—	RC2IE	TX2IE	—	—	BCL2IE	SSP2IE	97
PIR1	TMR1GIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	98
PIR4	—	—	RC2IF	TX2IF	—	—	BCL2IF	SSP2IF	97
RC1STA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	308
RC2STA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	308
SP1BRGL	EUSART1 Baud Rate Generator, Low Byte								310*
SP1BRGH	EUSART1 Baud Rate Generator, High Byte								310*
SP2BRGL	EUSART2 Baud Rate Generator, Low Byte								310*
SP2BRGH	EUSART2 Baud Rate Generator, High Byte								310*
TX1REG	EUSART1 Transmit Register								299*
TX1STA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	306
TX2REG	EUSART2 Transmit Register								299*
TX2STA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	306

Legend: — = unimplemented locations, read as ‘0’. Shaded bits are not used for asynchronous transmission.
* Page provides register information.

25.1.2 EUSART ASYNCHRONOUS RECEIVER

The Asynchronous mode would typically be used in RS-232 systems. The receiver block diagram is shown in Figure 25-2. The data is received on the RXx/DTx pin and drives the data recovery block. The data recovery block is actually a high-speed shifter operating at 16 times the baud rate, whereas the serial Receive Shift Register (RSR) operates at the bit rate. When all 8 or 9 bits of the character have been shifted in, they are immediately transferred to a two character First-In-First-Out (FIFO) memory. The FIFO buffering allows reception of two complete characters and the start of a third character before software must start servicing the EUSART receiver. The FIFO and RSR registers are not directly accessible by software. Access to the received data is via the RCxREG register.

25.1.2.1 Enabling the Receiver

The EUSART receiver is enabled for asynchronous operation by configuring the following three control bits:

- CREN = `1`
- SYNC = `0`
- SPEN = `1`

All other EUSART control bits are assumed to be in their default state.

Setting the CREN bit of the RCxSTA register enables the receiver circuitry of the EUSART. Clearing the SYNC bit of the TXxSTA register configures the EUSART for asynchronous operation. Setting the SPEN bit of the RCxSTA register enables the EUSART. The programmer must set the corresponding TRIS bit to configure the RXx/DTx I/O pin as an input.

Note 1:	If the RX/DT function is on an analog pin, the corresponding ANSEL bit must be cleared for the receiver to function.

If the RXx/DTx pin is shared with an analog peripheral the analog I/O function must be disabled by clearing the corresponding ANSEL bit.

25.1.2.2 Receiving Data

The receiver data recovery circuit initiates character reception on the falling edge of the first bit. The first bit, also known as the Start bit, is always a zero. The data recovery circuit counts one-half bit time to the center of the Start bit and verifies that the bit is still a zero. If it is not a zero then the data recovery circuit aborts character reception, without generating an error, and resumes looking for the falling edge of the Start bit. If the Start bit zero verification succeeds then the data recovery circuit counts a full bit time to the center of the next bit. The bit is then sampled by a majority detect circuit and the resulting ‘`0`’ or ‘`1`’ is shifted into the RSR. This repeats until all data bits have been sampled and shifted into the RSR. One final bit time is measured and the level sampled. This is the Stop bit, which is always a ‘`1`’. If the data recovery circuit samples a ‘`0`’ in the Stop bit position then a framing error is set for this character, otherwise the framing error is cleared for this character. See **Section 25.1.2.4 “Receive Framing Error”** for more information on framing errors.

Immediately after all data bits and the Stop bit have been received, the character in the RSR is transferred to the EUSART receive FIFO and the RCxIF interrupt flag bit of the PIR1/PIR3 register is set. The top character in the FIFO is transferred out of the FIFO by reading the RCxREG register.

Note:	If the receive FIFO is overrun, no additional characters will be received until the overrun condition is cleared. See **Section 25.1.2.5 “Receive Overrun Error”** for more information on overrun errors.

25.1.2.3 Receive Interrupts

The RCxIF interrupt flag bit of the PIR1/PIR3 register is set whenever the EUSART receiver is enabled and there is an unread character in the receive FIFO. The RCxIF interrupt flag bit is read-only, it cannot be set or cleared by software.

RCxIF interrupts are enabled by setting the following bits:

- RCxIE interrupt enable bit of the PIE1/PIE3 register
- PEIE peripheral interrupt enable bit of the INTCON register
- GIE global interrupt enable bit of the INTCON register

The RCxIF interrupt flag bit will be set when there is an unread character in the FIFO, regardless of the state of interrupt enable bits.

25.1.2.4 Receive Framing Error

Each character in the receive FIFO buffer has a corresponding framing error Status bit. A framing error indicates that a Stop bit was not seen at the expected time. The framing error status is accessed via the FERR bit of the RCxSTA register. The FERR bit represents the status of the top unread character in the receive FIFO. Therefore, the FERR bit must be read before reading the RCxREG.

The FERR bit is read-only and only applies to the top unread character in the receive FIFO. A framing error (FERR = 1) does not preclude reception of additional characters. It is not necessary to clear the FERR bit. Reading the next character from the FIFO buffer will advance the FIFO to the next character and the next corresponding framing error.

The FERR bit can be forced clear by clearing the SPEN bit of the RCxSTA register which resets the EUSART. Clearing the CREN bit of the RCxSTA register does not affect the FERR bit. A framing error by itself does not generate an interrupt.

Note:	If all receive characters in the receive FIFO have framing errors, repeated reads of the RCxREG will not clear the FERR bit.

25.1.2.5 Receive Overrun Error

The receive FIFO buffer can hold two characters. An overrun error will be generated If a third character, in its entirety, is received before the FIFO is accessed. When this happens the OERR bit of the RCxSTA register is set. The characters already in the FIFO buffer can be read but no additional characters will be received until the error is cleared. The error must be cleared by either clearing the CREN bit of the RCxSTA register or by resetting the EUSART by clearing the SPEN bit of the RCxSTA register.

25.1.2.6 Receiving 9-bit Characters

The EUSART supports 9-bit character reception. When the RX9 bit of the RCxSTA register is set, the EUSART will shift 9 bits into the RSR for each character received. The RX9D bit of the RCxSTA register is the ninth and Most Significant data bit of the top unread character in the receive FIFO. When reading 9-bit data from the receive FIFO buffer, the RX9D data bit must be read before reading the 8 Least Significant bits from the RCxREG.

25.1.2.7 Address Detection

A special Address Detection mode is available for use when multiple receivers share the same transmission line, such as in RS-485 systems. Address detection is enabled by setting the ADDEN bit of the RCxSTA register.

Address detection requires 9-bit character reception. When address detection is enabled, only characters with the ninth data bit set will be transferred to the receive FIFO buffer, thereby setting the RCxIF interrupt bit. All other characters will be ignored.

Upon receiving an address character, user software determines if the address matches its own. Upon address match, user software must disable address detection by clearing the ADDEN bit before the next Stop bit occurs. When user software detects the end of the message, determined by the message protocol used, software places the receiver back into the Address Detection mode by setting the ADDEN bit.

25.1.2.8 Asynchronous Reception Set-up:

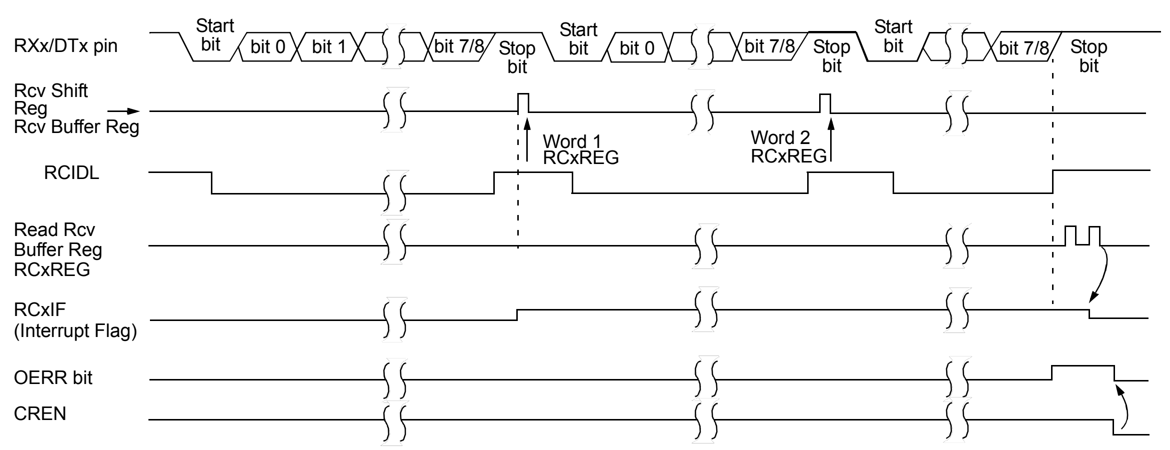
1. Initialize the SPxBRGH:SPxBRGL register pair and the BRGH and BRG16 bits to achieve the desired baud rate (see **Section 25.4 "EUSART Baud Rate Generator (BRG)"**).
2. Set the RXx/DTx and TXx/CKx TRIS controls to '1'.
3. Enable the serial port by setting the SPEN bit and the RXx/DTx pin TRIS bit. The SYNC bit must be clear for asynchronous operation.
4. If interrupts are desired, set the RCxIE interrupt enable bit and set the GIE and PEIE bits of the INTCON register.
5. If 9-bit reception is desired, set the RX9 bit.
6. Enable reception by setting the CREN bit.
7. The RCxIF interrupt flag bit will be set when a character is transferred from the RSR to the receive buffer. An interrupt will be generated if the RCxIE interrupt enable bit was also set.
8. Read the RCxSTA register to get the error flags and, if 9-bit data reception is enabled, the ninth data bit.
9. Get the received 8 Least Significant data bits from the receive buffer by reading the RCxREG register.
10. If an overrun occurred, clear the OERR flag by clearing the CREN receiver enable bit.

25.1.2.9 9-bit Address Detection Mode Set-up

This mode would typically be used in RS-485 systems. To set up an Asynchronous Reception with Address Detect Enable:

1. Initialize the SPxBRGH, SPxBRGL register pair and the BRGH and BRG16 bits to achieve the desired baud rate (see **Section 25.4 "EUSART Baud Rate Generator (BRG)"**).
2. Set the RXx/DTx and TXx/CKx TRIS controls to '1'.
3. Enable the serial port by setting the SPEN bit. The SYNC bit must be clear for asynchronous operation.
4. If interrupts are desired, set the RCxIE interrupt enable bit and set the GIE and PEIE bits of the INTCON register.
5. Enable 9-bit reception by setting the RX9 bit.
6. Enable address detection by setting the ADDEN bit.
7. Enable reception by setting the CREN bit.
8. The RCxIF interrupt flag bit will be set when a character with the ninth bit set is transferred from the RSR to the receive buffer. An interrupt will be generated if the RCxIE interrupt enable bit was also set.
9. Read the RCxSTA register to get the error flags. The ninth data bit will always be set.
10. Get the received 8 Least Significant data bits from the receive buffer by reading the RCxREG register. Software determines if this is the device's address.
11. If an overrun occurred, clear the OERR flag by clearing the CREN receiver enable bit.
12. If the device has been addressed, clear the ADDEN bit to allow all received data into the receive buffer and generate interrupts.

FIGURE 25-5: ASYNCHRONOUS RECEPTION



Note: This timing diagram shows three words appearing on the RXx/DTx input. The RCxREG (receive buffer) is read after the third word, causing the OERR (overrun) bit to be set.

TABLE 25-2: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH ASYNCHRONOUS RECEPTION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
BAUD1CON	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	309
BAUD2CON	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	309
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	93
PIE1	TMR1GIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	94
PIE4	—	—	RC2IE	TX2IE	—	—	BCL2IE	SSP2IE	97
PIR1	TMR1GIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	98
PIR4	—	—	RC2IF	TX2IF	—	—	BCL2IF	SSP2IF	97
RC1REG	EUSART1 Receive Register								302*
RC1STA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	308
RC2REG	EUSART2 Receive Register								302*
RC2STA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	308
SP1BRGL	EUSART1 Baud Rate Generator, Low Byte								310*
SP1BRGH	EUSART1 Baud Rate Generator, High Byte								310*
SP2BRGL	EUSART2 Baud Rate Generator, Low Byte								310*
SP2BRGH	EUSART2 Baud Rate Generator, High Byte								310*
TRISC	TRISC7	TRISC6	TRISC5	TRISC4	TRISC3	TRISC2	TRISC1	TRISC0	134
TX1STA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	306
TX2STA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	306

Legend: — = unimplemented locations, read as ‘0’. Shaded bits are not used for asynchronous reception.
* Page provides register information.

25.2 Clock Accuracy with Asynchronous Operation

The factory calibrates the internal oscillator block output (HFINTOSC). However, the HFINTOSC frequency may drift as VDD or temperature changes, and this directly affects the asynchronous baud rate. Two methods may be used to adjust the baud rate clock, but both require a reference clock source of some kind.

The first (preferred) method uses the OSCTUNE register to adjust the HFINTOSC output. Adjusting the value in the OSCTUNE register allows for fine resolution changes to the system clock source. See **Section 5.2 "Clock Source Types"** for more information.

The other method adjusts the value in the Baud Rate Generator. This can be done automatically with the Auto-Baud Detect feature (see **Section 25.4.1 "Auto-Baud Detect"**). There may not be fine enough resolution when adjusting the Baud Rate Generator to compensate for a gradual change in the peripheral clock frequency.

25.3 EUSART Control Registers

REGISTER 25-1: TXxSTA: TRANSMIT STATUS AND CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R-1	R/W-0
CSRC	TX9	TXEN(1)	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7	**CSRC:** Clock Source Select bit Asynchronous mode: Don't care Synchronous mode: 1 = Master mode (clock generated internally from BRG) 0 = Slave mode (clock from external source)
bit 6	**TX9:** 9-bit Transmit Enable bit 1 = Selects 9-bit transmission 0 = Selects 8-bit transmission
bit 5	**TXEN:** Transmit Enable bit(1) 1 = Transmit enabled 0 = Transmit disabled
bit 4	**SYNC:** EUSART Mode Select bit 1 = Synchronous mode 0 = Asynchronous mode
bit 3	**SENDB:** Send Break Character bit Asynchronous mode: 1 = Send Sync Break on next transmission (cleared by hardware upon completion) 0 = Sync Break transmission completed Synchronous mode: Don't care

REGISTER 25-1: TXxSTA: TRANSMIT STATUS AND CONTROL REGISTER (CONTINUED)

bit 2	**BRGH:** High Baud Rate Select bit Asynchronous mode: `1` = High speed `0` = Low speed Synchronous mode: Unused in this mode
bit 1	**TRMT:** Transmit Shift Register Status bit `1` = TSR empty `0` = TSR full
bit 0	**TX9D:** Ninth bit of Transmit Data Can be address/data bit or a parity bit.

Note 1: SREN/CREN overrides TXEN in Sync mode.

REGISTER 25-2: RCxSTA: RECEIVE STATUS AND CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R/W-0	R-0	R-0	R-x
SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:			
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'	
-n = Value at POR	'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	x = Bit is unknown

bit 7 **SPEN:** Serial Port Enable bit
1 = Serial port enabled (configures RXx/DTx and TXx/CKx pins as serial port pins)
0 = Serial port disabled (held in Reset)

bit 6 **RX9:** 9-bit Receive Enable bit
1 = Selects 9-bit reception
0 = Selects 8-bit reception

bit 5 **SREN:** Single Receive Enable bit
Asynchronous mode:
Don't care
Synchronous mode – Master:
1 = Enables single receive
0 = Disables single receive
This bit is cleared after reception is complete.
Synchronous mode – Slave
Don't care

bit 4 **CREN:** Continuous Receive Enable bit
Asynchronous mode:
1 = Enables receiver
0 = Disables receiver
Synchronous mode:
1 = Enables continuous receive until enable bit CREN is cleared (CREN overrides SREN)
0 = Disables continuous receive

bit 3 **ADDEN:** Address Detect Enable bit
Asynchronous mode 9-bit (RX9 = 1):
1 = Enables address detection, enable interrupt and load the receive buffer when RSR<8> is set
0 = Disables address detection, all bytes are received and ninth bit can be used as parity bit
Asynchronous mode 8-bit (RX9 = 0):
Don't care

bit 2 **FERR:** Framing Error bit
1 = Framing error (can be updated by reading RCxREG register and receive next valid byte)
0 = No framing error

bit 1 **OERR:** Overrun Error bit
1 = Overrun error (can be cleared by clearing bit CREN)
0 = No overrun error

bit 0 **RX9D:** Ninth bit of Received Data
This can be address/data bit or a parity bit and must be calculated by user firmware.

REGISTER 25-3: BAUDxCON: BAUD RATE CONTROL REGISTER

R-0/0	R-1/1	U-0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	U-0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7 **ABDOVF:** Auto-Baud Detect Overflow bit
Asynchronous mode:
1 = Auto-baud timer overflowed
0 = Auto-baud timer did not overflow
Synchronous mode:
Don’t care

bit 6 **RCIDL**: Receive Idle Flag bit
Asynchronous mode:
1 = Receiver is Idle
0 = Start bit has been received and the receiver is receiving
Synchronous mode:
Don’t care

bit 5 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 4 **SCKP**: Synchronous Clock Polarity Select bit
Asynchronous mode:
1 = Transmit inverted data to the TXx/CKx pin
0 = Transmit non-inverted data to the TXx/CKx pin
Synchronous mode:
1 = Data is clocked on rising edge of the clock
0 = Data is clocked on falling edge of the clock

bit 3 **BRG16:** 16-bit Baud Rate Generator bit
1 = 16-bit Baud Rate Generator is used
0 = 8-bit Baud Rate Generator is used

bit 2 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 1 **WUE:** Wake-up Enable bit
Asynchronous mode:
1 = Receiver is waiting for a falling edge. No character will be received, byte RCIF will be set. WUE will automatically clear after RCIF is set.
0 = Receiver is operating normally
Synchronous mode:
Don’t care

bit 0 **ABDEN**: Auto-Baud Detect Enable bit
Asynchronous mode:
1 = Auto-Baud Detect mode is enabled (clears when auto-baud is complete)
0 = Auto-Baud Detect mode is disabled
Synchronous mode:
Don’t care

25.4 EUSART Baud Rate Generator (BRG)

The Baud Rate Generator (BRG) is an 8-bit or 16-bit timer that is dedicated to the support of both the asynchronous and synchronous EUSART operation. By default, the BRG operates in 8-bit mode. Setting the BRG16 bit of the BAUDxCON register selects 16-bit mode.

The SPxBRGH:SPxBRGL register pair determines the period of the free running baud rate timer. In Asynchronous mode the multiplier of the baud rate period is determined by both the BRGH bit of the TXxSTA register and the BRG16 bit of the BAUDxCON register. In Synchronous mode, the BRGH bit is ignored.

Example 25-1 provides a sample calculation for determining the desired baud rate, actual baud rate, and baud rate% error.

Typical baud rates and error values for various asynchronous modes have been computed for your convenience and are shown in Table 25-5. It may be advantageous to use the high baud rate (BRGH = 1), or the 16-bit BRG (BRG16 = 1) to reduce the baud rate error. The 16-bit BRG mode is used to achieve slow baud rates for fast oscillator frequencies.

Writing a new value to the SPxBRGH, SPxBRGL register pair causes the BRG timer to be reset (or cleared). This ensures that the BRG does not wait for a timer overflow before outputting the new baud rate.

If the system clock is changed during an active receive operation, a receive error or data loss may result. To avoid this problem, check the status of the RCIDL bit to make sure that the receive operation is Idle before changing the system clock.

EXAMPLE 25-1: CALCULATING BAUD RATE ERROR

For a device with FOSC of 16 MHz, desired baud rate of 9600, Asynchronous mode, 8-bit BRG:

$$\textit{Desired Baud Rate} = \frac{F_{OSC}}{64([SPxBRGH:SPxBRG] + 1)}$$

Solving for SPxBRGH:SPxBRGL:

$$SPxBRGH:SPxBRGL = \frac{\dfrac{F_{OSC}}{\textit{Desired Baud Rate}}}{64} - 1$$

$$= \frac{\dfrac{16000000}{9600}}{64} - 1$$

$$= [25.042] = 25$$

$$\textit{ActualBaudRate} = \frac{16000000}{64(25 + 1)}$$

$$= 9615$$

$$\textit{Baud Rate \% Error} = \frac{\textit{Calc. Baud Rate} - \textit{Desired Baud Rate}}{\textit{Desired Baud Rate}}$$

$$= \frac{(9615 - 9600)}{9600} = 0.16\%$$

TABLE 25-3: BAUD RATE FORMULAS

Configuration Bits			BRG/EUSART Mode	Baud Rate Formula
SYNC	BRG16	BRGH		
0	0	0	8-bit/Asynchronous	FOSC/[64 (n+1)]
0	0	1	8-bit/Asynchronous	FOSC/[16 (n+1)]
0	1	0	16-bit/Asynchronous	
0	1	1	16-bit/Asynchronous	FOSC/[4 (n+1)]
1	0	x	8-bit/Synchronous	
1	1	x	16-bit/Synchronous	

Legend: x = Don't care, n = value of SPxBRGH, SPxBRGL register pair

TABLE 25-4: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH BAUD RATE GENERATOR

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Reset Values on page
BAUD1CON	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	309
BAUD2CON	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	309
RC1STA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	308
RC2STA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	308
SP1BRGL	EUSART1 Baud Rate Generator, Low Byte								310*
SP1BRGH	EUSART1 Baud Rate Generator, High Byte								310*
SP2BRGL	EUSART2 Baud Rate Generator, Low Byte								310*
SP2BRGH	EUSART2 Baud Rate Generator, High Byte								310*
TX1STA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	306
TX2STA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	306

Legend: — = unimplemented, read as '0'. Shaded bits are not used by the BRG.
* Page provides register information.

TABLE 25-5: BAUD RATES FOR ASYNCHRONOUS MODES

BAUD RATE	SYNC = 0, BRGH = 0, BRG16 = 0											
	Fosc = 32.000 MHz			Fosc = 18.432 MHz			Fosc = 16.000 MHz			Fosc = 11.0592 MHz		
	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGL value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGL value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGL value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGL value (decimal)
300	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
1200	—	—	—	1200	0.00	239	1202	0.16	207	1200	0.00	143
2400	2404	0.16	207	2400	0.00	119	2404	0.16	103	2400	0.00	71
9600	9615	0.16	51	9600	0.00	29	9615	0.16	25	9600	0.00	17
10417	10417	0.00	47	10286	-1.26	27	10417	0.00	23	10165	-2.42	16
19.2k	19.23k	0.16	25	19.20k	0.00	14	19.23k	0.16	12	19.20k	0.00	8
57.6k	55.55k	-3.55	3	57.60k	0.00	7	—	—	—	57.60k	0.00	2
115.2k	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

BAUD RATE	SYNC = 0, BRGH = 0, BRG16 = 0											
	Fosc = 8.000 MHz			Fosc = 4.000 MHz			Fosc = 3.6864 MHz			Fosc = 1.000 MHz		
	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGL value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGL value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGL value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGL value (decimal)
300	—	—	—	300	0.16	207	300	0.00	191	300	0.16	51
1200	1202	0.16	103	1202	0.16	51	1200	0.00	47	1202	0.16	12
2400	2404	0.16	51	2404	0.16	25	2400	0.00	23	—	—	—
9600	9615	0.16	12	—	—	—	9600	0.00	5	—	—	—
10417	10417	0.00	11	10417	0.00	5	—	—	—	—	—	—
19.2k	—	—	—	—	—	—	19.20k	0.00	2	—	—	—
57.6k	—	—	—	—	—	—	57.60k	0.00	0	—	—	—
115.2k	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

TABLE 25-5: BAUD RATES FOR ASYNCHRONOUS MODES (CONTINUED)

BAUD RATE	SYNC = 0, BRGH = 1, BRG16 = 0											
	FOSC = 32.000 MHz			FOSC = 18.432 MHz			FOSC = 16.000 MHz			FOSC = 11.0592 MHz		
	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGL value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGL value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGL value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGL value (decimal)
300	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
1200	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
2400	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
9600	9615	0.16	207	9600	0.00	119	9615	0.16	103	9600	0.00	71
10417	10417	0.00	191	10378	-0.37	110	10417	0.00	95	10473	0.53	65
19.2k	19.23k	0.16	103	19.20k	0.00	59	19.23k	0.16	51	19.20k	0.00	35
57.6k	57.14k	-0.79	34	57.60k	0.00	19	58.82k	2.12	16	57.60k	0.00	11
115.2k	117.64k	2.12	16	115.2k	0.00	9	111.1k	-3.55	8	115.2k	0.00	5

BAUD RATE	SYNC = 0, BRGH = 1, BRG16 = 0											
	FOSC = 8.000 MHz			FOSC = 4.000 MHz			FOSC = 3.6864 MHz			FOSC = 1.000 MHz		
	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGL value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGL value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGL value (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGL value (decimal)
300	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	300	0.16	207
1200	—	—	—	1202	0.16	207	1200	0.00	191	1202	0.16	51
2400	2404	0.16	207	2404	0.16	103	2400	0.00	95	2404	0.16	25
9600	9615	0.16	51	9615	0.16	25	9600	0.00	23	—	—	—
10417	10417	0.00	47	10417	0.00	23	10473	0.53	21	10417	0.00	5
19.2k	19231	0.16	25	19.23k	0.16	12	19.2k	0.00	11	—	—	—
57.6k	55556	-3.55	8	—	—	—	57.60k	0.00	3	—	—	—
115.2k	—	—	—	—	—	—	115.2k	0.00	1	—	—	—

BAUD RATE	SYNC = 0, BRGH = 0, BRG16 = 1											
	FOSC = 32.000 MHz			FOSC = 18.432 MHz			FOSC = 16.000 MHz			FOSC = 11.0592 MHz		
	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGH: SPxBRGL (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGH: SPxBRGL (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGH: SPxBRGL (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGH: SPxBRGL (decimal)
300	300.0	0.00	6666	300.0	0.00	3839	300.03	0.01	3332	300.0	0.00	2303
1200	1200.1	0.02	3332	1200	0.00	959	1200.5	0.04	832	1200	0.00	575
2400	2401	-0.04	832	2400	0.00	479	2398	-0.08	416	2400	0.00	287
9600	9615	0.16	207	9600	0.00	119	9615	0.16	103	9600	0.00	71
10417	10417	0.00	191	10378	-0.37	110	10417	0.00	95	10473	0.53	65
19.2k	19.23k	0.16	103	19.20k	0.00	59	19.23k	0.16	51	19.20k	0.00	35
57.6k	57.14k	-0.79	34	57.60k	0.00	19	58.82k	2.12	16	57.60k	0.00	11
115.2k	117.6k	2.12	16	115.2k	0.00	9	111.11k	-3.55	8	115.2k	0.00	5

TABLE 25-5: BAUD RATES FOR ASYNCHRONOUS MODES (CONTINUED)

BAUD RATE	SYNC = 0, BRGH = 0, BRG16 = 1											
	FOSC = 8.000 MHz			FOSC = 4.000 MHz			FOSC = 3.6864 MHz			FOSC = 1.000 MHz		
	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGH: SPxBRGL (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGH: SPxBRGL (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGH: SPxBRGL (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGH: SPxBRGL (decimal)
300	299.9	-0.02	1666	300.1	0.04	832	300.0	0.00	767	300.5	0.16	207
1200	1199	-0.08	416	1202	0.16	207	1200	0.00	191	1202	0.16	51
2400	2404	0.16	207	2404	0.16	103	2400	0.00	95	2404	0.16	25
9600	9615	0.16	51	9615	0.16	25	9600	0.00	23	—	—	—
10417	10417	0.00	47	10417	0.00	23	10473	0.53	21	10417	0.00	5
19.2k	19.23k	0.16	25	19.23k	0.16	12	19.20k	0.00	11	—	—	—
57.6k	55556	-3.55	8	—	—	—	57.60k	0.00	3	—	—	—
115.2k	—	—	—	—	—	—	115.2k	0.00	1	—	—	—

BAUD RATE	SYNC = 0, BRGH = 1, BRG16 = 1 or SYNC = 1, BRG16 = 1											
	FOSC = 32.000 MHz			FOSC = 18.432 MHz			FOSC = 16.000 MHz			FOSC = 11.0592 MHz		
	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGH: SPxBRGL (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGH: SPxBRGL (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGH: SPxBRGL (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGH: SPxBRGL (decimal)
300	300	0.00	26666	300.0	0.00	15359	300.0	0.00	13332	300.0	0.00	9215
1200	1200	0.00	6666	1200	0.00	3839	1200.1	0.01	3332	1200	0.00	2303
2400	2400	0.01	3332	2400	0.00	1919	2399.5	-0.02	1666	2400	0.00	1151
9600	9604	0.04	832	9600	0.00	479	9592	-0.08	416	9600	0.00	287
10417	10417	0.00	767	10425	0.08	441	10417	0.00	383	10433	0.16	264
19.2k	19.18k	-0.08	416	19.20k	0.00	239	19.23k	0.16	207	19.20k	0.00	143
57.6k	57.55k	-0.08	138	57.60k	0.00	79	57.97k	0.64	68	57.60k	0.00	47
115.2k	115.9	0.64	68	115.2k	0.00	39	114.29k	-0.79	34	115.2k	0.00	23

BAUD RATE	SYNC = 0, BRGH = 1, BRG16 = 1 or SYNC = 1, BRG16 = 1											
	FOSC = 8.000 MHz			FOSC = 4.000 MHz			FOSC = 3.6864 MHz			FOSC = 1.000 MHz		
	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGH: SPxBRGL (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGH: SPxBRGL (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGH: SPxBRGL (decimal)	Actual Rate	% Error	SPxBRGH: SPxBRGL (decimal)
300	300.0	0.00	6666	300.0	0.01	3332	300.0	0.00	3071	300.1	0.04	832
1200	1200	-0.02	1666	1200	0.04	832	1200	0.00	767	1202	0.16	207
2400	2401	0.04	832	2398	0.08	416	2400	0.00	383	2404	0.16	103
9600	9615	0.16	207	9615	0.16	103	9600	0.00	95	9615	0.16	25
10417	10417	0.00	191	10417	0.00	95	10473	0.53	87	10417	0.00	23
19.2k	19.23k	0.16	103	19.23k	0.16	51	19.20k	0.00	47	19.23k	0.16	12
57.6k	57.14k	-0.79	34	58.82k	2.12	16	57.60k	0.00	15	—	—	—
115.2k	117.6k	2.12	16	111.1k	-3.55	8	115.2k	0.00	7	—	—	—

25.4.1 AUTO-BAUD DETECT

The EUSART module supports automatic detection and calibration of the baud rate.

In the Auto-Baud Detect (ABD) mode, the clock to the BRG is reversed. Rather than the BRG clocking the incoming RXx signal, the RXx signal is timing the BRG. The Baud Rate Generator is used to time the period of a received 55h (ASCII "U") which is the Sync character for the LIN bus. The unique feature of this character is that it has five rising edges including the Stop bit edge.

Setting the ABDEN bit of the BAUDxCON register starts the auto-baud calibration sequence (Figure 25.4.2). While the ABD sequence takes place, the EUSART state machine is held in Idle. On the first rising edge of the receive line, after the Start bit, the SPxBRGL begins counting up using the BRG counter clock as shown in Table 25-6. The fifth rising edge will occur on the RXx/DTx pin at the end of the eighth bit period. At that time, an accumulated value totaling the proper BRG period is left in the SPxBRGH:SPxBRGL register pair, the ABDEN bit is automatically cleared, and the RCxIF interrupt flag is set. A read operation on the RCxREG needs to be performed to clear the RCxIF interrupt. RCxREG content should be discarded. When calibrating for modes that do not use the SPxBRGH register the user can verify that the SPxBRGL register did not overflow by checking for 00h in the SPxBRGH register.

The BRG auto-baud clock is determined by the BRG16 and BRGH bits as shown in Table 25-6. During ABD, both the SPxBRGH and SPxBRGL registers are used as a 16-bit counter, independent of the BRG16 bit setting. While calibrating the baud rate period, the SPxBRGH and SPxBRGL registers are clocked at 1/8th the BRG base clock rate. The resulting byte measurement is the average bit time when clocked at full speed.

Note 1: If the WUE bit is set with the ABDEN bit, auto-baud detection will occur on the byte following the Break character (see **Section 25.4.3 "Auto-Wake-up on Break"**).

2: It is up to the user to determine that the incoming character baud rate is within the range of the selected BRG clock source. Some combinations of oscillator frequency and EUSART baud rates are not possible.

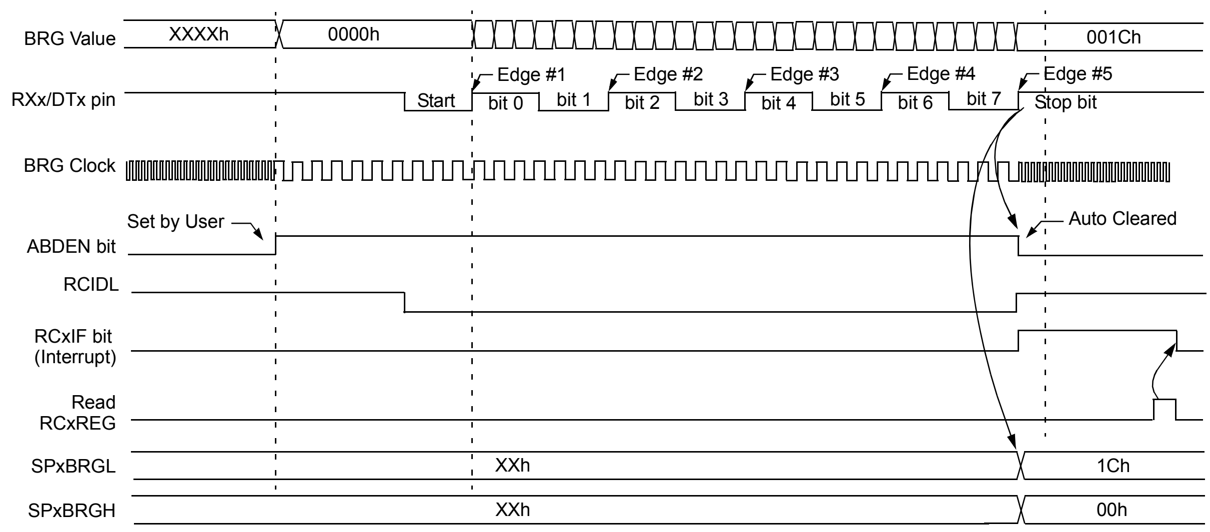
3: During the auto-baud process, the auto-baud counter starts counting at 1. Upon completion of the auto-baud sequence, to achieve maximum accuracy, subtract 1 from the SPxBRGH:SPxBRGL register pair.

TABLE 25-6: BRG COUNTER CLOCK RATES

BRG16	BRGH	BRG Base Clock	BRG ABD Clock
0	0	FOSC/64	FOSC/512
0	1	FOSC/16	FOSC/128
1	0	FOSC/16	FOSC/128
1	1	FOSC/4	FOSC/32

Note: During the ABD sequence, SPxBRGL and SPxBRGH registers are both used as a 16-bit counter, independent of BRG16 setting.

FIGURE 25-6: AUTOMATIC BAUD RATE CALIBRATION



Note 1: The ABD sequence requires the **EUSART** module to be configured in Asynchronous mode.

25.4.2 AUTO-BAUD OVERFLOW

During the course of automatic baud detection, the ABDOVF bit of the BAUDxCON register will be set if the baud rate counter overflows before the fifth rising edge is detected on the RX pin. The ABDOVF bit indicates that the counter has exceeded the maximum count that can fit in the 16 bits of the SPxBRGH:SPxBRGL register pair. After the ABDOVF has been set, the counter continues to count until the fifth rising edge is detected on the RXx/DTx pin. Upon detecting the fifth RXx/DTx edge, the hardware will set the RCxIF interrupt flag and clear the ABDEN bit of the BAUDxCON register. The RCxIF flag can be subsequently cleared by reading the RCxREG. The ABDOVF flag can be cleared by software directly.

To terminate the auto-baud process before the RCxIF flag is set, clear the ABDEN bit then clear the ABDOVF bit. The ABDOVF bit will remain set if the ABDEN bit is not cleared first.

25.4.3 AUTO-WAKE-UP ON BREAK

During Sleep mode, all clocks to the EUSART are suspended. Because of this, the Baud Rate Generator is inactive and a proper character reception cannot be performed. The Auto-Wake-up feature allows the controller to wake-up due to activity on the RXx/DTx line. This feature is available only in Asynchronous mode.

The Auto-Wake-up feature is enabled by setting the WUE bit of the BAUDxCON register. Once set, the normal receive sequence on RXx/DTx is disabled, and the EUSART remains in an Idle state, monitoring for a wake-up event independent of the CPU mode. A wake-up event consists of a high-to-low transition on the RXx/DTx line. (This coincides with the start of a Sync Break or a wake-up signal character for the LIN protocol.)

The EUSART module generates an RCxIF interrupt coincident with the wake-up event. The interrupt is generated synchronously to the Q clocks in normal CPU operating modes (Figure 25-7), and asynchronously if the device is in Sleep mode (Figure 25-8). The interrupt condition is cleared by reading the RCxREG register.

The WUE bit is automatically cleared by the low-to-high transition on the RXx line at the end of the Break. This signals to the user that the Break event is over. At this point, the EUSART module is in Idle mode waiting to receive the next character.

25.4.3.1 Special Considerations

Break Character

To avoid character errors or character fragments during a wake-up event, the wake-up character must be all zeros.

When the wake-up is enabled the function works independent of the low time on the data stream. If the WUE bit is set and a valid non-zero character is received, the low time from the Start bit to the first rising edge will be interpreted as the wake-up event. The remaining bits in the character will be received as a fragmented character and subsequent characters can result in framing or overrun errors.

Therefore, the initial character in the transmission must be all '0's. This must be 10 or more bit times, 13-bit times recommended for LIN bus, or any number of bit times for standard RS-232 devices.

Oscillator Startup Time

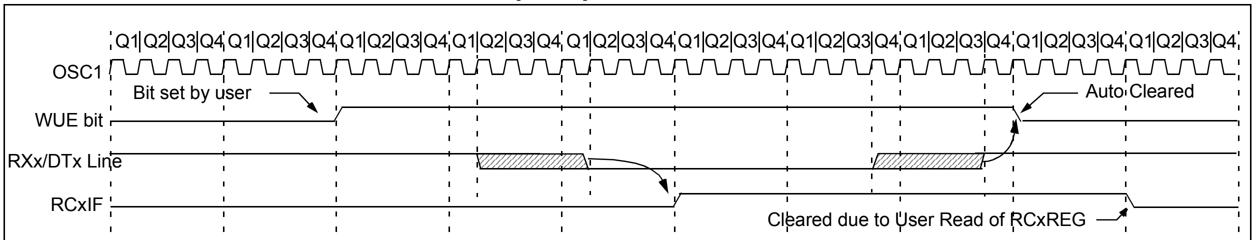
Oscillator start-up time must be considered, especially in applications using oscillators with longer start-up intervals (i.e., LP, XT or HS/PLL mode). The Sync Break (or wake-up signal) character must be of sufficient length, and be followed by a sufficient interval, to allow enough time for the selected oscillator to start and provide proper initialization of the EUSART.

WUE Bit

The wake-up event causes a receive interrupt by setting the RCxIF bit. The WUE bit is cleared by hardware by a rising edge on RXx/DTx. The interrupt condition is then cleared by software by reading the RCxREG register and discarding its contents.

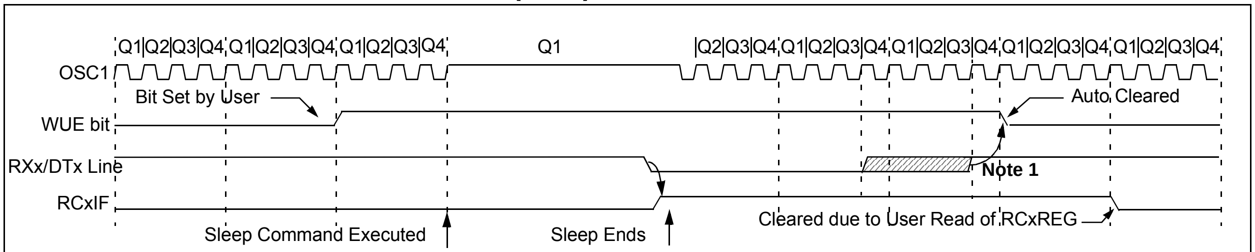
To ensure that no actual data is lost, check the RCIDL bit to verify that a receive operation is not in process before setting the WUE bit. If a receive operation is not occurring, the WUE bit may then be set just prior to entering the Sleep mode.

FIGURE 25-7: AUTO-WAKE-UP BIT (WUE) TIMING DURING NORMAL OPERATION



Note 1: The **EUSART** remains in Idle while the WUE bit is set.

FIGURE 25-8: AUTO-WAKE-UP BIT (WUE) TIMINGS DURING SLEEP



Note 1: If the wake-up event requires long oscillator warm-up time, the automatic clearing of the WUE bit can occur while the `stposc` signal is still active. This sequence should not depend on the presence of Q clocks.

2: The **EUSART** remains in Idle while the WUE bit is set.

25.4.4 BREAK CHARACTER SEQUENCE

The EUSART module has the capability of sending the special Break character sequences that are required by the LIN bus standard. A Break character consists of a Start bit, followed by 12 ‘0’ bits and a Stop bit.

To send a Break character, set the SENDB and TXEN bits of the TXxSTA register. The Break character transmission is then initiated by a write to the TXxREG. The value of data written to TXxREG will be ignored and all ‘0’s will be transmitted.

The SENDB bit is automatically reset by hardware after the corresponding Stop bit is sent. This allows the user to preload the transmit FIFO with the next transmit byte following the Break character (typically, the Sync character in the LIN specification).

The TRMT bit of the TXxSTA register indicates when the transmit operation is active or Idle, just as it does during normal transmission. See Figure 25-9 for the timing of the Break character sequence.

25.4.4.1 Break and Sync Transmit Sequence

The following sequence will start a message frame header made up of a Break, followed by an auto-baud Sync byte. This sequence is typical of a LIN bus master.

1. Configure the EUSART for the desired mode.
2. Set the TXEN and SENDB bits to enable the Break sequence.
3. Load the TXxREG with a dummy character to initiate transmission (the value is ignored).
4. Write ‘55h’ to TXxREG to load the Sync character into the transmit FIFO buffer.
5. After the Break has been sent, the SENDB bit is reset by hardware and the Sync character is then transmitted.

When the TXxREG becomes empty, as indicated by the TXxIF, the next data byte can be written to TXxREG.

25.4.5 RECEIVING A BREAK CHARACTER

The Enhanced EUSART module can receive a Break character in two ways.

The first method to detect a Break character uses the FERR bit of the RCxSTA register and the Received data as indicated by RCxREG. The Baud Rate Generator is assumed to have been initialized to the expected baud rate.

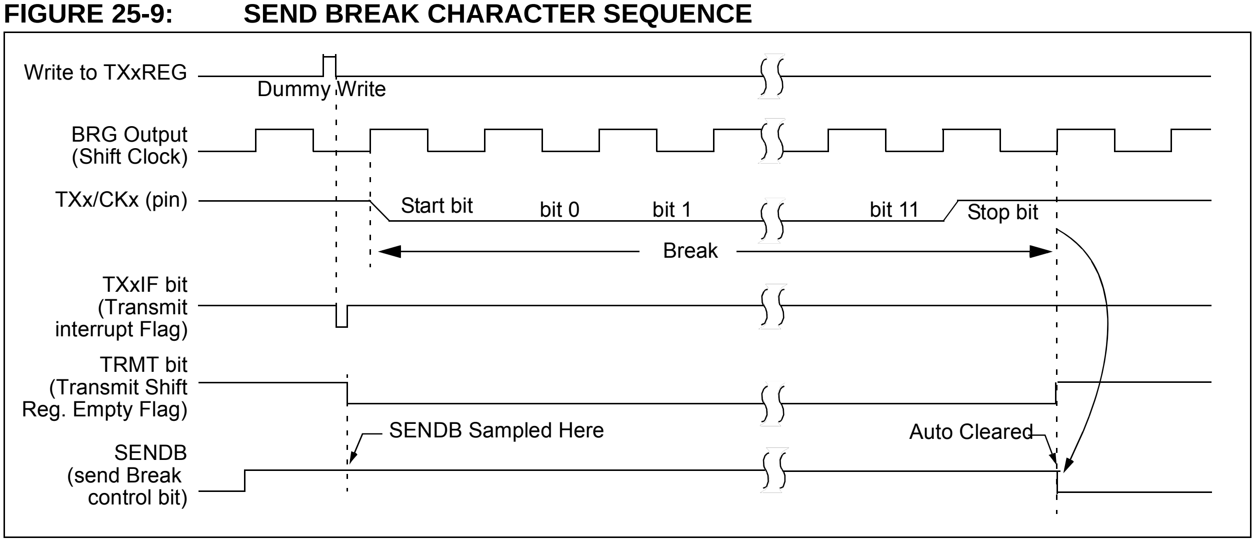
A Break character has been received when;

- RCxIF bit is set
- FERR bit is set
- RCxREG = 00h

The second method uses the Auto-Wake-up feature described in **Section 25.4.3 “Auto-Wake-up on Break”**. By enabling this feature, the EUSART will sample the next two transitions on RXx/DTx, cause an RCxIF interrupt, and receive the next data byte followed by another interrupt.

Note that following a Break character, the user will typically want to enable the Auto-Baud Detect feature. For both methods, the user can set the ABDEN bit of the BAUDxCON register before placing the EUSART in Sleep mode.

FIGURE 25-9: SEND BREAK CHARACTER SEQUENCE



25.5 EUSART Synchronous Mode

Synchronous serial communications are typically used in systems with a single master and one or more slaves. The master device contains the necessary circuitry for baud rate generation and supplies the clock for all devices in the system. Slave devices can take advantage of the master clock by eliminating the internal clock generation circuitry.

There are two signal lines in Synchronous mode: a bidirectional data line and a clock line. Slaves use the external clock supplied by the master to shift the serial data into and out of their respective receive and transmit shift registers. Since the data line is bidirectional, synchronous operation is half-duplex only. Half-duplex refers to the fact that master and slave devices can receive and transmit data but not both simultaneously. The EUSART can operate as either a master or slave device.

Start and Stop bits are not used in synchronous transmissions.

25.5.1 SYNCHRONOUS MASTER MODE

The following bits are used to configure the EUSART for Synchronous Master operation:

- SYNC = `1`
- CSRC = `1`
- SREN = `0` (for transmit); SREN = `1` (for receive)
- CREN = `0` (for transmit); CREN = `1` (for receive)
- SPEN = `1`

Setting the SYNC bit of the TXxSTA register configures the device for synchronous operation. Setting the CSRC bit of the TXxSTA register configures the device as a master. Clearing the SREN and CREN bits of the RCxSTA register ensures that the device is in the Transmit mode, otherwise the device will be configured to receive. Setting the SPEN bit of the RCxSTA register enables the EUSART. If the RXx/DTx or TXx/CKx pins are shared with an analog peripheral the analog I/O functions must be disabled by clearing the corresponding ANSEL bits.

The TRIS bits corresponding to the RXx/DTx and TXx/CKx pins should be set.

25.5.1.1 Master Clock

Synchronous data transfers use a separate clock line, which is synchronous with the data. A device configured as a master transmits the clock on the TXx/CKx line. The TXx/CKx pin output driver is automatically enabled when the EUSART is configured for synchronous transmit or receive operation. Serial data bits change on the leading edge to ensure they are valid at the trailing edge of each clock. One clock cycle is generated for each data bit. Only as many clock cycles are generated as there are data bits.

25.5.1.2 Clock Polarity

A clock polarity option is provided for Microwire compatibility. Clock polarity is selected with the SCKP bit of the BAUDxCON register. Setting the SCKP bit sets the clock Idle state as high. When the SCKP bit is set, the data changes on the falling edge of each clock and is sampled on the rising edge of each clock. Clearing the SCKP bit sets the Idle state as low. When the SCKP bit is cleared, the data changes on the rising edge of each clock and is sampled on the falling edge of each clock.

25.5.1.3 Synchronous Master Transmission

Data is transferred out of the device on the RXx/DTx pin. The RXx/DTx and TXx/CKx pin output drivers are automatically enabled when the EUSART is configured for synchronous master transmit operation.

A transmission is initiated by writing a character to the TXxREG register. If the TSR still contains all or part of a previous character the new character data is held in the TXxREG until the last bit of the previous character has been transmitted. If this is the first character, or the previous character has been completely flushed from the TSR, the data in the TXxREG is immediately transferred to the TSR. The transmission of the character commences immediately following the transfer of the data to the TSR from the TXxREG.

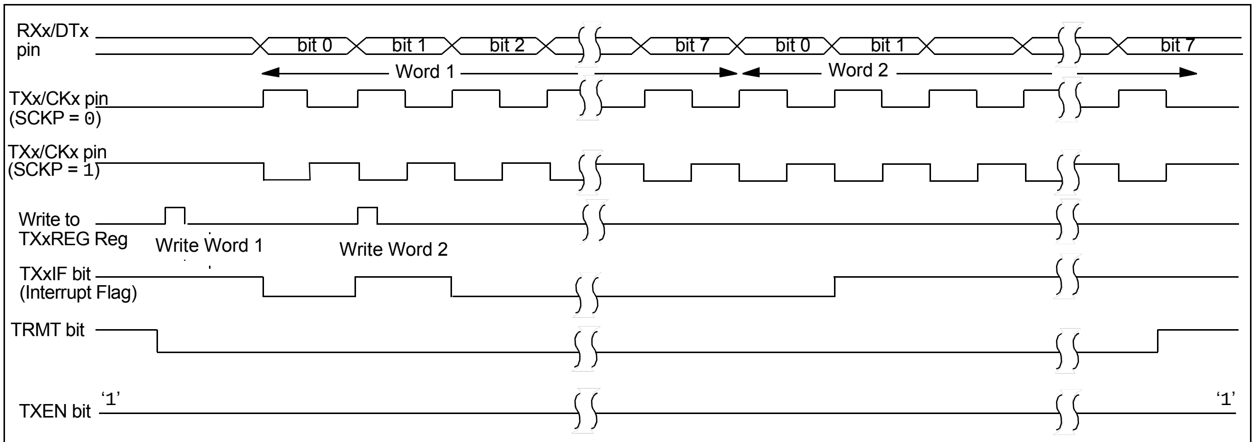
Each data bit changes on the leading edge of the master clock and remains valid until the subsequent leading clock edge.

Note:	The TSR register is not mapped in data memory, so it is not available to the user.

25.5.1.4 Synchronous Master Transmission Set-up:

1. Initialize the SPxBRGH, SPxBRGL register pair and the BRGH and BRG16 bits to achieve the desired baud rate (see **Section 25.4 "EUSART Baud Rate Generator (BRG)"**).
2. Set the RXx/DTx and TXx/CKx TRIS controls to '1'.
3. Enable the synchronous master serial port by setting bits SYNC, SPEN and CSRC. Set the TRIS bits corresponding to the RXx/DTx and TXx/CKx I/O pins.
4. Disable Receive mode by clearing bits SREN and CREN.
5. Enable Transmit mode by setting the TXEN bit.
6. If 9-bit transmission is desired, set the TX9 bit.
7. If interrupts are desired, set the TXxIE, GIE and PEIE interrupt enable bits.
8. If 9-bit transmission is selected, the ninth bit should be loaded in the TX9D bit.
9. Start transmission by loading data to the TXxREG register.

FIGURE 25-10: SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION



Note: Sync Master mode, SPxBRGL = 0, continuous transmission of two 8-bit words.

FIGURE 25-11: SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION (THROUGH TXEN)

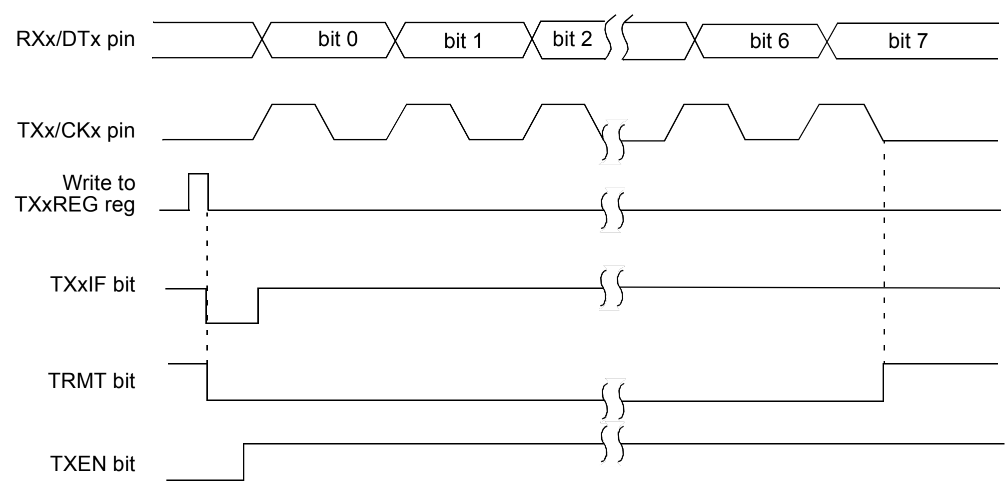


TABLE 25-7: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS MASTER TRANSMISSION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
BAUD1CON	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	309
BAUD2CON	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	309
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	93
PIE1	TMR1GIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	94
PIE4	—	—	RC2IE	TX2IE	—	—	BCL2IE	SSP2IE	97
PIR1	TMR1GIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	98
PIR4	—	—	RC2IF	TX2IF	—	—	BCL2IF	SSP2IF	97
RC1STA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	308
RC2STA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	308
SP1BRGL	EUSART1 Baud Rate Generator, Low Byte								310*
SP1BRGH	EUSART1 Baud Rate Generator, High Byte								310*
SP2BRGL	EUSART2 Baud Rate Generator, Low Byte								310*
SP2BRGH	EUSART2 Baud Rate Generator, High Byte								310*
TRISC	TRISC7	TRISC6	TRISC5	TRISC4	TRISC3	TRISC2	TRISC1	TRISC0	134
TX1REG	EUSART1 Transmit Register								299*
TX1STA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	306
TX2REG	EUSART2 Transmit Register								299*
TX2STA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	306

Legend: — = unimplemented locations, read as ‘0’. Shaded bits are not used for synchronous master transmission.
* Page provides register information.

25.5.1.5 Synchronous Master Reception

Data is received at the RXx/DTx pin. The RXx/DTx pin output driver must be disabled by setting the corresponding TRIS bits when the EUSART is configured for synchronous master receive operation.

In Synchronous mode, reception is enabled by setting either the Single Receive Enable bit (SREN of the RCxSTA register) or the Continuous Receive Enable bit (CREN of the RCxSTA register).

When SREN is set and CREN is clear, only as many clock cycles are generated as there are data bits in a single character. The SREN bit is automatically cleared at the completion of one character. When CREN is set, clocks are continuously generated until CREN is cleared. If CREN is cleared in the middle of a character the CK clock stops immediately and the partial character is discarded. If SREN and CREN are both set, then SREN is cleared at the completion of the first character and CREN takes precedence.

To initiate reception, set either SREN or CREN. Data is sampled at the RXx/DTx pin on the trailing edge of the TXx/CKx clock pin and is shifted into the Receive Shift Register (RSR). When a complete character is received into the RSR, the RCxIF bit is set and the character is automatically transferred to the two character receive FIFO. The Least Significant eight bits of the top character in the receive FIFO are available in RCxREG. The RCxIF bit remains set as long as there are un-read characters in the receive FIFO.

25.5.1.6 Slave Clock

Synchronous data transfers use a separate clock line, which is synchronous with the data. A device configured as a slave receives the clock on the TXx/CKx line. The TXx/CKx pin output driver must be disabled by setting the associated TRIS bit when the device is configured for synchronous slave transmit or receive operation. Serial data bits change on the leading edge to ensure they are valid at the trailing edge of each clock. One data bit is transferred for each clock cycle. Only as many clock cycles should be received as there are data bits.

25.5.1.7 Receive Overrun Error

The receive FIFO buffer can hold two characters. An overrun error will be generated if a third character, in its entirety, is received before RCxREG is read to access the FIFO. When this happens the OERR bit of the RCxSTA register is set. Previous data in the FIFO will not be overwritten. The two characters in the FIFO buffer can be read, however, no additional characters will be received until the error is cleared. The OERR bit can only be cleared by clearing the overrun condition. If the overrun error occurred when the SREN bit is set and CREN is clear then the error is cleared by reading RCxREG.

If the overrun occurred when the CREN bit is set then the error condition is cleared by either clearing the CREN bit of the RCxSTA register or by clearing the SPEN bit which resets the EUSART.

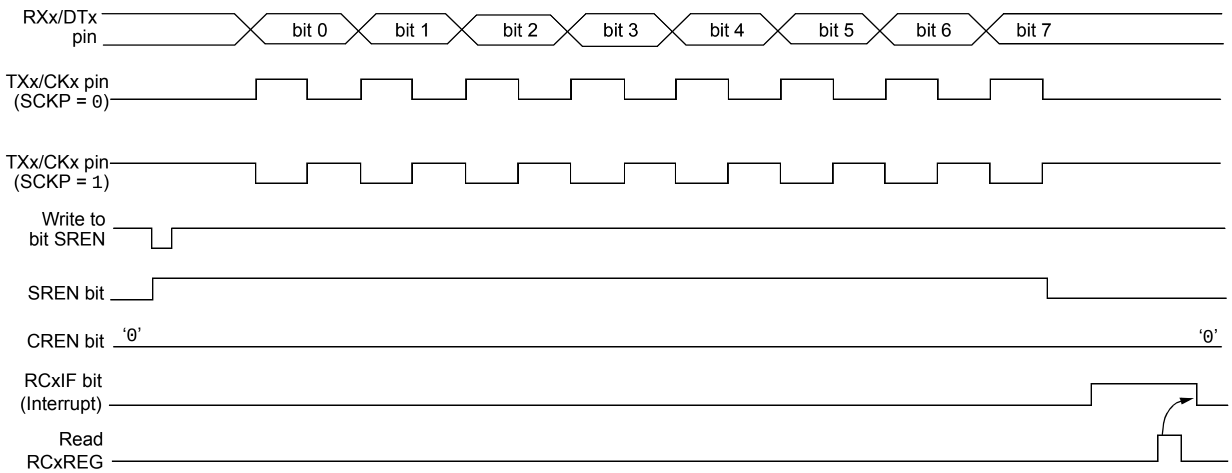
25.5.1.8 Receiving 9-bit Characters

The EUSART supports 9-bit character reception. When the RX9 bit of the RCxSTA register is set the EUSART will shift 9-bits into the RSR for each character received. The RX9D bit of the RCxSTA register is the ninth, and Most Significant, data bit of the top unread character in the receive FIFO. When reading 9-bit data from the receive FIFO buffer, the RX9D data bit must be read before reading the 8 Least Significant bits from the RCxREG.

25.5.1.9 Synchronous Master Reception Set-up:

1. Initialize the SPxBRGH, SPxBRGL register pair for the appropriate baud rate. Set or clear the BRGH and BRG16 bits, as required, to achieve the desired baud rate.
2. Set the RXx/DTx and TXx/CKx TRIS controls to ‘1’.
3. Enable the synchronous master serial port by setting bits SYNC, SPEN and CSRC. Disable RXx/DTx and TXx/CKx output drivers by setting the corresponding TRIS bits.
4. Ensure bits CREN and SREN are clear.
5. If using interrupts, set the GIE and PEIE bits of the INTCON register and set RCxIE.
6. If 9-bit reception is desired, set bit RX9.
7. Start reception by setting the SREN bit or for continuous reception, set the CREN bit.
8. Interrupt flag bit RCxIF will be set when reception of a character is complete. An interrupt will be generated if the enable bit RCxIE was set.
9. Read the RCxSTA register to get the ninth bit (if enabled) and determine if any error occurred during reception.
10. Read the 8-bit received data by reading the RCxREG register.
11. If an overrun error occurs, clear the error by either clearing the CREN bit of the RCxSTA register or by clearing the SPEN bit which resets the EUSART.

FIGURE 25-12: SYNCHRONOUS RECEPTION (MASTER MODE, SREN)



Note: Timing diagram demonstrates Sync Master mode with bit SREN = 1 and bit BRGH = 0.

TABLE 25-8: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS MASTER RECEPTION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
BAUD1CON	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	309
BAUD2CON	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	309
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	93
PIE1	TMR1GIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	94
PIE4	—	—	RC2IE	TX2IE	—	—	BCL2IE	SSP2IE	97
PIR1	TMR1GIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	98
PIR4	—	—	RC2IF	TX2IF	—	—	BCL2IF	SSP2IF	97
RC1REG	EUSART1 Receive Register								302*
RC1STA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	308
RC2REG	EUSART2 Receive Register								302*
RC2STA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	308
SP1BRGL	EUSART1 Baud Rate Generator, Low Byte								310*
SP1BRGH	EUSART1 Baud Rate Generator, High Byte								310*
SP2BRGL	EUSART2 Baud Rate Generator, Low Byte								310*
SP2BRGH	EUSART2 Baud Rate Generator, High Byte								310*
TX1STA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	306
TX2STA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	306

Legend: — = unimplemented locations, read as '0'. Shaded bits are not used for synchronous master reception.
* Page provides register information.

25.5.2 SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE MODE

The following bits are used to configure the EUSART for Synchronous slave operation:

- SYNC = `1`
- CSRC = `0`
- SREN = `0` (for transmit); SREN = `1` (for receive)
- CREN = `0` (for transmit); CREN = `1` (for receive)
- SPEN = `1`

Setting the SYNC bit of the TXxSTA register configures the device for synchronous operation. Clearing the CSRC bit of the TXxSTA register configures the device as a slave. Clearing the SREN and CREN bits of the RCxSTA register ensures that the device is in the Transmit mode, otherwise the device will be configured to receive. Setting the SPEN bit of the RCxSTA register enables the EUSART. If the RXx/DTx or TXx/CKx pins are shared with an analog peripheral the analog I/O functions must be disabled by clearing the corresponding ANSEL bits.

RXx/DTx and TXx/CKx pin output drivers must be disabled by setting the corresponding TRIS bits.

25.5.2.1 EUSART Synchronous Slave Transmit

The operation of the Synchronous Master and Slave modes are identical (see **Section 25.5.1.3 "Synchronous Master Transmission")**, except in the case of the Sleep mode.

If two words are written to the TXxREG and then the `SLEEP` instruction is executed, the following will occur:

1. The first character will immediately transfer to the TSR register and transmit.
2. The second word will remain in TXxREG register.
3. The TXxIF bit will not be set.
4. After the first character has been shifted out of TSR, the TXxREG register will transfer the second character to the TSR and the TXxIF bit will now be set.
5. If the PEIE and TXxIE bits are set, the interrupt will wake the device from Sleep and execute the next instruction. If the GIE bit is also set, the program will call the Interrupt Service Routine.

25.5.2.2 Synchronous Slave Transmission Set-up:

1. Set the SYNC and SPEN bits and clear the CSRC bit.
2. Set the RXx/DTx and TXx/CKx TRIS controls to '`1`'.
3. Clear the CREN and SREN bits.
4. If using interrupts, ensure that the GIE and PEIE bits of the INTCON register are set and set the TXxIE bit.
5. If 9-bit transmission is desired, set the TX9 bit.
6. Enable transmission by setting the TXEN bit.
7. If 9-bit transmission is selected, insert the Most Significant bit into the TX9D bit.
8. Start transmission by writing the Least Significant 8 bits to the TXxREG register.

TABLE 25-9: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE TRANSMISSION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
BAUD1CON	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	309
BAUD2CON	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	309
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	93
PIE1	TMR1GIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	94
PIE4	—	—	RC2IE	TX2IE	—	—	BCL2IE	SSP2IE	97
PIR1	TMR1GIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	98
PIR4	—	—	RC2IF	TX2IF	—	—	BCL2IF	SSP2IF	97
RC1STA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	308
RC2STA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	308
SP1BRGL	EUSART1 Baud Rate Generator, Low Byte								310*
SP1BRGH	EUSART1 Baud Rate Generator, High Byte								310*
SP2BRGL	EUSART2 Baud Rate Generator, Low Byte								310*
SP2BRGH	EUSART2 Baud Rate Generator, High Byte								310*
TRISC	TRISC7	TRISC6	TRISC5	TRISC4	TRISC3	TRISC2	TRISC1	TRISC0	134
TX1REG	EUSART1 Transmit Register								299*
TX1STA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	306
TX2REG	EUSART2 Transmit Register								299*
TX2STA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	306

Legend: — = unimplemented locations, read as '0'. Shaded bits are not used for synchronous slave transmission.
* Page provides register information.

 Preliminary

25.5.2.3 EUSART Synchronous Slave Reception

The operation of the Synchronous Master and Slave modes is identical (**Section 25.5.1.5 "Synchronous Master Reception"**), with the following exceptions:

- Sleep
- CREN bit is always set, therefore the receiver is never Idle
- SREN bit, which is a "don't care" in Slave mode

A character may be received while in Sleep mode by setting the CREN bit prior to entering Sleep. Once the word is received, the RSR register will transfer the data to the RCxREG register. If the RCxIE enable bit is set, the interrupt generated will wake the device from Sleep and execute the next instruction. If the GIE bit is also set, the program will branch to the interrupt vector.

25.5.2.4 Synchronous Slave Reception Set-up:

1. Set the SYNC and SPEN bits and clear the CSRC bit.
2. Set the RXx/DTx and TXx/CKx TRIS controls to '1'.
3. If using interrupts, ensure that the GIE and PEIE bits of the INTCON register are set and set the RCxIE bit.
4. If 9-bit reception is desired, set the RX9 bit.
5. Set the CREN bit to enable reception.
6. The RCxIF bit will be set when reception is complete. An interrupt will be generated if the RCxIE bit was set.
7. If 9-bit mode is enabled, retrieve the Most Significant bit from the RX9D bit of the RCxSTA register.
8. Retrieve the 8 Least Significant bits from the receive FIFO by reading the RCxREG register.
9. If an overrun error occurs, clear the error by either clearing the CREN bit of the RCxSTA register or by clearing the SPEN bit which resets the EUSART.

TABLE 25-10: REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH SYNCHRONOUS SLAVE RECEPTION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
BAUD1CON	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	309
BAUD2CON	ABDOVF	RCIDL	—	SCKP	BRG16	—	WUE	ABDEN	309
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	93
PIE1	TMR1GIE	ADIE	RCIE	TXIE	SSPIE	CCP1IE	TMR2IE	TMR1IE	94
PIE4	—	—	RC2IE	TX2IE	—	—	BCL2IE	SSP2IE	97
PIR1	TMR1GIF	ADIF	RCIF	TXIF	SSPIF	CCP1IF	TMR2IF	TMR1IF	98
PIR4	—	—	RC2IF	TX2IF	—	—	BCL2IF	SSP2IF	97
RC1REG	EUSART1 Receive Register								302*
RC1STA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	308
RC2REG	EUSART2 Receive Register								302*
RC2STA	SPEN	RX9	SREN	CREN	ADDEN	FERR	OERR	RX9D	308
SP1BRGL	EUSART1 Baud Rate Generator, Low Byte								310*
SP1BRGH	EUSART1 Baud Rate Generator, High Byte								310*
SP2BRGL	EUSART2 Baud Rate Generator, Low Byte								310*
SP2BRGH	EUSART2 Baud Rate Generator, High Byte								310*
TX1STA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	306
TX2STA	CSRC	TX9	TXEN	SYNC	SENDB	BRGH	TRMT	TX9D	306

Legend: — = unimplemented locations, read as '0'. Shaded bits are not used for synchronous slave reception.
* Page provides register information.

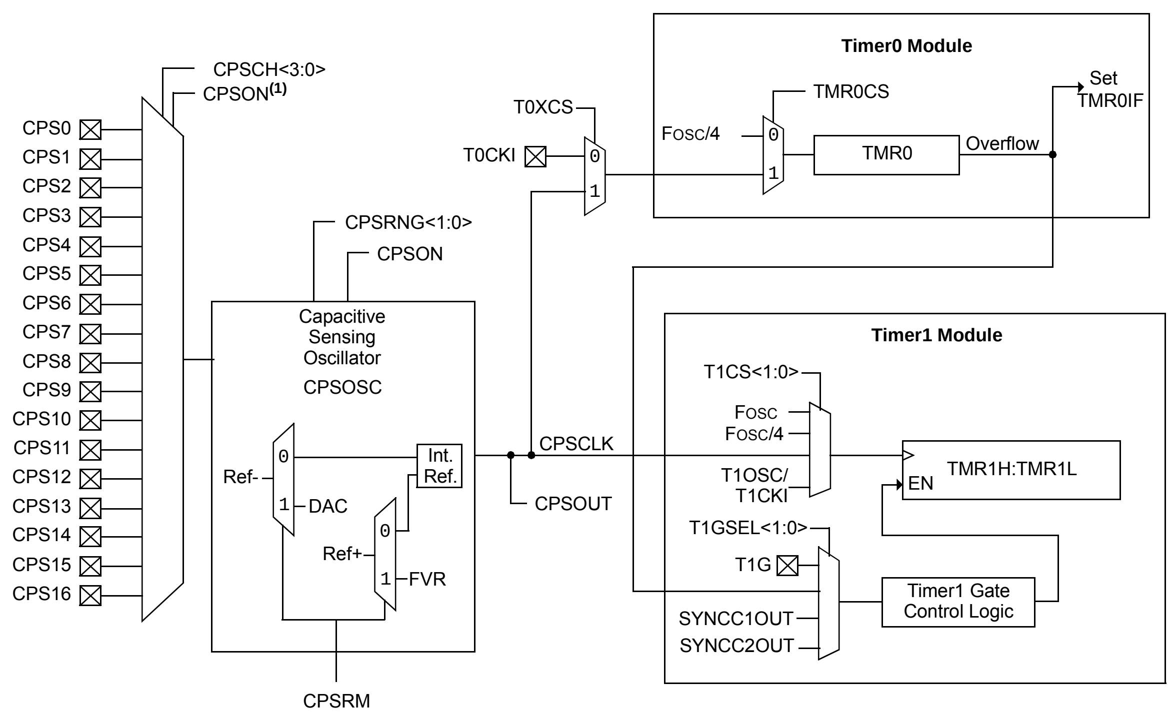
NOTES:

26.0 CAPACITIVE SENSING (CPS) MODULE

The Capacitive Sensing (CPS) module allows for an interaction with an end user without a mechanical interface. In a typical application, the CPS module is attached to a pad on a Printed Circuit Board (PCB), which is electrically isolated from the end user. When the end user places their finger over the PCB pad, a capacitive load is added, causing a frequency shift in the CPS module. The CPS module requires software and at least one timer resource to determine the change in frequency. Key features of this module include:

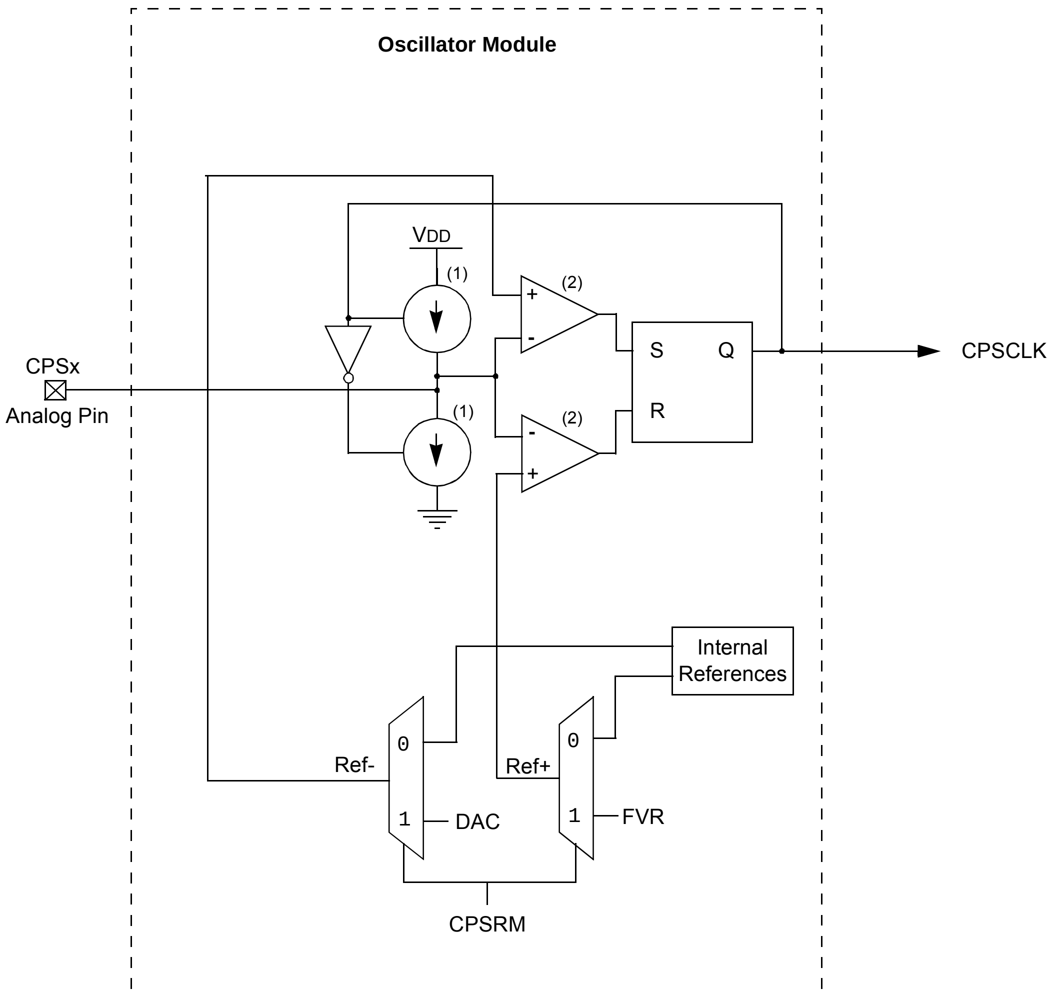
- Analog MUX for monitoring multiple inputs
- Capacitive sensing oscillator
- Multiple Power modes
- High power range with variable voltage references
- Multiple timer resources
- Software control
- Operation during Sleep

FIGURE 26-1: CAPACITIVE SENSING BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: If CPSON = 0, disabling capacitive sensing, no channel is selected.

FIGURE 26-2: CAPACITIVE SENSING OSCILLATOR BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: Module Enable and Power mode selections are not shown.
2: Comparators remain active in Noise Detection mode.

26.1 Analog MUX

The CPS module can monitor up to 16 inputs. The capacitive sensing inputs are defined as CPS<15:0>. To determine if a frequency change has occurred the user must:

- Select the appropriate CPS pin by setting the CPSCH<4:0> bits of the CPSCON1 register.
- Set the corresponding ANSEL bit.
- Set the corresponding TRIS bit.
- Run the software algorithm.

Selection of the CPSx pin while the module is enabled will cause the capacitive sensing oscillator to be on the CPSx pin. Failure to set the corresponding ANSEL and TRIS bits can cause the capacitive sensing oscillator to stop, leading to false frequency readings.

26.2 Capacitive Sensing Oscillator

The capacitive sensing oscillator consists of a constant current source and a constant current sink, to produce a triangle waveform. The CPSOUT bit of the CPSCON0 register shows the status of the capacitive sensing oscillator, whether it is a sinking or sourcing current. The oscillator is designed to drive a capacitive load (single PCB pad) and at the same time, be a clock source to either Timer0 or Timer1. The oscillator has three different current settings as defined by CPSRNG<1:0> of the CPSCON0 register. The different current settings for the oscillator serve two purposes:

- Maximize the number of counts in a timer for a fixed time base.
- Maximize the count differential in the timer during a change in frequency.

26.2.1 VOLTAGE REFERENCES

The capacitive sensing oscillator uses voltage references to provide two voltage thresholds for oscillation. The upper voltage threshold is referred to as Ref+ and the lower voltage threshold is referred to as Ref-.

The user can elect to use fixed voltage references, which are internal to the capacitive sensing oscillator, or variable voltage references, which are supplied by the Fixed Voltage Reference (FVR) module and the Digital-to-Analog Converter (DAC) module.

When the fixed voltage references are used, the V_{SS} voltage determines the lower threshold level (Ref-) and the V_{DD} voltage determines the upper threshold level (Ref+).

When the variable voltage references are used, the DAC voltage determines the lower threshold level (Ref-) and the FVR voltage determines the upper threshold level (Ref+). An advantage of using these reference sources is that oscillation frequency remains constant with changes in V_{DD}.

Different oscillation frequencies can be obtained through the use of these variable voltage references. The more the upper voltage reference level is lowered and the more the lower voltage reference level is raised, the higher the capacitive sensing oscillator frequency becomes.

Selection between the voltage references is controlled by the CPSRM bit of the CPSCON0 register. Setting this bit selects the variable voltage references and clearing this bit selects the fixed voltage references.

Please see **Section 14.0 “Fixed Voltage Reference (FVR)”** and **Section 17.0 “Digital-to-Analog Converter (DAC) Module”** for more information on configuring the variable voltage levels.

26.2.2 POWER MODES

The capacitive sensing oscillator can operate in one of seven different power modes. The power modes are separated into two ranges; the low range and the high range.

When the oscillator's low range is selected, the fixed internal voltage references of the capacitive sensing oscillator are being used. When the oscillator's high range is selected, the variable voltage references supplied by the FVR and DAC modules are being used. Selection between the voltage references is controlled by the CPSRM bit of the CPSCON0 register. See **Section 26.2.1 "Voltage References"** for more information.

Within each range there are three distinct Power modes; low, medium and high. Current consumption is dependent upon the range and mode selected. Selecting Power modes within each range is accomplished by configuring the CPSRNG <1:0> bits in the CPSCON0 register. See Table 26-1 for proper Power mode selection.

The remaining mode is a Noise Detection mode that resides within the high range. The Noise Detection mode is unique in that it disables the sinking and sourcing of current on the analog pin but leaves the rest of the oscillator circuitry active. This reduces the oscillation frequency on the analog pin to zero and also greatly reduces the current consumed by the oscillator module.

When noise is introduced onto the pin, the oscillator is driven at the frequency determined by the noise. This produces a detectable signal at the comparator output, indicating the presence of activity on the pin.

Figure 26-2 shows a more detailed drawing of the current sources and comparators associated with the oscillator.

TABLE 26-1: POWER MODE SELECTION

CPSRM	Range	CPSRNG<1:0>	Mode	Nominal Current(1)
0	Low	00	Off	0.0 μA
		01	Low	0.25 μA
		10	Medium	1.5 μA
		11	High	7.5 μA
1	High	00	Noise Detection	0.0 μA
		01	Low	9 μA
		10	Medium	30 μA
		11	High	100 μA

Note 1: See **Section 30.0 "Electrical Specifications"** for more information.

26.2.3 TIMER RESOURCES

To measure the change in frequency of the capacitive sensing oscillator, a fixed time base is required. For the period of the fixed time base, the capacitive sensing oscillator is used to clock either Timer0 or Timer1. The frequency of the capacitive sensing oscillator is equal to the number of counts in the timer divided by the period of the fixed time base.

26.2.4 FIXED TIME BASE

To measure the frequency of the capacitive sensing oscillator, a fixed time base is required. Any timer resource or software loop can be used to establish the fixed time base. It is up to the end user to determine the method in which the fixed time base is generated.

> **Note:** The fixed time base can not be generated by the timer resource that the capacitive sensing oscillator is clocking.

26.2.4.1 Timer0

To select Timer0 as the timer resource for the CPS module:

- Set the T0XCS bit of the CPSCON0 register.
- Clear the TMR0CS bit of the OPTION register.

When Timer0 is chosen as the timer resource, the capacitive sensing oscillator will be the clock source for Timer0. Refer to **Section 20.0 "Timer0 Module"** for additional information.

26.2.4.2 Timer1

To select Timer1 as the timer resource for the CPS module, set the TMR1CS<1:0> of the T1CON register to '11'. When Timer1 is chosen as the timer resource, the capacitive sensing oscillator will be the clock source for Timer1. Because the Timer1 module has a gate control, developing a time base for the frequency measurement can be simplified by using the Timer0 overflow flag.

It is recommend that the Timer0 overflow flag, in conjunction with the Toggle mode of the Timer1 Gate, be used to develop the fixed time base required by the software portion of the CPS module. Refer to **Section 21.12 "Timer1 Gate Control Register"** for additional information.

TABLE 26-2: TIMER1 ENABLE FUNCTION

TMR1ON	TMR1GE	Timer1 Operation
0	0	Off
0	1	Off
1	0	On
1	1	Count Enabled by input

26.2.5 SOFTWARE CONTROL

The software portion of the CPS module is required to determine the change in frequency of the capacitive sensing oscillator. This is accomplished by the following:

- Setting a fixed time base to acquire counts on Timer0 or Timer1.
- Establishing the nominal frequency for the capacitive sensing oscillator.
- Establishing the reduced frequency for the capacitive sensing oscillator due to an additional capacitive load.
- Set the frequency threshold.

26.2.5.1 Nominal Frequency (No Capacitive Load)

To determine the nominal frequency of the capacitive sensing oscillator:

- Remove any extra capacitive load on the selected CPSx pin.
- At the start of the fixed time base, clear the timer resource.
- At the end of the fixed time base save the value in the timer resource.

The value of the timer resource is the number of oscillations of the capacitive sensing oscillator for the given time base. The frequency of the capacitive sensing oscillator is equal to the number of counts on in the timer divided by the period of the fixed time base.

26.2.5.2 Reduced Frequency (additional capacitive load)

The extra capacitive load will cause the frequency of the capacitive sensing oscillator to decrease. To determine the reduced frequency of the capacitive sensing oscillator:

- Add a typical capacitive load on the selected CPSx pin.
- Use the same fixed time base as the nominal frequency measurement.
- At the start of the fixed time base, clear the timer resource.
- At the end of the fixed time base save the value in the timer resource.

The value of the timer resource is the number of oscillations of the capacitive sensing oscillator with an additional capacitive load. The frequency of the capacitive sensing oscillator is equal to the number of counts on in the timer divided by the period of the fixed time base. This frequency should be less than the value obtained during the nominal frequency measurement.

26.2.5.3 Frequency Threshold

The frequency threshold should be placed midway between the value of nominal frequency and the reduced frequency of the capacitive sensing oscillator. Refer to Application Note AN1103, "*Software Handling for Capacitive Sensing*" (DS01103) for more detailed information on the software required for CPS module.

Note: For more information on general capacitive sensing refer to Application Notes:
- AN1101, "*Introduction to Capacitive Sensing*" (DS01101)
- AN1102, "*Layout and Physical Design Guidelines for Capacitive Sensing*" (DS01102)

26.3 Operation during Sleep

The capacitive sensing oscillator will continue to run as long as the module is enabled, independent of the part being in Sleep. In order for the software to determine if a frequency change has occurred, the part must be awake. However, the part does not have to be awake when the timer resource is acquiring counts.

Note:	Timer0 does not operate when in Sleep, and therefore cannot be used for capacitive sense measurements in Sleep.

26.4 Capacitive Sensing Control Registers

REGISTER 26-1: CPSCON0: CAPACITIVE SENSING CONTROL REGISTER 0

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R-0/0	R/W-0/0
CPSON	CPSRM	—	—	CPSRNG<1:0>		CPSOUT	T0XCS
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7 **CPSON:** CPS Module Enable bit
1 = CPS module is enabled
0 = CPS module is disabled

bit 6 **CPSRM:** Capacitive Sensing Reference Mode bit
1 = CPS module is in high range. DAC and FVR provide oscillator voltage references.
0 = CPS module is in the low range. Internal oscillator voltage references are used.

bit 5-4 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 3-2 **CPSRNG<1:0>:** Capacitive Sensing Current Range
<u>If CPSRM = 0 (low range):</u>
00 = Oscillator is off
01 = Oscillator is in Low Range. Charge/Discharge Current is nominally 0.1 μA
10 = Oscillator is in Medium Range. Charge/Discharge Current is nominally 1.2 μA
11 = Oscillator is in High Range. Charge/Discharge Current is nominally 18 μA

<u>If CPSRM = 1 (high range):</u>
00 = Oscillator is on. Noise Detection mode. No Charge/Discharge current is supplied.
01 = Oscillator is in Low Range. Charge/Discharge Current is nominally 9 μA
10 = Oscillator is in Medium Range. Charge/Discharge Current is nominally 30 μA
11 = Oscillator is in High Range. Charge/Discharge Current is nominally 100 μA

bit 1 **CPSOUT:** Capacitive Sensing Oscillator Status bit
1 = Oscillator is sourcing current (Current flowing out of the pin)
0 = Oscillator is sinking current (Current flowing into the pin)

bit 0 **T0XCS:** Timer0 External Clock Source Select bit
<u>If TMR0CS = 1:</u>
The T0XCS bit controls which clock external to the core/Timer0 module supplies Timer0:
1 = Timer0 clock source is the capacitive sensing oscillator
0 = Timer0 clock source is the T0CKI pin
<u>If TMR0CS = 0:</u>
Timer0 clock source is controlled by the core/Timer0 module and is FOSC/4

REGISTER 26-2: CPSCON1: CAPACITIVE SENSING CONTROL REGISTER 1

U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
—	—	—	CPSCH<4:0>				
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-5 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 4-0 **CPSCH<4:0>:** Capacitive Sensing Channel Select bits

If CPSON = 0:

These bits are ignored. No channel is selected.

If CPSON = 1:

00000 = channel 0, (CPS0)
00001 = channel 1, (CPS1)
00010 = channel 2, (CPS2)
00011 = channel 3, (CPS3)
00100 = channel 4, (CPS4)
00101 = channel 5, (CPS5)
00110 = channel 6, (CPS6)
00111 = channel 7, (CPS7)
01000 = channel 8, (CPS8)
01001 = channel 9, (CPS9)
01010 = channel 10, (CPS10)
01011 = channel 11, (CPS11)
01100 = channel 12, (CPS12)
01101 = channel 13, (CPS13)
01110 = channel 14, (CPS14)
01111 = channel 15, (CPS15)
10000 = channel 16, (CPS16)
10001 = Reserved. Do not use.
.
.
.
11111 = Reserved. Do not use.

TABLE 26-3: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH CAPACITIVE SENSING

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
ANSELA	—	—	ANSA5	ANSA4	ANSA3	ANSA2	ANSA1	ANSA0	129
CPSCON0	CPSON	CPSRM	—	—	CPSRNG<1:0>		CPSOUT	T0XCS	332
CPSCON1	—	—	—	CPSCH<4:0>					333
OPTION_REG	$\overline{\text{WPUEN}}$	INTEDG	TMR0CS	TMR0SE	PSA	PS2	PS1	PS0	195
T1CON	TMR1CS<1:0>		T1CKPS<1:0>		T1OSCEN	$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$	—	TMR1ON	205
TRISA	TRISA7	TRISA6	TRISA5	TRISA4	TRISA3	TRISA2	TRISA1	TRISA0	128
TRISB	TRISB7	TRISB6	TRISB5	TRISB4	TRISB3	TRISB2	TRISB1	TRISB0	131
TRISD	TRISD<7:0>								137

Legend: — = Unimplemented location, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the CPS module.

NOTES:

27.0 LIQUID CRYSTAL DISPLAY (LCD) DRIVER MODULE

The Liquid Crystal Display (LCD) driver module generates the timing control to drive a static or multiplexed LCD panel. In the PIC16F/LF1946/47 device, the module drives the panels of up to four commons and up to 46 segments. The LCD module also provides control of the LCD pixel data.

The LCD driver module supports:

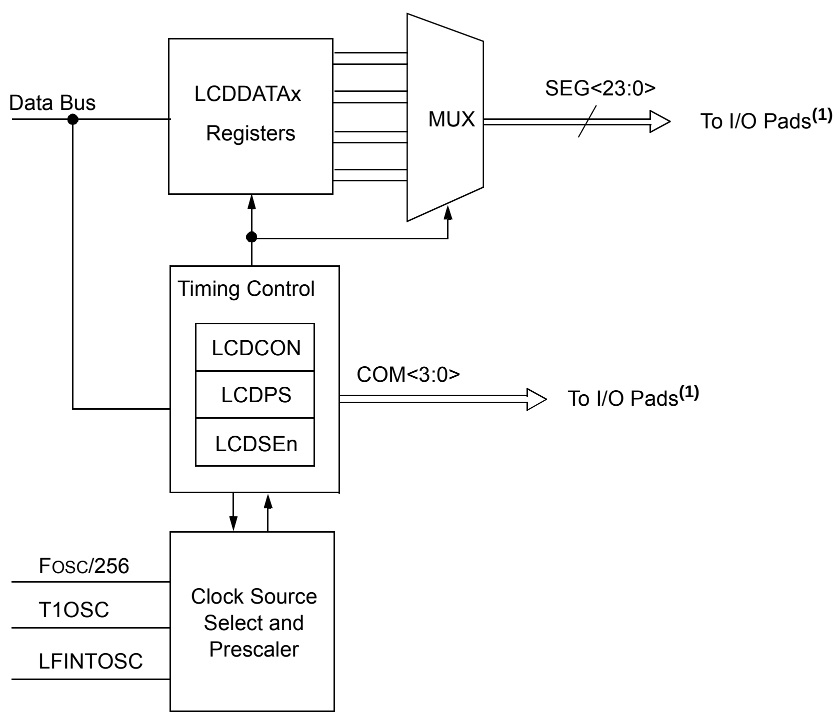
- Direct driving of LCD panel
- Three LCD clock sources with selectable prescaler
- Up to four common pins:
  - Static (1 common)
  - 1/2 multiplex (2 commons)
  - 1/3 multiplex (3 commons)
  - 1/4 multiplex (4 commons)
- Segment pins up to:
  - 64 (PIC16(L)F1946/1947)
- Static, 1/2 or 1/3 LCD Bias

27.1 LCD Registers

The module contains the following registers:

- LCD Control register (LCDCON)
- LCD Phase register (LCDPS)
- LCD Reference Ladder register (LCDRL)
- LCD Contrast Control register (LCDCST)
- LCD Reference Voltage Control register (LCDREF)
- Up to 6 LCD Segment Enable registers (LCDSEn)
- Up to 24 LCD data registers (LCDDATAn)

FIGURE 27-1: LCD DRIVER MODULE BLOCK DIAGRAM



Note 1: These are not directly connected to the I/O pads, but may be tri-stated, depending on the configuration of the LCD module.

TABLE 27-1: LCD SEGMENT AND DATA REGISTERS

Device	# of LCD Registers	
	Segment Enable	Data
PIC16(L)F1946/1947	6	24

The LCDCON register (Register 27-1) controls the operation of the LCD driver module. The LCDPS register (Register 27-2) configures the LCD clock source prescaler and the type of waveform; Type-A or Type-B. The LCDSEn registers (Register 27-5) configure the functions of the port pins.

The following LCDSEn registers are available:

- LCDSE0 SE<7:0>
- LCDSE1 SE<15:8>
- LCDSE2 SE<23:16>(1)
- LCDSE3 SE<31:24>
- LCDSE4 SE<39:32>
- LCDSE5 SE<45:40>

Once the module is initialized for the LCD panel, the individual bits of the LCDDATAn registers are cleared/set to represent a clear/dark pixel, respectively:

- LCDDATA0 SEG<7:0>COM0
- LCDDATA1 SEG<15:8>COM0
- LCDDATA2 SEG<23:16>COM0
- LCDDATA3 SEG<7:0>COM1
- LCDDATA4 SEG<15:8>COM1
- LCDDATA5 SEG<23:16>COM1
- LCDDATA6 SEG<7:0>COM2
- LCDDATA7 SEG<15:8>COM2
- LCDDATA8 SEG<23:16>COM2
- LCDDATA9 SEG<7:0>COM3
- LCDDATA10 SEG<15:8>COM3
- LCDDATA11 SEG<23:16>COM3
- LCDDATA12 SEG<31:24>COM0
- LCDDATA13 SEG<39:32>COM0
- LCDDATA14 SEG<45:40>COM0
- LCDDATA15 SEG<31:24>COM1
- LCDDATA16 SEG<39:32>COM1
- LCDDATA17 SEG<45:40>COM1
- LCDDATA18 SEG<31:24>COM2
- LCDDATA19 SEG<39:32>COM2
- LCDDATA20 SEG<45:40>COM2
- LCDDATA21 SEG<31:24>COM3
- LCDDATA22 SEG<39:32>COM3
- LCDDATA23 SEG<45:40>COM3

As an example, LCDDATAn is detailed in Register 27-6.

Once the module is configured, the LCDEN bit of the LCDCON register is used to enable or disable the LCD module. The LCD panel can also operate during Sleep by clearing the SLPEN bit of the LCDCON register.

27.2 Liquid Crystal Display (LCD) Control Registers

REGISTER 27-1: LCDCON: LIQUID CRYSTAL DISPLAY (LCD) CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/C-0/0	U-0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1
LCDEN	SLPEN	WERR	—	CS<1:0>		LMUX<1:0>	
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	C = Only clearable bit

bit 7 **LCDEN:** LCD Driver Enable bit
1 = LCD driver module is enabled
0 = LCD driver module is disabled

bit 6 **SLPEN:** LCD Driver Enable in Sleep Mode bit
1 = LCD driver module is disabled in Sleep mode
0 = LCD driver module is enabled in Sleep mode

bit 5 **WERR:** LCD Write Failed Error bit
1 = LCDDATAn register written while the WA bit of the LCDPS register = 0 (must be cleared in software)
0 = No LCD write error

bit 4 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 3-2 **CS<1:0>:** Clock Source Select bits
00 = FOSC/256
01 = T1OSC (Timer1)
1x = LFINTOSC (31 kHz)

bit 1-0 **LMUX<1:0>:** Commons Select bits

LMUX<1:0>	Multiplex	Maximum Number of Pixels PIC16F1946/47/ PIC16LF1946/47	Bias
00	Static (COM0)	46	Static
01	1/2 (COM<1:0>)	92	1/2 or 1/3
10	1/3 (COM<2:0>)	138	1/2 or 1/3
11	1/4 (COM<3:0>)	184	1/3

REGISTER 27-2: LCDPS: LCD PHASE REGISTER

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R-0/0	R-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-1/1	R/W-1/1
WFT	BIASMD	LCDA	WA	LP<3:0>			
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	C = Only clearable bit

bit 7 **WFT:** Waveform Type bit
1 = Type-B phase changes on each frame boundary
0 = Type-A phase changes within each common type

bit 6 **BIASMD:** Bias Mode Select bit
When LMUX<1:0> = 00:
0 = Static Bias mode (do not set this bit to ‘1’)
When LMUX<1:0> = 01:
1 = 1/2 Bias mode
0 = 1/3 Bias mode
When LMUX<1:0> = 10:
1 = 1/2 Bias mode
0 = 1/3 Bias mode
When LMUX<1:0> = 11:
0 = 1/3 Bias mode (do not set this bit to ‘1’)

bit 5 **LCDA:** LCD Active Status bit
1 = LCD driver module is active
0 = LCD driver module is inactive

bit 4 **WA:** LCD Write Allow Status bit
1 = Writing to the LCDDATAn registers is allowed
0 = Writing to the LCDDATAn registers is not allowed

bit 3-0 **LP<3:0>:** LCD Prescaler Selection bits
1111 = 1:16
1110 = 1:15
1101 = 1:14
1100 = 1:13
1011 = 1:12
1010 = 1:11
1001 = 1:10
1000 = 1:9
0111 = 1:8
0110 = 1:7
0101 = 1:6
0100 = 1:5
0011 = 1:4
0010 = 1:3
0001 = 1:2
0000 = 1:1

REGISTER 27-3: LCDREF: LCD REFERENCE VOLTAGE CONTROL REGISTER

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	U-0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	U-0
LCDIRE	LCDIRS	LCDIRI	—	VLCD3PE	VLCD2PE	VLCD1PE	—
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	C = Only clearable bit

bit 7 **LCDIRE:** LCD Internal Reference Enable bit
1 = Internal LCD Reference is enabled and connected to the Internal Contrast Control circuit
0 = Internal LCD Reference is disabled

bit 6 **LCDIRS:** LCD Internal Reference Source bit
If LCDIRE = 1:
0 = Internal LCD Contrast Control is powered by VDD
1 = Internal LCD Contrast Control is powered by a 3.072V output of the FVR.
If LCDIRE = 0:
Internal LCD Contrast Control is unconnected. LCD bandgap buffer is disabled.

bit 5 **LCDIRI:** LCD Internal Reference Ladder Idle Enable bit
Allows the Internal FVR buffer to shut down when the LCD Reference Ladder is in power mode 'B'
1 = When the LCD Reference Ladder is in power mode 'B', the LCD Internal FVR buffer is disabled.
0 = The LCD Internal FVR Buffer ignores the LCD Reference Ladder Power mode.

bit 4 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

bit 3 **VLCD3PE:** VLCD3 Pin Enable bit
1 = The VLCD3 pin is connected to the internal bias voltage LCDBIAS3(1)
0 = The VLCD3 pin is not connected

bit 2 **VLCD2PE:** VLCD2 Pin Enable bit
1 = The VLCD2 pin is connected to the internal bias voltage LCDBIAS2(1)
0 = The VLCD2 pin is not connected

bit 1 **VLCD1PE:** VLCD1 Pin Enable bit
1 = The VLCD1 pin is connected to the internal bias voltage LCDBIAS1(1)
0 = The VLCD1 pin is not connected

bit 0 **Unimplemented:** Read as '0'

Note 1: Normal pin controls of TRISx and ANSELx are unaffected.

REGISTER 27-4: LCDCST: LCD CONTRAST CONTROL REGISTER

U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	U-0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
—	—	—	—	—	LCDCST<2:0>		
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	C = Only clearable bit

bit 7-3 **Unimplemented:** Read as ‘0’

bit 2-0 **LCDCST<2:0>:** LCD Contrast Control bits
Selects the resistance of the LCD contrast control resistor ladder

Bit Value = Resistor ladder
000 = Minimum Resistance (Maximum contrast). Resistor ladder is shorted.
001 = Resistor ladder is at 1/7th of maximum resistance
010 = Resistor ladder is at 2/7th of maximum resistance
011 = Resistor ladder is at 3/7th of maximum resistance
100 = Resistor ladder is at 4/7th of maximum resistance
101 = Resistor ladder is at 5/7th of maximum resistance
110 = Resistor ladder is at 6/7th of maximum resistance
111 = Resistor ladder is at maximum resistance (Minimum contrast).

REGISTER 27-5: LCDSEn: LCD SEGMENT ENABLE REGISTERS

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
SEn	SEn	SEn	SEn	SEn	SEn	SEn	SEn
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **SEn:** Segment Enable bits
`1` = Segment function of the pin is enabled
`0` = I/O function of the pin is enabled

REGISTER 27-6: LCDDATAn: LCD DATA REGISTERS

R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u	R/W-x/u
SEGx-COMy	SEGx-COMy	SEGx-COMy	SEGx-COMy	SEGx-COMy	SEGx-COMy	SEGx-COMy	SEGx-COMy
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as ‘0’
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
‘1’ = Bit is set	‘0’ = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-0 **SEGx-COMy:** Pixel On bits
`1` = Pixel on (dark)
`0` = Pixel off (clear)

27.3 LCD Clock Source Selection

The LCD module has 3 possible clock sources:

- FOSC/256
- T1OSC
- LFINTOSC

The first clock source is the system clock divided by 256 (FOSC/256). This divider ratio is chosen to provide about 1 kHz output when the system clock is 8 MHz. The divider is not programmable. Instead, the LCD prescaler bits LP<3:0> of the LCDPS register are used to set the LCD frame clock rate.

The second clock source is the T1OSC. This also gives about 1 kHz when a 32.768 kHz crystal is used with the Timer1 oscillator. To use the Timer1 oscillator as a clock source, the T1OSCEN bit of the T1CON register should be set.

The third clock source is the 31 kHz LFINTOSC, which provides approximately 1 kHz output.

The second and third clock sources may be used to continue running the LCD while the processor is in Sleep.

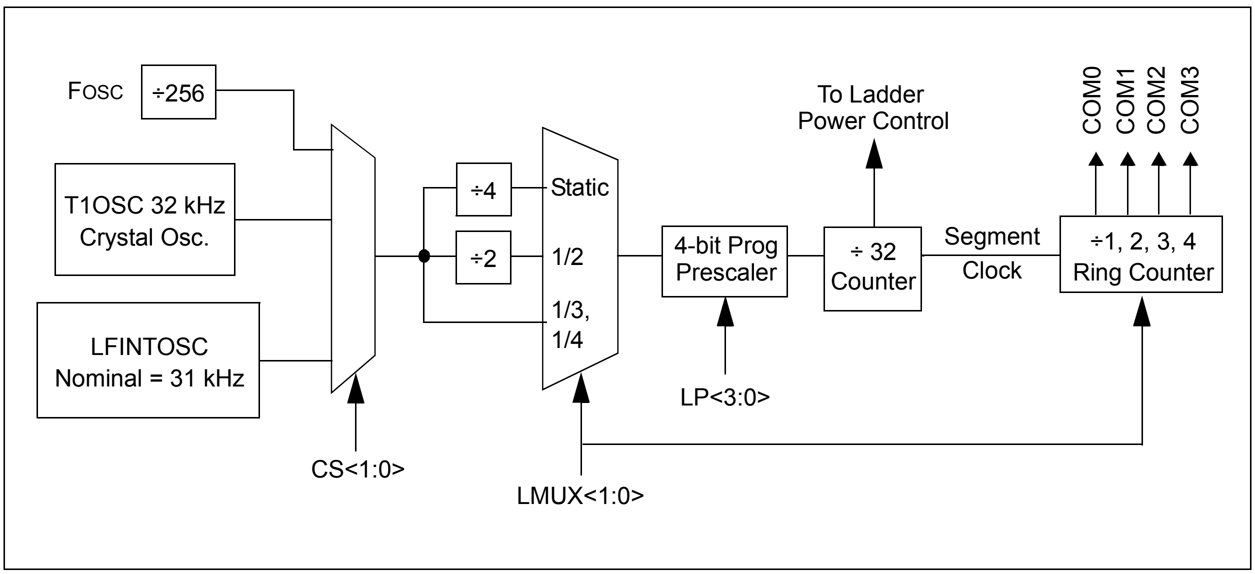
Using bits CS<1:0> of the LCDCON register can select any of these clock sources.

27.3.1 LCD PRESCALER

A 4-bit counter is available as a prescaler for the LCD clock. The prescaler is not directly readable or writable; its value is set by the LP<3:0> bits of the LCDPS register, which determine the prescaler assignment and prescale ratio.

The prescale values are selectable from 1:1 through 1:16.

FIGURE 27-2: LCD CLOCK GENERATION



Preliminary

27.4 LCD Bias Voltage Generation

The LCD module can be configured for one of three bias types:

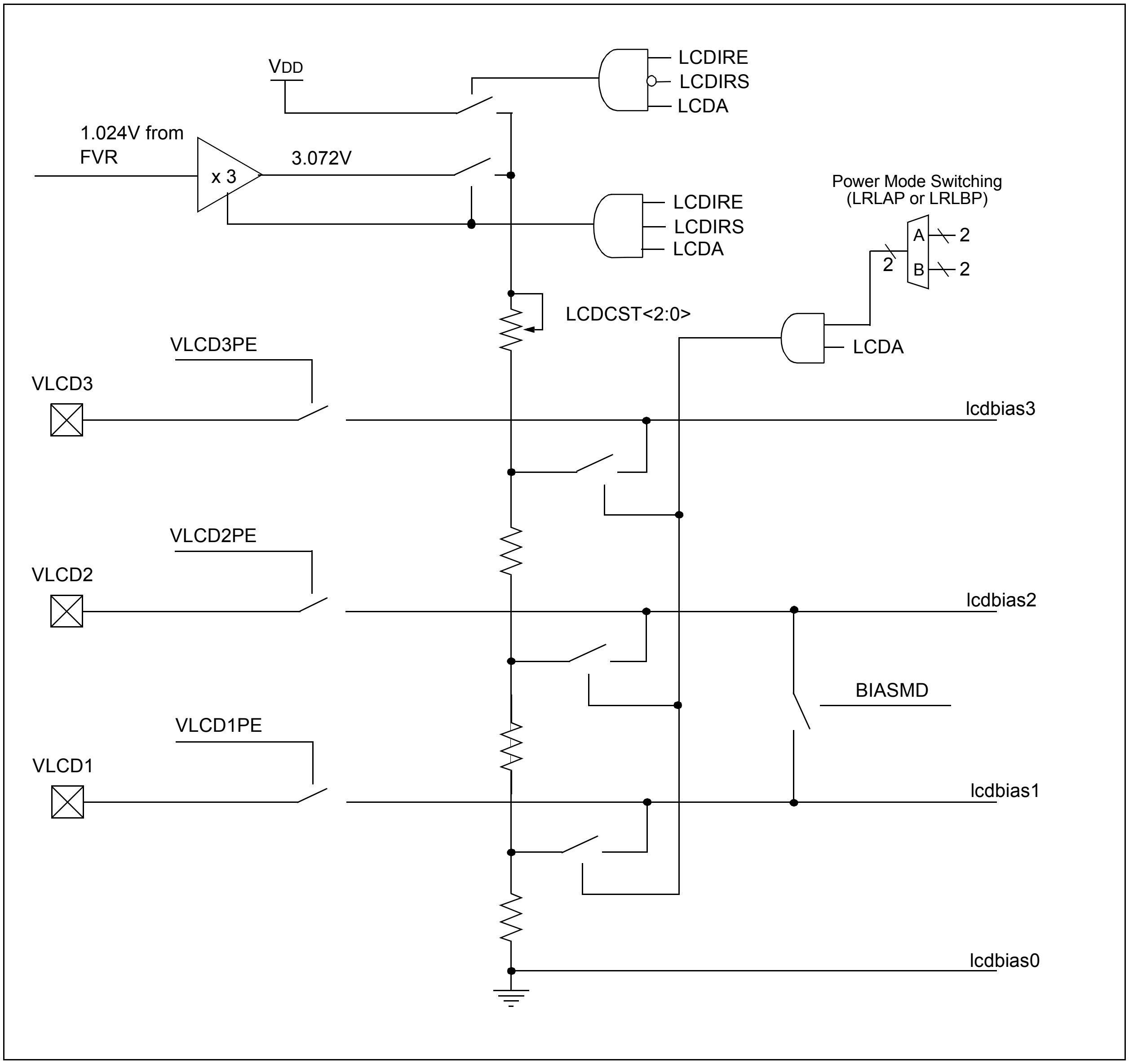
- Static Bias (2 voltage levels: VSS and VLCD)
- 1/2 Bias (3 voltage levels: VSS, 1/2 VLCD and VLCD)
- 1/3 Bias (4 voltage levels: VSS, 1/3 VLCD, 2/3 VLCD and VLCD)

TABLE 27-2: LCD BIAS VOLTAGES

	Static Bias	1/2 Bias	1/3 Bias
LCD Bias 0	VSS	VSS	VSS
LCD Bias 1	—	1/2 VDD	1/3 VDD
LCD Bias 2	—	1/2 VDD	2/3 VDD
LCD Bias 3	VLCD3	VLCD3	VLCD3

So that the user is not forced to place external components and use up to three pins for bias voltage generation, internal contrast control and an internal reference ladder are provided internally to the PIC16F/LF1946/47. Both of these features may be used in conjunction with the external VLCD<3:1> pins, to provide maximum flexibility. Refer to Figure 27-3.

FIGURE 27-3: LCD BIAS VOLTAGE GENERATION BLOCK DIAGRAM



27.5 LCD Bias Internal Reference Ladder

The internal reference ladder can be used to divide the LCD bias voltage two or three equally spaced voltages that will be supplied to the LCD segment pins. To create this, the reference ladder consists of three matched resistors. Refer to Figure 27-3.

27.5.1 BIAS MODE INTERACTION

When in 1/2 Bias mode (BIASMD = 1), then the middle resistor of the ladder is shorted out so that only two voltages are generated. The current consumption of the ladder is higher in this mode, with the one resistor removed.

TABLE 27-3: LCD INTERNAL LADDER POWER MODES (1/3 BIAS)

Power Mode	Nominal Resistance of Entire Ladder	Nominal IDD
Low	3 Mohm	1 μA
Medium	300 kohm	10 μA
High	30 kohm	100 μA

27.5.2 POWER MODES

The internal reference ladder may be operated in one of three power modes. This allows the user to trade off LCD contrast for power in the specific application. The larger the LCD glass, the more capacitance is present on a physical LCD segment, requiring more current to maintain the same contrast level.

Three different power modes are available, LP, MP and HP. The internal reference ladder can also be turned off for applications that wish to provide an external ladder or to minimize power consumption. Disabling the internal reference ladder results in all of the ladders being disconnected, allowing external voltages to be supplied.

Whenever the LCD module is inactive (LCDA = 0), the internal reference ladder will be turned off.

 Preliminary

27.5.3 AUTOMATIC POWER MODE SWITCHING

As an LCD segment is electrically only a capacitor, current is drawn only during the interval where the voltage is switching. To minimize total device current, the LCD internal reference ladder can be operated in a different power mode for the transition portion of the duration. This is controlled by the LCDRL Register (Register 27-7).

The LCDRL register allows switching between two power modes, designated 'A' and 'B'. 'A' Power mode is active for a programmable time, beginning at the time when the LCD segments transition. 'B' Power mode is the remaining time before the segments or commons change again. The LRLAT<2:0> bits select how long, if any, that the 'A' Power mode is active. Refer to Figure 27-4.

To implement this, the 5-bit prescaler used to divide the 32 kHz clock down to the LCD controller's 1 kHz base rate is used to select the power mode.

FIGURE 27-4: LCD INTERNAL REFERENCE LADDER POWER MODE SWITCHING DIAGRAM – TYPE A

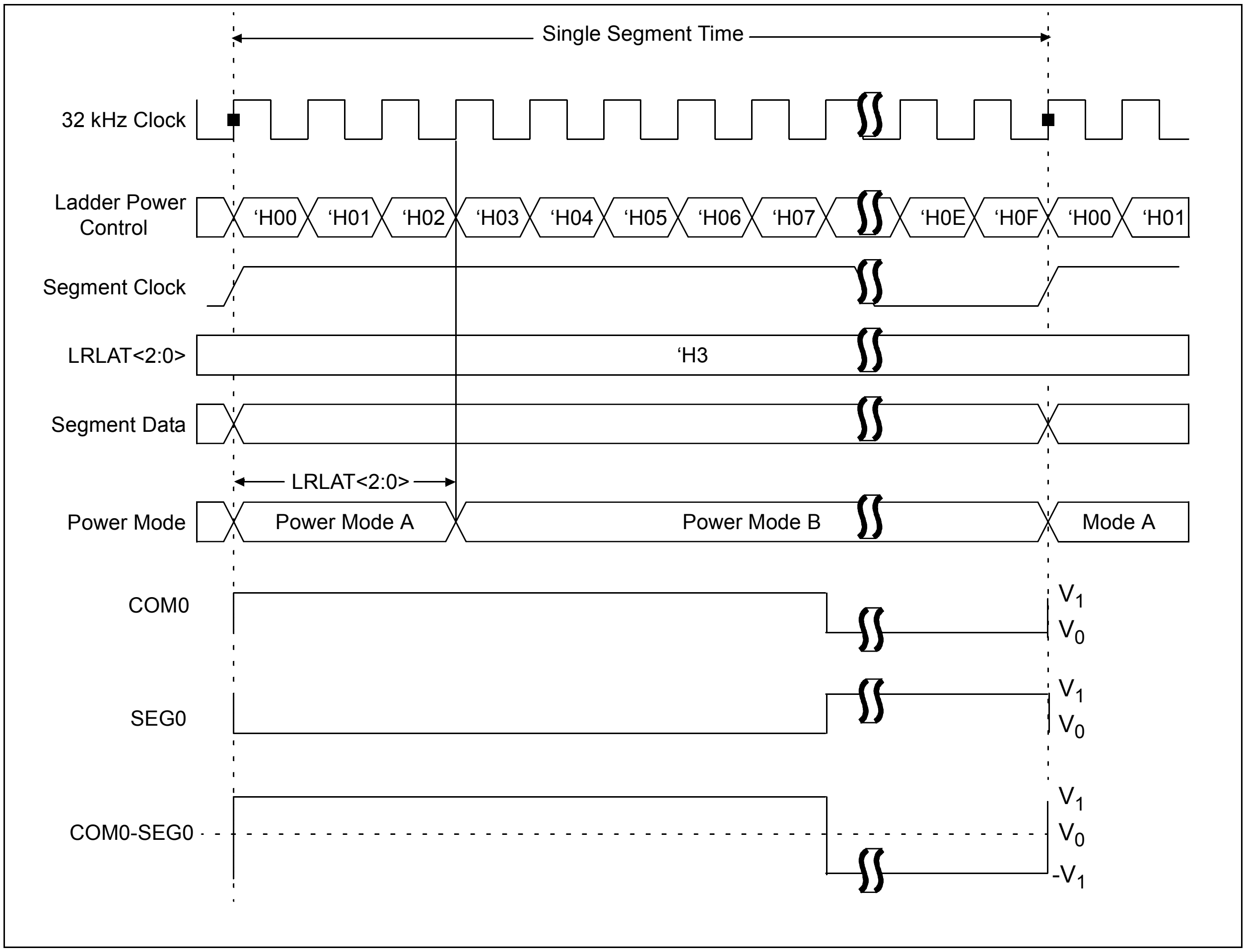


FIGURE 27-5: LCD INTERNAL REFERENCE LADDER POWER MODE SWITCHING DIAGRAM – TYPE A WAVEFORM (1/2 MUX, 1/2 BIAS DRIVE)

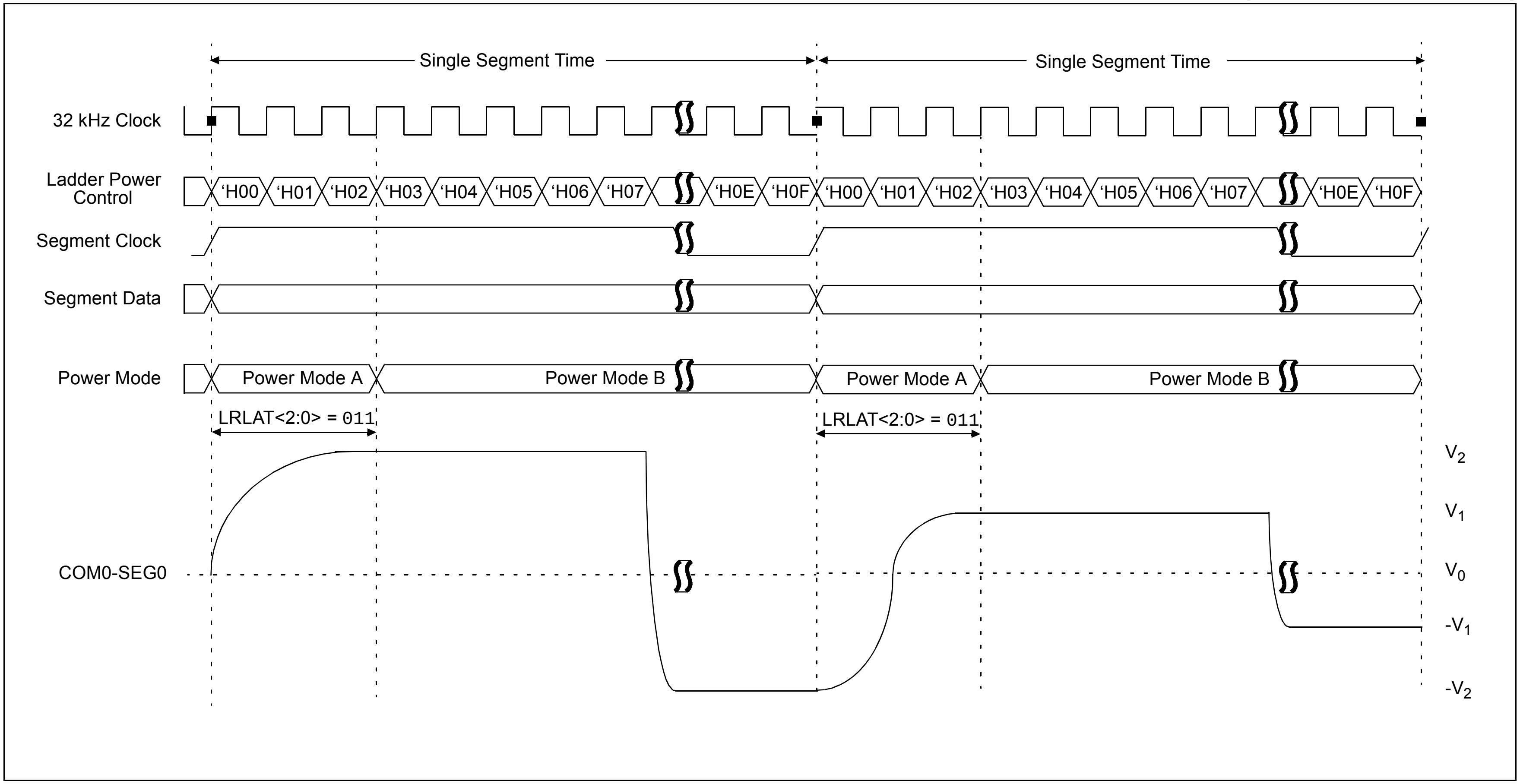
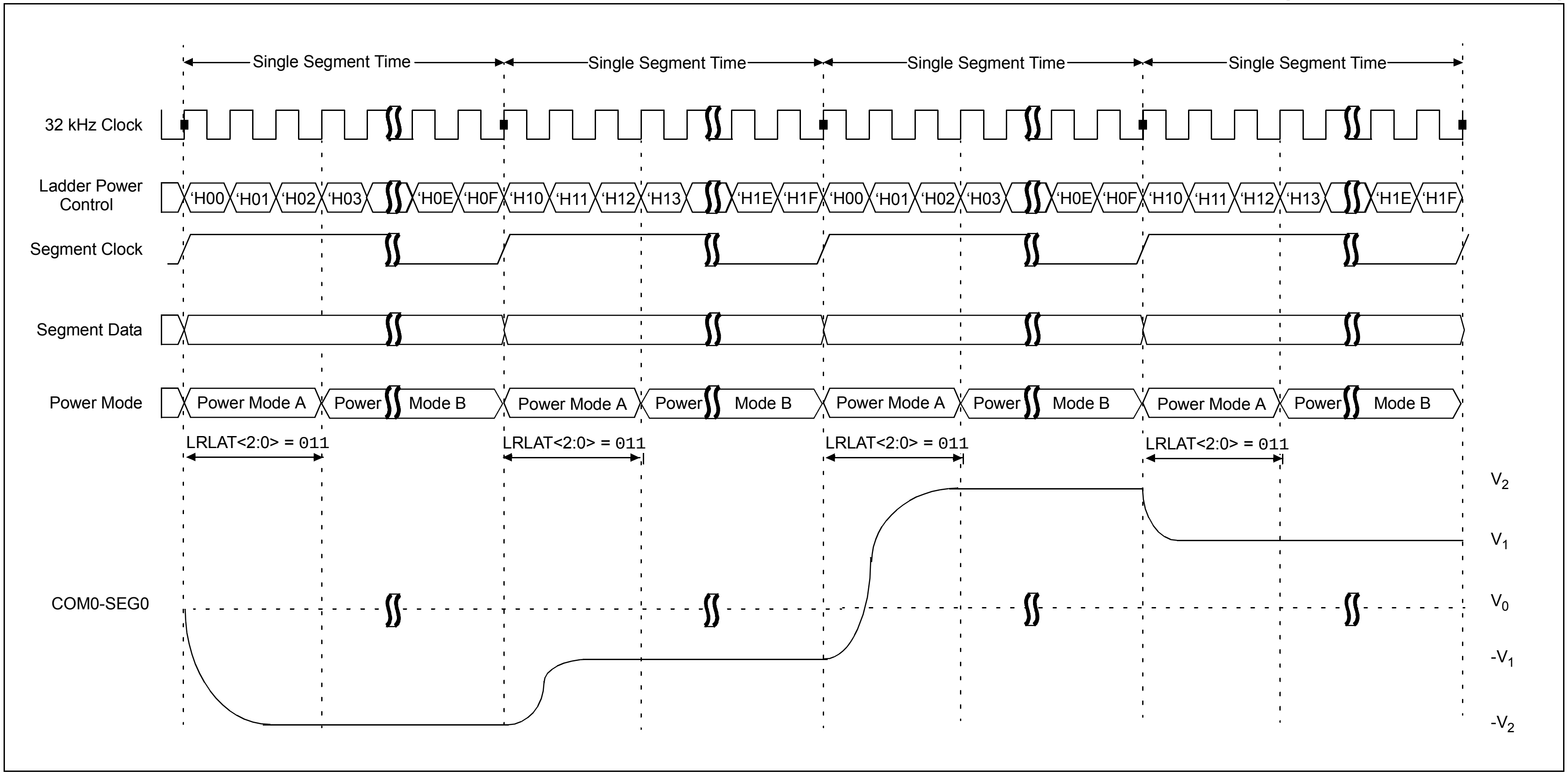


FIGURE 27-6: LCD INTERNAL REFERENCE LADDER POWER MODE SWITCHING DIAGRAM – TYPE B WAVEFORM (1/2 MUX, 1/2 BIAS DRIVE)



REGISTER 27-7: LCDRL: LCD REFERENCE LADDER CONTROL REGISTERS

R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	U-0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0	R/W-0/0
LRLAP<1:0>		LRLBP<1:0>		—	LRLAT<2:0>		
bit 7							bit 0

Legend:		
R = Readable bit	W = Writable bit	U = Unimplemented bit, read as '0'
u = Bit is unchanged	x = Bit is unknown	-n/n = Value at POR and BOR/Value at all other Resets
'1' = Bit is set	'0' = Bit is cleared	

bit 7-6 **LRLAP<1:0>:** LCD Reference Ladder A Time Power Control bits
During Time interval A (Refer to Figure 27-4):
`00` = Internal LCD Reference Ladder is powered down and unconnected
`01` = Internal LCD Reference Ladder is powered in low-power mode
`10` = Internal LCD Reference Ladder is powered in medium-power mode
`11` = Internal LCD Reference Ladder is powered in high-power mode

bit 5-4 **LRLBP<1:0>:** LCD Reference Ladder B Time Power Control bits
During Time interval B (Refer to Figure 27-4):
`00` = Internal LCD Reference Ladder is powered down and unconnected
`01` = Internal LCD Reference Ladder is powered in low-power mode
`10` = Internal LCD Reference Ladder is powered in medium-power mode
`11` = Internal LCD Reference Ladder is powered in high-power mode

bit 3 **Unimplemented:** Read as '`0`'

bit 2-0 **LRLAT<2:0>:** LCD Reference Ladder A Time interval control bits
Sets the number of 32 kHz clocks that the A Time interval power mode is active

For type A waveforms (WFT = `0`):

`000` = Internal LCD Reference Ladder is always in 'B' power mode
`001` = Internal LCD Reference Ladder is in 'A' power mode for 1 clock and 'B' power mode for 15 clocks
`010` = Internal LCD Reference Ladder is in 'A' power mode for 2 clocks and 'B' power mode for 14 clocks
`011` = Internal LCD Reference Ladder is in 'A' power mode for 3 clocks and 'B' power mode for 13 clocks
`100` = Internal LCD Reference Ladder is in 'A' power mode for 4 clocks and 'B' power mode for 12 clocks
`101` = Internal LCD Reference Ladder is in 'A' power mode for 5 clocks and 'B' power mode for 11 clocks
`110` = Internal LCD Reference Ladder is in 'A' power mode for 6 clocks and 'B' power mode for 10 clocks
`111` = Internal LCD Reference Ladder is in 'A' power mode for 7 clocks and 'B' power mode for 9 clocks

For type B waveforms (WFT = `1`):

`000` = Internal LCD Reference Ladder is always in 'B' power mode.
`001` = Internal LCD Reference Ladder is in 'A' power mode for 1 clock and 'B' power mode for 31 clocks
`010` = Internal LCD Reference Ladder is in 'A' power mode for 2 clocks and 'B' power mode for 30 clocks
`011` = Internal LCD Reference Ladder is in 'A' power mode for 3 clocks and 'B' power mode for 29 clocks
`100` = Internal LCD Reference Ladder is in 'A' power mode for 4 clocks and 'B' power mode for 28 clocks
`101` = Internal LCD Reference Ladder is in 'A' power mode for 5 clocks and 'B' power mode for 27 clocks
`110` = Internal LCD Reference Ladder is in 'A' power mode for 6 clocks and 'B' power mode for 26 clocks
`111` = Internal LCD Reference Ladder is in 'A' power mode for 7 clocks and 'B' power mode for 25 clocks

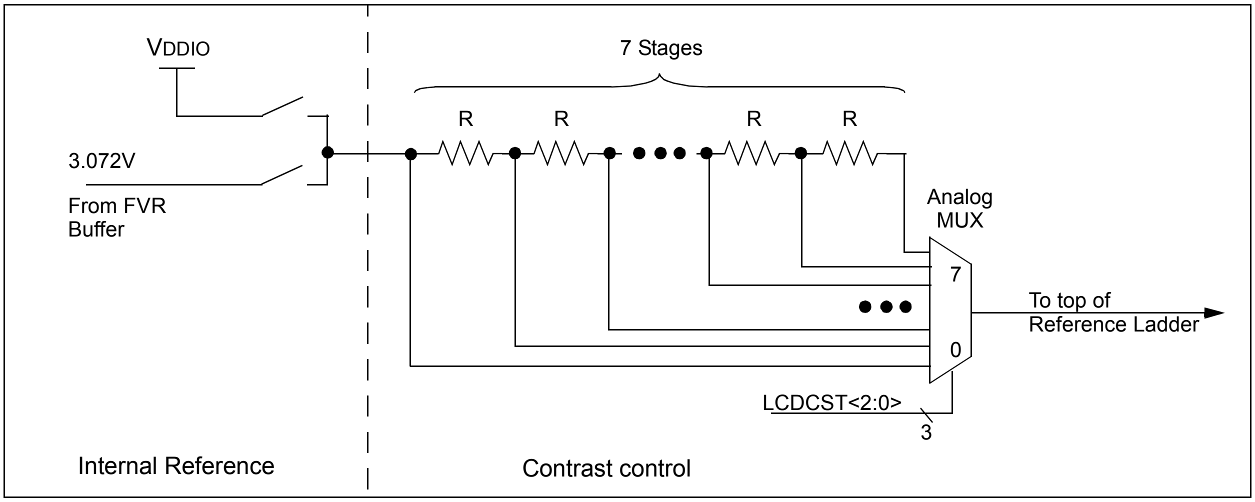
27.5.4 CONTRAST CONTROL

The LCD contrast control circuit consists of a seven-tap resistor ladder, controlled by the LCDCST bits. Refer to Figure 27-7.

The contrast control circuit is used to decrease the output voltage of the signal source by a total of approximately 10%, when LCDCST = 111.

Whenever the LCD module is inactive (LCDA = 0), the contrast control ladder will be turned off (open).

FIGURE 27-7: INTERNAL REFERENCE AND CONTRAST CONTROL BLOCK DIAGRAM



27.5.5 INTERNAL REFERENCE

Under firmware control, an internal reference for the LCD bias voltages can be enabled. When enabled, the source of this voltage can be either VDDIO or a voltage 3 times the main fixed voltage reference (3.072V). When no internal reference is selected, the LCD contrast control circuit is disabled and LCD bias must be provided externally.

Whenever the LCD module is inactive (LCDA = 0), the internal reference will be turned off.

When the internal reference is enabled and the Fixed Voltage Reference is selected, the LCDIRI bit can be used to minimize power consumption by tieing into the LCD reference ladder automatic power mode switching. When LCDIRI = 1 and the LCD reference ladder is in Power mode 'B', the LCD internal FVR buffer is disables.

.

Note:	The LCD module automatically turns on the fixed voltage reference when needed.

27.5.6 VLCD<3:1> PINS

The VLCD<3:1> pins provide the ability for an external LCD bias network to be used instead of the internal ladder. Use of the VLCD<3:1> pins does not prevent use of the internal ladder. Each VLCD pin has an independent control in the LCDREF register (Register 27-3), allowing access to any or all of the LCD Bias signals. This architecture allows for maximum flexibility in different applications

For example, the VLCD<3:1> pins may be used to add capacitors to the internal reference ladder, increasing the drive capacity.

For applications where the internal contrast control is insufficient, the firmware can choose to only enable the VLCD3 pin, allowing an external contrast control circuit to use the internal reference divider.

27.6 LCD Multiplex Types

The LCD driver module can be configured into one of four multiplex types:

- Static (only COM0 is used)
- 1/2 multiplex (COM<1:0> are used)
- 1/3 multiplex (COM<2:0> are used)
- 1/4 multiplex (COM<3:0> are used)

The LMUX<1:0> bit setting of the LCDCON register decides which of the LCD common pins are used (see Table 27-4 for details).

If the pin is a digital I/O, the corresponding TRIS bit controls the data direction. If the pin is a COM drive, then the TRIS setting of that pin is overridden.

TABLE 27-4: COMMON PIN USAGE

Multiplex	LMUX <1:0>	COM3	COM2	COM1	COM0
Static	`00`	Unused	Unused	Unused	Active
1/2	`01`	Unused	Unused	Active	Active
1/3	`10`	Unused	Active	Active	Active
1/4	`11`	Active	Active	Active	Active

27.7 Segment Enables

The LCDSEn registers are used to select the pin function for each segment pin. The selection allows each pin to operate as either an LCD segment driver or as one of the pin's alternate functions. To configure the pin as a segment pin, the corresponding bits in the LCDSEn registers must be set to '1'.

If the pin is a digital I/O, the corresponding TRIS bit controls the data direction. Any bit set in the LCDSEn registers overrides any bit settings in the corresponding TRIS register.

Note:	On a Power-on Reset, these pins are configured as normal I/O, not LCD pins.

27.8 Pixel Control

The LCDDATAx registers contain bits which define the state of each pixel. Each bit defines one unique pixel.

Register 27-6 shows the correlation of each bit in the LCDDATAx registers to the respective common and segment signals.

Any LCD pixel location not being used for display can be used as general purpose RAM.

27.9 LCD Frame Frequency

The rate at which the COM and SEG outputs change is called the LCD frame frequency.

TABLE 27-5: FRAME FREQUENCY FORMULAS

Multiplex	Frame Frequency(2) =
Static	Clock source/(4 x (LCD Prescaler) x 32 x 1))
1/2	Clock source/(2 x (LCD Prescaler) x 32 x 2))
1/3	Clock source/(1 x (LCD Prescaler) x 32 x 3))
1/4	Clock source/(1 x (LCD Prescaler) x 32 x 4))

Note 1: Clock source is FOSC/256, T1OSC or LFINTOSC.

2: See Figure 27-2.

TABLE 27-6: APPROXIMATE FRAME FREQUENCY (IN Hz) USING FOSC @ 8 MHz, TIMER1 @ 32.768 kHz OR LFINTOSC

LP<3:0>	Static	1/2	1/3	1/4
2	122	122	162	122
3	81	81	108	81
4	61	61	81	61
5	49	49	65	49
6	41	41	54	41
7	35	35	47	35

TABLE 27-7: LCD SEGMENT MAPPING WORKSHEET

LCD Function	COM0		COM1		COM2		COM3	
	LCDDATAx Address	LCD Segment	LCDDATAx Address	LCD Segment	LCDDATAx Address	LCD Segment	LCDDATAx Address	LCD Segment
SEG0	LCDDATA0, 0		LCDDATA3, 0		LCDDATA6, 0		LCDDATA9, 0	
SEG1	LCDDATA0, 1		LCDDATA3, 1		LCDDATA6, 1		LCDDATA9, 1	
SEG2	LCDDATA0, 2		LCDDATA3, 2		LCDDATA6, 2		LCDDATA9, 2	
SEG3	LCDDATA0, 3		LCDDATA3, 3		LCDDATA6, 3		LCDDATA9, 3	
SEG4	LCDDATA0, 4		LCDDATA3, 4		LCDDATA6, 4		LCDDATA9, 4	
SEG5	LCDDATA0, 5		LCDDATA3, 5		LCDDATA6, 5		LCDDATA9, 5	
SEG6	LCDDATA0, 6		LCDDATA3, 6		LCDDATA6, 6		LCDDATA9, 6	
SEG7	LCDDATA0, 7		LCDDATA3, 7		LCDDATA6, 7		LCDDATA9, 7	
SEG8	LCDDATA1, 0		LCDDATA4, 0		LCDDATA7, 0		LCDDATA10, 0	
SEG9	LCDDATA1, 1		LCDDATA4, 1		LCDDATA7, 1		LCDDATA10, 1	
SEG10	LCDDATA1, 2		LCDDATA4, 2		LCDDATA7, 2		LCDDATA10, 2	
SEG11	LCDDATA1, 3		LCDDATA4, 3		LCDDATA7, 3		LCDDATA10, 3	
SEG12	LCDDATA1, 4		LCDDATA4, 4		LCDDATA7, 4		LCDDATA10, 4	
SEG13	LCDDATA1, 5		LCDDATA4, 5		LCDDATA7, 5		LCDDATA10, 5	
SEG14	LCDDATA1, 6		LCDDATA4, 6		LCDDATA7, 6		LCDDATA10, 6	
SEG15	LCDDATA1, 7		LCDDATA4, 7		LCDDATA7, 7		LCDDATA10, 7	
SEG16	LCDDATA2, 0		LCDDATA5, 0		LCDDATA8, 0		LCDDATA11, 0	
SEG17	LCDDATA2, 1		LCDDATA5, 1		LCDDATA8, 1		LCDDATA11, 1	
SEG18	LCDDATA2, 2		LCDDATA5, 2		LCDDATA8, 2		LCDDATA11, 2	
SEG19	LCDDATA2, 3		LCDDATA5, 3		LCDDATA8, 3		LCDDATA11, 3	
SEG20	LCDDATA2, 4		LCDDATA5, 4		LCDDATA8, 4		LCDDATA11, 4	
SEG21	LCDDATA2, 5		LCDDATA5, 5		LCDDATA8, 5		LCDDATA11, 5	
SEG22	LCDDATA2, 6		LCDDATA5, 6		LCDDATA8, 6		LCDDATA11, 6	
SEG23	LCDDATA2, 7		LCDDATA5, 7		LCDDATA8, 7		LCDDATA11, 7	
SEG24	LCDDATA12, 0		LCDDATA15, 0		LCDDATA18, 0		LCDDATA21, 0	
SEG25	LCDDATA12, 1		LCDDATA15, 1		LCDDATA18, 1		LCDDATA21, 1	
SEG26	LCDDATA12, 2		LCDDATA15, 2		LCDDATA18, 2		LCDDATA21, 2	
SEG27	LCDDATA12, 3		LCDDATA15, 3		LCDDATA18, 3		LCDDATA21, 3	
SEG28	LCDDATA12, 4		LCDDATA15, 4		LCDDATA18, 4		LCDDATA21, 4	
SEG29	LCDDATA12, 5		LCDDATA15, 5		LCDDATA18, 5		LCDDATA21, 5	
SEG30	LCDDATA12, 6		LCDDATA15, 6		LCDDATA18, 6		LCDDATA21, 6	
SEG31	LCDDATA12, 7		LCDDATA15, 7		LCDDATA18, 7		LCDDATA21, 7	
SEG32	LCDDATA13, 0		LCDDATA16, 0		LCDDATA19, 0		LCDDATA22, 0	
SEG33	LCDDATA13, 1		LCDDATA16, 1		LCDDATA19, 1		LCDDATA22, 1	
SEG34	LCDDATA13, 2		LCDDATA16, 2		LCDDATA19, 2		LCDDATA22, 2	
SEG35	LCDDATA13, 3		LCDDATA16, 3		LCDDATA19, 3		LCDDATA22, 3	
SEG36	LCDDATA13, 4		LCDDATA16, 4		LCDDATA19, 4		LCDDATA22, 4	
SEG37	LCDDATA13, 5		LCDDATA16, 5		LCDDATA19, 5		LCDDATA22, 5	
SEG38	LCDDATA13, 6		LCDDATA16, 6		LCDDATA19, 6		LCDDATA22, 6	
SEG39	LCDDATA13, 7		LCDDATA16, 7		LCDDATA19, 7		LCDDATA22, 7	
SEG40	LCDDATA14, 0		LCDDATA17, 0		LCDDATA20, 0		LCDDATA23, 0	
SEG41	LCDDATA14, 1		LCDDATA17, 1		LCDDATA20, 1		LCDDATA23, 1	
SEG42	LCDDATA14, 2		LCDDATA17, 2		LCDDATA20, 2		LCDDATA23, 2	
SEG43	LCDDATA14, 3		LCDDATA17, 3		LCDDATA20, 3		LCDDATA23, 3	
SEG44	LCDDATA14, 4		LCDDATA17, 4		LCDDATA20, 4		LCDDATA23, 4	
SEG45	LCDDATA14, 5		LCDDATA17, 5		LCDDATA20, 5		LCDDATA23, 5	

27.10 LCD Waveform Generation

LCD waveforms are generated so that the net AC voltage across the dark pixel should be maximized and the net AC voltage across the clear pixel should be minimized. The net DC voltage across any pixel should be zero.

The COM signal represents the time slice for each common, while the SEG contains the pixel data.

The pixel signal (COM-SEG) will have no DC component and it can take only one of the two RMS values. The higher RMS value will create a dark pixel and a lower RMS value will create a clear pixel.

As the number of commons increases, the delta between the two RMS values decreases. The delta represents the maximum contrast that the display can have.

The LCDs can be driven by two types of waveform: Type-A and Type-B. In Type-A waveform, the phase changes within each common type, whereas in Type-B waveform, the phase changes on each frame boundary. Thus, Type-A waveform maintains 0 VDC over a single frame, whereas Type-B waveform takes two frames.

Note 1:	If Sleep has to be executed with LCD Sleep disabled (LCDCON<SLPEN> is '1'), then care must be taken to execute Sleep only when VDC on all the pixels is '0'.
2:	When the LCD clock source is FOSC/256, if Sleep is executed, irrespective of the LCDCON<SLPEN> setting, the LCD immediately goes into Sleep. Thus, take care to see that VDC on all pixels is '0' when Sleep is executed.

Figure 27-8 through Figure 27-18 provide waveforms for static, half-multiplex, 1/3-multiplex and 1/4-multiplex drives for Type-A and Type-B waveforms.

FIGURE 27-8: TYPE-A/TYPE-B WAVEFORMS IN STATIC DRIVE

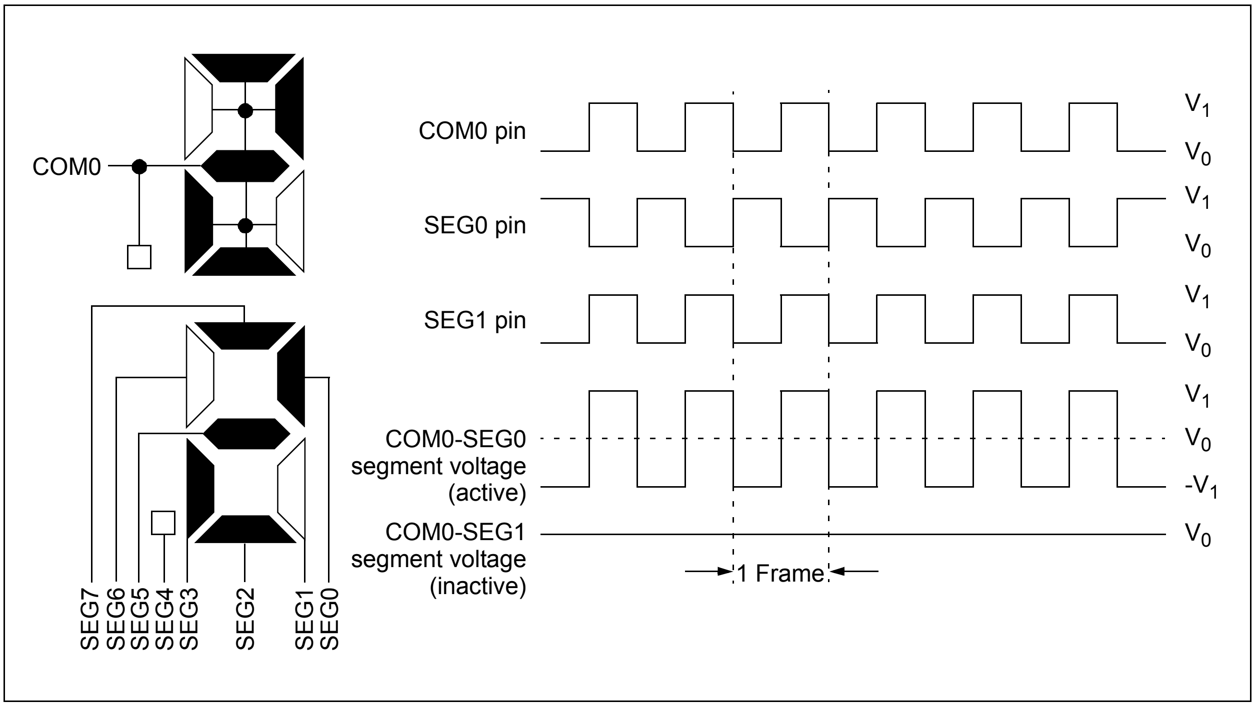
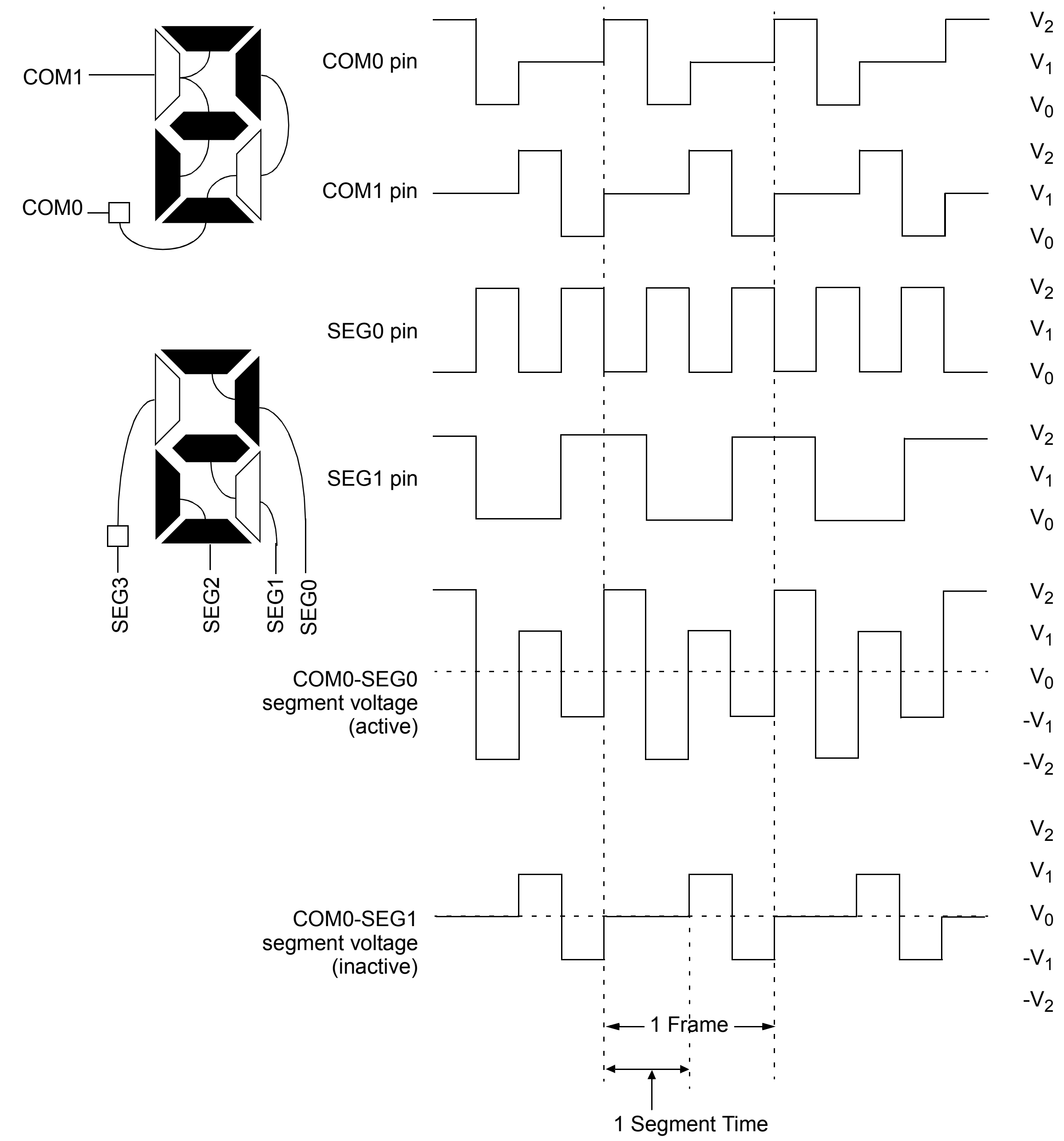
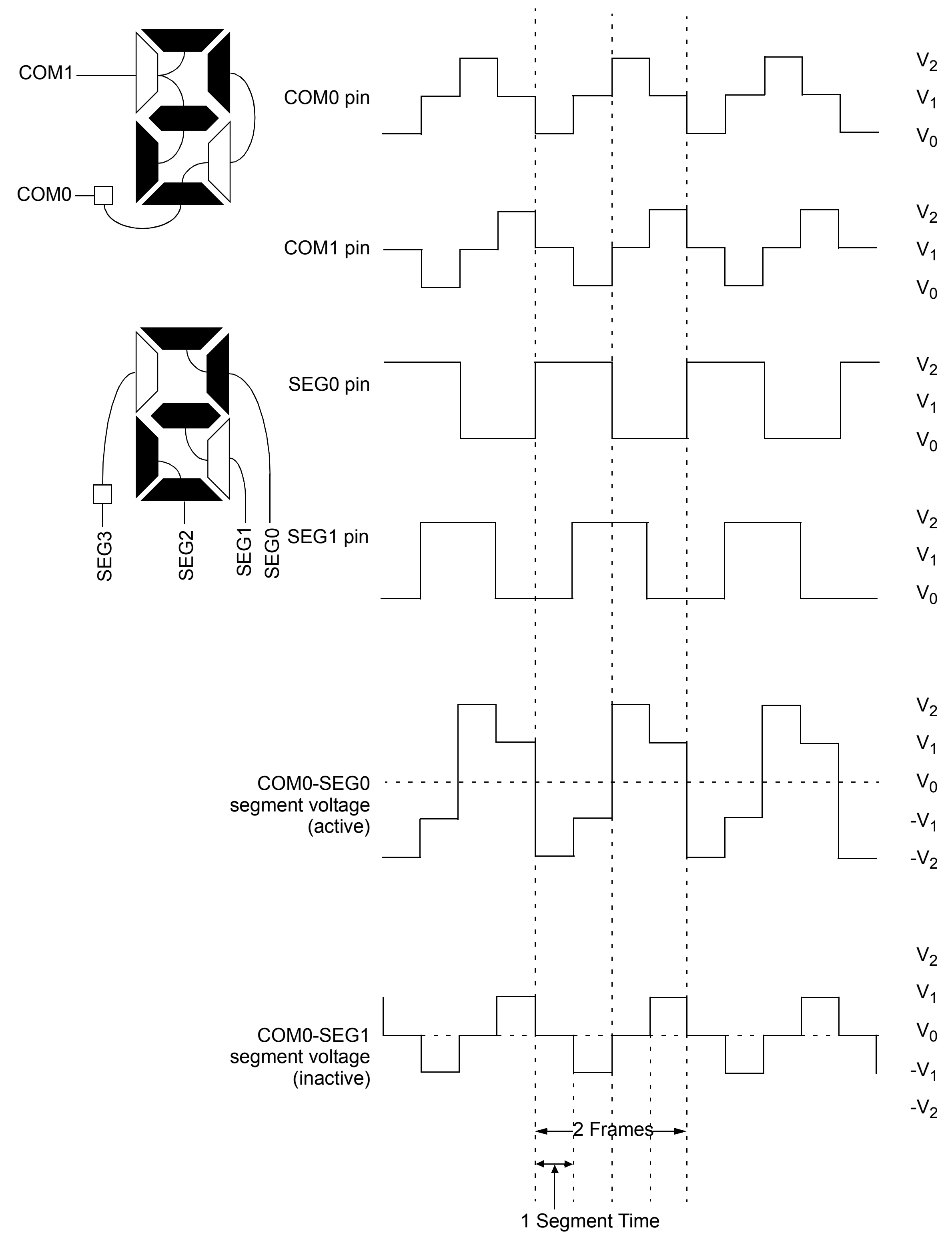


FIGURE 27-9: TYPE-A WAVEFORMS IN 1/2 MUX, 1/2 BIAS DRIVE



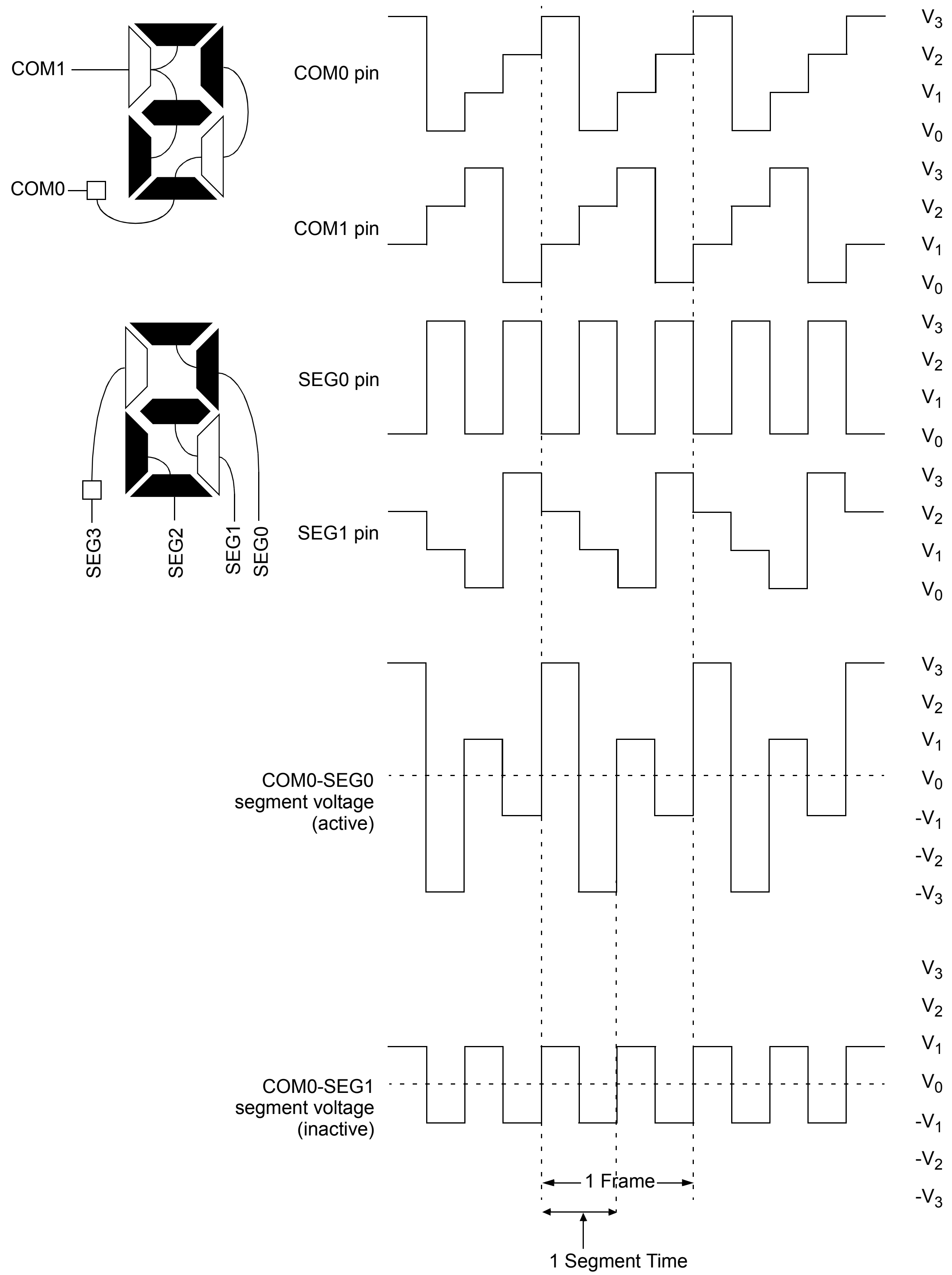
Note: 1 Frame = 2 single segment times.

FIGURE 27-10: TYPE-B WAVEFORMS IN 1/2 MUX, 1/2 BIAS DRIVE



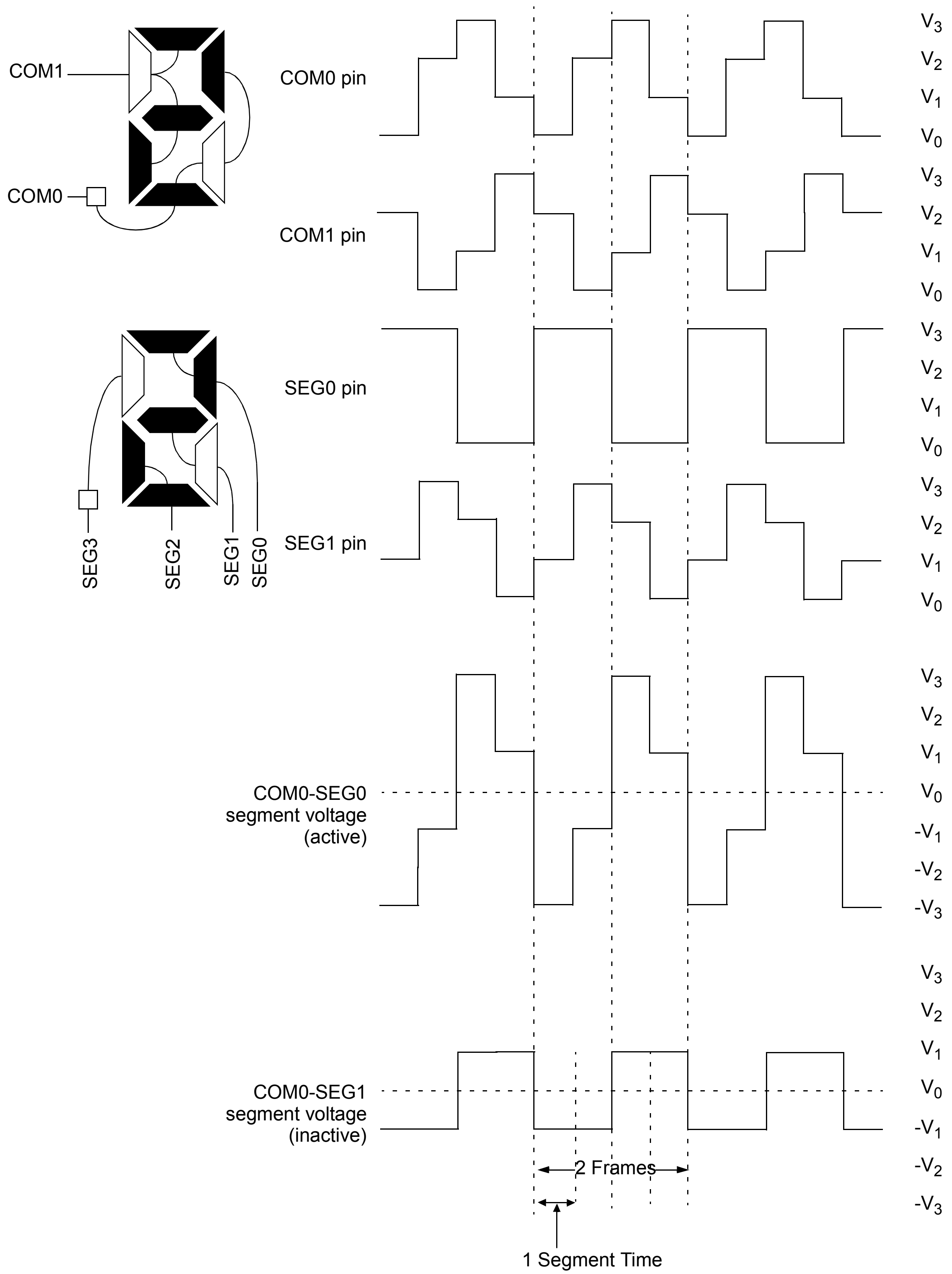
Note: 1 Frame = 2 single segment times.

FIGURE 27-11: TYPE-A WAVEFORMS IN 1/2 MUX, 1/3 BIAS DRIVE



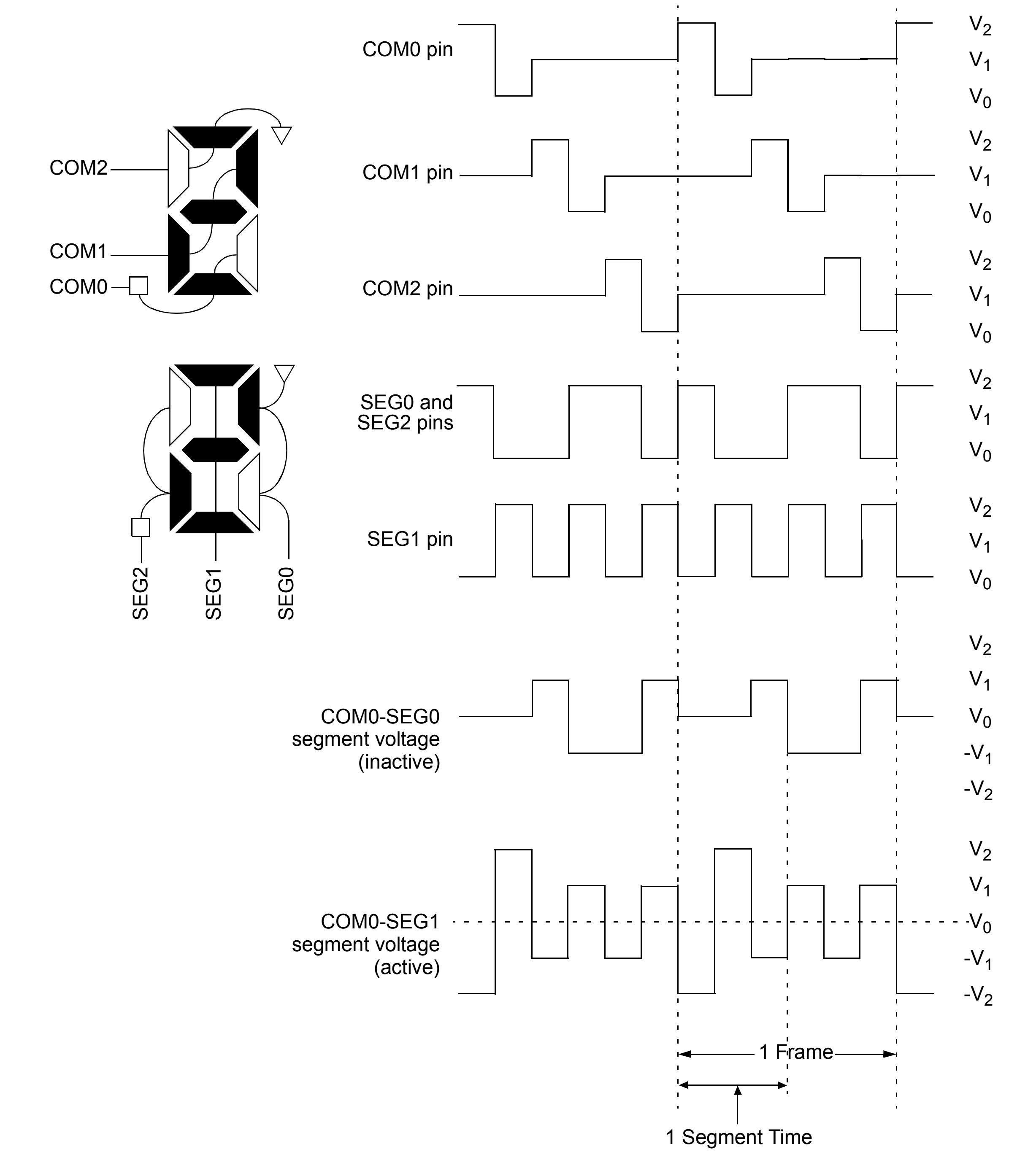
Note: 1 Frame = 2 single segment times.

FIGURE 27-12: TYPE-B WAVEFORMS IN 1/2 MUX, 1/3 BIAS DRIVE



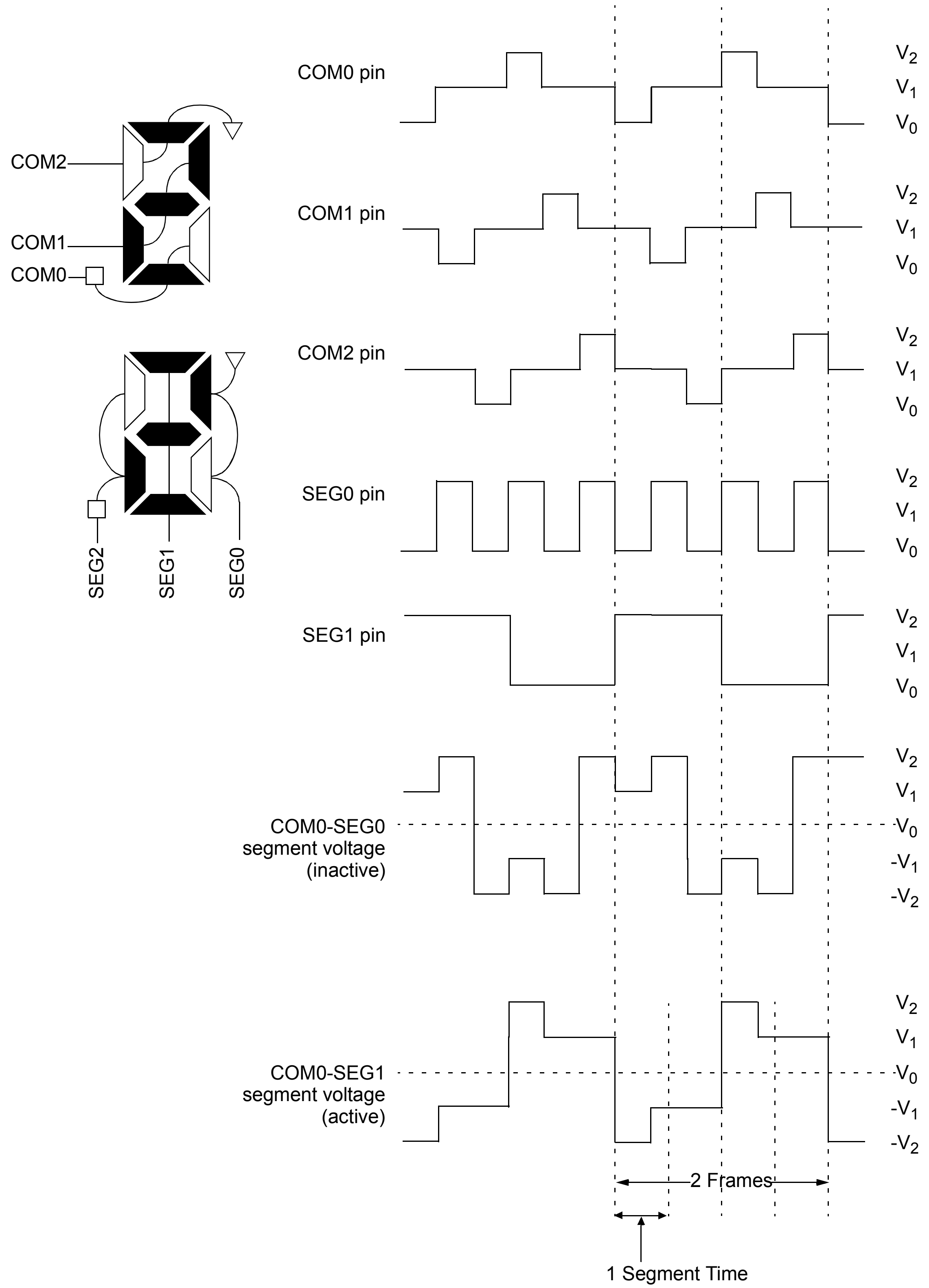
Note: 1 Frame = 2 single segment times.

FIGURE 27-13: TYPE-A WAVEFORMS IN 1/3 MUX, 1/2 BIAS DRIVE



Note: 1 Frame = 2 single segment times.

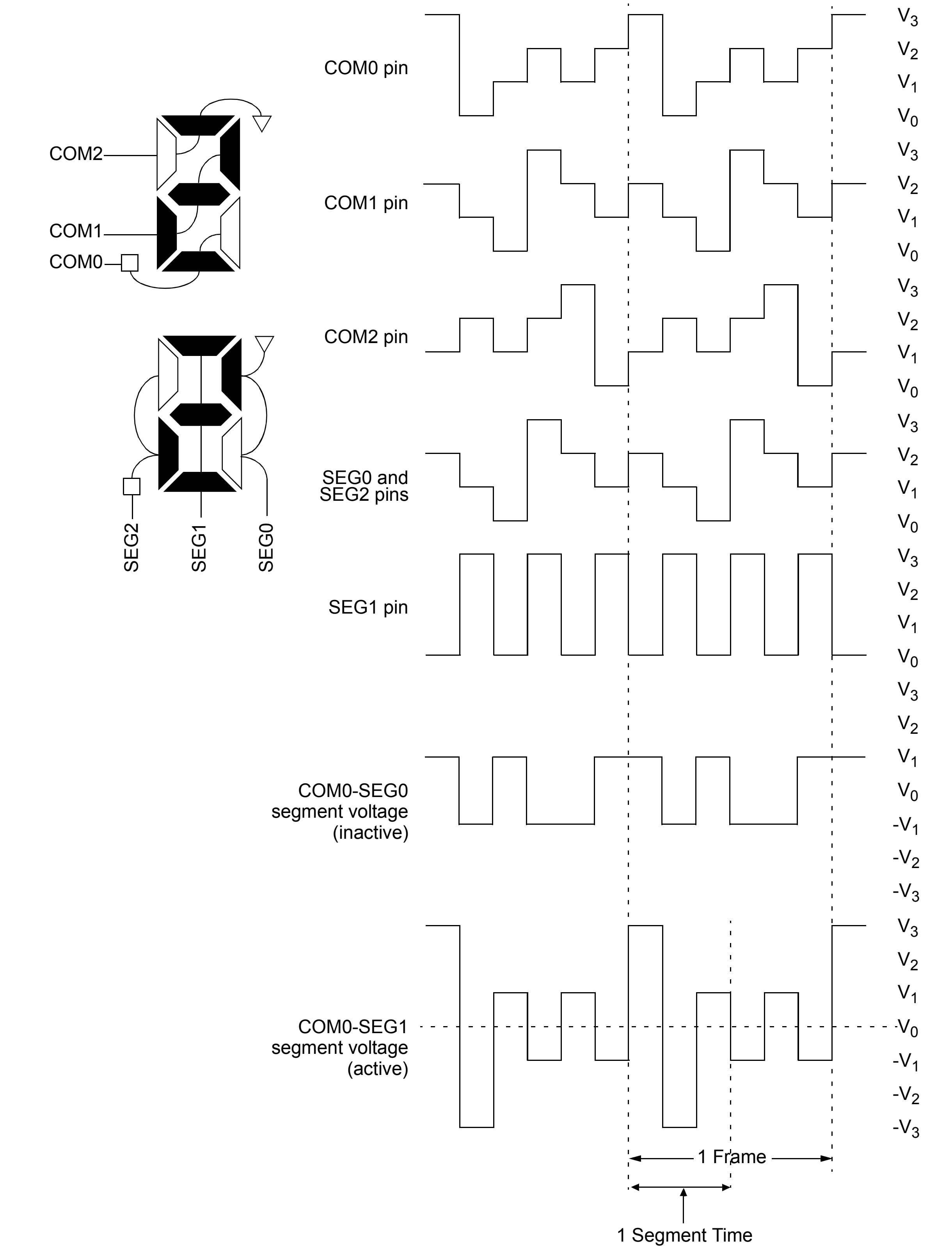
FIGURE 27-14: TYPE-B WAVEFORMS IN 1/3 MUX, 1/2 BIAS DRIVE



Note: 1 Frame = 2 single segment times.

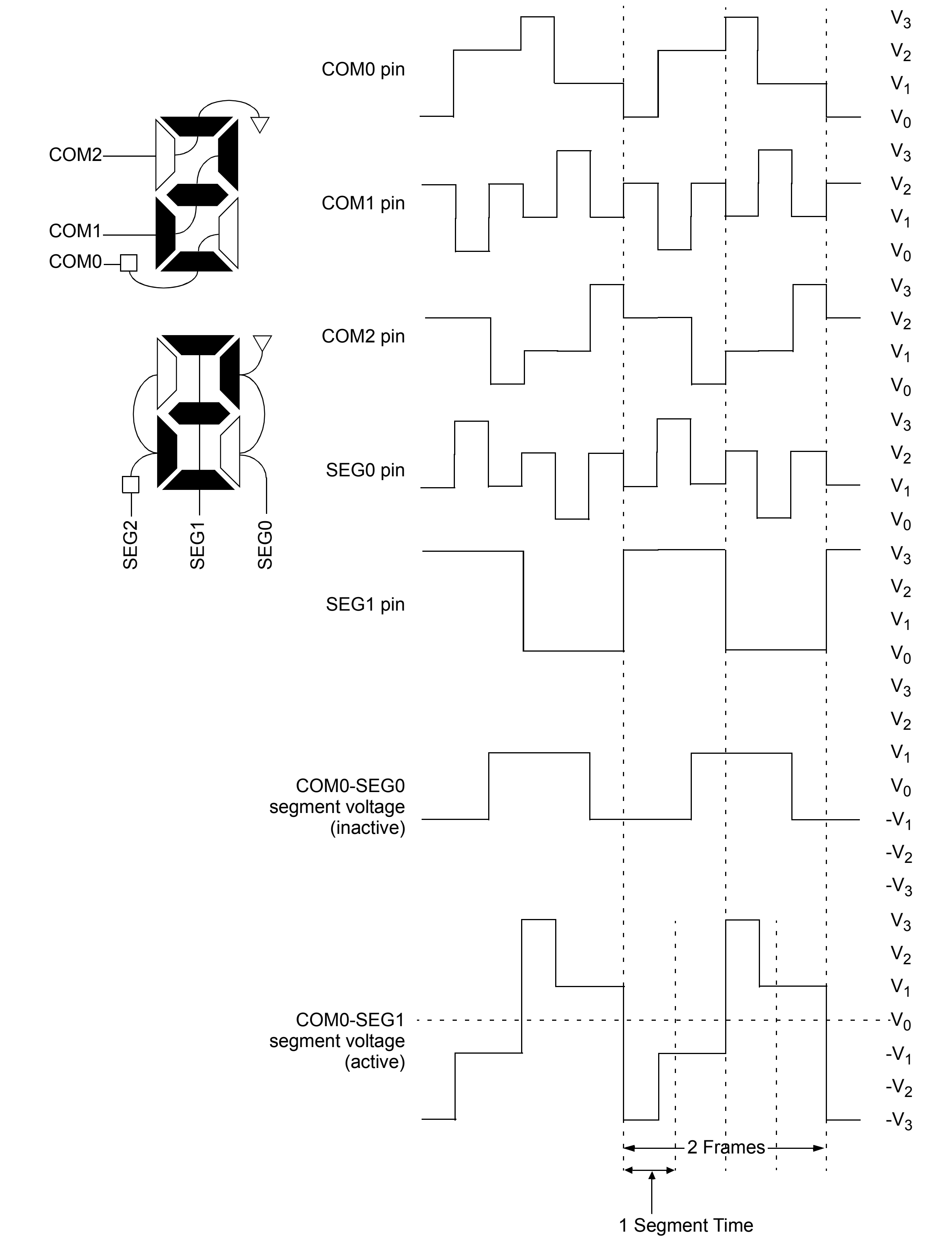
 Preliminary

FIGURE 27-15: TYPE-A WAVEFORMS IN 1/3 MUX, 1/3 BIAS DRIVE



Note: 1 Frame = 2 single segment times.

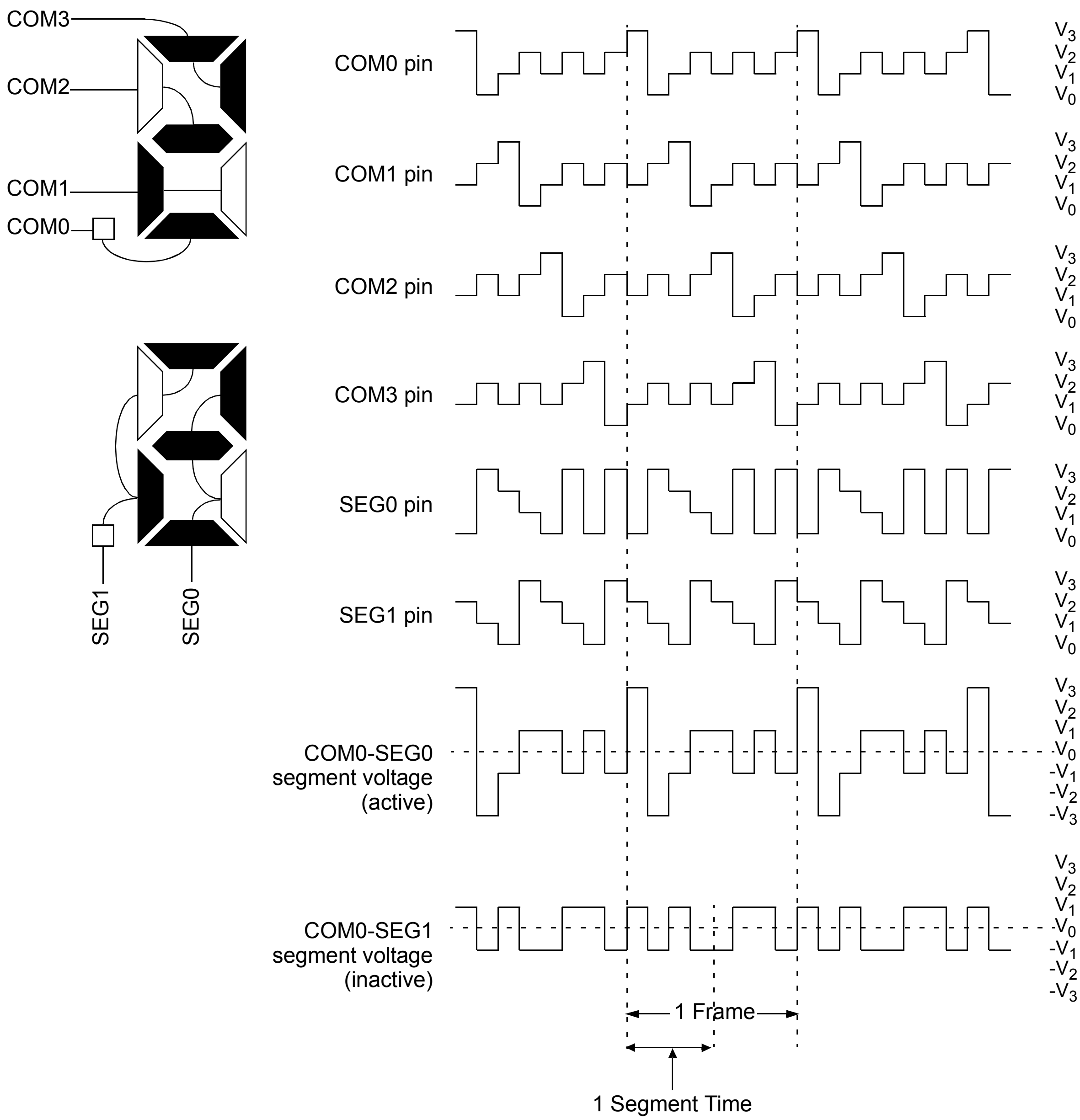
FIGURE 27-16: TYPE-B WAVEFORMS IN 1/3 MUX, 1/3 BIAS DRIVE



Note: 1 Frame = 2 single segment times.

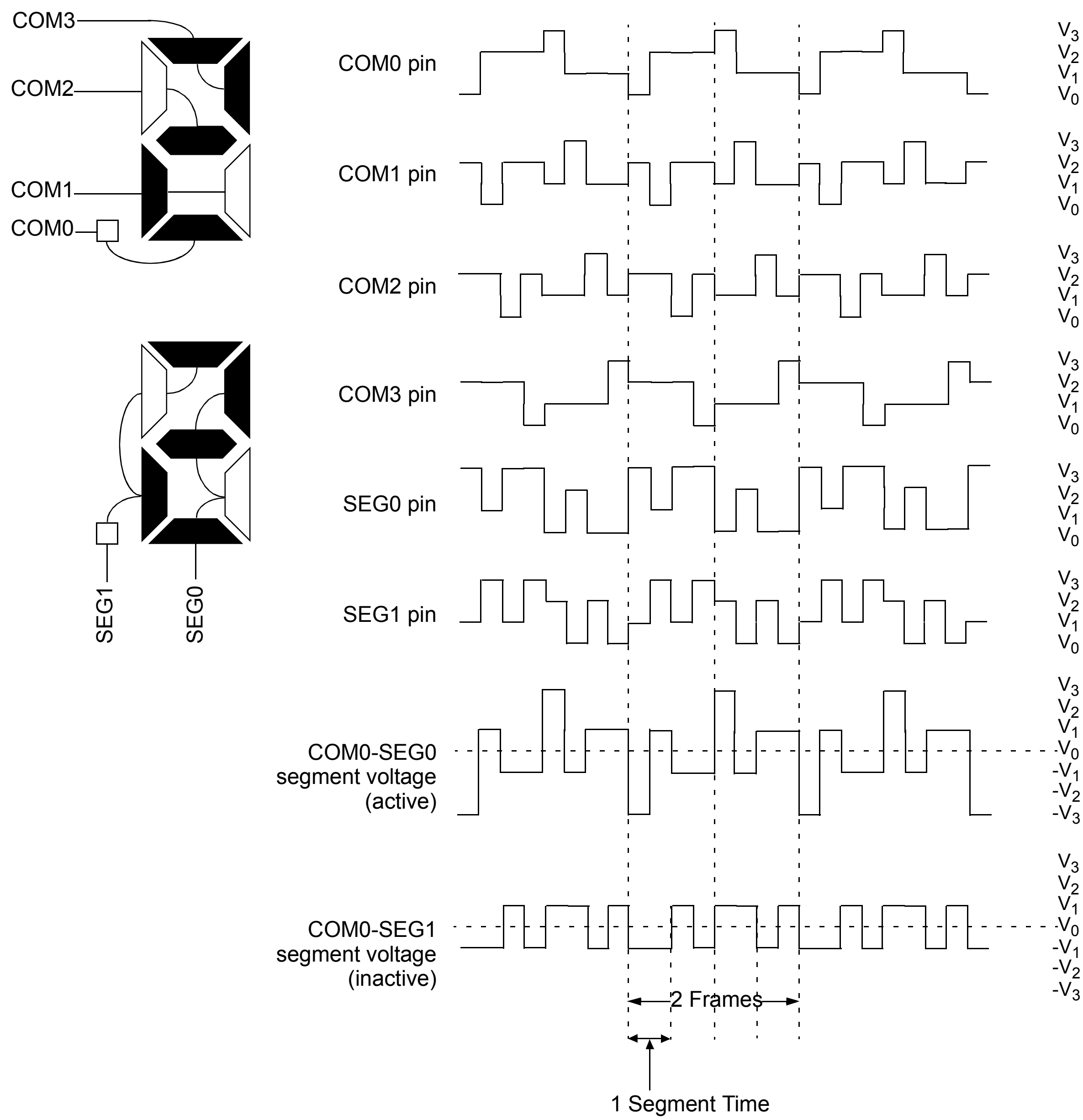
 Preliminary

FIGURE 27-17: TYPE-A WAVEFORMS IN 1/4 MUX, 1/3 BIAS DRIVE



Note: 1 Frame = 2 single segment times.

FIGURE 27-18: TYPE-B WAVEFORMS IN 1/4 MUX, 1/3 BIAS DRIVE



Note: 1 Frame = 2 single segment times.

27.11 LCD Interrupts

The LCD module provides an interrupt in two cases. An interrupt when the LCD controller goes from active to inactive controller. An interrupt also provides unframe boundaries for Type B waveform. The LCD timing generation provides an interrupt that defines the LCD frame timing.

27.11.1 LCD INTERRUPT ON MODULE SHUTDOWN

An LCD interrupt is generated when the module completes shutting down (LCDA goes from '1' to '0').

27.11.2 LCD FRAME INTERRUPTS

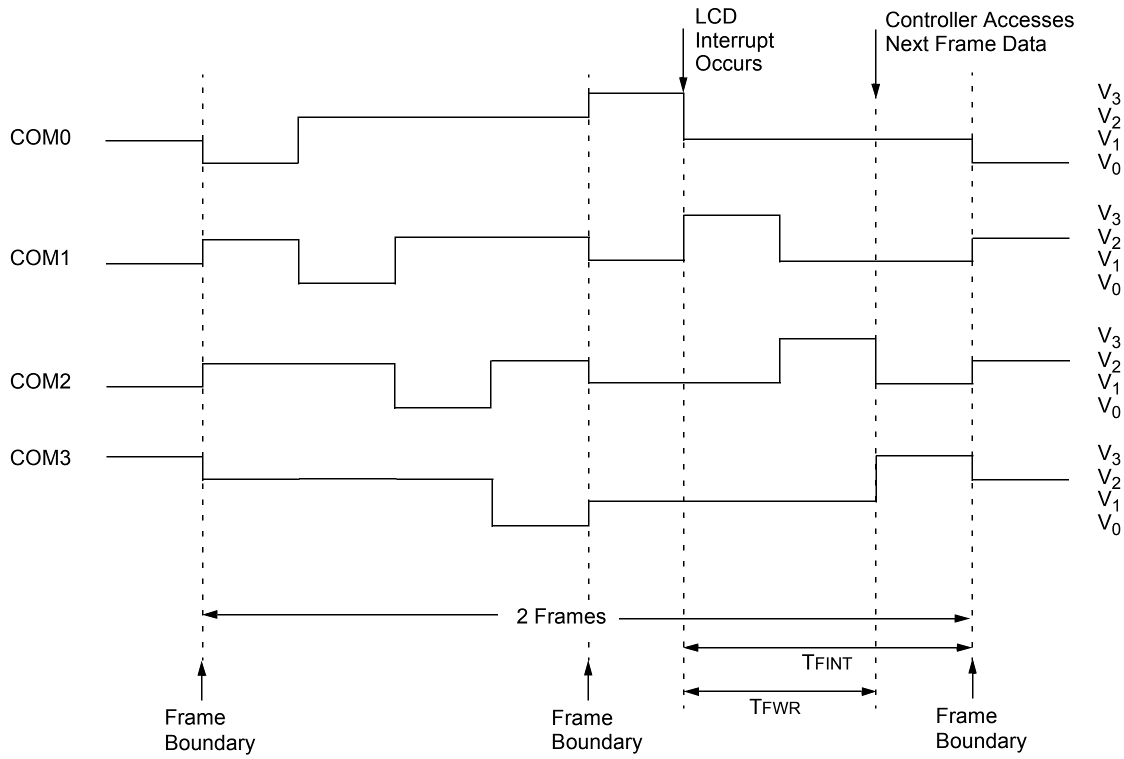
A new frame is defined to begin at the leading edge of the COM0 common signal. The interrupt will be set immediately after the LCD controller completes accessing all pixel data required for a frame. This will occur at a fixed interval before the frame boundary (TFINT), as shown in Figure 27-19. The LCD controller will begin to access data for the next frame within the interval from the interrupt to when the controller begins to access data after the interrupt (TFWR). New data must be written within TFWR, as this is when the LCD controller will begin to access the data for the next frame.

When the LCD driver is running with Type-B waveforms and the LMUX<1:0> bits are not equal to '00' (static drive), there are some additional issues that must be addressed. Since the DC voltage on the pixel takes two frames to maintain zero volts, the pixel data must not change between subsequent frames. If the pixel data were allowed to change, the waveform for the odd frames would not necessarily be the complement of the waveform generated in the even frames and a DC component would be introduced into the panel. Therefore, when using Type-B waveforms, the user must synchronize the LCD pixel updates to occur within a subframe after the frame interrupt.

To correctly sequence writing while in Type-B, the interrupt will only occur on complete phase intervals. If the user attempts to write when the write is disabled, the WERR bit of the LCDCON register is set and the write does not occur.

Note:	The LCD frame interrupt is not generated when the Type-A waveform is selected and when the Type-B with no multiplex (static) is selected.

FIGURE 27-19: WAVEFORMS AND INTERRUPT TIMING IN QUARTER-DUTY CYCLE DRIVE (EXAMPLE – TYPE-B, NON-STATIC)



$T_{FWR} = T_{FRAME}/2 * (LMUX<1:0> + 1) + T_{CY}/2$

$T_{FINT} = (T_{FWR}/2 - (2\ T_{CY} + 40\ ns)) \rightarrow \text{minimum} = 1.5(T_{FRAME}/4) - (2\ T_{CY} + 40\ ns)$

$(T_{FWR}/2 - (1\ T_{CY} + 40\ ns)) \rightarrow \text{maximum} = 1.5(T_{FRAME}/4) - (1\ T_{CY} + 40\ ns)$

27.12 Operation During Sleep

The LCD module can operate during Sleep. The selection is controlled by bit SLPEN of the LCDCON register. Setting the SLPEN bit allows the LCD module to go to Sleep. Clearing the SLPEN bit allows the module to continue to operate during Sleep.

If a `SLEEP` instruction is executed and SLPEN = `1`, the LCD module will cease all functions and go into a very low-current Consumption mode. The module will stop operation immediately and drive the minimum LCD voltage on both segment and common lines. Figure 27-20 shows this operation.

The LCD module can be configured to operate during Sleep. The selection is controlled by bit SLPEN of the LCDCON register. Clearing SLPEN and correctly configuring the LCD module clock will allow the LCD module to operate during Sleep. Setting SLPEN and correctly executing the LCD module shutdown will disable the LCD module during Sleep and save power.

If a `SLEEP` instruction is executed and SLPEN = `1`, the LCD module will immediately cease all functions, drive the outputs to Vss and go into a very low-current mode. The `SLEEP` instruction should only be executed after the LCD module has been disabled and the current cycle completed, thus ensuring that there are no DC voltages on the glass. To disable the LCD module, clear the LCDEN bit. The LCD module will complete the disabling process after the current frame, clear the LCDA bit and optionally cause an interrupt.

The steps required to properly enter Sleep with the LCD disabled are:

- Clear LCDEN
- Wait for LCDA = `0` either by polling or by interrupt
- Execute `SLEEP`

If SLPEN = `0` and `SLEEP` is executed while the LCD module clock source is FOSC/4, then the LCD module will halt with the pin driving the last LCD voltage pattern. Prolonged exposure to a fixed LCD voltage pattern will cause damage to the LCD glass. To prevent LCD glass damage, either perform the proper LCD module shutdown prior to Sleep, or change the LCD module clock to allow the LCD module to continue operation during Sleep.

If a `SLEEP` instruction is executed and SLPEN = `0` and the LCD module clock is either T1OSC or LFINTOSC, the module will continue to display the current contents of the LCDDATA registers. While in Sleep, the LCD data cannot be changed. If the LCDIE bit is set, the device will wake from Sleep on the next LCD frame boundary. The LCD module current consumption will not decrease in this mode; however, the overall device power consumption will be lower due to the shutdown of the CPU and other peripherals.

Table 27-8 shows the status of the LCD module during a Sleep while using each of the three available clock sources.

> **Note:** When the LCDEN bit is cleared, the LCD module will be disabled at the completion of frame. At this time, the port pins will revert to digital functionality. To minimize power consumption due to floating digital inputs, the LCD pins should be driven low using the PORT and TRIS registers.

If a `SLEEP` instruction is executed and SLPEN = `0`, the module will continue to display the current contents of the LCDDATA registers. To allow the module to continue operation while in Sleep, the clock source must be either the LFINTOSC or T1OSC external oscillator. While in Sleep, the LCD data cannot be changed. The LCD module current consumption will not decrease in this mode; however, the overall consumption of the device will be lower due to shut down of the core and other peripheral functions.

Table 27-8 shows the status of the LCD module during Sleep while using each of the three available clock sources:

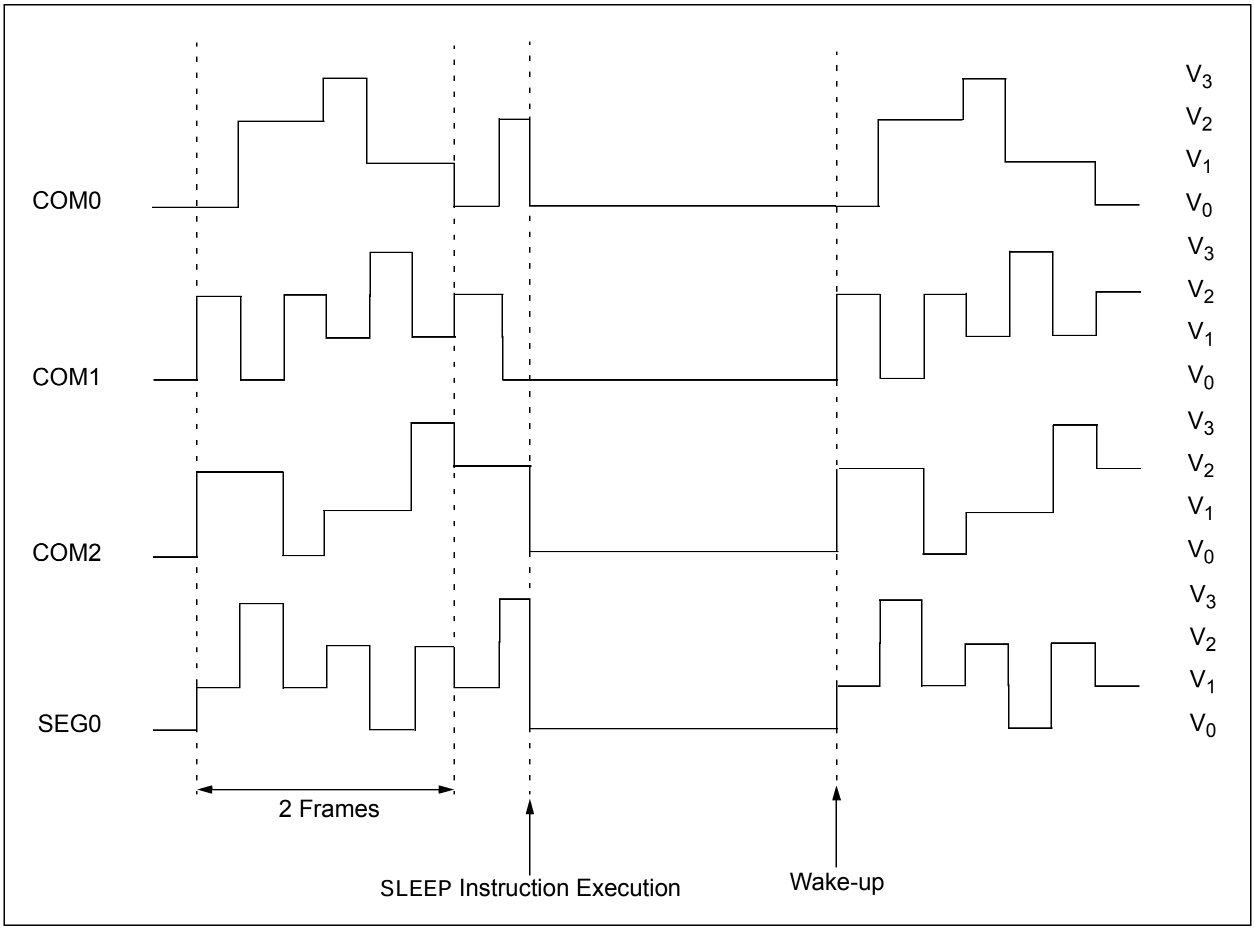
TABLE 27-8: LCD MODULE STATUS DURING SLEEP

Clock Source	SLPEN	Operational During Sleep
T1OSC	`0`	Yes
	`1`	No
LFINTOSC	`0`	Yes
	`1`	No
FOSC/4	`0`	No
	`1`	No

> **Note:** The LFINTOSC or external T1OSC oscillator must be used to operate the LCD module during Sleep.

If LCD interrupts are being generated (Type-B waveform with a multiplex mode not static) and LCDIE = `1`, the device will awaken from Sleep on the next frame boundary.

FIGURE 27-20: SLEEP ENTRY/EXIT WHEN SLPEN = 1



 Preliminary

27.13 Configuring the LCD Module

The following is the sequence of steps to configure the LCD module.

1. Select the frame clock prescale using bits LP<3:0> of the LCDPS register.
2. Configure the appropriate pins to function as segment drivers using the LCDSEn registers.
3. Configure the LCD module for the following using the LCDCON register:
   - Multiplex and Bias mode, bits LMUX<1:0>
   - Timing source, bits CS<1:0>
   - Sleep mode, bit SLPEN
4. Write initial values to pixel data registers, LCDDATA0 through LCDDATA23.
5. Clear LCD Interrupt Flag, LCDIF bit of the PIR2 register and if desired, enable the interrupt by setting bit LCDIE of the PIE2 register.
6. Configure bias voltages by setting the LCDRL, LCDREF and the associated ANSELx registers as needed.
7. Enable the LCD module by setting bit LCDEN of the LCDCON register.

27.14 Disabling the LCD Module

To disable the LCD module, write all '0's to the LCDCON register.

27.15 LCD Current Consumption

When using the LCD module the current consumption consists of the following three factors:

- Oscillator Selection
- LCD Bias Source
- Capacitance of the LCD segments

The current consumption of just the LCD module can be considered negligible compared to these other factors.

27.15.1 OSCILLATOR SELECTION

The current consumed by the clock source selected must be considered when using the LCD module. See **Section 30.0 "Electrical Specifications"** for oscillator current consumption information.

27.15.2 LCD BIAS SOURCE

The LCD bias source, internal or external, can contribute significantly to the current consumption. Use the highest possible resistor values while maintaining contrast to minimize current.

27.15.3 CAPACITANCE OF THE LCD SEGMENTS

The LCD segments which can be modeled as capacitors which must be both charged and discharged every frame. The size of the LCD segment and its technology determines the segment's capacitance.

TABLE 27-9: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH LCD OPERATION

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
INTCON	GIE	PEIE	TMR0IE	INTE	IOCIE	TMR0IF	INTF	IOCIF	93
LCDCON	LCDEN	SLPEN	WERR	—	CS<1:0>		LMUX<1:0>		337
LCDCST	—	—	—	—	—	LCDCST<2:0>			340
LCDDATA0	SEG7 COM0	SEG6 COM0	SEG5 COM0	SEG4 COM0	SEG3 COM0	SEG2 COM0	SEG1 COM0	SEG0 COM0	341
LCDDATA1	SEG15 COM0	SEG14 COM0	SEG13 COM0	SEG12 COM0	SEG11 COM0	SEG10 COM0	SEG9 COM0	SEG8 COM0	341
LCDDATA2	SEG23 COM0	SEG22 COM0	SEG21 COM0	SEG20 COM0	SEG19 COM0	SEG18 COM0	SEG17 COM0	SEG16 COM0	341
LCDDATA3	SEG7 COM1	SEG6 COM1	SEG5 COM1	SEG4 COM1	SEG3 COM1	SEG2 COM1	SEG1 COM1	SEG0 COM1	341
LCDDATA4	SEG15 COM1	SEG14 COM1	SEG13 COM1	SEG12 COM1	SEG11 COM1	SEG10 COM1	SEG9 COM1	SEG8 COM1	341
LCDDATA5	SEG23 COM1	SEG22 COM1	SEG21 COM1	SEG20 COM1	SEG19 COM1	SEG18 COM1	SEG17 COM1	SEG16 COM1	341
LCDDATA6	SEG7 COM2	SEG6 COM2	SEG5 COM2	SEG4 COM2	SEG3 COM2	SEG2 COM2	SEG1 COM2	SEG0 COM2	341
LCDDATA7	SEG15 COM2	SEG14 COM2	SEG13 COM2	SEG12 COM2	SEG11 COM2	SEG10 COM2	SEG9 COM2	SEG8 COM2	341
LCDDATA8	SEG23 COM2	SEG22 COM2	SEG21 COM2	SEG20 COM2	SEG19 COM2	SEG18 COM2	SEG17 COM2	SEG16 COM2	341
LCDDATA9	SEG7 COM3	SEG6 COM3	SEG5 COM3	SEG4 COM3	SEG3 COM3	SEG2 COM3	SEG1 COM3	SEG0 COM3	341
LCDDATA10	SEG15 COM3	SEG14 COM3	SEG13 COM3	SEG12 COM3	SEG11 COM3	SEG10 COM3	SEG9 COM3	SEG8 COM3	341
LCDDATA11	SEG23 COM3	SEG22 COM3	SEG21 COM3	SEG20 COM3	SEG19 COM3	SEG18 COM3	SEG17 COM3	SEG16 COM3	341
LCDDATA12	SEG31 COM0	SEG30 COM0	SEG29 COM0	SEG28 COM0	SEG27 COM0	SEG26 COM0	SEG25 COM0	SEG24 COM0	341
LCDDATA13	SEG39 COM0	SEG38 COM0	SEG37 COM0	SEG36 COM0	SEG35 COM0	SEG34 COM0	SEG33 COM0	SEG32 COM0	341
LCDDATA14	—	—	SEG45 COM0	SEG44 COM0	SEG43 COM0	SEG42 COM0	SEG41 COM0	SEG40 COM0	341
LCDDATA15	SEG31 COM1	SEG30 COM1	SEG29 COM1	SEG28 COM1	SEG27 COM1	SEG26 COM1	SEG25 COM1	SEG24 COM1	341
LCDDATA16	SEG39 COM1	SEG38 COM1	SEG37 COM1	SEG36 COM1	SEG35 COM1	SEG34 COM1	SEG33 COM1	SEG32 COM1	341
LCDDATA17	—	—	SEG45 COM1	SEG44 COM1	SEG43 COM1	SEG42 COM1	SEG41 COM1	SEG40 COM1	341
LCDDATA18	SEG31 COM2	SEG30 COM2	SEG29 COM2	SEG28 COM2	SEG27 COM2	SEG26 COM2	SEG25 COM2	SEG24 COM2	341
LCDDATA19	SEG39 COM2	SEG38 COM2	SEG37 COM2	SEG36 COM2	SEG35 COM2	SEG34 COM2	SEG33 COM2	SEG32 COM2	341
LCDDATA20	—	—	SEG45 COM2	SEG44 COM2	SEG43 COM2	SEG42 COM2	SEG41 COM2	SEG40 COM2	341
LCDDATA21	SEG31 COM3	SEG30 COM3	SEG29 COM3	SEG28 COM3	SEG27 COM3	SEG26 COM3	SEG25 COM3	SEG24 COM3	341

Legend: — = unimplemented location, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the LCD module.

TABLE 27-9: SUMMARY OF REGISTERS ASSOCIATED WITH LCD OPERATION (CONTINUED)

Name	Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Register on Page
LCDDATA22	SEG39 COM3	SEG38 COM3	SEG37 COM3	SEG36 COM3	SEG35 COM3	SEG34 COM3	SEG33 COM3	SEG32 COM3	341
LCDDATA23	—	—	SEG45 COM3	SEG44 COM3	SEG43 COM3	SEG42 COM3	SEG41 COM3	SEG40 COM3	341
LCDPS	WFT	BIASMD	LCDA	WA	LP<3:0>				338
LCDREF	LCDIRE	LCDIRS	LCDIRI	—	VLCD3PE	VLCD2PE	VLCD1PE	—	339
LCDRL	LRLAP<1:0>		LRLBP<1:0>		—	LRLAT<2:0>			348
LCDSE0	SE<7:0>								341
LCDSE1	SE<15:8>								341
LCDSE2	SE<23:16>								341
LCDSE3	SE<31:24>								341
LCDSE4	SE<39:32>								341
LCDSE5	—	—	SE<45:40>						341
PIE2	OSFIE	C2IE	C1IE	EEIE	BCLIE	LCDIE	C3IE	CCP2IE	95
PIR2	OSFIF	C2IF	C1IF	EEIF	BCLIF	LCDIF	C3IF	CCP2IF	99
T1CON	TMR1CS<1:0>		T1CKPS<1:0>		T1OSCEN	$\overline{\text{T1SYNC}}$	—	TMR1ON	205

Legend: — = unimplemented location, read as '0'. Shaded cells are not used by the LCD module.

NOTES:

28.0 IN-CIRCUIT SERIAL PROGRAMMING™ (ICSP™)

ICSP™ programming allows customers to manufacture circuit boards with unprogrammed devices. Programming can be done after the assembly process allowing the device to be programmed with the most recent firmware or a custom firmware. Five pins are needed for ICSP™ programming:

- ICSPCLK
- ICSPDAT
- $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$/VPP
- VDD
- VSS

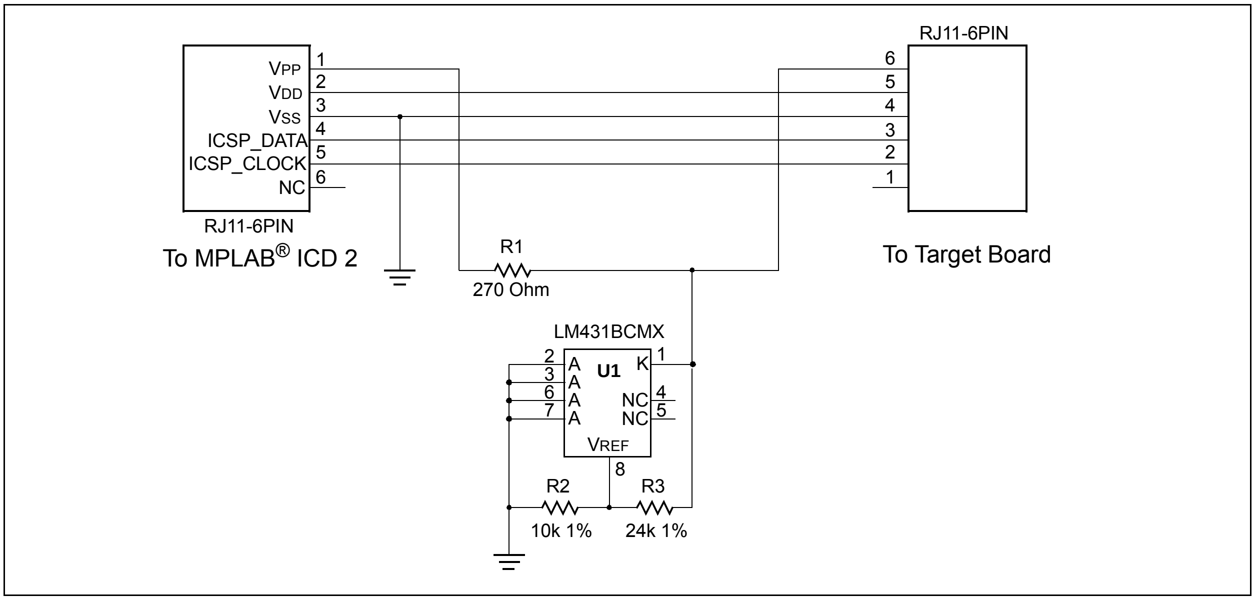
In Program/Verify mode the Program Memory, User IDs and the Configuration Words are programmed through serial communications. The ICSPDAT pin is a bidirectional I/O used for transferring the serial data and the ICSPCLK pin is the clock input. For more information on ICSP™ refer to the "*PIC16F193X/LF193X/PIC16F194X/LF194X Memory Programming Specification*" (DS41397).

28.1 High-Voltage Programming Entry Mode

The device is placed into High-Voltage Programming Entry mode by holding the ICSPCLK and ICSPDAT pins low then raising the voltage on $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$/VPP to VIHH.

Some programmers produce VPP greater than VIHH (9.0V), an external circuit is required to limit the VPP voltage. See Figure 28-1 for example circuit.

FIGURE 28-1: VPP LIMITER EXAMPLE CIRCUIT



Note:	The ICD 2 produces a V_{PP} voltage greater than the maximum V_{PP} specification of the PIC16F/LF1946/47.

28.2 Low-Voltage Programming Entry Mode

The Low-Voltage Programming Entry mode allows the PIC16F/LF1946/47 devices to be programmed using V_{DD} only, without high voltage. When the LVP bit of Configuration Word 2 is set to '1', the low-voltage ICSP programming entry is enabled. To disable the Low-Voltage ICSP mode, the LVP bit must be programmed to '0'.

Entry into the Low-Voltage Programming Entry mode requires the following steps:

1. $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ is brought to V_{IL}.
2. A 32-bit key sequence is presented on ICSPDAT, while clocking ICSPCLK.

Once the key sequence is complete, $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ must be held at V_{IL} for as long as Program/Verify mode is to be maintained.

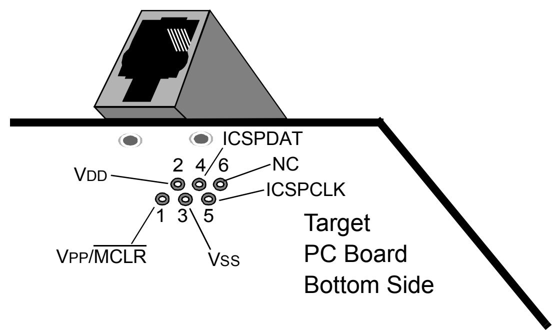
If low-voltage programming is enabled (LVP = 1), the $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Reset function is automatically enabled and cannot be disabled. See **Section 6.3 "MCLR"** for more information.

The LVP bit can only be reprogrammed to '0' by using the High-Voltage Programming mode.

28.3 Common Programming Interfaces

Connection to a target device is typically done through an ICSP™ header. A commonly found connector on development tools is the RJ-11 in the 6P6C (6 pin, 6 connector) configuration. See Figure 28-2.

FIGURE 28-2: ICD RJ-11 STYLE CONNECTOR INTERFACE



Pin Description*

1 = $V_{PP}/\overline{\text{MCLR}}$

2 = V_{DD} Target

3 = V_{SS} (ground)

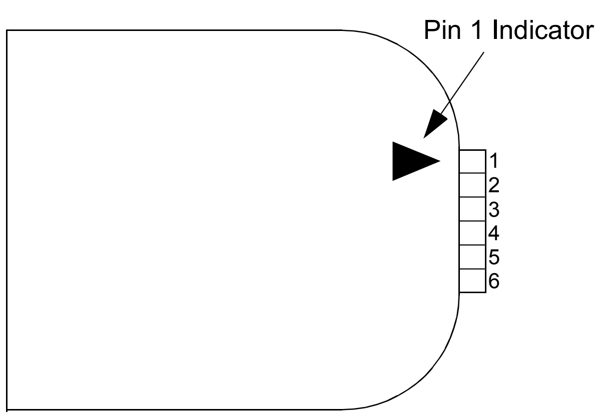
4 = ICSPDAT

5 = ICSPCLK

6 = No Connect

Another connector often found in use with the PICkit™ programmers is a standard 6-pin header with 0.1 inch spacing. Refer to Figure 28-3.

FIGURE 28-3: PICkit™ STYLE CONNECTOR INTERFACE



Pin Description*

1 = $V_{PP}/\overline{\text{MCLR}}$

2 = V_{DD} Target

3 = V_{SS} (ground)

4 = ICSPDAT

5 = ICSPCLK

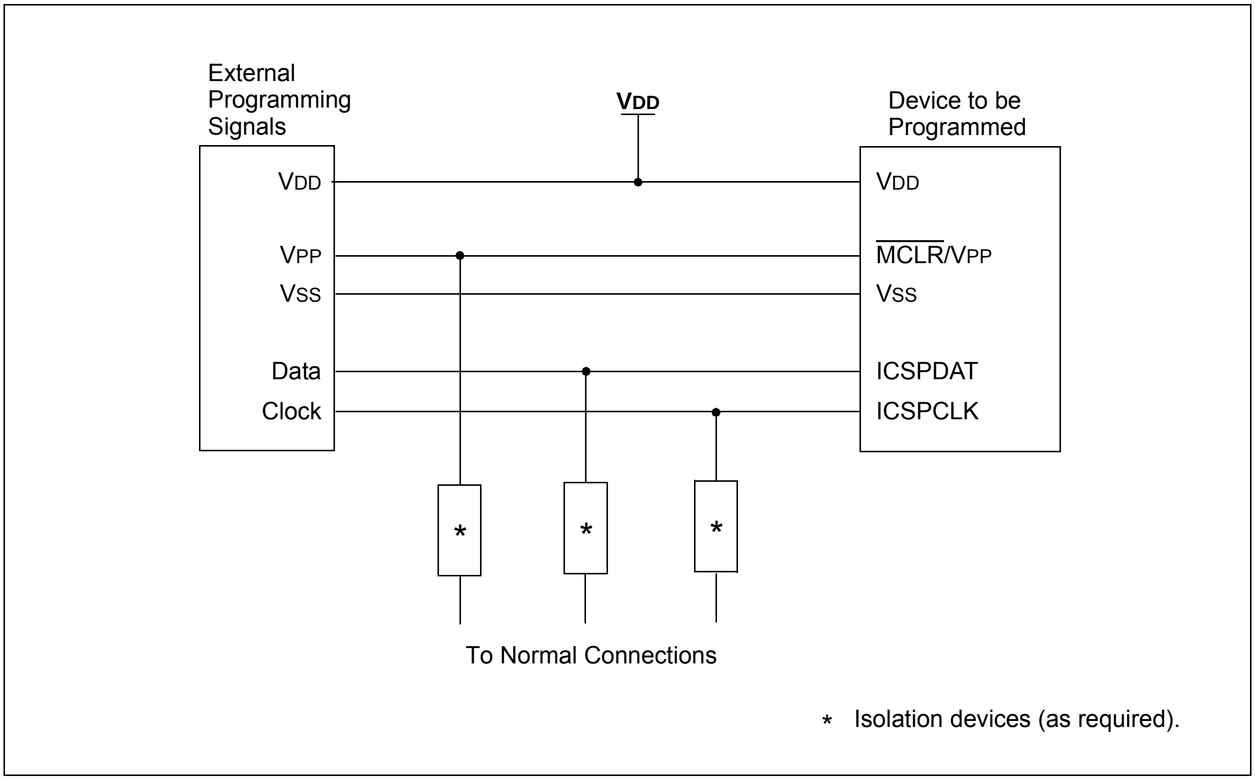
6 = No Connect

* The 6-pin header (0.100" spacing) accepts 0.025" square pins.

For additional interface recommendations, refer to your specific device programmer manual prior to PCB design.

It is recommended that isolation devices be used to separate the programming pins from other circuitry. The type of isolation is highly dependent on the specific application and may include devices such as resistors, diodes, or even jumpers. See Figure 28-4 for more information.

FIGURE 28-4: TYPICAL CONNECTION FOR ICSP™ PROGRAMMING



NOTES:

29.0 INSTRUCTION SET SUMMARY

Each PIC16 instruction is a 14-bit word containing the operation code (opcode) and all required operands. The opcodes are broken into three broad categories.

- Byte Oriented
- Bit Oriented
- Literal and Control

The literal and control category contains the most varied instruction word format.

Table 29-3 lists the instructions recognized by the MPASM™ assembler.

All instructions are executed within a single instruction cycle, with the following exceptions, which may take two or three cycles:

- Subroutine takes two cycles (`CALL`, `CALLW`)
- Returns from interrupts or subroutines take two cycles (`RETURN`, `RETLW`, `RETFIE`)
- Program branching takes two cycles (`GOTO`, `BRA`, `BRW`, `BTFSS`, `BTFSC`, `DECFSZ`, `INCSFZ`)
- One additional instruction cycle will be used when any instruction references an indirect file register and the file select register is pointing to program memory.

One instruction cycle consists of 4 oscillator cycles; for an oscillator frequency of 4 MHz, this gives a nominal instruction execution rate of 1 MHz.

All instruction examples use the format '`0xhh`' to represent a hexadecimal number, where 'h' signifies a hexadecimal digit.

29.1 Read-Modify-Write Operations

Any instruction that specifies a file register as part of the instruction performs a Read-Modify-Write (R-M-W) operation. The register is read, the data is modified, and the result is stored according to either the instruction, or the destination designator 'd'. A read operation is performed on a register even if the instruction writes to that register.

TABLE 29-1: OPCODE FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Field	Description
f	Register file address (0x00 to 0x7F)
W	Working register (accumulator)
b	Bit address within an 8-bit file register
k	Literal field, constant data or label
x	Don't care location (= `0` or `1`). The assembler will generate code with x = `0`. It is the recommended form of use for compatibility with all Microchip software tools.
d	Destination select; d = `0`: store result in W, d = `1`: store result in file register f. Default is d = `1`.
n	FSR or INDF number. (0-1)
mm	Pre-post increment-decrement mode selection

TABLE 29-2: ABBREVIATION DESCRIPTIONS

Field	Description
PC	Program Counter
$\overline{TO}$	Time-out bit
C	Carry bit
DC	Digit carry bit
Z	Zero bit
$\overline{PD}$	Power-down bit

FIGURE 29-1: GENERAL FORMAT FOR INSTRUCTIONS

Byte-oriented file register operations

13 – 8	7	6 – 0
OPCODE	d	f (FILE #)

d = `0` for destination W
d = `1` for destination f
f = 7-bit file register address

Bit-oriented file register operations

13 – 10	9 – 7	6 – 0
OPCODE	b (BIT #)	f (FILE #)

b = 3-bit bit address
f = 7-bit file register address

Literal and control operations

General

13 – 8	7 – 0
OPCODE	k (literal)

k = 8-bit immediate value

`CALL` and `GOTO` instructions only

13 – 11	10 – 0
OPCODE	k (literal)

k = 11-bit immediate value

`MOVLP` instruction only

13 – 7	6 – 0
OPCODE	k (literal)

k = 7-bit immediate value

`MOVLB` instruction only

13 – 5	4 – 0
OPCODE	k (literal)

k = 5-bit immediate value

BRA instruction only

13 – 9	8 – 0
OPCODE	k (literal)

k = 9-bit immediate value

FSR Offset instructions

13 – 7	6	5 – 0
OPCODE	n	k (literal)

n = appropriate FSR
k = 6-bit immediate value

FSR Increment instructions

13 – 3	2	1 – 0
OPCODE	n	m (mode)

n = appropriate FSR
m = 2-bit mode value

OPCODE only

13 – 0
OPCODE

TABLE 29-3: PIC16F/LF1946/47 ENHANCED INSTRUCTION SET

Mnemonic, Operands		Description	Cycles	14-Bit Opcode MSb			LSb	Status Affected	Notes
BYTE-ORIENTED FILE REGISTER OPERATIONS									
ADDWF	f, d	Add W and f	1	00	0111	dfff	ffff	C, DC, Z	2
ADDWFC	f, d	Add with Carry W and f	1	11	1101	dfff	ffff	C, DC, Z	2
ANDWF	f, d	AND W with f	1	00	0101	dfff	ffff	Z	2
ASRF	f, d	Arithmetic Right Shift	1	11	0111	dfff	ffff	C, Z	2
LSLF	f, d	Logical Left Shift	1	11	0101	dfff	ffff	C, Z	2
LSRF	f, d	Logical Right Shift	1	11	0110	dfff	ffff	C, Z	2
CLRF	f	Clear f	1	00	0001	lfff	ffff	Z	2
CLRW	–	Clear W	1	00	0001	0000	00xx	Z	
COMF	f, d	Complement f	1	00	1001	dfff	ffff	Z	2
DECF	f, d	Decrement f	1	00	0011	dfff	ffff	Z	2
INCF	f, d	Increment f	1	00	1010	dfff	ffff	Z	2
IORWF	f, d	Inclusive OR W with f	1	00	0100	dfff	ffff	Z	2
MOVF	f, d	Move f	1	00	1000	dfff	ffff	Z	2
MOVWF	f	Move W to f	1	00	0000	1fff	ffff		2
RLF	f, d	Rotate Left f through Carry	1	00	1101	dfff	ffff	C	2
RRF	f, d	Rotate Right f through Carry	1	00	1100	dfff	ffff	C	2
SUBWF	f, d	Subtract W from f	1	00	0010	dfff	ffff	C, DC, Z	2
SUBWFB	f, d	Subtract with Borrow W from f	1	11	1011	dfff	ffff	C, DC, Z	2
SWAPF	f, d	Swap nibbles in f	1	00	1110	dfff	ffff		2
XORWF	f, d	Exclusive OR W with f	1	00	0110	dfff	ffff	Z	2
BYTE ORIENTED SKIP OPERATIONS									
DECFSZ	f, d	Decrement f, Skip if 0	1(2)	00	1011	dfff	ffff		1, 2
INCFSZ	f, d	Increment f, Skip if 0	1(2)	00	1111	dfff	ffff		1, 2
BIT-ORIENTED FILE REGISTER OPERATIONS									
BCF	f, b	Bit Clear f	1	01	00bb	bfff	ffff		2
BSF	f, b	Bit Set f	1	01	01bb	bfff	ffff		2
BIT-ORIENTED SKIP OPERATIONS									
BTFSC	f, b	Bit Test f, Skip if Clear	1 (2)	01	10bb	bfff	ffff		1, 2
BTFSS	f, b	Bit Test f, Skip if Set	1 (2)	01	11bb	bfff	ffff		1, 2
LITERAL OPERATIONS									
ADDLW	k	Add literal and W	1	11	1110	kkkk	kkkk	C, DC, Z	
ANDLW	k	AND literal with W	1	11	1001	kkkk	kkkk	Z	
IORLW	k	Inclusive OR literal with W	1	11	1000	kkkk	kkkk	Z	
MOVLB	k	Move literal to BSR	1	00	0000	001k	kkkk		
MOVLP	k	Move literal to PCLATH	1	11	0001	1kkk	kkkk		
MOVLW	k	Move literal to W	1	11	0000	kkkk	kkkk		
SUBLW	k	Subtract W from literal	1	11	1100	kkkk	kkkk	C, DC, Z	
XORLW	k	Exclusive OR literal with W	1	11	1010	kkkk	kkkk	Z	

Note 1: If the Program Counter (PC) is modified, or a conditional test is true, the instruction requires two cycles. The second cycle is executed as a NOP.

2: If this instruction addresses an INDF register and the MSb of the corresponding FSR is set, this instruction will require one additional instruction cycle.

TABLE 29-3: PIC16F/LF1946/47 ENHANCED INSTRUCTION SET (CONTINUED)

Mnemonic, Operands		Description	Cycles	14-Bit Opcode MSb			LSb	Status Affected	Notes
CONTROL OPERATIONS									
BRA	k	Relative Branch	2	11	001k	kkkk	kkkk		
BRW	–	Relative Branch with W	2	00	0000	0000	1011		
CALL	k	Call Subroutine	2	10	0kkk	kkkk	kkkk		
CALLW	–	Call Subroutine with W	2	00	0000	0000	1010		
GOTO	k	Go to address	2	10	1kkk	kkkk	kkkk		
RETFIE	k	Return from interrupt	2	00	0000	0000	1001		
RETLW	k	Return with literal in W	2	11	0100	kkkk	kkkk		
RETURN	–	Return from Subroutine	2	00	0000	0000	1000		
INHERENT OPERATIONS									
CLRWDT	–	Clear Watchdog Timer	1	00	0000	0110	0100	$\overline{TO}$, $\overline{PD}$	
NOP	–	No Operation	1	00	0000	0000	0000		
OPTION	–	Load OPTION_REG register with W	1	00	0000	0110	0010		
RESET	–	Software device Reset	1	00	0000	0000	0001		
SLEEP	–	Go into Standby mode	1	00	0000	0110	0011	$\overline{TO}$, $\overline{PD}$	
TRIS	f	Load TRIS register with W	1	00	0000	0110	0fff		
C-COMPILER OPTIMIZED									
ADDFSR	n, k	Add Literal k to FSRn	1	11	0001	0nkk	kkkk		
MOVIW	n mm	Move Indirect FSRn to W with pre/post inc/dec modifier, mm	1	00	0000	0001	0nmm kkkk	Z	**2, 3**
	k[n]	Move INDFn to W, Indexed Indirect.	1	11	1111	0nkk	1nmm	Z	**2**
MOVWI	n mm	Move W to Indirect FSRn with pre/post inc/dec modifier, mm	1	00	0000	0001	kkkk		**2, 3**
	k[n]	Move W to INDFn, Indexed Indirect.	1	11	1111	1nkk			**2**

Note 1: If the Program Counter (PC) is modified, or a conditional test is true, the instruction requires two cycles. The second cycle is executed as a `NOP`.

2: If this instruction addresses an INDF register and the MSb of the corresponding FSR is set, this instruction will require one additional instruction cycle.

3: See Table in the MOVIW and MOVWI instruction descriptions.

29.2 Instruction Descriptions

ADDFSR — Add Literal to FSRn

Syntax:	[*label*] ADDFSR FSRn, k
Operands:	$-32 \le k \le 31$ $n \in [0, 1]$
Operation:	$FSR(n) + k \rightarrow FSR(n)$
Status Affected:	None
Description:	The signed 6-bit literal ‘k’ is added to the contents of the FSRnH:FSRnL register pair. FSRn is limited to the range 0000h - FFFFh. Moving beyond these bounds will cause the FSR to wrap around.

ADDLW — Add literal and W

Syntax:	[*label*] ADDLW k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 255$
Operation:	$(W) + k \rightarrow (W)$
Status Affected:	C, DC, Z
Description:	The contents of the W register are added to the eight-bit literal ‘k’ and the result is placed in the W register.

ADDWF — Add W and f

Syntax:	[*label*] ADDWF f,d
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$(W) + (f) \rightarrow$ (destination)
Status Affected:	C, DC, Z
Description:	Add the contents of the W register with register ‘f’. If ‘d’ is ‘0’, the result is stored in the W register. If ‘d’ is ‘1’, the result is stored back in register ‘f’.

ADDWFC — ADD W and CARRY bit to f

Syntax:	[*label*] ADDWFC f {,d}
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	$(W) + (f) + (C) \rightarrow$ dest
Status Affected:	C, DC, Z
Description:	Add W, the Carry flag and data memory location ‘f’. If ‘d’ is ‘0’, the result is placed in W. If ‘d’ is ‘1’, the result is placed in data memory location ‘f’.

ANDLW — AND literal with W

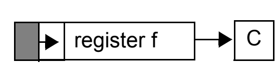
Syntax:	[*label*] ANDLW k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 255$
Operation:	(W) .AND. (k) $\rightarrow$ (W)
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	The contents of W register are AND’ed with the eight-bit literal ‘k’. The result is placed in the W register.

ANDWF — AND W with f

Syntax:	[*label*] ANDWF f,d
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(W) .AND. (f) $\rightarrow$ (destination)
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	AND the W register with register ‘f’. If ‘d’ is ‘0’, the result is stored in the W register. If ‘d’ is ‘1’, the result is stored back in register ‘f’.

ASRF — Arithmetic Right Shift

Syntax:	[*label*] ASRF f {,d}
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f<7>) $\rightarrow$ dest<7> (f<7:1>) $\rightarrow$ dest<6:0>, (f<0>) $\rightarrow$ C,
Status Affected:	C, Z
Description:	The contents of register ‘f’ are shifted one bit to the right through the Carry flag. The MSb remains unchanged. If ‘d’ is ‘0’, the result is placed in W. If ‘d’ is ‘1’, the result is stored back in register ‘f’.



BCF	Bit Clear f
Syntax:	[*label*] BCF f,b
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 127 0 ≤ b ≤ 7
Operation:	`0` → (f<b>)
Status Affected:	None
Description:	Bit ‘b’ in register ‘f’ is cleared.

BRA	Relative Branch
Syntax:	[*label*] BRA label [*label*] BRA $+k
Operands:	-256 ≤ label - PC + 1 ≤ 255 -256 ≤ k ≤ 255
Operation:	(PC) + 1 + k → PC
Status Affected:	None
Description:	Add the signed 9-bit literal ‘k’ to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC + 1 + k. This instruction is a two-cycle instruction. This branch has a limited range.

BRW	Relative Branch with W
Syntax:	[*label*] BRW
Operands:	None
Operation:	(PC) + (W) → PC
Status Affected:	None
Description:	Add the contents of W (unsigned) to the PC. Since the PC will have incremented to fetch the next instruction, the new address will be PC + 1 + (W). This instruction is a two-cycle instruction.

BSF	Bit Set f
Syntax:	[*label*] BSF f,b
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 127 0 ≤ b ≤ 7
Operation:	`1` → (f<b>)
Status Affected:	None
Description:	Bit ‘b’ in register ‘f’ is set.

BTFSC	Bit Test f, Skip if Clear
Syntax:	[*label*] BTFSC f,b
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 127 0 ≤ b ≤ 7
Operation:	skip if (f<b>) = `0`
Status Affected:	None
Description:	If bit ‘b’ in register ‘f’ is ‘`1`’, the next instruction is executed. If bit ‘b’, in register ‘f’, is ‘`0`’, the next instruction is discarded, and a `NOP` is executed instead, making this a 2-cycle instruction.

BTFSS	Bit Test f, Skip if Set
Syntax:	[*label*] BTFSS f,b
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 127 0 ≤ b < 7
Operation:	skip if (f<b>) = `1`
Status Affected:	None
Description:	If bit ‘b’ in register ‘f’ is ‘`0`’, the next instruction is executed. If bit ‘b’ is ‘`1`’, then the next instruction is discarded and a `NOP` is executed instead, making this a 2-cycle instruction.

CALL	**Call Subroutine**
Syntax:	[*label*] CALL k
Operands:	$0 \leq k \leq 2047$
Operation:	(PC)+ 1$\rightarrow$ TOS, k $\rightarrow$ PC<10:0>, (PCLATH<4:3>) $\rightarrow$ PC<12:11>
Status Affected:	None
Description:	Call Subroutine. First, return address (PC + 1) is pushed onto the stack. The eleven-bit immediate address is loaded into PC bits <10:0>. The upper bits of the PC are loaded from PCLATH. `CALL` is a two-cycle instruction.

CALLW	**Subroutine Call With W**
Syntax:	[*label*] CALLW
Operands:	None
Operation:	(PC) +1 $\rightarrow$ TOS, (W) $\rightarrow$ PC<7:0>, (PCLATH<6:0>) $\rightarrow$ PC<14:8>
Status Affected:	None
Description:	Subroutine call with W. First, the return address (PC + 1) is pushed onto the return stack. Then, the contents of W is loaded into PC<7:0>, and the contents of PCLATH into PC<14:8>. `CALLW` is a two-cycle instruction.

CLRF	**Clear f**
Syntax:	[*label*] CLRF f
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 127$
Operation:	00h $\rightarrow$ (f) `1` $\rightarrow$ Z
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are cleared and the Z bit is set.

CLRW	**Clear W**
Syntax:	[*label*] CLRW
Operands:	None
Operation:	00h $\rightarrow$ (W) `1` $\rightarrow$ Z
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	W register is cleared. Zero bit (Z) is set.

CLRWDT	**Clear Watchdog Timer**
Syntax:	[*label*] CLRWDT
Operands:	None
Operation:	00h $\rightarrow$ WDT `0` $\rightarrow$ WDT prescaler, `1` $\rightarrow$ $\overline{TO}$ `1` $\rightarrow$ $\overline{PD}$
Status Affected:	$\overline{TO}$, $\overline{PD}$
Description:	`CLRWDT` instruction resets the Watchdog Timer. It also resets the prescaler of the WDT. Status bits $\overline{TO}$ and $\overline{PD}$ are set.

COMF	**Complement f**
Syntax:	[*label*] COMF f,d
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 127$ d $\in$ [`0`,`1`]
Operation:	($\bar{f}$) $\rightarrow$ (destination)
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	The contents of register 'f' are complemented. If 'd' is '`0`', the result is stored in W. If 'd' is '`1`', the result is stored back in register 'f'.

DECF	**Decrement f**
Syntax:	[*label*] DECF f,d
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 127$ d $\in$ [`0`,`1`]
Operation:	(f) - 1 $\rightarrow$ (destination)
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	Decrement register 'f'. If 'd' is '`0`', the result is stored in the W register. If 'd' is '`1`', the result is stored back in register 'f'.

DECFSZ — Decrement f, Skip if 0

Syntax:	[*label*] DECFSZ f,d
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) - 1 → (destination); skip if result = `0`
Status Affected:	None
Description:	The contents of register ‘f’ are decremented. If ‘d’ is ‘`0`’, the result is placed in the W register. If ‘d’ is ‘`1`’, the result is placed back in register ‘f’. If the result is ‘`1`’, the next instruction is executed. If the result is ‘`0`’, then a `NOP` is executed instead, making it a 2-cycle instruction.

GOTO — Unconditional Branch

Syntax:	[*label*] GOTO k
Operands:	$0 \leq k \leq 2047$
Operation:	k → PC<10:0> PCLATH<4:3> → PC<12:11>
Status Affected:	None
Description:	`GOTO` is an unconditional branch. The eleven-bit immediate value is loaded into PC bits <10:0>. The upper bits of PC are loaded from PCLATH<4:3>. `GOTO` is a two-cycle instruction.

INCF — Increment f

Syntax:	[*label*] INCF f,d
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) + 1 → (destination)
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	The contents of register ‘f’ are incremented. If ‘d’ is ‘`0`’, the result is placed in the W register. If ‘d’ is ‘`1`’, the result is placed back in register ‘f’.

INCFSZ — Increment f, Skip if 0

Syntax:	[*label*] INCFSZ f,d
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f) + 1 → (destination), skip if result = `0`
Status Affected:	None
Description:	The contents of register ‘f’ are incremented. If ‘d’ is ‘`0`’, the result is placed in the W register. If ‘d’ is ‘`1`’, the result is placed back in register ‘f’. If the result is ‘`1`’, the next instruction is executed. If the result is ‘`0`’, a `NOP` is executed instead, making it a 2-cycle instruction.

IORLW — Inclusive OR literal with W

Syntax:	[*label*] IORLW k
Operands:	$0 \leq k \leq 255$
Operation:	(W) .OR. k → (W)
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	The contents of the W register are OR’ed with the eight-bit literal ‘k’. The result is placed in the W register.

IORWF — Inclusive OR W with f

Syntax:	[*label*] IORWF f,d
Operands:	$0 \leq f \leq 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(W) .OR. (f) → (destination)
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	Inclusive OR the W register with register ‘f’. If ‘d’ is ‘`0`’, the result is placed in the W register. If ‘d’ is ‘`1`’, the result is placed back in register ‘f’.

LSLF	**Logical Left Shift**
Syntax:	[*label*] LSLF f {,d}
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 127 d ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	(f<7>) → C (f<6:0>) → dest<7:1> 0 → dest<0>
Status Affected:	C, Z
Description:	The contents of register ‘f’ are shifted one bit to the left through the Carry flag. A ‘`0`’ is shifted into the LSb. If ‘d’ is ‘`0`’, the result is placed in W. If ‘d’ is ‘`1`’, the result is stored back in register ‘f’.

LSRF	**Logical Right Shift**
Syntax:	[*label*] LSLF f {,d}
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 127 d ∈ [0,1]
Operation:	0 → dest<7> (f<7:1>) → dest<6:0>, (f<0>) → C,
Status Affected:	C, Z
Description:	The contents of register ‘f’ are shifted one bit to the right through the Carry flag. A ‘`0`’ is shifted into the MSb. If ‘d’ is ‘`0`’, the result is placed in W. If ‘d’ is ‘`1`’, the result is stored back in register ‘f’.

MOVF	**Move f**
Syntax:	[*label*] MOVF f,d
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 127 d ∈ [`0`,`1`]
Operation:	(f) → (dest)
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	The contents of register f is moved to a destination dependent upon the status of d. If d = `0`, destination is W register. If d = `1`, the destination is file register f itself. d = `1` is useful to test a file register since status flag Z is affected.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1
<u>Example:</u>	`MOVF FSR, 0`
	After Instruction W = value in FSR register Z = `1`

MOVIW — Move INDFn to W

Syntax:	[*label*] MOVIW ++FSRn [*label*] MOVIW --FSRn [*label*] MOVIW FSRn++ [*label*] MOVIW FSRn-- [*label*] MOVIW k[FSRn]
Operands:	n ∈ [0,1] mm ∈ [00,01, 10, 11] -32 ≤ k ≤ 31
Operation:	INDFn → W Effective address is determined by • FSR + 1 (preincrement) • FSR - 1 (predecrement) • FSR + k (relative offset) After the Move, the FSR value will be either: • FSR + 1 (all increments) • FSR - 1 (all decrements) • Unchanged
Status Affected:	Z

Mode	Syntax	mm
Preincrement	++FSRn	00
Predecrement	--FSRn	01
Postincrement	FSRn++	10
Postdecrement	FSRn--	11

Description: This instruction is used to move data between W and one of the indirect registers (INDFn). Before/after this move, the pointer (FSRn) is updated by pre/post incrementing/decrementing it.

Note: The INDFn registers are not physical registers. Any instruction that accesses an INDFn register actually accesses the register at the address specified by the FSRn.

FSRn is limited to the range 0000h - FFFFh. Incrementing/decrementing it beyond these bounds will cause it to wrap around.

MOVLB — Move literal to BSR

Syntax:	[*label*] MOVLB k
Operands:	0 ≤ k ≤ 15
Operation:	k → BSR
Status Affected:	None
Description:	The five-bit literal ‘k’ is loaded into the Bank Select Register (BSR).

MOVLP — Move literal to PCLATH

Syntax:	[*label*] MOVLP k
Operands:	0 ≤ k ≤ 127
Operation:	k → PCLATH
Status Affected:	None
Description:	The seven-bit literal ‘k’ is loaded into the PCLATH register.

MOVLW — Move literal to W

Syntax:	[*label*] MOVLW k
Operands:	0 ≤ k ≤ 255
Operation:	k → (W)
Status Affected:	None
Description:	The eight-bit literal ‘k’ is loaded into W register. The “don’t cares” will assemble as ‘0’s.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1
<u>Example:</u>	`MOVLW 0x5A` After Instruction W = 0x5A

MOVWF — Move W to f

Syntax:	[*label*] MOVWF f
Operands:	0 ≤ f ≤ 127
Operation:	(W) → (f)
Status Affected:	None
Description:	Move data from W register to register ‘f’.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1
<u>Example:</u>	`MOVWF OPTION` Before Instruction OPTION = 0xFF W = 0x4F After Instruction OPTION = 0x4F W = 0x4F

MOVWI	**Move W to INDFn**
Syntax:	[*label*] MOVWI ++FSRn [*label*] MOVWI --FSRn [*label*] MOVWI FSRn++ [*label*] MOVWI FSRn-- [*label*] MOVWI k[FSRn]
Operands:	n $\in$ [0,1] mm $\in$ [00,01, 10, 11] $-32 \leq k \leq 31$
Operation:	W $\rightarrow$ INDFn Effective address is determined by • FSR + 1 (preincrement) • FSR - 1 (predecrement) • FSR + k (relative offset) After the Move, the FSR value will be either: • FSR + 1 (all increments) • FSR - 1 (all decrements) Unchanged
Status Affected:	None

Mode	Syntax	mm
Preincrement	++FSRn	00
Predecrement	--FSRn	01
Postincrement	FSRn++	10
Postdecrement	FSRn--	11

Description:	This instruction is used to move data between W and one of the indirect registers (INDFn). Before/after this move, the pointer (FSRn) is updated by pre/post incrementing/decrementing it. Note: The INDFn registers are not physical registers. Any instruction that accesses an INDFn register actually accesses the register at the address specified by the FSRn. FSRn is limited to the range 0000h - FFFFh. Incrementing/decrementing it beyond these bounds will cause it to wrap around. The increment/decrement operation on FSRn WILL NOT affect any Status bits.

NOP	**No Operation**
Syntax:	[*label*] NOP
Operands:	None
Operation:	No operation
Status Affected:	None
Description:	No operation.
Words:	1
Cycles:	1
Example:	`NOP`

OPTION	**Load OPTION_REG Register with W**
Syntax:	[*label*] OPTION
Operands:	None
Operation:	(W) $\rightarrow$ OPTION_REG
Status Affected:	None
Description:	Move data from W register to OPTION_REG register.

RESET	**Software Reset**
Syntax:	[*label*] RESET
Operands:	None
Operation:	Execute a device Reset. Resets the nRI flag of the PCON register.
Status Affected:	None
Description:	This instruction provides a way to execute a hardware Reset by software.

RETFIE — Return from Interrupt

Syntax: [*label*] RETFIE

Operands: None

Operation: TOS → PC,
1 → GIE

Status Affected: None

Description: Return from Interrupt. Stack is POPed and Top-of-Stack (TOS) is loaded in the PC. Interrupts are enabled by setting Global
Interrupt Enable bit, GIE (INTCON<7>). This is a two-cycle instruction.

Words: 1

Cycles: 2

Example:

```
RETFIE
```

After Interrupt
PC = TOS
GIE = 1

RETURN — Return from Subroutine

Syntax: [*label*] RETURN

Operands: None

Operation: TOS → PC

Status Affected: None

Description: Return from subroutine. The stack is POPed and the top of the stack (TOS) is loaded into the program counter. This is a two-cycle instruction.

RETLW — Return with literal in W

Syntax: [*label*] RETLW k

Operands: $0 \le k \le 255$

Operation: k → (W);
TOS → PC

Status Affected: None

Description: The W register is loaded with the eight bit literal 'k'. The program counter is loaded from the top of the stack (the return address). This is a two-cycle instruction.

Words: 1

Cycles: 2

Example:

```
      CALL TABLE;W contains table
          ;offset value
      •   ;W now has table value
TABLE •
      •
      ADDWF PC  ;W = offset
      RETLW k1  ;Begin table
      RETLW k2  ;
      •
      •
      •
      RETLW kn  ; End of table
```

Before Instruction
W = 0x07
After Instruction
W = value of k8

RLF — Rotate Left f through Carry

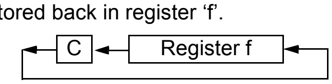
Syntax: [*label*] RLF f,d

Operands: $0 \le f \le 127$
$d \in [0,1]$

Operation: See description below

Status Affected: C

Description: The contents of register 'f' are rotated one bit to the left through the Carry flag. If 'd' is '0', the result is placed in the W register. If 'd' is '1', the result is stored back in register 'f'.



Words: 1

Cycles: 1

Example:

```
RLF     REG1,0
```

Before Instruction
REG1 = 1110 0110
C = 0
After Instruction
REG1 = 1110 0110
W = 1100 1100
C = 1

RRF — Rotate Right f through Carry

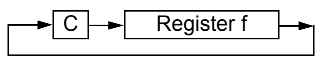
Syntax: [*label*] RRF f,d

Operands: $0 \le f \le 127$
$d \in [0,1]$

Operation: See description below

Status Affected: C

Description: The contents of register ‘f’ are rotated one bit to the right through the Carry flag. If ‘d’ is ‘0’, the result is placed in the W register. If ‘d’ is ‘1’, the result is placed back in register ‘f’.



SLEEP — Enter Sleep mode

Syntax: [*label*] SLEEP

Operands: None

Operation: 00h → WDT,
0 → WDT prescaler,
1 → $\overline{TO}$,
0 → $\overline{PD}$

Status Affected: $\overline{TO}$, $\overline{PD}$

Description: The power-down Status bit, $\overline{PD}$ is cleared. Time-out Status bit, $\overline{TO}$ is set. Watchdog Timer and its prescaler are cleared.
The processor is put into Sleep mode with the oscillator stopped.

SUBLW — Subtract W from literal

Syntax: [*label*] SUBLW k

Operands: $0 \le k \le 255$

Operation: k - (W) → (W)

Status Affected: C, DC, Z

Description: The W register is subtracted (2’s complement method) from the eight-bit literal ‘k’. The result is placed in the W register.

C = 0	W > k
C = 1	W ≤ k
DC = 0	W<3:0> > k<3:0>
DC = 1	W<3:0> ≤ k<3:0>

SUBWF — Subtract W from f

Syntax: [*label*] SUBWF f,d

Operands: $0 \le f \le 127$
$d \in [0,1]$

Operation: (f) - (W) → (destination)

Status Affected: C, DC, Z

Description: Subtract (2’s complement method) W register from register ‘f’. If ‘d’ is ‘0’, the result is stored in the W register. If ‘d’ is ‘1’, the result is stored back in register ‘f.

C = 0	W > f
C = 1	W ≤ f
DC = 0	W<3:0> > f<3:0>
DC = 1	W<3:0> ≤ f<3:0>

SUBWFB — Subtract W from f with Borrow

Syntax: SUBWFB f {,d}

Operands: $0 \le f \le 127$
$d \in [0,1]$

Operation: (f) – (W) – ($\overline{B}$) → dest

Status Affected: C, DC, Z

Description: Subtract W and the BORROW flag (CARRY) from register ‘f’ (2’s complement method). If ‘d’ is ‘0’, the result is stored in W. If ‘d’ is ‘1’, the result is stored back in register ‘f’.

SWAPF — Swap Nibbles in f

Syntax:	[*label*] SWAPF f,d
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(f<3:0>) $\rightarrow$ (destination<7:4>), (f<7:4>) $\rightarrow$ (destination<3:0>)
Status Affected:	None
Description:	The upper and lower nibbles of register ‘f’ are exchanged. If ‘d’ is ‘0’, the result is placed in the W register. If ‘d’ is ‘1’, the result is placed in register ‘f’.

TRIS — Load TRIS Register with W

Syntax:	[*label*] TRIS f
Operands:	$5 \le f \le 7$
Operation:	(W) $\rightarrow$ TRIS register ‘f’
Status Affected:	None
Description:	Move data from W register to TRIS register. When ‘f’ = 5, TRISA is loaded. When ‘f’ = 6, TRISB is loaded. When ‘f’ = 7, TRISC is loaded.

XORLW — Exclusive OR literal with W

Syntax:	[*label*] XORLW k
Operands:	$0 \le k \le 255$
Operation:	(W) .XOR. k $\rightarrow$ (W)
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	The contents of the W register are XOR’ed with the eight-bit literal ‘k’. The result is placed in the W register.

XORWF — Exclusive OR W with f

Syntax:	[*label*] XORWF f,d
Operands:	$0 \le f \le 127$ $d \in [0,1]$
Operation:	(W) .XOR. (f) $\rightarrow$ (destination)
Status Affected:	Z
Description:	Exclusive OR the contents of the W register with register ‘f’. If ‘d’ is ‘0’, the result is stored in the W register. If ‘d’ is ‘1’, the result is stored back in register ‘f’.

30.0 ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

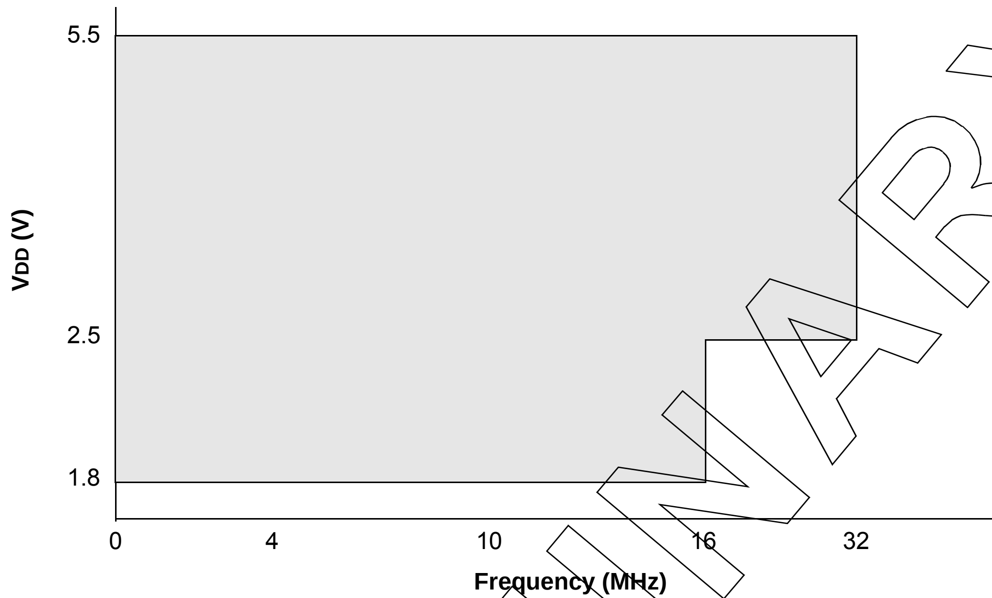
Absolute Maximum Ratings(†)

Ambient temperature under bias .... -40°C to +125°C
Storage temperature .... -65°C to +150°C
Voltage on V_{DD} with respect to V_{SS}, PIC16F1946/47 .... -0.3V to +6.5V
Voltage on V_{CAP} pin with respect to V_{SS} .... -0.3V to +4.0V
Voltage on V_{DD} with respect to V_{SS}, PIC16LF1946/47 .... -0.3V to +4.0V
Voltage on $\overline{MCLR}$ with respect to Vss .... -0.3V to +9.0V
Voltage on all other pins with respect to V_{SS} .... -0.3V to (V_{DD} + 0.3V)
Total power dissipation(1) .... 800 mW
Maximum current out of V_{SS} pin, -40°C ≤ T_A ≤ +85°C for industrial .... 425 mA
Maximum current out of V_{SS} pin, -40°C ≤ T_A ≤ +125°C for extended .... 175 mA
Maximum current into V_{DD} pin, -40°C ≤ T_A ≤ +85°C for industrial .... 425 mA
Maximum current into V_{DD} pin, -40°C ≤ T_A ≤ +125°C for extended .... 175 mA
Clamp current, I_K (V_{PIN} < 0 or V_{PIN} > V_{DD}) .... ± 20 mA
Maximum output current sunk by any I/O pin .... 25 mA
Maximum output current sourced by any I/O pin .... 25 mA

Note 1: Power dissipation is calculated as follows: $P_{DIS} = V_{DD} \times \{I_{DD} - \sum I_{OH}\} + \sum \{(V_{DD} - V_{OH}) \times I_{OH}\} + \sum (V_{OI} \times I_{OL})$.

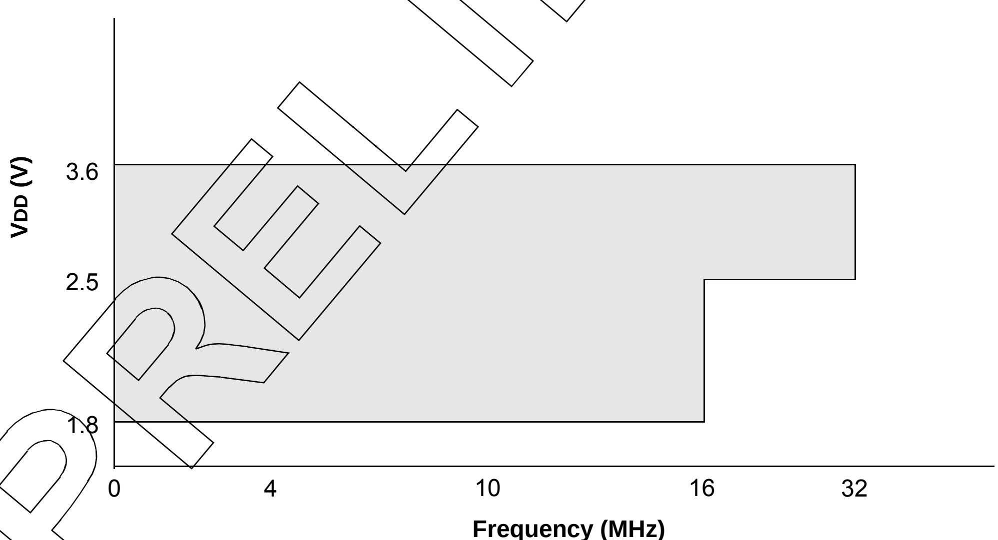
† NOTICE: Stresses above those listed under “Absolute Maximum Ratings” may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only and functional operation of the device at those or any other conditions above those indicated in the operation listings of this specification is not implied. Exposure above maximum rating conditions for extended periods may affect device reliability.

FIGURE 30-1: PIC16F1946/47 VOLTAGE FREQUENCY GRAPH, -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C



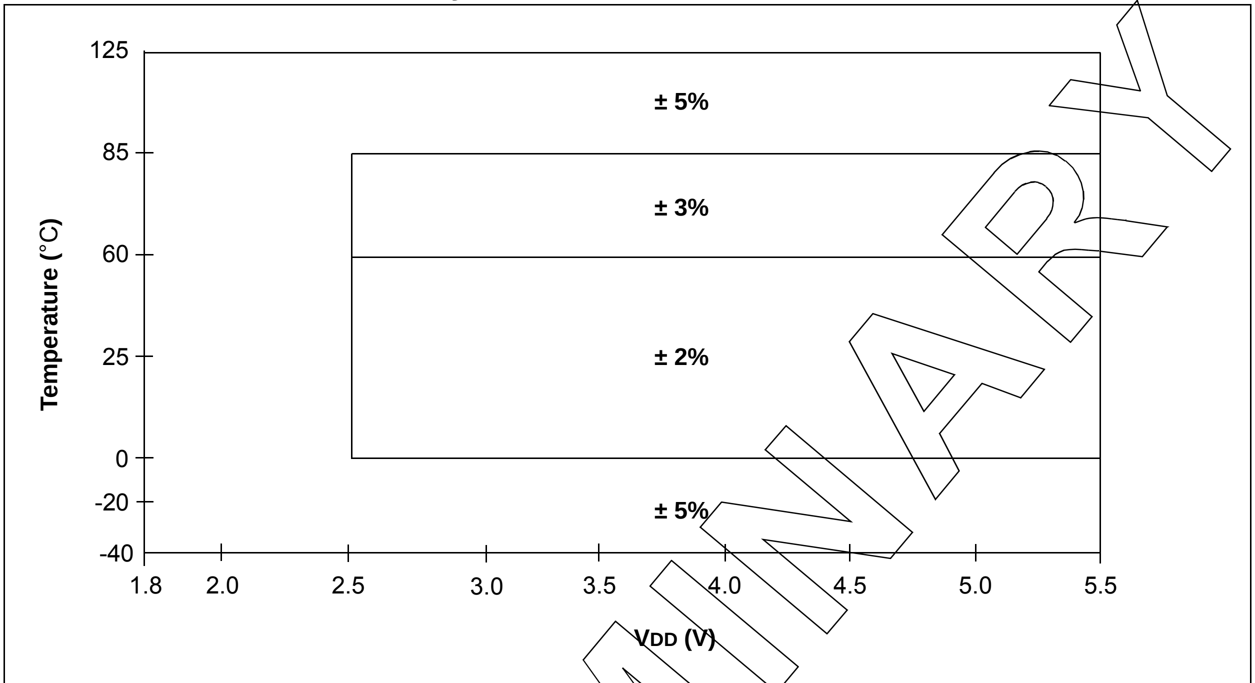
Note 1: The shaded region indicates the permissible combinations of voltage and frequency.
2: Refer to Table 30-1 for each Oscillator mode's supported frequencies.

FIGURE 30-2: PIC16LF1946/47 VOLTAGE FREQUENCY GRAPH, -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C



Note 1: The shaded region indicates the permissible combinations of voltage and frequency.
2: Refer to Table 30-1 for each Oscillator mode's supported frequencies.

FIGURE 30-3: HFINTOSC FREQUENCY ACCURACY OVER DEVICE VDD AND TEMPERATURE



30.1 DC Characteristics: PIC16F/LF1946/47-I/E (Industrial, Extended)

			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended				
PIC16F1946/47			**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended				
Param. No.	**Sym.**	**Characteristic**	**Min.**	**Typ†**	**Max.**	**Units**	**Conditions**
D001	VDD	**Supply Voltage**					
		PIC16LF1946/47	1.8 2.5	— —	3.6 3.6	V V	FOSC ≤ 16 MHz: FOSC ≤ 32 MHz (**NOTE 2**)
D001		PIC16F1946/47	1.8 2.5	— —	5.5 5.5	V V	FOSC ≤ 16 MHz: FOSC ≤ 32 MHz (**NOTE 2**)
D002*	VDR	**RAM Data Retention Voltage(1)**					
		PIC16LF1946/47	1.5	—	—	V	Device in Sleep mode
D002*		PIC16F1946/47	1.7	—	—	V	Device in Sleep mode
	VPOR*	**Power-on Reset Release Voltage**	—	1.6	—	V	
	VPORR*	**Power-on Reset Rearm Voltage**					
		PIC16LF1946/47	—	0.8	—	V	Device in Sleep mode
		PIC16F1946/47	—	1.7	—	V	Device in Sleep mode
D003	VADFVR	**Fixed Voltage Reference Voltage for ADC**	-8 — — — — —	— — — — — —	6 4 — — 4 4	%	1.024V, VDD ≥ 2.5V 2.048V, VDD ≥ 2.5V 4.096V, VDD ≥ 4.75V
D003A	VCDAFVR	**Fixed Voltage Reference Voltage for Comparator and DAC**	-11 — — — — —	— — — — — —	7 — — — 4 4	%	1.024V, VDD ≥ 2.5V 2.048V, VDD ≥ 2.5V 4.096V, VDD ≥ 4.75V
D003B	VLCDFVR	**Fixed Voltage Reference Voltage for LCD Bias, Initial Accuracy**	-11 —	— —	10 9	%	3.072V, VDD ≥ 3.6V
D004*	SVDD	**VDD Rise Rate** to ensure internal Power-on Reset signal	0.05	—	—	V/ms	See **Section 6.1 "Power-on Reset (POR)"** for details.

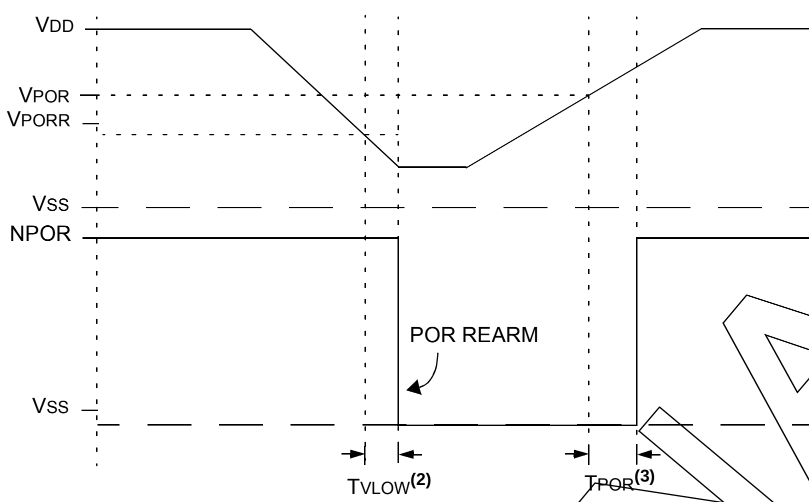
* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 3.3V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

Note 1: This is the limit to which VDD can be lowered in Sleep mode without losing RAM data.

2: PLL required for 32 MHz operation.

FIGURE 30-4: POR AND POR REARM WITH SLOW RISING VDD



Note 1: When NPOR is low, the device is held in Reset.
2: TPOR 1 μs typical.
3: TVLOW 2.7 μs typical.

30.2 DC Characteristics: PIC16F/LF1946/47-I/E (Industrial, Extended)

Param No.	Device Characteristics	Min.	Typ†	Max.	Units	VDD	Note
PIC16LF1946/47		**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended					
PIC16F1946/47		**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended					
	Supply Current (IDD)(1, 2)						
D009	LDO Regulator	—	350	—	μA	—	HS, EC or HFINTOSC Clock modes with VCAP pin disabled
		—	50	—	μA	—	
		—	30	—	μA	—	
		—	5	—	μA	—	LP/LFINTOSC Clock mode or Sleep (requires FVR and BOR to be disabled)
D010		—	5.0	11	μA	1.8	FOSC = 32 kHz LP Oscillator mode (**Note 4**), -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C
		—	6.0	13	μA	3.0	
D010		—	24	38	μA	1.8	FOSC = 32 kHz LP Oscillator mode (**Note 4, 5**), -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C
		—	30	43	μA	3.0	
		—	32	48	μA	5.0	
D010A		—	7.0	23	μA	1.8	FOSC = 32 kHz LP Oscillator mode (**Note 4**) -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C
		—	9.0	27	μA	3.0	
D010A		—	24	68	μA	1.8	FOSC = 32 kHz LP Oscillator mode (**Note 4, 5**) -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C
		—	30	88	μA	3.0	
		—	32	95	μA	5.0	
D011		—	60	105	μA	1.8	FOSC = 1 MHz XT Oscillator mode
		—	120	190	μA	3.0	
D011		—	95	130	μA	1.8	FOSC = 1 MHz XT Oscillator mode (**Note 5**)
		—	170	220	μA	3.0	
		—	190	270	μA	5.0	
D012		—	160	300	μA	1.8	FOSC = 4 MHz XT Oscillator mode
		—	300	500	μA	3.0	
D012		—	200	330	μA	1.8	FOSC = 4 MHz XT Oscillator mode (**Note 5**)
		—	300	500	μA	3.0	
		—	400	650	μA	5.0	

Note 1: The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active operation mode are: OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD; $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ = VDD; WDT disabled.

2: The supply current is mainly a function of the operating voltage and frequency. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.

3: For RC oscillator configurations, current through REXT is not included. The current through the resistor can be extended by the formula IR = VDD/2REXT (mA) with REXT in kΩ.

4: FVR and BOR are disabled.

5: 0.1 μF capacitor on VCAP (RF0).

6: 8 MHz crystal oscillator with 4x PLL enabled.

30.2 DC Characteristics: PIC16F/LF1946/47-I/E (Industrial, Extended) (Continued)

PIC16LF1946/47	Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended
PIC16F1946/47	Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended

Param No.	Device Characteristics	Min.	Typ†	Max.	Units	Conditions: VDD	Conditions: Note
	Supply Current (IDD)(1, 2)						
D013		—	15	40	μA	1.8	FOSC = 500 kHz EC Oscillator Low-Power mode
		—	30	75	μA	3.0	
D013		—	30	60	μA	1.8	FOSC = 500 kHz EC Oscillator Low-Power mode (Note 5)
		—	45	85	μA	3.0	
		—	50	90	μA	5.0	
D014		—	140	250	μA	1.8	FOSC = 4 MHz EC Oscillator mode Medium Power mode
		—	270	400	μA	3.0	
D014		—	160	270	μA	1.8	FOSC = 4 MHz EC Oscillator mode (Note 5) Medium Power mode
		—	270	430	μA	3.0	
		—	320	500	μA	5.0	
D015		—	2.0	3.2	mA	3.0	FOSC = 32 MHz EC Oscillator High-Power mode
		—	2.3	3.9	mA	3.6	
D015		—	2.0	3.2	mA	3.0	FOSC = 32 MHz EC Oscillator High-Power mode (Note 5)
		—	2.2	3.9	mA	5.0	
D016		—	3.0	11	μA	1.8	FOSC = 32 kHz, LFINTOSC mode (Note 4) -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C
		—	5.0	13	μA	3.0	
D016		—	24	38	μA	1.8	FOSC = 32 kHz, LFINTOSC mode (Note 4, 5) -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C
		—	30	43	μA	3.0	
		—	32	48	μA	5.0	

Note 1: The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active operation mode are: OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD; $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ = VDD; WDT disabled.

2: The supply current is mainly a function of the operating voltage and frequency. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.

3: For RC oscillator configurations, current through REXT is not included. The current through the resistor can be extended by the formula IR = VDD/2REXT (mA) with REXT in kΩ.

4: FVR and BOR are disabled.

5: 0.1 μF capacitor on VCAP (RF0).

6: 8 MHz crystal oscillator with 4x PLL enabled.

30.2 DC Characteristics: PIC16F/LF1946/47-I/E (Industrial, Extended) (Continued)

PIC16LF1946/47		Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended					
PIC16F1946/47		**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended					
Param No.	**Device Characteristics**	**Min.**	**Typ†**	**Max.**	**Units**	**Conditions: VDD**	**Conditions: Note**
	Supply Current (IDD)(1, 2)						
D017		—	100	200	μA	1.8	FOSC = 500 kHz MFINTOSC mode
		—	120	230	μA	3.0	
D017		—	110	210	μA	1.8	FOSC = 500 kHz MFINTOSC mode (**Note 5**)
		—	120	240	μA	3.0	
		—	160	290	μA	5.0	
D018		—	0.5	1.1	mA	1.8	FOSC = 8 MHz HFINTOSC mode
		—	0.8	1.6	mA	3.0	
D018		—	0.5	1.2	mA	1.8	FOSC = 8 MHz HFINTOSC mode (**Note 5**)
		—	0.8	1.7	mA	3.0	
		—	0.9	1.8	mA	5.0	
D019		—	0.8	1.5	mA	1.8	FOSC = 16 MHz HFINTOSC mode
		—	1.2	2.3	mA	3.0	
D019		—	0.8	1.6	mA	1.8	FOSC = 16 MHz HFINTOSC mode (**Note 5**)
		—	1.2	2.4	mA	3.0	
		—	1.4	2.5	mA	5.0	
		—	2.1	3.6	mA	3.0	FOSC = 32 MHz HFINTOSC mode
		—	2.3	4.3	mA	3.6	
		—	2.1	3.7	mA	3.0	FOSC = 32 MHz HFINTOSC mode
		—	2.2	4.1	mA	5.0	
D020		—	150	260	μA	1.8	FOSC = 4 MHz EXTRC mode (**Note 3**)
		—	270	425	μA	3.0	
D020		—	170	280	μA	1.8	FOSC = 4 MHz EXTRC mode (**Note 3, Note 5**)
		—	290	450	μA	3.0	
		—	320	500	μA	5.0	
D021		—	2.1	3.6	mA	3.0	FOSC = 32 MHz HS Oscillator mode (**Note 6**)
		—	2.3	4.3	mA	3.6	
D021		—	2.1	3.7	mA	3.0	FOSC = 32 MHz HS Oscillator mode (**Note 5, Note 6**)
		—	2.2	4.1	mA	5.0	

Note 1: The test conditions for all IDD measurements in active operation mode are: OSC1 = external square wave, from rail-to-rail; all I/O pins tri-stated, pulled to VDD; $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ = VDD; WDT disabled.

2: The supply current is mainly a function of the operating voltage and frequency. Other factors, such as I/O pin loading and switching rate, oscillator type, internal code execution pattern and temperature, also have an impact on the current consumption.

3: For RC oscillator configurations, current through REXT is not included. The current through the resistor can be extended by the formula IR = VDD/2REXT (mA) with REXT in kΩ.

4: FVR and BOR are disabled.

5: 0.1 μF capacitor on VCAP (RF0).

6: 8 MHz crystal oscillator with 4x PLL enabled.

30.3 DC Characteristics: PIC16F/LF1946/47-I/E (Power-Down)

PIC16LF1946/47	**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended
PIC16F1946/47	**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended

Param No.	Device Characteristics	Min.	Typ†	Max. +85°C	Max. +125°C	Units	Conditions VDD	Conditions Note
	Power-down Base Current (IPD)(2)							
D023		—	0.06	1.0	8.0	μA	1.8	WDT, BOR, FVR, and T1OSC disabled, all Peripherals Inactive
		—	0.08	2.0	9.0	μA	3.0	
D023		—	21	55	63	μA	1.8	WDT, BOR, FVR, and T1OSC disabled, all Peripherals Inactive
		—	25	58	78	μA	3.0	
		—	27	60	88	μA	5.0	
D024		—	0.5	6.0	9.0	μA	1.8	LPWDT Current (**Note 1**)
		—	0.8	7.0	10	μA	3.0	
D024		—	23	57	65	μA	1.8	LPWDT Current (**Note 1**)
		—	26	59	80	μA	3.0	
		—	28	61	90	μA	5.0	
D025		—	15	28	30	μA	1.8	FVR current
		—	15	30	33	μA	3.0	
D025		—	38	96	100	μA	1.8	FVR current (**Note 4**)
		—	45	110	120	μA	3.0	
		—	90	140	155	μA	5.0	
D026		—	13	25	28	μA	3.0	BOR Current (**Note 1**)
D026		—	40	110	120	μA	3.0	BOR Current (**Note 1, Note 4**)
		—	87	140	155	μA	5.0	
D027		—	0.6	5.0	9.0	μA	1.8	T1OSC Current (**Note 1**)
		—	1.8	6.0	12	μA	3.0	
D027		—	22	57	60	μA	1.8	T1OSC Current (**Note 1**)
		—	29	62	70	μA	3.0	
		—	35	66	85	μA	5.0	

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 3.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

Note 1: The peripheral current is the sum of the base IDD or IPD and the additional current consumed when this peripheral is enabled. The peripheral Δ current can be determined by subtracting the base IDD or IPD current from this limit. Max values should be used when calculating total current consumption.

2: The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to VDD.

3: A/D oscillator source is FRC.

4: 0.1 μF capacitor on VCAP (RF0).

30.3 DC Characteristics: PIC16F/LF1946/47-I/E (Power-Down) (Continued)

PIC16LF1946/47			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended					
PIC16F1946/47			**Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)** Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended					
Param No.	**Device Characteristics**	**Min.**	**Typ†**	**Max. +85°C**	**Max. +125°C**	**Units**	**Conditions**	
							VDD	**Note**
	Power-down Base Current (IPD)(2)							
D028		—	0.1	5.0	8.0	μA	1.8	A/D Current (Note 1, Note 3), no conversion in progress
		—	0.1	6.0	9.0	μA	3.0	
D028		—	22	56	63	μA	1.8	A/D Current (Note 1, Note 3), no conversion in progress
		—	26	58	78	μA	3.0	
		—	27	61	88	μA	5.0	
D029		—	250	—	—	μA	1.8	A/D Current (Note 1, Note 3), conversion in progress
		—	250	—	—	μA	3.0	
D029		—	280	—	—	μA	1.8	A/D Current (Note 1, Note 3, Note 4), conversion in progress
		—	280	—	—	μA	3.0	
		—	280	—	—	μA	5.0	
D030		—	1	—	—	μA	3.0	LCD Bias Ladder, Low-power
		—	10	—	—	μA	3.0	LCD Bias Ladder, Medium-power
		—	75	—	—	μA	3.0	LCD Bias Ladder, High-power
D030		—	1	—	—	μA	5.0	LCD Bias Ladder, Low-power
		—	10	—	—	μA	5.0	LCD Bias Ladder, Medium-power
		—	75	—	—	μA	5.0	LCD Bias Ladder, High-power
D031		—	7.6	22	25	μA	1.8	Comparator, Low Power mode
		—	8.0	23	27	μA	3.0	
D031		—	24	55	65	μA	1.8	Comparator, Low Power mode
		—	26	58	80	μA	3.0	
		—	28	60	90	μA	5.0	
D032A*		—	2.0	—	—	μA	1.8	Cap Sense, Low-Power mode CPSRM=0
		—	3.0	—	—	μA	3.0	
D032A*		—	23	—	—	μA	1.8	Cap Sense, Low-Power mode CPSRM=0
		—	28	—	—	μA	3.0	
		—	30	—	—	μA	5.0	

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 3.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

Note 1: The peripheral current is the sum of the base IDD or IPD and the additional current consumed when this peripheral is enabled. The peripheral Δ current can be determined by subtracting the base IDD or IPD current from this limit. Max values should be used when calculating total current consumption.

2: The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to VDD.

3: A/D oscillator source is FRC.

4: 0.1 μF capacitor on VCAP (RF0).

30.3 DC Characteristics: PIC16F/LF1946/47-I/E (Power-Down) (Continued)

PIC16LF1946/47	Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended
PIC16F1946/47	Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended

Param No.	Device Characteristics	Min.	Typ†	Max. +85°C	Max. +125°C	Units	Conditions: VDD	Conditions: Note
	Power-down Base Current (IPD)(2)							
D032B*		—	80	—	—	μA	1.8	Cap Sense, Low Power mode, CPSRM = 1, includes FVR and DAC current
		—	90	—	—	μA	3.0	
D032B*		—	110	—	—	μA	1.8	Cap Sense, Low Power mode, CPSRM = 1, includes FVR and DAC current
		—	120	—	—	μA	3.0	
		—	130	—	—	μA	5.0	
D032C*		—	4	—	—	μA	1.8	Cap Sense, Medium Power mode, CPSRM = 0
		—	6	—	—	μA	3.0	
D032C*		—	25	—	—	μA	1.8	Cap Sense, Medium Power mode, CPSRM = 0
		—	30	—	—	μA	3.0	
		—	32	—	—	μA	5.0	
D032D*		—	90	—	—	μA	1.8	Cap Sense, Medium Power mode, CPSRM = 1, includes FVR and DAC current
		—	120	—	—	μA	3.0	
D032D*		—	120	—	—	μA	1.8	Cap Sense, Medium Power mode, CPSRM = 1, includes FVR and DAC current
		—	140	—	—	μA	3.0	
		—	150	—	—	μA	5.0	
D032E*		—	12	—	—	μA	1.8	Cap Sense, High Power mode, CPSRM = 0
		—	31	—	—	μA	3.0	
D032E*		—	33	—	—	μA	1.8	Cap Sense, High Power mode, CPSRM = 0
		—	52	—	—	μA	3.0	
		—	62	—	—	μA	5.0	
D032F*		—	120	—	—	μA	1.8	Cap Sense, High Power mode, CPSRM = 1, includes FVR and DAC current
		—	160	—	—	μA	3.0	
D032F*		—	150	—	—	μA	1.8	Cap Sense, High Power mode, CPSRM = 1, includes FVR and DAC current
		—	180	—	—	μA	3.0	
		—	190	—	—	μA	5.0	

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 3.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

Note 1: The peripheral current is the sum of the base IDD or IPD and the additional current consumed when this peripheral is enabled. The peripheral Δ current can be determined by subtracting the base IDD or IPD current from this limit. Max values should be used when calculating total current consumption.

2: The power-down current in Sleep mode does not depend on the oscillator type. Power-down current is measured with the part in Sleep mode, with all I/O pins in high-impedance state and tied to VDD.

3: A/D oscillator source is FRC.

4: 0.1 μF capacitor on VCAP (RF0).

30.4 DC Characteristics: PIC16F/LF1946/47-I/E

DC CHARACTERISTICS			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended				
Param No.	**Sym.**	**Characteristic**	**Min.**	**Typ†**	**Max.**	**Units**	**Conditions**
	VIL	**Input Low Voltage**					
		I/O PORT:					
D032		with TTL buffer	—	—	0.8	V	4.5V ≤ VDD ≤ 5.5V
D032A			—	—	0.15 VDD	V	1.8V ≤ VDD ≤ 4.5V
D033		with Schmitt Trigger buffer	—	—	0.2 VDD	V	2.0V ≤ VDD ≤ 5.5V
		with I²C™ levels	—	—	0.3 VDD	V	
		with SMBus levels	—	—	0.8	V	2.7V ≤ VDD ≤ 5.5V
D034		$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$, OSC1 (RC mode)(1)	—	—	0.2 VDD	V	
D034A		OSC1 (HS mode)	—	—	0.3 VDD	V	
	VIL	**Input Low Voltage**					
		I/O PORT:					
D032		with TTL buffer	—	—	0.8	V	4.5V ≤ VDD ≤ 5.5V
D032A			—	—	0.15 VDD	V	1.8V ≤ VDD ≤ 4.5V
	VIH	**Input High Voltage**					
		I/O ports:					
D040		with TTL buffer	2.0	—	—	V	4.5V ≤ VDD ≤ 5.5V
D040A			0.25 VDD + 0.8	—	—	V	1.8V ≤ VDD ≤ 4.5V
D041		with Schmitt Trigger buffer	0.8 VDD	—	—	V	2.0V ≤ VDD ≤ 5.5V
		with I²C™ levels	0.7 VDD	—	—	V	
		with SMBus levels	2.1	—	—	V	2.7V ≤ VDD ≤ 5.5V
D042		$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$	0.8 VDD	—	—	V	
D043A		OSC1 (HS mode)	0.7 VDD	—	—	V	
D043B		OSC1 (RC mode)	0.9 VDD	—	—	V	(Note 1) VDD > 2.0V
	IIL	**Input Leakage Current(2)**					
D060		I/O ports	—	± 5 ± 5	± 125 ± 1000	nA nA	VSS ≤ VPIN ≤ VDD, Pin at high-impedance @ 85°C 125°C
D061		$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$(3)	—	± 50	± 200	nA	VSS ≤ VPIN ≤ VDD @ 85°C
	IPUR	**Weak Pull-up Current**					
D070*			25 25	100 140	200 300	μA	VDD = 3.3V, VPIN = VSS VDD = 5.0V, VPIN = VSS
	VOL	**Output Low Voltage(4)**					
D080		I/O ports	—	—	0.6	V	IOL = 8mA, VDD = 5V IOL = 6mA, VDD = 3.3V IOL = 1.8mA, VDD = 1.8V
	VOH	**Output High Voltage(4)**					
D090		I/O ports	VDD - 0.7	—	—	V	IOH = 3.5mA, VDD = 5V IOH = 3mA, VDD = 3.3V IOH = 1mA, VDD = 1.8V

Legend: TBD = To Be Determined

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in “Typ” column is at 3.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

Note 1: In RC oscillator configuration, the OSC1/CLKIN pin is a Schmitt Trigger input. It is not recommended to use an external clock in RC mode.

2: Negative current is defined as current sourced by the pin.

3: The leakage current on the $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ pin is strongly dependent on the applied voltage level. The specified levels represent normal operating conditions. Higher leakage current may be measured at different input voltages.

4: Including OSC2 in CLKOUT mode.

30.4 DC Characteristics: PIC16F/LF1946/47-I/E (Continued)

DC CHARACTERISTICS			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C for industrial -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C for extended				
Param No.	Sym.	Characteristic	Min.	Typ†	Max.	Units	Conditions
		Capacitive Loading Specs on Output Pins					
D101*	COSC2	OSC2 pin	—	—	15	pF	In XT, HS and LP modes when external clock is used to drive OSC1
D101A*	CIO	All I/O pins	—	—	50	pF	
		VCAP Capacitor Charging					
D102		Charging current	—	200	—	μA	
D102A		Source/sink capability when charging complete	—	0.0	—	mA	

Legend: TBD = To Be Determined

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in “Typ” column is at 3.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

Note 1: In RC oscillator configuration, the OSC1/CLKIN pin is a Schmitt Trigger input. It is not recommended to use an external clock in RC mode.

2: Negative current is defined as current sourced by the pin.

3: The leakage current on the $\overline{MCLR}$ pin is strongly dependent on the applied voltage level. The specified levels represent normal operating conditions. Higher leakage current may be measured at different input voltages.

4: Including OSC2 in CLKOUT mode.

30.5 Memory Programming Requirements

DC CHARACTERISTICS			Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C				
Param No.	**Sym.**	**Characteristic**	**Min.**	**Typ†**	**Max.**	**Units**	**Conditions**
		Program Memory Programming Specifications					
D110	VIHH	Voltage on $\overline{MCLR}$/VPP/RE3 pin	8.0	—	9.0	V	(Note 3, Note 4)
D111	IDDP	Supply Current during Programming	—	—	10	mA	
D112		VDD for Bulk Erase	2.7	—	VDD max.	V	
D113	VPEW	VDD for Write or Row Erase	VDD min.	—	VDD max.	V	
D114	IPPPGM	Current on $\overline{MCLR}$/VPP during Erase/Write	—	—	1.0	mA	
D115	IDDPGM	Current on VDD during Erase/Write	—	—	5.0	mA	
		Data EEPROM Memory					
D116	ED	Byte Endurance	100K	—	—	E/W	-40°C to +85°C
D117	VDRW	VDD for Read/Write	VDD min.	—	VDD max.	V	
D118	TDEW	Erase/Write Cycle Time	—	4.0	5.0	ms	
D119	TRETD	Characteristic Retention	—	40	—	Year	-40°C to +55°C Provided no other specifications are violated
D120	TREF	Number of Total Erase/Write Cycles before Refresh(2)	1M	10M	—	E/W	-40°C to +85°C
		Program Flash Memory					
D121	EP	Cell Endurance	10K	—	—	E/W	-40°C to +85°C (Note 1)
D122	VPR	VDD for Read	VDD min.	—	VDD max.	V	
D123	TIW	Self-timed Write Cycle Time	—	2	2.5	ms	
D124	TRETD	Characteristic Retention	—	40	—	Year	Provided no other specifications are violated

† Data in "Typ" column is at 3.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

Note 1: Self-write and Block Erase.

2: Refer to **Section 11.2 "Using the Data EEPROM"** for a more detailed discussion on data EEPROM endurance.

3: Required only if single-supply programming is disabled.

4: The MPLAB ICD 2 does not support variable VPP output. Circuitry to limit the ICD 2 VPP voltage must be placed between the ICD 2 and target system when programming or debugging with the ICD 2.

30.6 Thermal Considerations

Param No.	Sym.	Characteristic	Typ.	Units	Conditions
Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating temperature -40°C ≤ T_A ≤ +125°C					
TH01	θ_{JA}	Thermal Resistance Junction to Ambient	48.3	°C/W	64-pin TQFP package
			28	°C/W	64-pin QFN package
TH02	θ_{JC}	Thermal Resistance Junction to Case	26.1	°C/W	64-pin TQFP package
			0.24	°C/W	64-pin QFN package
TH03	T_{JMAX}	Maximum Junction Temperature	150	°C	
TH04	PD	Power Dissipation	—	W	PD = $P_{INTERNAL}$ + $P_{I/O}$
TH05	$P_{INTERNAL}$	Internal Power Dissipation	—	W	$P_{INTERNAL}$ = I_{DD} x V_{DD}(1)
TH06	$P_{I/O}$	I/O Power Dissipation	—	W	$P_{I/O} = \Sigma (I_{OL} * V_{OL}) + \Sigma (I_{OH} * (V_{DD} - V_{OH}))$
TH07	P_{DER}	Derated Power	—	W	$P_{DER} = PD_{MAX} (T_J - T_A)/\theta_{JA}$(2)

Note 1: I_{DD} is current to run the chip alone without driving any load on the output pins.
2: T_A = Ambient Temperature
3: T_J = Junction Temperature

30.7 Timing Parameter Symbology

The timing parameter symbols have been created with one of the following formats:

1. TppS2ppS
2. TppS

T			
F	Frequency	T	Time

Lowercase letters (pp) and their meanings:

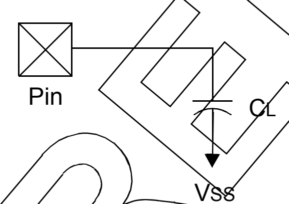
pp			
cc	CCP1	osc	OSC1
ck	CLKOUT	rd	$\overline{\text{RD}}$
cs	$\overline{\text{CS}}$	rw	$\overline{\text{RD}}$ or $\overline{\text{WR}}$
di	SDI	sc	SCK
do	SDO	ss	$\overline{\text{SS}}$
dt	Data in	t0	T0CKI
io	I/O PORT	t1	T1CKI
mc	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$	wr	$\overline{\text{WR}}$

Uppercase letters and their meanings:

S			
F	Fall	P	Period
H	High	R	Rise
I	Invalid (High-impedance)	V	Valid
L	Low	Z	High-impedance

FIGURE 30-5: LOAD CONDITIONS

Load Condition



Legend: C_L = 50 pF for all pins, 15 pF for OSC2 output

30.8 AC Characteristics: PIC16F/LF1946/47-I/E

FIGURE 30-6: CLOCK TIMING

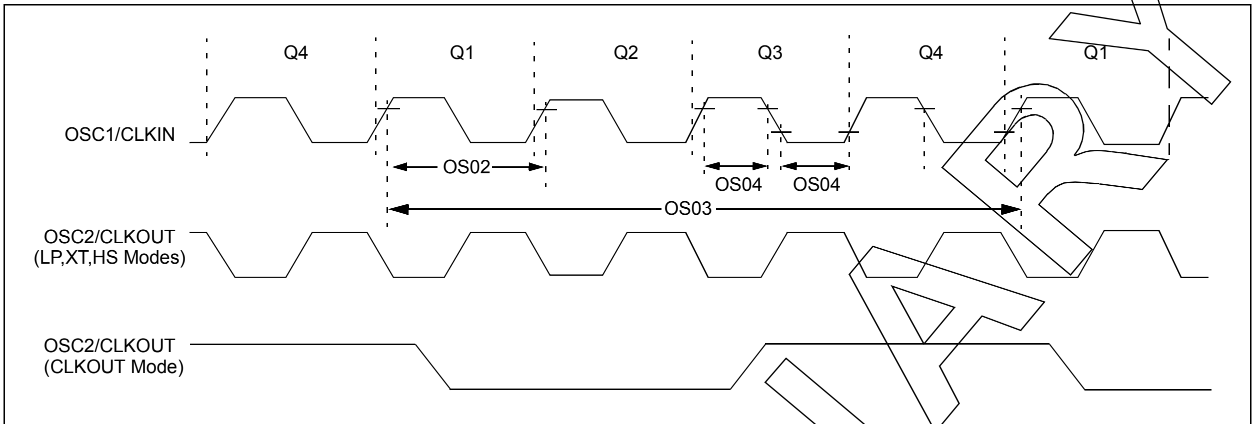


TABLE 30-1: CLOCK OSCILLATOR TIMING REQUIREMENTS

Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)
Operating temperature -40°C ≤ T_A ≤ +125°C

Param No.	Sym.	Characteristic	Min.	Typ†	Max.	Units	Conditions
OS01	F_{OSC}	External CLKIN Frequency(1)	DC	—	0.5	MHz	EC Oscillator mode (low)
			DC	—	4	MHz	EC Oscillator mode (medium)
			DC	—	20	MHz	EC Oscillator mode (high)
		Oscillator Frequency(1)	—	32.768	—	kHz	LP Oscillator mode
			0.1	—	4	MHz	XT Oscillator mode
			1	—	4	MHz	HS Oscillator mode
			1	—	20	MHz	HS Oscillator mode, V_{DD} > 2.7V
			DC	—	4	MHz	RC Oscillator mode, V_{DD} > 2.0V
OS02	T_{OSC}	External CLKIN Period(1)	27	—	∞	μs	LP Oscillator mode
			250	—	∞	ns	XT Oscillator mode
			50	—	∞	ns	HS Oscillator mode
			50	—	∞	ns	EC Oscillator mode
		Oscillator Period(1)	—	30.5	—	μs	LP Oscillator mode
			250	—	10,000	ns	XT Oscillator mode
			50	—	1,000	ns	HS Oscillator mode
			250	—	—	ns	RC Oscillator mode
OS03	T_{CY}	Instruction Cycle Time(1)	200	T_{CY}	DC	ns	T_{CY} = 4/F_{OSC}
OS04*	T_{osH}, T_{osL}	External CLKIN High, External CLKIN Low	2	—	—	μs	LP oscillator
			100	—	—	ns	XT oscillator
			20	—	—	ns	HS oscillator
OS05*	T_{osR}, T_{osF}	External CLKIN Rise, External CLKIN Fall	0	—	∞	ns	LP oscillator
			0	—	∞	ns	XT oscillator
			0	—	∞	ns	HS oscillator

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in “Typ” column is at 3.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

Note 1: Instruction cycle period (T_{CY}) equals four times the input oscillator time base period. All specified values are based on characterization data for that particular oscillator type under standard operating conditions with the device executing code. Exceeding these specified limits may result in an unstable oscillator operation and/or higher than expected current consumption. All devices are tested to operate at “min” values with an external clock applied to OSC1 pin. When an external clock input is used, the “max” cycle time limit is “DC” (no clock) for all devices.

TABLE 30-2: OSCILLATOR PARAMETERS

Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)
Operating Temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C

Param No.	Sym.	Characteristic	Freq. Tolerance	Min.	Typ†	Max.	Units	Conditions
OS08	HFOSC	Internal Calibrated HFINTOSC Frequency(2)	±2%	—	16.0	—	MHz	0°C ≤ TA ≤ +60°C, VDD ≥ 2.5V
			±3%	—	16.0	—	MHz	60°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C, VDD ≥ 2.5V
			±5%	—	16.0	—	MHz	-40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C
OS08A	MFOSC	Internal Calibrated MFINTOSC Frequency(2)	±2%	—	500	—	kHz	0°C ≤ TA ≤ +60°C, VDD ≥ 2.5V
			±3%	—	500	—	kHz	60°C ≤ TA ≤ +85°C, VDD ≥ 2.5V
			±5%	—	500	—	kHz	-40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C
OS09	LFOSC	Internal LFINTOSC Frequency	—	—	31	—	kHz	-40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C
OS10*	TIOSC ST	HFINTOSC Wake-up from Sleep Start-up Time	—	—	3.2	8	μs	
		MFINTOSC Wake-up from Sleep Start-up Time	—	—	24	35	μs	

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.
† Data in "Typ" column is at 3.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

Note 1: Instruction cycle period (TCY) equals four times the input oscillator time base period. All specified values are based on characterization data for that particular oscillator type under standard operating conditions with the device executing code. Exceeding these specified limits may result in an unstable oscillator operation and/or higher than expected current consumption. All devices are tested to operate at "min" values with an external clock applied to the OSC1 pin. When an external clock input is used, the "max" cycle time limit is "DC" (no clock) for all devices.

2: To ensure these oscillator frequency tolerances, VDD and VSS must be capacitively decoupled as close to the device as possible. 0.1 μF and 0.01 μF values in parallel are recommended.

3: By design.

TABLE 30-3: PLL CLOCK TIMING SPECIFICATIONS (VDD = 2.7V TO 5.5V)

Param No.	Sym.	Characteristic	Min.	Typ†	Max.	Units	Conditions
F10	FOSC	Oscillator Frequency Range	4	—	8	MHz	
F11	FSYS	On-Chip VCO System Frequency	16	—	32	MHz	
F12	TRC	PLL Start-up Time (Lock Time)	—	—	2	ms	
F13*	ΔCLK	CLKOUT Stability (Jitter)	-0.25%	—	+0.25%	%	

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.
† Data in "Typ" column is at 5V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

FIGURE 30-7: CLKOUT AND I/O TIMING

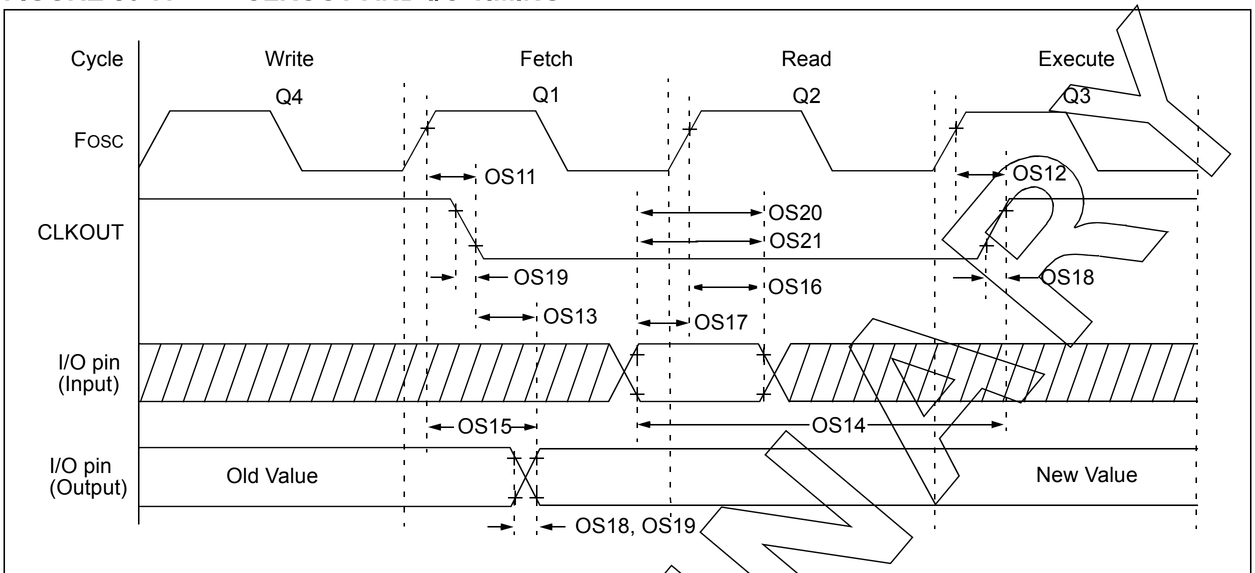


TABLE 30-4: CLKOUT AND I/O TIMING PARAMETERS

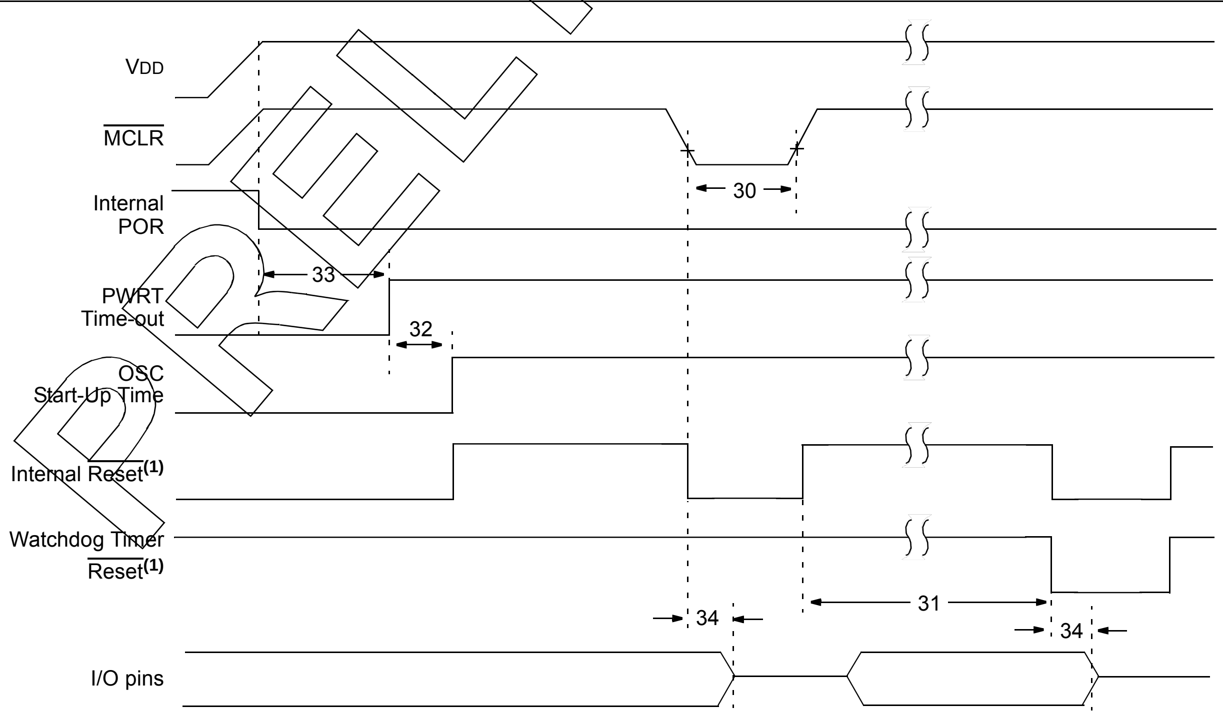
Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating Temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C							
Param No.	**Sym.**	**Characteristic**	**Min.**	**Typ†**	**Max.**	**Units**	**Conditions**
OS11	TosH2ckL	FOSC↑ to CLKOUT↓ (1)	—	—	70	ns	VDD = 3.3-5.0V
OS12	TosH2ckH	FOSC↑ to CLKOUT↑ (1)	—	—	72	ns	VDD = 3.3-5.0V
OS13	TckL2ioV	CLKOUT↓ to Port out valid(1)	—	—	20	ns	
OS14	TioV2ckH	Port input valid before CLKOUT↑(1)	TOSC + 200 ns	—	—	ns	
OS15	TosH2ioV	Fosc↑ (Q1 cycle) to Port out valid	—	50	70*	ns	VDD = 3.3-5.0V
OS16	TosH2ioI	Fosc↑ (Q2 cycle) to Port input invalid (I/O in hold time)	50	—	—	ns	VDD = 3.3-5.0V
OS17	TioV2osH	Port input valid to Fosc↑ (Q2 cycle) (I/O in setup time)	20	—	—	ns	
OS18	TioR	Port output rise time	— —	40 15	72 32	ns	VDD = 1.8V VDD = 3.3-5.0V
OS19	TioF	Port output fall time	— —	28 15	55 30	ns	VDD = 1.8V VDD = 3.3-5.0V
OS20*	Tinp	INT pin input high or low time	25	—	—	ns	
OS21*	Tioc	Interrupt-on-change new input level time	25	—	—	ns	

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 3.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated.

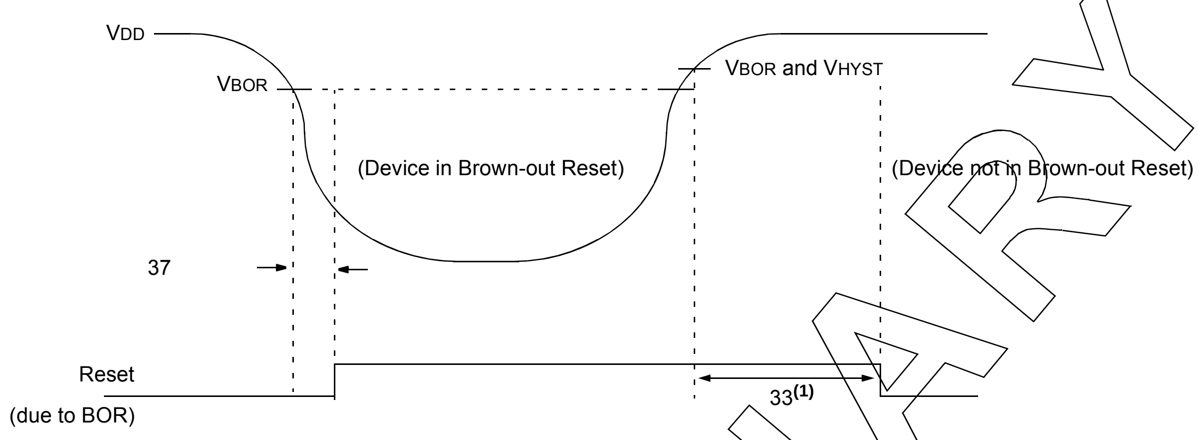
Note 1: Measurements are taken in RC mode where CLKOUT output is 4 x TOSC.

FIGURE 30-8: RESET, WATCHDOG TIMER, OSCILLATOR START-UP TIMER AND POWER-UP TIMER TIMING



Note 1: Asserted low.

FIGURE 30-9: BROWN-OUT RESET TIMING AND CHARACTERISTICS



Note 1: 64 ms delay only if $\overline{PWRTE}$ bit in the Configuration Word register is programmed to '0'.
2 ms delay if $\overline{PWRTE}$ = 0 and VREGEN = 1.

TABLE 30-5: RESET, WATCHDOG TIMER, OSCILLATOR START-UP TIMER, POWER-UP TIMER AND BROWN-OUT RESET PARAMETERS

Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)
Operating Temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C

Param No.	Sym.	Characteristic	Min.	Typ†	Max.	Units	Conditions
30	TMCL	$\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Pulse Width (low)	2	—	—	μs	
31	TWDTLP	Watchdog Timer Time-out Period	10	16	27	ms	VDD = 3.3V-5V, 1:16 Prescaler used
32	TOST	Oscillator Start-up Timer Period(1), (2)	—	1024	—	Tosc	(Note 3)
33*	TPWRT	Power-up Timer Period, $\overline{\text{PWRTE}}$ = 0	40	65	140	ms	
34*	TIOZ	I/O high-impedance from $\overline{\text{MCLR}}$ Low or Watchdog Timer Reset	—	—	2.0	μs	
35	VBOR	Brown-out Reset Voltage	2.38 1.80	2.5 1.9	2.73 2.11	V	BORV=2.5V BORV=1.9V
36*	VHYST	Brown-out Reset Hysteresis	0	25	50	mV	-40°C to +85°C
37*	TBORDC	Brown-out Reset DC Response Time	1	3	35	μs	VDD ≤ VBOR

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 3.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

Note 1: Instruction cycle period (TCY) equals four times the input oscillator time base period. All specified values are based on characterization data for that particular oscillator type under standard operating conditions with the device executing code. Exceeding these specified limits may result in an unstable oscillator operation and/or higher than expected current consumption. All devices are tested to operate at "min" values with an external clock applied to the OSC1 pin. When an external clock input is used, the "max" cycle time limit is "DC" (no clock) for all devices.

2: By design.

3: Period of the slower clock.

4: To ensure these voltage tolerances, VDD and VSS must be capacitively decoupled as close to the device as possible. 0.1 μF and 0.01 μF values in parallel are recommended.

FIGURE 30-10: TIMER0 AND TIMER1 EXTERNAL CLOCK TIMINGS

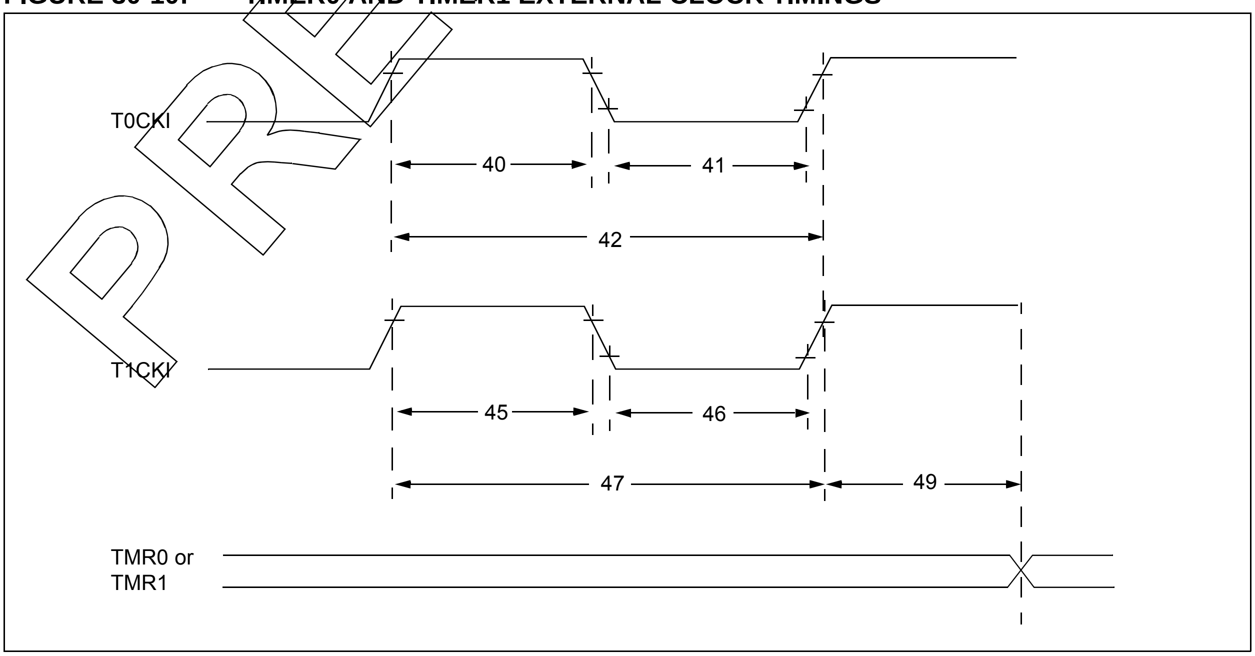


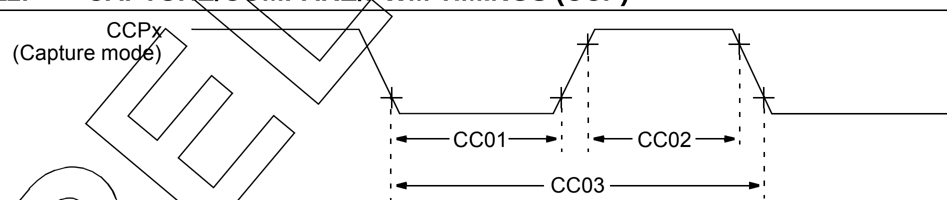
TABLE 30-6: TIMER0 AND TIMER1 EXTERNAL CLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)
Operating Temperature -40°C ≤ T_A ≤ +125°C

Param No.	Sym.	Characteristic		Min.	Typ†	Max.	Units	Conditions
40*	T_{T0H}	T0CKI High Pulse Width	No Prescaler	0.5 T_{CY} + 20	—	—	ns	
			With Prescaler	10	—	—	ns	
41*	T_{T0L}	T0CKI Low Pulse Width	No Prescaler	0.5 T_{CY} + 20	—	—	ns	
			With Prescaler	10	—	—	ns	
42*	T_{T0P}	T0CKI Period		Greater of: 20 or $\frac{T_{CY} + 40}{N}$	—	—	ns	N = prescale value (2, 4, ..., 256)
45*	T_{T1H}	T1CKI High Time	Synchronous, No Prescaler	0.5 T_{CY} + 20	—	—	ns	
			Synchronous, with Prescaler	15	—	—	ns	
			Asynchronous	30	—	—	ns	
46*	T_{T1L}	T1CKI Low Time	Synchronous, No Prescaler	0.5 T_{CY} + 20	—	—	ns	
			Synchronous, with Prescaler	15	—	—	ns	
			Asynchronous	30	—	—	ns	
47*	T_{T1P}	T1CKI Input Period	Synchronous	Greater of: 30 or $\frac{T_{CY} + 40}{N}$	—	—	ns	N = prescale value (1, 2, 4, 8)
			Asynchronous	60	—	—	ns	
48	F_{T1}	Timer1 Oscillator Input Frequency Range (oscillator enabled by setting bit T1OSCEN)		32.4	32.768	33.1	kHz	
49*	$T_{CKEZTMR1}$	Delay from External Clock Edge to Timer Increment		2 T_{OSC}	—	7 T_{OSC}	—	Timers in Sync mode

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.
† Data in "Typ" column is at 3.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

FIGURE 30-11: CAPTURE/COMPARE/PWM TIMINGS (CCP)



Note: Refer to Figure 30-5 for load conditions.

TABLE 30-7: CAPTURE/COMPARE/PWM REQUIREMENTS (CCP)

Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)
Operating Temperature -40°C ≤ T_A ≤ +125°C

Param No.	Sym.	Characteristic		Min.	Typ†	Max.	Units	Conditions
CC01*	TccL	CCPx Input Low Time	No Prescaler	0.5T_{CY} + 20	—	—	ns	
			With Prescaler	20	—	—	ns	
CC02*	TccH	CCPx Input High Time	No Prescaler	0.5T_{CY} + 20	—	—	ns	
			With Prescaler	20	—	—	ns	
CC03*	TccP	CCPx Input Period		$\frac{3T_{CY} + 40}{N}$	—	—	ns	N = prescale value (1, 4 or 16)

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.
† Data in "Typ" column is at 3.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

TABLE 30-8: PIC16F/LF1946/47 A/D CONVERTER (ADC) CHARACTERISTICS:

Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)
Operating temperature TA = 25°C

Param No.	Sym.	Characteristic	Min.	Typ†	Max.	Units	Conditions
AD01	NR	Resolution	—	—	10	bit	
AD02	EIL	Integral Error	—	—	±1.7	LSb	VREF = 3.0V
AD03	EDL	Differential Error	—	—	±1	LSb	No missing codes VREF = 3.0V
AD04	EOFF	Offset Error	—	—	±2.5	LSb	VREF = 3.0V
AD05	EGN	Gain Error	—	—	±2.0	LSb	VREF = 3.0V
AD06	VREF	Reference Voltage(3)	1.8	—	VDD	V	VREF = (VREF+ minus VREF-) (Note 5)
AD07	VAIN	Full-Scale Range	VSS	—	VREF	V	
AD08	ZAIN	Recommended Impedance of Analog Voltage Source	—	—	10	kΩ	Can go higher if external 0.01μF capacitor is present on input pin.

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.
† Data in “Typ” column is at 3.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

Note 1: Total Absolute Error includes integral, differential, offset and gain errors.
2: The A/D conversion result never decreases with an increase in the input voltage and has no missing codes.
3: ADC VREF is from external VREF, VDD pin or FVR, whichever is selected as reference input.
4: When ADC is off, it will not consume any current other than leakage current. The power-down current specification includes any such leakage from the ADC module.
5: FVR voltage selected must be 2.048V or 4.096V.

TABLE 30-9: PIC16F/LF1946/47 A/D CONVERSION REQUIREMENTS

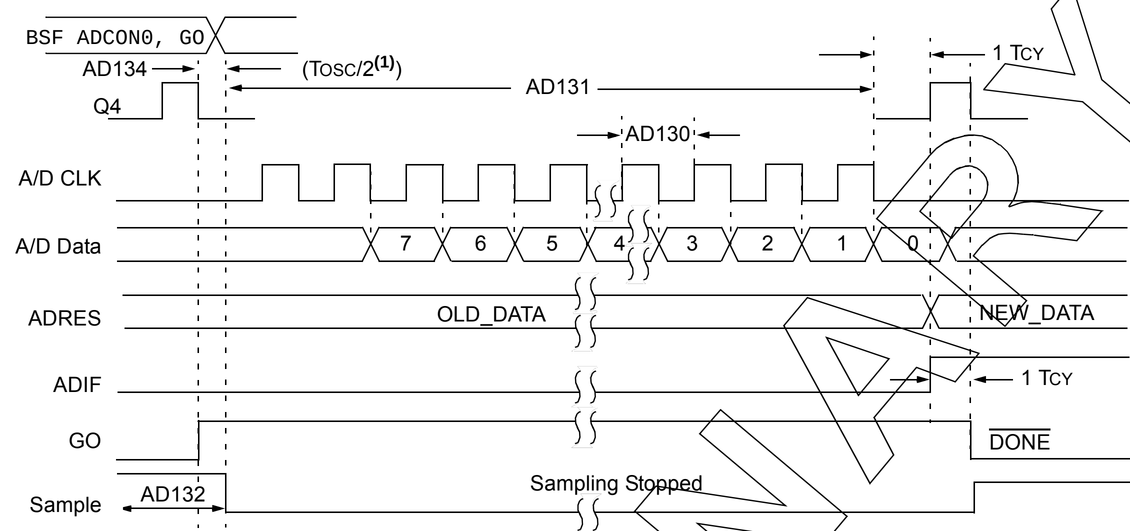
Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated)
Operating temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C

Param No.	Sym.	Characteristic	Min.	Typ†	Max.	Units	Conditions
AD130*	TAD	A/D Clock Period	1.0	—	9.0	μs	TOSC-based
		A/D Internal RC Oscillator Period	1.0	2.5	6.0	μs	ADCS<1:0> = 11 (ADRC mode)
AD131	TCNV	Conversion Time (not including Acquisition Time)(1)	—	11	—	TAD	Set GO/DONE bit to conversion complete
AD132*	TACQ	Acquisition Time	—	5.0	—	μs	

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.
† Data in “Typ” column is at 3.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

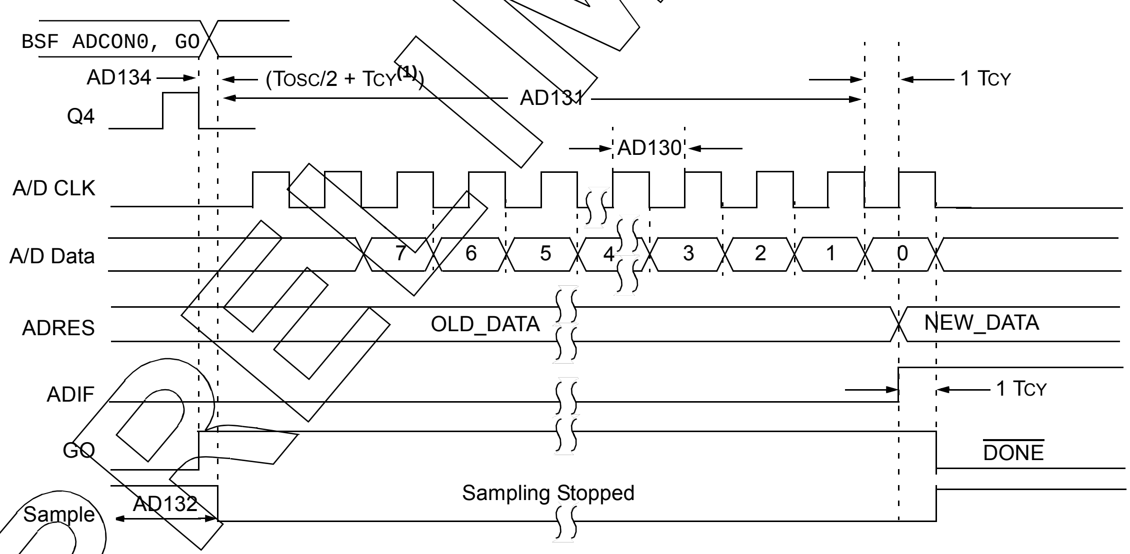
Note 1: The ADRES register may be read on the following TCY cycle.

FIGURE 30-12: PIC16F/LF1946/47 A/D CONVERSION TIMING (NORMAL MODE)



Note 1: If the A/D clock source is selected as RC, a time of TCY is added before the A/D clock starts. This allows the SLEEP instruction to be executed.

FIGURE 30-13: PIC16F/LF1946/47 A/D CONVERSION TIMING (SLEEP MODE)



Note 1: If the A/D clock source is selected as RC, a time of TCY is added before the A/D clock starts. This allows the SLEEP instruction to be executed.

TABLE 30-10: COMPARATOR SPECIFICATIONS

Operating Conditions: 1.8V < VDD < 5.5V, -40°C < TA < +125°C (unless otherwise stated).							
Param No.	**Sym.**	**Characteristics**	**Min.**	**Typ.**	**Max.**	**Units**	**Comments**
CM01	VIOFF	Input Offset Voltage(3)	—	±7.5	±60	mV	High-Power mode
CM02	VICM	Input Common Mode Voltage	0	—	VDD	V	
CM03	CMRR	Common Mode Rejection Ratio	—	50	—	dB	
CM04	TRESP	Response Time	—	150	400	ns	(Note 1)
CM04A	TRESP	Response Time Rising Edge	—	400	800	ns	High-Power mode
CM04B		Response Time Falling Edge	—	200	400	ns	High-Power mode
CM04C		Response Time Rising Edge	—	1200	—	ns	Low-Power mode
CM04D		Response Time Falling Edge	—	550	—	ns	Low-Power mode
CM05	TMC2OV	Comparator Mode Change to Output Valid*	—	—	10	µs	
CM06	CHYSTER	Comparator Hysteresis	—	45	—	mV	(Note 2)

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

Note 1: Response time measured with one comparator input at VDD/2, while the other input transitions from VSS to VDD.

2: Comparator Hysteresis is available when the CxHYS bit of the CMxCON0 register is enabled.

3: High power only.

TABLE 30-11: DIGITAL-TO-ANALOG CONVERTER (DAC) SPECIFICATIONS

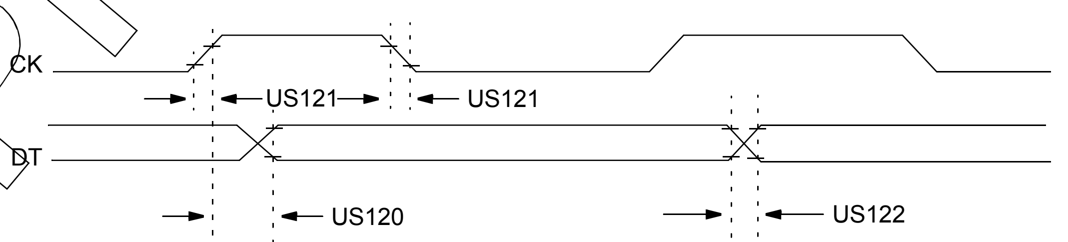
Operating Conditions: 2.5V < VDD < 5.5V, -40°C < TA < +85°C (unless otherwise stated).							
Param No.	**Sym.**	**Characteristics**	**Min.**	**Typ.**	**Max.**	**Units**	**Comments**
DAC01*	CLSB	Step Size	—	VDD/32	—	V	
DAC02*	CACC	Absolute Accuracy	—	—	± 1/2	LSb	
DAC03*	CR	Unit Resistor Value (R)	—	5K	—	Ω	
DAC04*	CST	Settling Time(1)	—	—	10	µs	

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

Legend: TBD = To Be Determined

Note 1: Settling time measured while DACR<4:0> transitions from '0000' to '1111'.

FIGURE 30-14: USART SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION (MASTER/SLAVE) TIMING

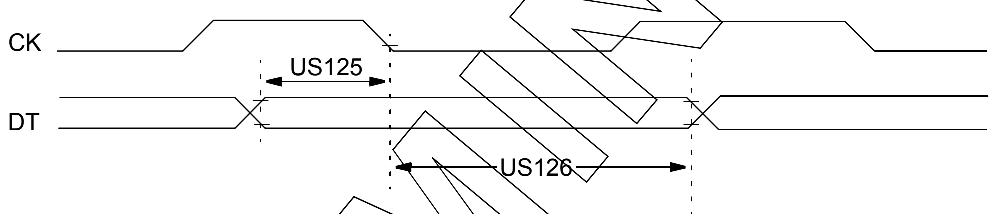


Note: Refer to Figure 30-5 for load conditions.

TABLE 30-12: USART SYNCHRONOUS TRANSMISSION REQUIREMENTS

Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating Temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C							
Param. No.	**Symbol**	**Characteristic**		**Min.**	**Max.**	**Units**	**Conditions**
US120	TCKH2DTV	SYNC XMIT (Master and Slave) Clock high to data-out valid	3.0-5.5V	—	80	ns	
			1.8-5.5V	—	100	ns	
US121	TCKRF	Clock out rise time and fall time (Master mode)	3.0-5.5V	—	45	ns	
			1.8-5.5V	—	50	ns	
US122	TDTRF	Data-out rise time and fall time	3.0-5.5V	—	45	ns	
			1.8-5.5V	—	50	ns	

FIGURE 30-15: USART SYNCHRONOUS RECEIVE (MASTER/SLAVE) TIMING

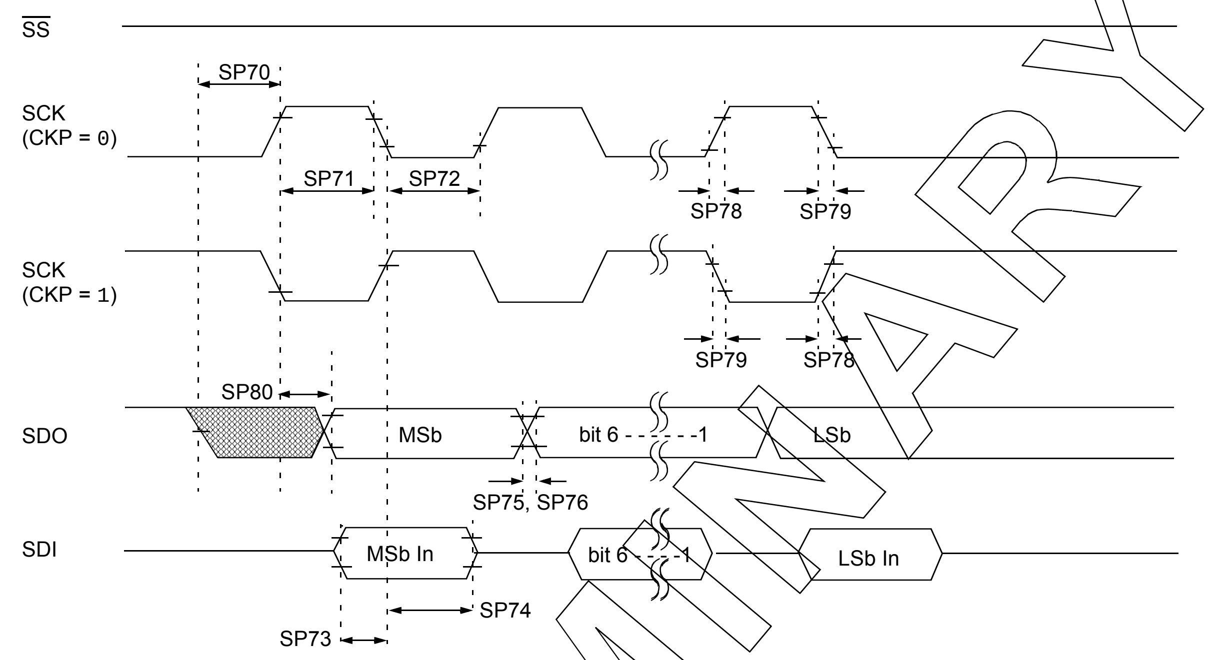


Note: Refer to Figure 30-5 for load conditions.

TABLE 30-13: USART SYNCHRONOUS RECEIVE REQUIREMENTS

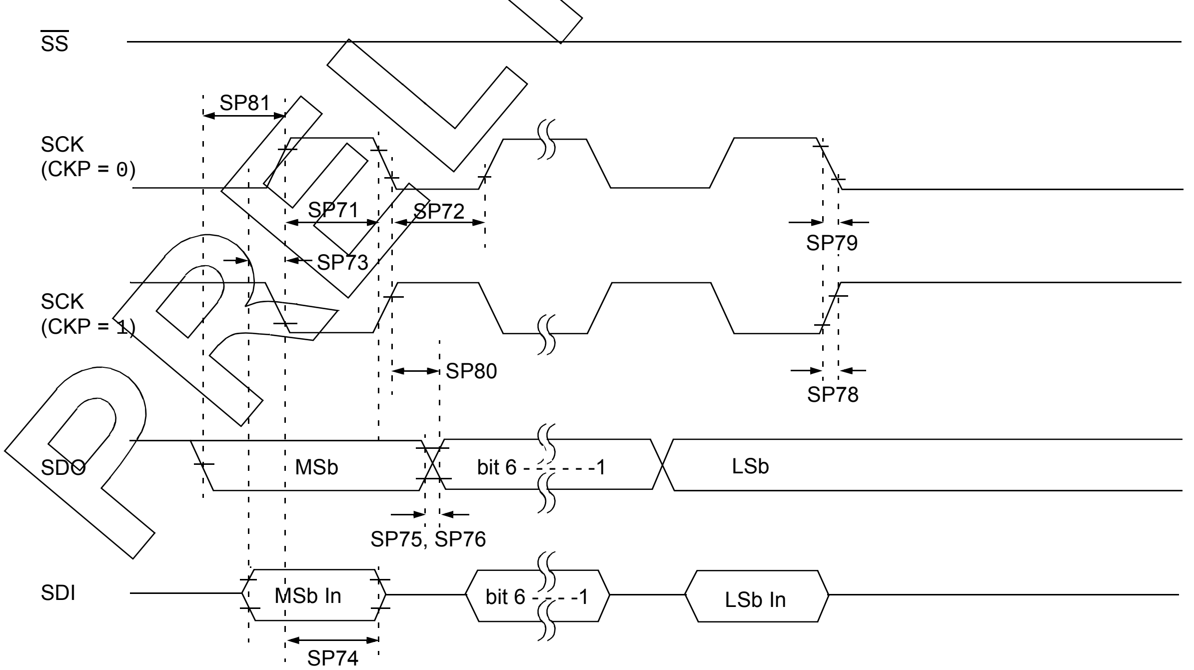
Standard Operating Conditions (unless otherwise stated) Operating Temperature -40°C ≤ TA ≤ +125°C						
Param. No.	**Symbol**	**Characteristic**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Units**	**Conditions**
US125	TDTV2CKL	SYNC RCV (Master and Slave) Data-hold before CK ↓ (DT hold time)	10	—	ns	
US126	TCKL2DTL	Data-hold after CK ↓ (DT hold time)	15	—	ns	

FIGURE 30-16: SPI MASTER MODE TIMING (CKE = 0, SMP = 0)



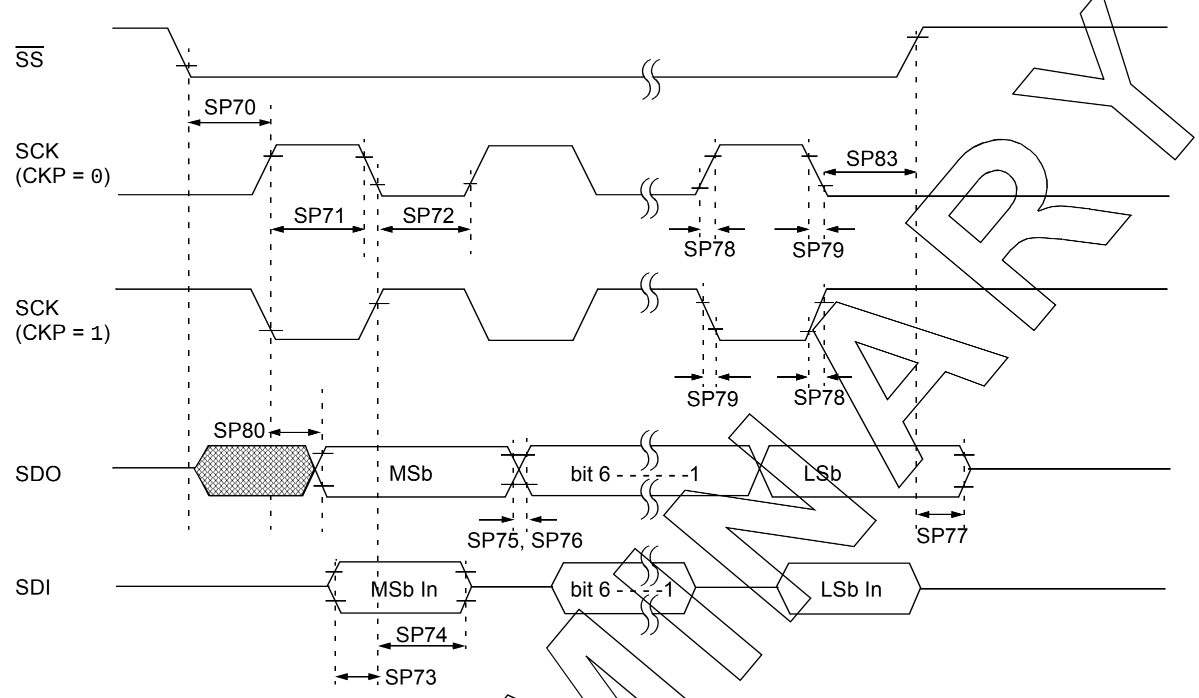
Note: Refer to Figure 30-5 for load conditions.

FIGURE 30-17: SPI MASTER MODE TIMING (CKE = 1, SMP = 1)



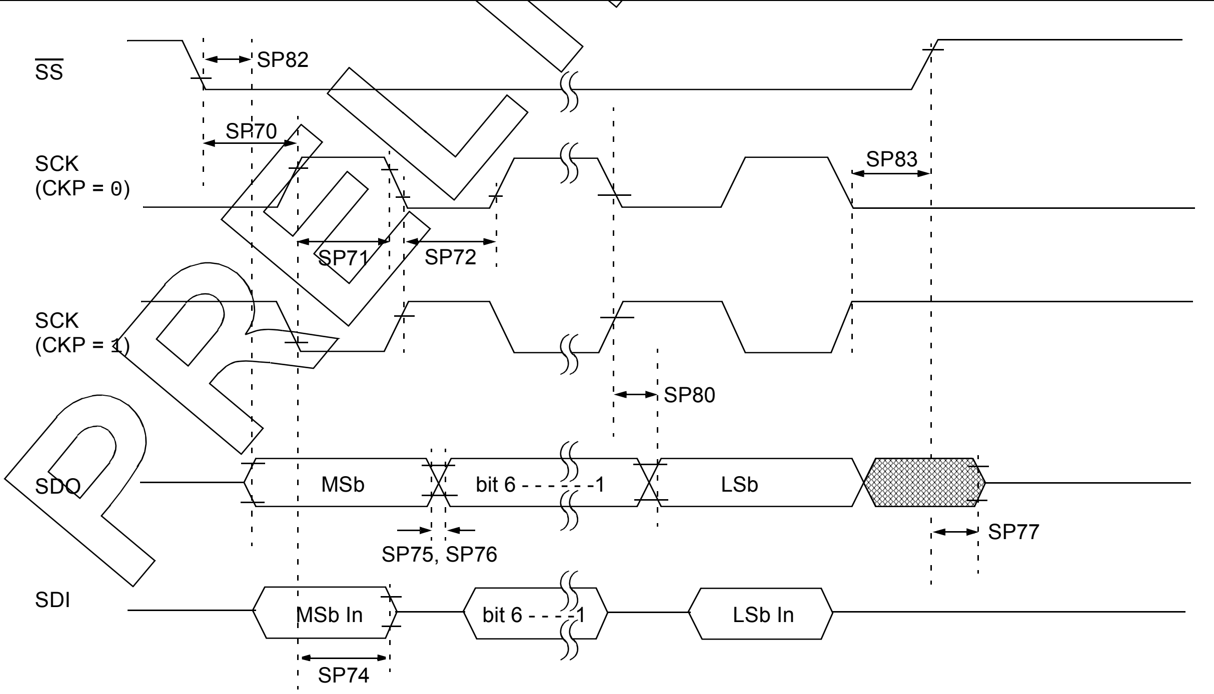
Note: Refer to Figure 30-5 for load conditions.

FIGURE 30-18: SPI SLAVE MODE TIMING (CKE = 0)



Note: Refer to Figure 30-5 for load conditions.

FIGURE 30-19: SPI SLAVE MODE TIMING (CKE = 1)



Note: Refer to Figure 30-5 for load conditions.

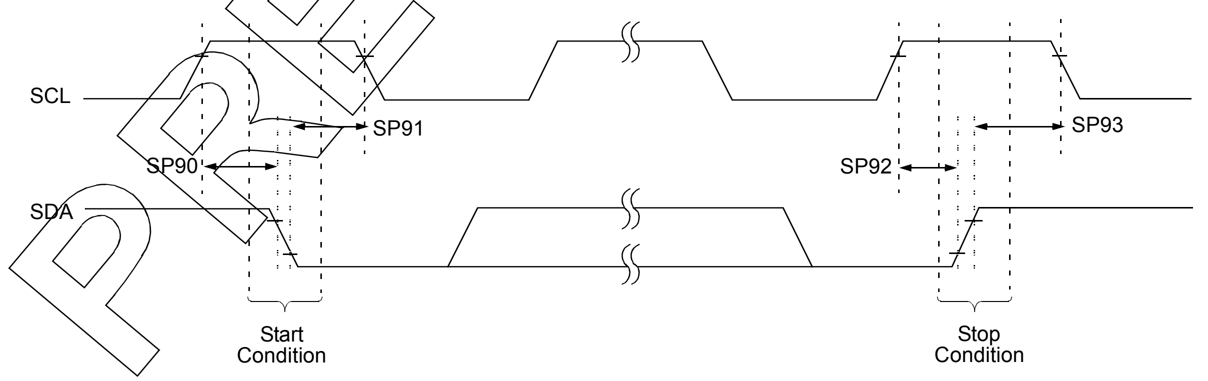
TABLE 30-14: SPI MODE REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min.	Typ†	Max.	Units	Conditions
SP70*	TssL2scH, TssL2scL	$\overline{SS}$↓ to SCK↓ or SCK↑ input		Tcy	—	—	ns	
SP71*	TscH	SCK input high time (Slave mode)		Tcy + 20	—	—	ns	
SP72*	TscL	SCK input low time (Slave mode)		Tcy + 20	—	—	ns	
SP73*	TdiV2scH, TdiV2scL	Setup time of SDI data input to SCK edge		100	—	—	ns	
SP74*	TscH2diL, TscL2diL	Hold time of SDI data input to SCK edge		100	—	—	ns	
SP75*	TdoR	SDO data output rise time	3.0-5.5V	—	10	25	ns	
			1.8-5.5V	—	25	50	ns	
SP76*	TdoF	SDO data output fall time		—	10	25	ns	
SP77*	TssH2doZ	$\overline{SS}$↑ to SDO output high-impedance		10	—	50	ns	
SP78*	TscR	SCK output rise time (Master mode)	3.0-5.5V	—	10	25	ns	
			1.8-5.5V	—	25	50	ns	
SP79*	TscF	SCK output fall time (Master mode)		—	10	25	ns	
SP80*	TscH2doV, TscL2doV	SDO data output valid after SCK edge	3.0-5.5V	—	—	50	ns	
			1.8-5.5V	—	—	145	ns	
SP81*	TdoV2scH, TdoV2scL	SDO data output setup to SCK edge		Tcy	—	—	ns	
SP82*	TssL2doV	SDO data output valid after $\overline{SS}$↓ edge		—	—	50	ns	
SP83*	TscH2ssH, TscL2ssH	$\overline{SS}$ ↑ after SCK edge		1.5Tcy + 40	—	—	ns	

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in "Typ" column is at 3.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

FIGURE 30-20: I²C™ BUS START/STOP BITS TIMING



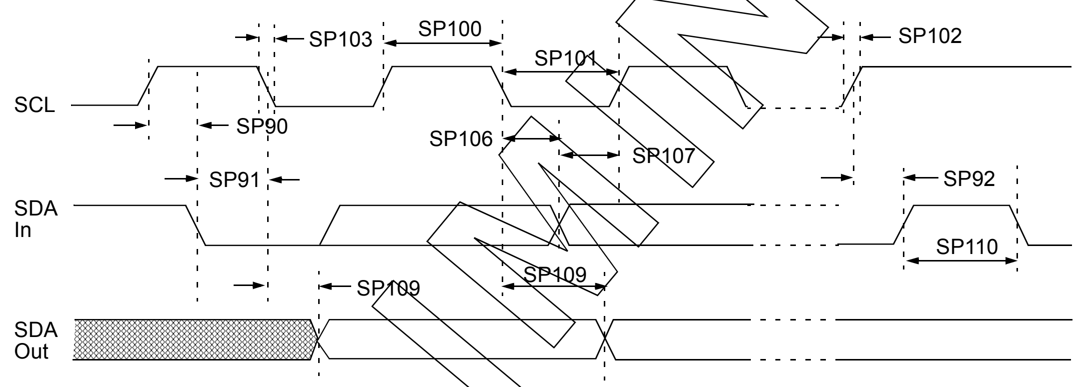
Note: Refer to Figure 30-5 for load conditions.

TABLE 30-15: I^{2}C™ BUS START/STOP BITS REQUIREMENTS

Param No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min.	Typ	Max.	Units	Conditions
SP90*	TSU:STA	Start condition	100 kHz mode	4700	—	—	ns	Only relevant for Repeated Start condition
		Setup time	400 kHz mode	600	—	—		
SP91*	THD:STA	Start condition	100 kHz mode	4000	—	—	ns	After this period, the first clock pulse is generated
		Hold time	400 kHz mode	600	—	—		
SP92*	TSU:STO	Stop condition	100 kHz mode	4700	—	—	ns	
		Setup time	400 kHz mode	600	—	—		
SP93	THD:STO	Stop condition	100 kHz mode	4000	—	—	ns	
		Hold time	400 kHz mode	600	—	—		

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

FIGURE 30-21: I^{2}C™ BUS DATA TIMING



Note: Refer to Figure 30-5 for load conditions.

TABLE 30-16: I²C™ BUS DATA REQUIREMENTS

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min.	Max.	Units	Conditions
SP100*	THIGH	Clock high time	100 kHz mode	4.0	—	μs	Device must operate at a minimum of 1.5 MHz
			400 kHz mode	0.6	—	μs	Device must operate at a minimum of 10 MHz
			SSP module	1.5TCY	—		
SP101*	TLOW	Clock low time	100 kHz mode	4.7	—	μs	Device must operate at a minimum of 1.5 MHz
			400 kHz mode	1.3	—	μs	Device must operate at a minimum of 10 MHz
			SSP module	1.5TCY	—		
SP102*	TR	SDA and SCL rise time	100 kHz mode	—	1000	ns	
			400 kHz mode	20 + 0.1CB	300	ns	CB is specified to be from 10-400 pF
SP103*	TF	SDA and SCL fall time	100 kHz mode	—	250	ns	
			400 kHz mode	20 + 0.1CB	250	ns	CB is specified to be from 10-400 pF
SP106*	THD:DAT	Data input hold time	100 kHz mode	0	—	ns	
			400 kHz mode	0	0.9	μs	
SP107*	TSU:DAT	Data input setup time	100 kHz mode	250	—	ns	(Note 2)
			400 kHz mode	100	—	ns	
SP109*	TAA	Output valid from clock	100 kHz mode	—	3500	ns	(Note 1)
			400 kHz mode	—	—	ns	
SP110*	TBUF	Bus free time	100 kHz mode	4.7	—	μs	Time the bus must be free before a new transmission can start
			400 kHz mode	1.3	—	μs	
SP111	CB	Bus capacitive loading		—	400	pF	

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

Note 1: As a transmitter, the device must provide this internal minimum delay time to bridge the undefined region (min. 300 ns) of the falling edge of SCL to avoid unintended generation of Start or Stop conditions.

2: A Fast mode (400 kHz) I²C™ bus device can be used in a Standard mode (100 kHz) I²C bus system, but the requirement TSU:DAT ≥ 250 ns must then be met. This will automatically be the case if the device does not stretch the low period of the SCL signal. If such a device does stretch the low period of the SCL signal, it must output the next data bit to the SDA line TR max. + TSU:DAT = 1000 + 250 = 1250 ns (according to the Standard mode I²C bus specification), before the SCL line is released.

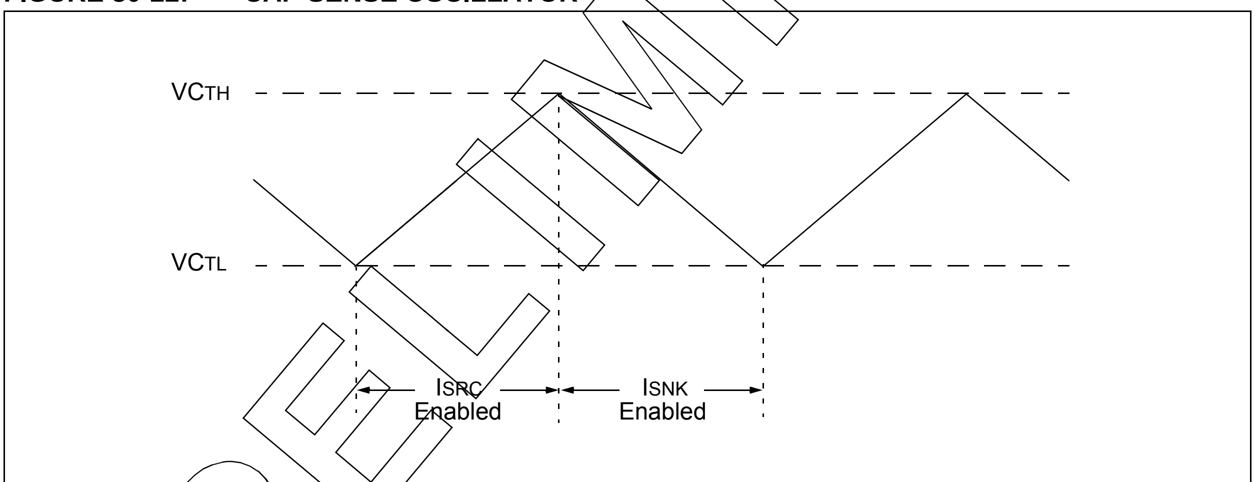
TABLE 30-17: CAP SENSE OSCILLATOR SPECIFICATIONS

Param. No.	Symbol	Characteristic		Min.	Typ†	Max.	Units	Conditions
CS01*	ISRC	Current Source	High	—	-8	—	μA	
			Medium	—	-1.5	—	μA	
			Low	—	-0.3	—	μA	
CS02*	ISNK	Current Sink	High	—	7.5	—	μA	
			Medium	—	1.5	—	μA	
			Low	—	0.25	—	μA	
CS03*	VCTH	Cap Threshold		—	0.8	—	mV	
CS04*	VCTL	Cap Threshold		—	0.4	—	mV	
CS05*	VCHYST	Cap Hysteresis (VCTH-VCTL)	High Medium Low	— — —	525 375 300	— — —	mV mV mV	

* These parameters are characterized but not tested.

† Data in “Typ” column is at 3.0V, 25°C unless otherwise stated. These parameters are for design guidance only and are not tested.

FIGURE 30-22: CAP SENSE OSCILLATOR



NOTES:

31.0 DC AND AC CHARACTERISTICS GRAPHS AND CHARTS

Graphs and charts are not available at this time.

NOTES:

32.0 DEVELOPMENT SUPPORT

The PIC® microcontrollers and dsPIC® digital signal controllers are supported with a full range of software and hardware development tools:

- Integrated Development Environment
  - MPLAB® IDE Software
- Compilers/Assemblers/Linkers
  - MPLAB C Compiler for Various Device Families
  - HI-TECH C for Various Device Families
  - MPASM™ Assembler
  - MPLINK™ Object Linker/ MPLIB™ Object Librarian
  - MPLAB Assembler/Linker/Librarian for Various Device Families
- Simulators
  - MPLAB SIM Software Simulator
- Emulators
  - MPLAB REAL ICE™ In-Circuit Emulator
- In-Circuit Debuggers
  - MPLAB ICD 3
  - PICkit™ 3 Debug Express
- Device Programmers
  - PICkit™ 2 Programmer
  - MPLAB PM3 Device Programmer
- Low-Cost Demonstration/Development Boards, Evaluation Kits, and Starter Kits

32.1 MPLAB Integrated Development Environment Software

The MPLAB IDE software brings an ease of software development previously unseen in the 8/16/32-bit microcontroller market. The MPLAB IDE is a Windows® operating system-based application that contains:

- A single graphical interface to all debugging tools
  - Simulator
  - Programmer (sold separately)
  - In-Circuit Emulator (sold separately)
  - In-Circuit Debugger (sold separately)
- A full-featured editor with color-coded context
- A multiple project manager
- Customizable data windows with direct edit of contents
- High-level source code debugging
- Mouse over variable inspection
- Drag and drop variables from source to watch windows
- Extensive on-line help
- Integration of select third party tools, such as IAR C Compilers

The MPLAB IDE allows you to:

- Edit your source files (either C or assembly)
- One-touch compile or assemble, and download to emulator and simulator tools (automatically updates all project information)
- Debug using:
  - Source files (C or assembly)
  - Mixed C and assembly
  - Machine code

MPLAB IDE supports multiple debugging tools in a single development paradigm, from the cost-effective simulators, through low-cost in-circuit debuggers, to full-featured emulators. This eliminates the learning curve when upgrading to tools with increased flexibility and power.

32.2 MPLAB C Compilers for Various Device Families

The MPLAB C Compiler code development systems are complete ANSI C compilers for Microchip's PIC18, PIC24 and PIC32 families of microcontrollers and the dsPIC30 and dsPIC33 families of digital signal controllers. These compilers provide powerful integration capabilities, superior code optimization and ease of use.

For easy source level debugging, the compilers provide symbol information that is optimized to the MPLAB IDE debugger.

32.3 HI-TECH C for Various Device Families

The HI-TECH C Compiler code development systems are complete ANSI C compilers for Microchip's PIC family of microcontrollers and the dsPIC family of digital signal controllers. These compilers provide powerful integration capabilities, omniscient code generation and ease of use.

For easy source level debugging, the compilers provide symbol information that is optimized to the MPLAB IDE debugger.

The compilers include a macro assembler, linker, preprocessor, and one-step driver, and can run on multiple platforms.

32.4 MPASM Assembler

The MPASM Assembler is a full-featured, universal macro assembler for PIC10/12/16/18 MCUs.

The MPASM Assembler generates relocatable object files for the MPLINK Object Linker, Intel® standard HEX files, MAP files to detail memory usage and symbol reference, absolute LST files that contain source lines and generated machine code and COFF files for debugging.

The MPASM Assembler features include:

- Integration into MPLAB IDE projects
- User-defined macros to streamline assembly code
- Conditional assembly for multi-purpose source files
- Directives that allow complete control over the assembly process

32.5 MPLINK Object Linker/ MPLIB Object Librarian

The MPLINK Object Linker combines relocatable objects created by the MPASM Assembler and the MPLAB C18 C Compiler. It can link relocatable objects from precompiled libraries, using directives from a linker script.

The MPLIB Object Librarian manages the creation and modification of library files of precompiled code. When a routine from a library is called from a source file, only the modules that contain that routine will be linked in with the application. This allows large libraries to be used efficiently in many different applications.

The object linker/library features include:

- Efficient linking of single libraries instead of many smaller files
- Enhanced code maintainability by grouping related modules together
- Flexible creation of libraries with easy module listing, replacement, deletion and extraction

32.6 MPLAB Assembler, Linker and Librarian for Various Device Families

MPLAB Assembler produces relocatable machine code from symbolic assembly language for PIC24, PIC32 and dsPIC devices. MPLAB C Compiler uses the assembler to produce its object file. The assembler generates relocatable object files that can then be archived or linked with other relocatable object files and archives to create an executable file. Notable features of the assembler include:

- Support for the entire device instruction set
- Support for fixed-point and floating-point data
- Command line interface
- Rich directive set
- Flexible macro language
- MPLAB IDE compatibility

32.7 MPLAB SIM Software Simulator

The MPLAB SIM Software Simulator allows code development in a PC-hosted environment by simulating the PIC MCUs and dsPIC® DSCs on an instruction level. On any given instruction, the data areas can be examined or modified and stimuli can be applied from a comprehensive stimulus controller. Registers can be logged to files for further run-time analysis. The trace buffer and logic analyzer display extend the power of the simulator to record and track program execution, actions on I/O, most peripherals and internal registers.

The MPLAB SIM Software Simulator fully supports symbolic debugging using the MPLAB C Compilers, and the MPASM and MPLAB Assemblers. The software simulator offers the flexibility to develop and debug code outside of the hardware laboratory environment, making it an excellent, economical software development tool.

32.8 MPLAB REAL ICE In-Circuit Emulator System

MPLAB REAL ICE In-Circuit Emulator System is Microchip's next generation high-speed emulator for Microchip Flash DSC and MCU devices. It debugs and programs PIC® Flash MCUs and dsPIC® Flash DSCs with the easy-to-use, powerful graphical user interface of the MPLAB Integrated Development Environment (IDE), included with each kit.

The emulator is connected to the design engineer's PC using a high-speed USB 2.0 interface and is connected to the target with either a connector compatible with in-circuit debugger systems (RJ11) or with the new high-speed, noise tolerant, Low-Voltage Differential Signal (LVDS) interconnection (CAT5).

The emulator is field upgradable through future firmware downloads in MPLAB IDE. In upcoming releases of MPLAB IDE, new devices will be supported, and new features will be added. MPLAB REAL ICE offers significant advantages over competitive emulators including low-cost, full-speed emulation, run-time variable watches, trace analysis, complex breakpoints, a ruggedized probe interface and long (up to three meters) interconnection cables.

32.9 MPLAB ICD 3 In-Circuit Debugger System

MPLAB ICD 3 In-Circuit Debugger System is Microchip's most cost effective high-speed hardware debugger/programmer for Microchip Flash Digital Signal Controller (DSC) and microcontroller (MCU) devices. It debugs and programs PIC® Flash microcontrollers and dsPIC® DSCs with the powerful, yet easy-to-use graphical user interface of MPLAB Integrated Development Environment (IDE).

The MPLAB ICD 3 In-Circuit Debugger probe is connected to the design engineer's PC using a high-speed USB 2.0 interface and is connected to the target with a connector compatible with the MPLAB ICD 2 or MPLAB REAL ICE systems (RJ-11). MPLAB ICD 3 supports all MPLAB ICD 2 headers.

32.10 PICkit 3 In-Circuit Debugger/ Programmer and PICkit 3 Debug Express

The MPLAB PICkit 3 allows debugging and programming of PIC® and dsPIC® Flash microcontrollers at a most affordable price point using the powerful graphical user interface of the MPLAB Integrated Development Environment (IDE). The MPLAB PICkit 3 is connected to the design engineer's PC using a full speed USB interface and can be connected to the target via an Microchip debug (RJ-11) connector (compatible with MPLAB ICD 3 and MPLAB REAL ICE). The connector uses two device I/O pins and the reset line to implement in-circuit debugging and In-Circuit Serial Programming™.

The PICkit 3 Debug Express include the PICkit 3, demo board and microcontroller, hookup cables and CDROM with user's guide, lessons, tutorial, compiler and MPLAB IDE software.

32.11 PICkit 2 Development Programmer/Debugger and PICkit 2 Debug Express

The PICkit™ 2 Development Programmer/Debugger is a low-cost development tool with an easy to use interface for programming and debugging Microchip's Flash families of microcontrollers. The full featured Windows® programming interface supports baseline (PIC10F, PIC12F5xx, PIC16F5xx), midrange (PIC12F6xx, PIC16F), PIC18F, PIC24, dsPIC30, dsPIC33, and PIC32 families of 8-bit, 16-bit, and 32-bit microcontrollers, and many Microchip Serial EEPROM products. With Microchip's powerful MPLAB Integrated Development Environment (IDE) the PICkit™ 2 enables in-circuit debugging on most PIC® microcontrollers. In-Circuit-Debugging runs, halts and single steps the program while the PIC microcontroller is embedded in the application. When halted at a breakpoint, the file registers can be examined and modified.

The PICkit 2 Debug Express include the PICkit 2, demo board and microcontroller, hookup cables and CDROM with user's guide, lessons, tutorial, compiler and MPLAB IDE software.

32.12 MPLAB PM3 Device Programmer

The MPLAB PM3 Device Programmer is a universal, CE compliant device programmer with programmable voltage verification at VDDMIN and VDDMAX for maximum reliability. It features a large LCD display (128 x 64) for menus and error messages and a modular, detachable socket assembly to support various package types. The ICSP™ cable assembly is included as a standard item. In Stand-Alone mode, the MPLAB PM3 Device Programmer can read, verify and program PIC devices without a PC connection. It can also set code protection in this mode. The MPLAB PM3 connects to the host PC via an RS-232 or USB cable. The MPLAB PM3 has high-speed communications and optimized algorithms for quick programming of large memory devices and incorporates an MMC card for file storage and data applications.

32.13 Demonstration/Development Boards, Evaluation Kits, and Starter Kits

A wide variety of demonstration, development and evaluation boards for various PIC MCUs and dsPIC DSCs allows quick application development on fully functional systems. Most boards include prototyping areas for adding custom circuitry and provide application firmware and source code for examination and modification.

The boards support a variety of features, including LEDs, temperature sensors, switches, speakers, RS-232 interfaces, LCD displays, potentiometers and additional EEPROM memory.

The demonstration and development boards can be used in teaching environments, for prototyping custom circuits and for learning about various microcontroller applications.

In addition to the PICDEM™ and dsPICDEM™ demonstration/development board series of circuits, Microchip has a line of evaluation kits and demonstration software for analog filter design, KEELOQ® security ICs, CAN, IrDA®, PowerSmart battery management, SEEVAL® evaluation system, Sigma-Delta ADC, flow rate sensing, plus many more.

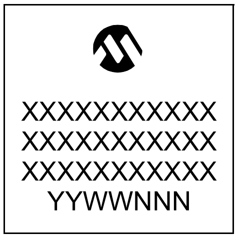
Also available are starter kits that contain everything needed to experience the specified device. This usually includes a single application and debug capability, all on one board.

Check the Microchip web page (www.microchip.com) for the complete list of demonstration, development and evaluation kits.

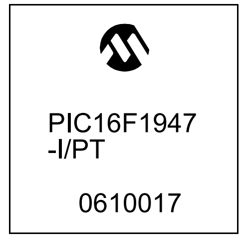
33.0 PACKAGING INFORMATION

33.1 Package Marking Information

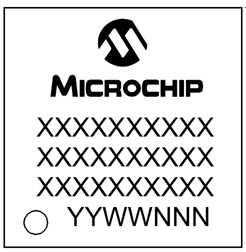
64-Lead QFN (9x9x1mm)



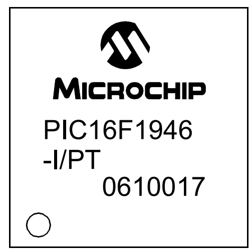
Example



64-Lead TQFP (10x10x1mm)



Example



Legend:	XX...X	Customer-specific information
	Y	Year code (last digit of calendar year)
	YY	Year code (last 2 digits of calendar year)
	WW	Week code (week of January 1 is week '01')
	NNN	Alphanumeric traceability code
	e3	Pb-free JEDEC designator for Matte Tin (Sn)
	*	This package is Pb-free. The Pb-free JEDEC designator (e3) can be found on the outer packaging for this package.

Note: In the event the full Microchip part number cannot be marked on one line, it will be carried over to the next line, thus limiting the number of available characters for customer-specific information.

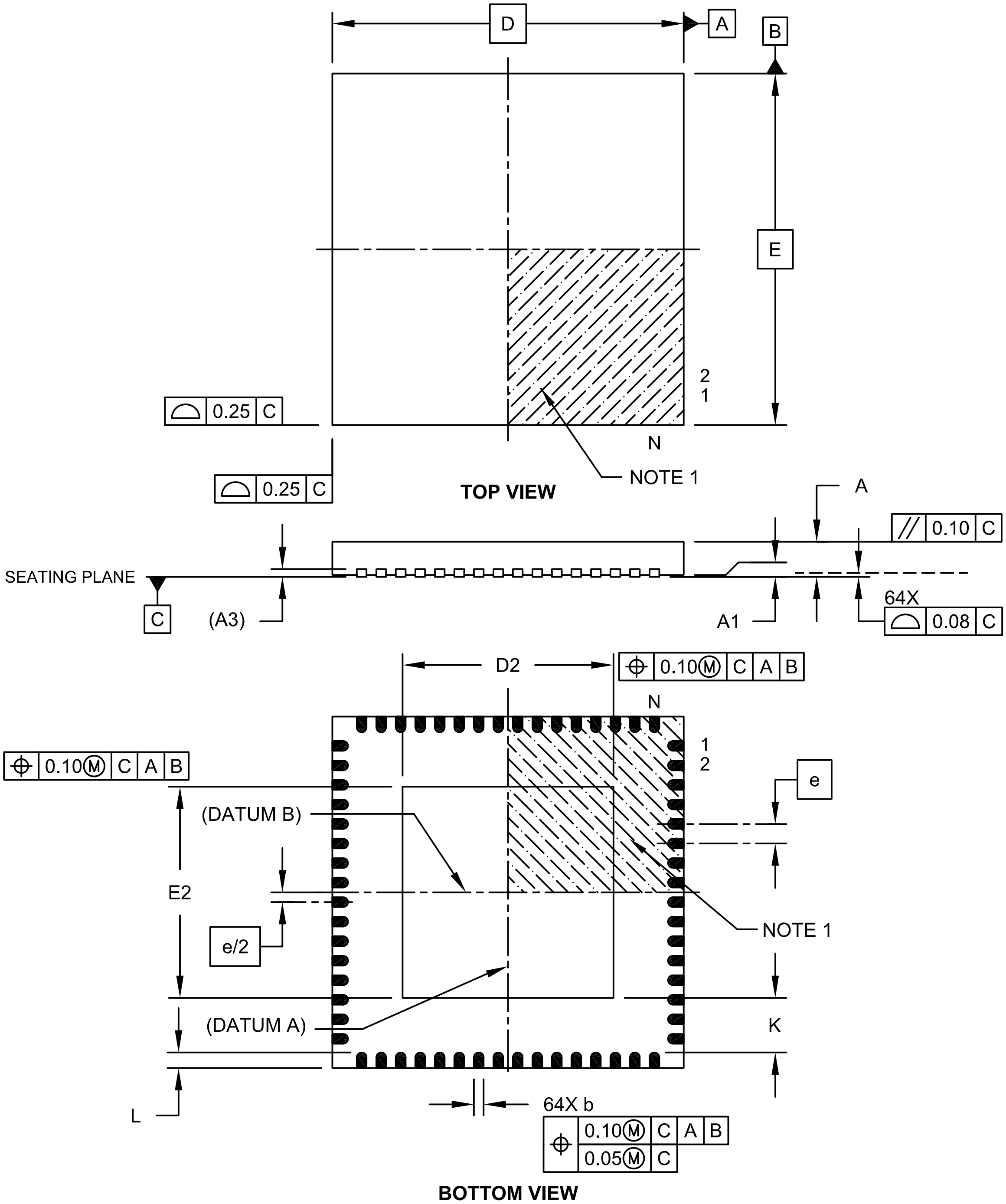
* Standard PICmicro® device marking consists of Microchip part number, year code, week code and traceability code. For PICmicro device marking beyond this, certain price adders apply. Please check with your Microchip Sales Office. For QTP devices, any special marking adders are included in QTP price.

33.2 Package Details

The following sections give the technical details of the packages.

64-Lead Plastic Quad Flat, No Lead Package (MR) – 9x9x0.9 mm Body with 5.40 x 5.40 Exposed Pad [QFN]

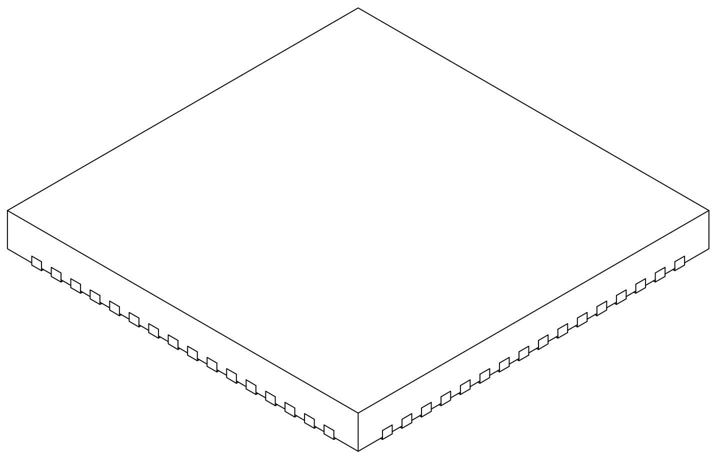
Note:	For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at http://www.microchip.com/packaging



Microchip Technology Drawing C04-154A Sheet 1 of 2

64-Lead Plastic Quad Flat, No Lead Package (MR) – 9x9x0.9 mm Body with 5.40 x 5.40 Exposed Pad [QFN]

Note:	For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at http://www.microchip.com/packaging



Units		MILLIMETERS		
Dimension Limits		MIN	NOM	MAX
Number of Pins	N		64	
Pitch	e		0.50 BSC	
Overall Height	A	0.80	0.90	1.00
Standoff	A1	0.00	0.02	0.05
Contact Thickness	A3		0.20 REF	
Overall Width	E		9.00 BSC	
Exposed Pad Width	E2	5.30	5.40	5.50
Overall Length	D		9.00 BSC	
Exposed Pad Length	D2	5.30	5.40	5.50
Contact Width	b	0.20	0.25	0.30
Contact Length	L	0.30	0.40	0.50
Contact-to-Exposed Pad	K	0.20	-	-

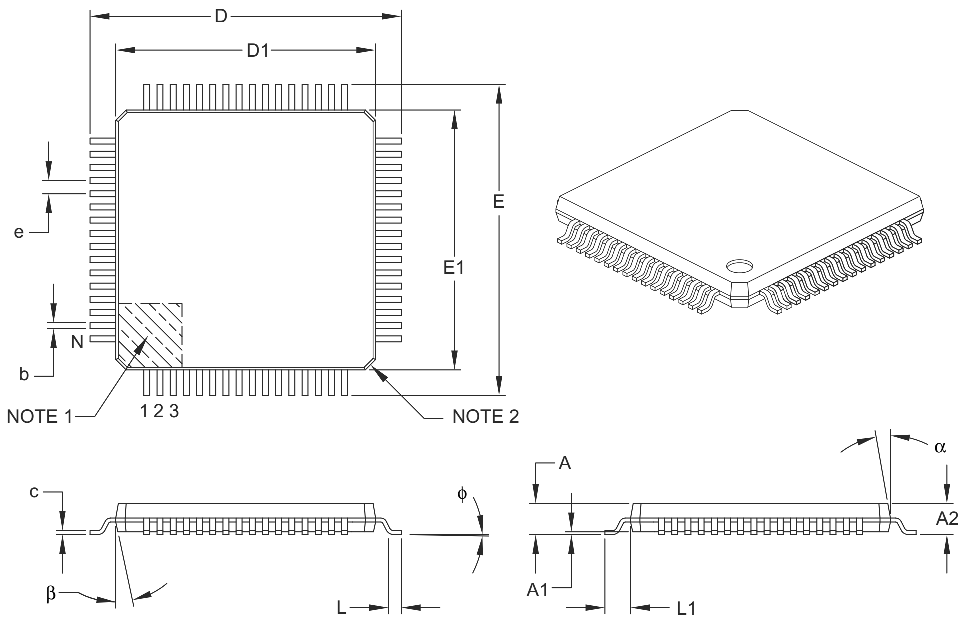
Notes:

1. Pin 1 visual index feature may vary, but must be located within the hatched area.
2. Package is saw singulated.
3. Dimensioning and tolerancing per ASME Y14.5M.
   BSC: Basic Dimension. Theoretically exact value shown without tolerances.
   REF: Reference Dimension, usually without tolerance, for information purposes only.

Microchip Technology Drawing C04-154A Sheet 2 of 2

64-Lead Plastic Thin Quad Flatpack (PT) – 10x10x1 mm Body, 2.00 mm [TQFP]

Note:	For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at http://www.microchip.com/packaging



Units		MILLIMETERS		
Dimension Limits		MIN	NOM	MAX
Number of Leads	N		64	
Lead Pitch	e		0.50 BSC	
Overall Height	A	–	–	1.20
Molded Package Thickness	A2	0.95	1.00	1.05
Standoff	A1	0.05	–	0.15
Foot Length	L	0.45	0.60	0.75
Footprint	L1		1.00 REF	
Foot Angle	φ	0°	3.5°	7°
Overall Width	E		12.00 BSC	
Overall Length	D		12.00 BSC	
Molded Package Width	E1		10.00 BSC	
Molded Package Length	D1		10.00 BSC	
Lead Thickness	c	0.09	–	0.20
Lead Width	b	0.17	0.22	0.27
Mold Draft Angle Top	α	11°	12°	13°
Mold Draft Angle Bottom	β	11°	12°	13°

Notes:

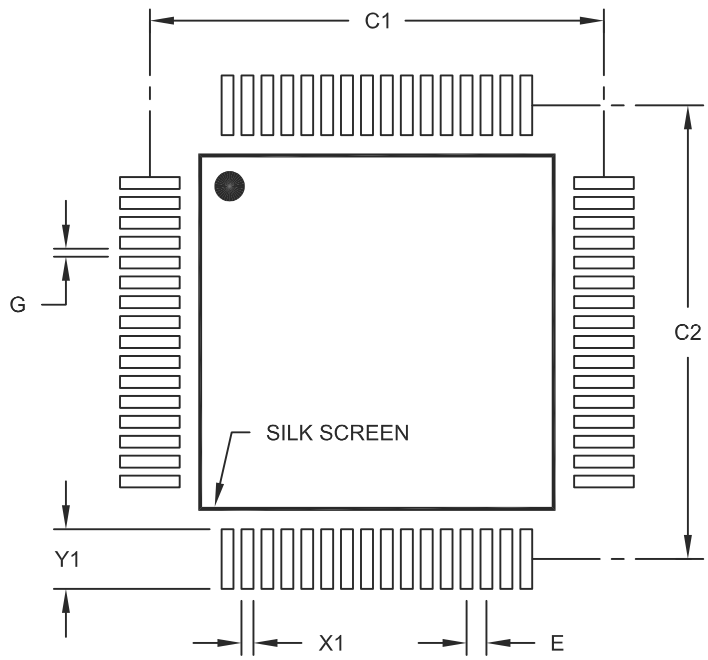
1. Pin 1 visual index feature may vary, but must be located within the hatched area.
2. Chamfers at corners are optional; size may vary.
3. Dimensions D1 and E1 do not include mold flash or protrusions. Mold flash or protrusions shall not exceed 0.25 mm per side.
4. Dimensioning and tolerancing per ASME Y14.5M.

BSC: Basic Dimension. Theoretically exact value shown without tolerances.
REF: Reference Dimension, usually without tolerance, for information purposes only.

Microchip Technology Drawing C04-085B

64-Lead Plastic Thin Quad Flatpack (PT) – 10x10x1 mm Body, 2.00 mm [TQFP]

Note:	For the most current package drawings, please see the Microchip Packaging Specification located at http://www.microchip.com/packaging



RECOMMENDED LAND PATTERN

Units		MILLIMETERS		
Dimension Limits		MIN	NOM	MAX
Contact Pitch	E	0.50 BSC		
Contact Pad Spacing	C1		11.40	
Contact Pad Spacing	C2		11.40	
Contact Pad Width (X64)	X1			0.30
Contact Pad Length (X64)	Y1			1.50
Distance Between Pads	G	0.20		

Notes:

1. Dimensioning and tolerancing per ASME Y14.5M

   BSC: Basic Dimension. Theoretically exact value shown without tolerances.

Microchip Technology Drawing No. C04-2085A

NOTES:

APPENDIX A: DATA SHEET REVISION HISTORY

Revision A (3/2010)

Original release.

Revision B (9/2010)

Updated with current electrical specifications; Added Temperature Indicator Module section; Other minor corrections.

Revision C (5/2011)

Updated the EUSART section; Updated the Electrical Specifications section; Updated Table 3-8, Figure 13-1 and Equation 16-1.

APPENDIX B: MIGRATING FROM OTHER PIC® DEVICES

This shows a comparison of features in the migration from the PIC16F917 device to the PIC16F1946 family of devices.

B.1 PIC16F946 to PIC16F1946

TABLE B-1: FEATURE COMPARISON

Feature	PIC16F917	PIC16F1946
Max. Operating Speed	20 MHz	32 MHz
Max. Program Memory (Words)	8K	8K
Max. SRAM (Bytes)	368	512
A/D Resolution	10-bit	10-bit
Timers (8/16-bit)	2/1	4/1
Oscillator Modes	4	8
Brown-out Reset	Y	Y
Internal Pull-ups	RB<7:0>	RB<7:0>
Interrupt-on-change	RB<7:4>	RB<7:0>
Comparator	2	2
AUSART/EUSART	1/0	0/2
Extended WDT	Y	Y
Software Control Option of WDT/BOR	N	Y
INTOSC Frequencies	30 kHz - 8 MHz	31 kHz - 16 MHz
Clock Switching	Y	Y
Capacitive Sensing	N	Y
CCP/ECCP	2/0	2/3
Enhanced PIC16 CPU	N	Y
MSSP/SSP	0/1	2/0
LCD	Y	Y

Note: This device has been designed to perform to the parameters of its data sheet. It has been tested to an electrical specification designed to determine its conformance with these parameters. Due to process differences in the manufacture of this device, this device may have different performance characteristics than its earlier version. These differences may cause this device to perform differently in your application than the earlier version of this device.

Note:	The user should verify that the device oscillator starts and performs as expected. Adjusting the loading capacitor values and/or the oscillator mode may be required.

INDEX

A

B

C

D

E

Preliminary

R

S

T

 Preliminary

THE MICROCHIP WEB SITE

Microchip provides online support via our WWW site at www.microchip.com. This web site is used as a means to make files and information easily available to customers. Accessible by using your favorite Internet browser, the web site contains the following information:

- **Product Support** – Data sheets and errata, application notes and sample programs, design resources, user's guides and hardware support documents, latest software releases and archived software
- **General Technical Support** – Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ), technical support requests, online discussion groups, Microchip consultant program member listing
- **Business of Microchip** – Product selector and ordering guides, latest Microchip press releases, listing of seminars and events, listings of Microchip sales offices, distributors and factory representatives

CUSTOMER CHANGE NOTIFICATION SERVICE

Microchip's customer notification service helps keep customers current on Microchip products. Subscribers will receive e-mail notification whenever there are changes, updates, revisions or errata related to a specified product family or development tool of interest.

To register, access the Microchip web site at www.microchip.com. Under "Support", click on "Customer Change Notification" and follow the registration instructions.

CUSTOMER SUPPORT

Users of Microchip products can receive assistance through several channels:

- Distributor or Representative
- Local Sales Office
- Field Application Engineer (FAE)
- Technical Support
- Development Systems Information Line

Customers should contact their distributor, representative or field application engineer (FAE) for support. Local sales offices are also available to help customers. A listing of sales offices and locations is included in the back of this document.

Technical support is available through the web site at: http://microchip.com/support

READER RESPONSE

It is our intention to provide you with the best documentation possible to ensure successful use of your Microchip product. If you wish to provide your comments on organization, clarity, subject matter, and ways in which our documentation can better serve you, please FAX your comments to the Technical Publications Manager at (480) 792-4150.

Please list the following information, and use this outline to provide us with your comments about this document.

TO: Technical Publications Manager
RE: Reader Response

Total Pages Sent ________

From: Name ________________________________
Company ________________________________
Address ________________________________
City / State / ZIP / Country ________________________________
Telephone: (_______) _________ - _________ FAX: (______) _________ - _________

Application (optional):

Would you like a reply? ___Y ___N

Device: PIC16(L)F1946/1947 Literature Number: DS41414C

Questions:

1. What are the best features of this document?

____

____

2. How does this document meet your hardware and software development needs?

____

____

3. Do you find the organization of this document easy to follow? If not, why?

____

____

4. What additions to the document do you think would enhance the structure and subject?

____

____

5. What deletions from the document could be made without affecting the overall usefulness?

____

____

6. Is there any incorrect or misleading information (what and where)?

____

____

7. How would you improve this document?

____

____

PRODUCT IDENTIFICATION SYSTEM

To order or obtain information, e.g., on pricing or delivery, refer to the factory or the listed sales office.

PART NO.	X	/XX	XXX
Device	Temperature Range	Package	Pattern

Device:	PIC16F1946, PIC16LF1946, PIC16F1946T, PIC16LF1946T(1) PIC16F1947, PIC16LF1947, PIC16F1947T, PIC16LF1947T(1)
Temperature Range:	I = -40°C to +85°C E = -40°C to +125°C
Package:	MR = Micro Lead Frame (QFN) PT = TQFP (Thin Quad Flatpack)
Pattern:	3-Digit Pattern Code for QTP (blank otherwise)

Examples:

a) PIC16LF1946 - E/MR = Extended temp., QFN package, low-voltage V_{DD} limits.

b) PIC16F1947 - I/PT = Industrial temp., TQFP package, standard V_{DD} limits.

Note 1: F = Standard Voltage Range
LF = Low Voltage Range

2: T = In tape and reel for QFN and TQFP packages only.

Worldwide Sales and Service

AMERICAS

Corporate Office
2355 West Chandler Blvd.
Chandler, AZ 85224-6199
Tel: 480-792-7200
Fax: 480-792-7277
Technical Support:
http://www.microchip.com/support
Web Address:
www.microchip.com

Atlanta
Duluth, GA
Tel: 678-957-9614
Fax: 678-957-1455

Boston
Westborough, MA
Tel: 774-760-0087
Fax: 774-760-0088

Chicago
Itasca, IL
Tel: 630-285-0071
Fax: 630-285-0075

Cleveland
Independence, OH
Tel: 216-447-0464
Fax: 216-447-0643

Dallas
Addison, TX
Tel: 972-818-7423
Fax: 972-818-2924

Detroit
Farmington Hills, MI
Tel: 248-538-2250
Fax: 248-538-2260

Indianapolis
Noblesville, IN
Tel: 317-773-8323
Fax: 317-773-5453

Los Angeles
Mission Viejo, CA
Tel: 949-462-9523
Fax: 949-462-9608

Santa Clara
Santa Clara, CA
Tel: 408-961-6444
Fax: 408-961-6445

Toronto
Mississauga, Ontario,
Canada
Tel: 905-673-0699
Fax: 905-673-6509

ASIA/PACIFIC

Asia Pacific Office
Suites 3707-14, 37th Floor
Tower 6, The Gateway
Harbour City, Kowloon
Hong Kong
Tel: 852-2401-1200
Fax: 852-2401-3431

Australia - Sydney
Tel: 61-2-9868-6733
Fax: 61-2-9868-6755

China - Beijing
Tel: 86-10-8569-7000
Fax: 86-10-8528-2104

China - Chengdu
Tel: 86-28-8665-5511
Fax: 86-28-8665-7889

China - Chongqing
Tel: 86-23-8980-9588
Fax: 86-23-8980-9500

China - Hangzhou
Tel: 86-571-2819-3180
Fax: 86-571-2819-3189

China - Hong Kong SAR
Tel: 852-2401-1200
Fax: 852-2401-3431

China - Nanjing
Tel: 86-25-8473-2460
Fax: 86-25-8473-2470

China - Qingdao
Tel: 86-532-8502-7355
Fax: 86-532-8502-7205

China - Shanghai
Tel: 86-21-5407-5533
Fax: 86-21-5407-5066

China - Shenyang
Tel: 86-24-2334-2829
Fax: 86-24-2334-2393

China - Shenzhen
Tel: 86-755-8203-2660
Fax: 86-755-8203-1760

China - Wuhan
Tel: 86-27-5980-5300
Fax: 86-27-5980-5118

China - Xian
Tel: 86-29-8833-7252
Fax: 86-29-8833-7256

China - Xiamen
Tel: 86-592-2388138
Fax: 86-592-2388130

China - Zhuhai
Tel: 86-756-3210040
Fax: 86-756-3210049

ASIA/PACIFIC

India - Bangalore
Tel: 91-80-3090-4444
Fax: 91-80-3090-4123

India - New Delhi
Tel: 91-11-4160-8631
Fax: 91-11-4160-8632

India - Pune
Tel: 91-20-2566-1512
Fax: 91-20-2566-1513

Japan - Yokohama
Tel: 81-45-471- 6166
Fax: 81-45-471-6122

Korea - Daegu
Tel: 82-53-744-4301
Fax: 82-53-744-4302

Korea - Seoul
Tel: 82-2-554-7200
Fax: 82-2-558-5932 or
82-2-558-5934

Malaysia - Kuala Lumpur
Tel: 60-3-6201-9857
Fax: 60-3-6201-9859

Malaysia - Penang
Tel: 60-4-227-8870
Fax: 60-4-227-4068

Philippines - Manila
Tel: 63-2-634-9065
Fax: 63-2-634-9069

Singapore
Tel: 65-6334-8870
Fax: 65-6334-8850

Taiwan - Hsin Chu
Tel: 886-3-6578-300
Fax: 886-3-6578-370

Taiwan - Kaohsiung
Tel: 886-7-213-7830
Fax: 886-7-330-9305

Taiwan - Taipei
Tel: 886-2-2500-6610
Fax: 886-2-2508-0102

Thailand - Bangkok
Tel: 66-2-694-1351
Fax: 66-2-694-1350

EUROPE

Austria - Wels
Tel: 43-7242-2244-39
Fax: 43-7242-2244-393

Denmark - Copenhagen
Tel: 45-4450-2828
Fax: 45-4485-2829

France - Paris
Tel: 33-1-69-53-63-20
Fax: 33-1-69-30-90-79

Germany - Munich
Tel: 49-89-627-144-0
Fax: 49-89-627-144-44

Italy - Milan
Tel: 39-0331-742611
Fax: 39-0331-466781

Netherlands - Drunen
Tel: 31-416-690399
Fax: 31-416-690340

Spain - Madrid
Tel: 34-91-708-08-90
Fax: 34-91-708-08-91

UK - Wokingham
Tel: 44-118-921-5869
Fax: 44-118-921-5820

05/02/11